CITY OF HOUSTON
DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS
AND ENGINEERING

STANDARD CONSTRUCTION SPECIFICATIONS
FOR
WASTEWATER COLLECTION SYSTEMS,
WATER LINES, STORM DRAINAGE, AND STREET PAVING

Jon C. Vanden Bosch, P.E.
Director

Showri Nandagiri, P.E.
City Engineer

OCTOBER 2002

Document **Title** **Pages**

SPECIFICATIONS

DIVISION 2 - SITE WORK

UTILITY MATERIALS
02081 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE MANHOLES....9
02082 PRECAST CONCRETE MANHOLES....12
02083 FIBERGLASS MANHOLES....8
02084 FRAMES, GRATES, RINGS, AND COVERS....3
02085 VALVE BOXES, METER BOXES, AND METER VAULTS....7
02086 ADJUSTING MANHOLES, INLETS, AND VALVE BOXES TO GRADE....3
02087 BRICK MANHOLE FOR STORM SEWERS....4

SITE DEMOLITION
02221 REMOVING EXISTING PAVEMENTS AND STRUCTURES....4
02222 ABANDONMENT OF SEWERS....8
02233 CLEARING AND GRUBBING....2

EXCAVATION AND FILL
02315 ROADWAY EXCAVATION....4
02316 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL FOR STRUCTURES....9
02317 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL FOR UTILITIES....17
02318 EXTRA UNIT PRICE WORK FOR EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL....2
02319 BORROW....2
02320 UTILITY BACKFILL MATERIALS....11
02321 CEMENT STABILIZED SAND....8

EMBANKMENT
02330 EMBANKMENT....4

SUBGRADE AND ROADBED
02336 LIME-STABILIZED SUBGRADE....8
02337 LIME/FLY-ASH STABILIZED SUBGRADE....3
02338 PORTLAND CEMENT STABILIZED SUBGRADE....5

TUNNELING, BORING AND JACKING
02400 TUNNEL SHAFTS....6
02425 TUNNEL EXCAVATION AND PRIMARY LINER....11
02426 SEWER LINE IN TUNNELS....4
02427 PLASTIC LINER FOR LARGE-DIAMETER CONCRETE SEWERS AND STRUCTURES....13
02431 TUNNEL GROUT....8

02441 MICROTUNNELING AND PIPE-JACKED TUNNELS 13
02447 AUGERING PIPE AND CONDUIT 9
02448 PIPE AND CASING AUGERING FOR SEWERS 7

FOUNDATION AND LOAD BEARING ELEMENTS
02465 DRILLED SHAFT FOUNDATIONS 4
02476 CAISSION FOR LIFT STATION 6

PIPE MATERIALS
02501 DUCTILE IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS 8
02502 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS 11
02503 COPPER TUBING 3
02504 CENTRIFUGALLY CAST FIBERGLASS PIPE 6
02505 HIGH DENSITY POLYETHYLENE (HDPE) SOLID AND PROFILE WALL PIPE 7
02506 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PIPE 9
02507 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE CYLINDER PIPE 20
02508 EXTRA STRENGTH CLAY PIPE 4

WATER DISTRIBUTION
02511 WATER LINES 21
02512 WATER TAP AND SERVICE LINE INSTALLATION 6
02513 WET CONNECTIONS 2
02514 DISINFECTION OF WATER LINES 3
02515 HYDROSTATIC TESTING OF PIPELINES 3
02516 CUT, PLUG, AND ABANDONMENT OF MAINS 2
02517 WATER LINE IN TUNNELS 7
02518 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS FOR LARGE-DIAMETER WATER LINES 34
02520 FIRE HYDRANTS 5
02521 GATE VALVES 6
02522 BUTTERFLY VALVES 8
02523 PRESSURE REDUCING VALVES 3
02524 AIR RELEASE AND VACUUM RELIEF VALVES 4
02525 TAPPING SLEEVES AND VALVES 5
02526 WATER METERS 8
02527 POLYURETHANE COATINGS ON STEEL OR DUCTILE IRON PIPE 7
02528 POLYETHYLENE WRAP 5

SANITARY SEWER
02531 GRAVITY SANITARY SEWERS 9
02532 SANITARY SEWER FORCE MAINS 7
02533 ACCEPTANCE TESTING FOR SANITARY SEWERS 14
02534 SANITARY SEWER SERVICE STUBS OR RECONNECTIONS 8

ELECTRICAL AND COMMUNICATION STRUCTURES
02581 STREET LIGHTING CONDUIT 2

PIPE CULVERTS
02611 REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE 3
02612 PRECAST REINFORCED CONCRETE BOX SEWERS 2
02613 BAR WRAPPED STEEL CYLINDER PIPE 18

SUBDRAINAGE
02621 GEOTEXTILE 3

STORM DRAINAGE
02631 STORM SEWERS 7
02632 CAST-IN-PLACE INLETS, HEADWALLS, AND WINGWALLS 3
02633 PRECAST CONCRETE INLETS, HEADWALLS, AND WINGWALLS 4

CULVERTS AND MANUFACTURED CONSTRUCTION
02642 CORRUGATED METAL PIPE 7
02643 STRUCTURAL PLATE CULVERT STRUCTURES 7

BOUND BASE COURSES
02711 HOT MIX ASPHALT BASE COURSE 9
02712 CEMENT STABILIZED BASE COURSE 7
02713 RECYCLED CRUSHED CONCRETE BASE COURSE 7
02714 FLEXIBLE BASE COURSE FOR TEMPORARY ROADS, DETOURS, SHOULDERS, AND DRIVEWAYS 5

FLEXIBLE PAVING
02741 ASPHALT CONCRETE PAVEMENT 9
02742 PRIME COAT 4
02743 TACK COAT 3

RIGID PAVING
02751 CONCRETE PAVING 14
02752 CONCRETE PAVEMENT JOINTS 6
02753 CONCRETE PAVEMENT CURING 3
02754 CONCRETE DRIVEWAYS 2

PAVING SPECIALTIES
02761 COLORED CONCRETE FOR MEDIANS AND SIDEWALKS 2
02762 BLAST CLEANING OF PAVEMENT 2
02764 RAISED PAVEMENT MARKERS 6
02765 TEMPORARY AND REMOVABLE REFLECTORIZED PAVEMENT MARKINGS 5
02767 THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKINGS 8

CURBS, GUTTERS AND SIDEWALKS
02771 CURB, CURB AND GUTTER, AND HEADERS 4
02772 CONCRETE MEDIANS AND DIRECTIONAL ISLANDS 2
02775 CONCRETE SIDEWALKS 5

IRRIGATION SYSTEM
02811 LANDSCAPE IRRIGATION 5

PLANT PREPARTION
02911 TOPSOIL 2

SHRUB AND TREE TRANSPLANTING
02915 TREE PLANTING 7

LAWNS AND GRASS
02921 HYDROMULCH SEEDING 4
02922 SODDING 5

SITE RESTORATION AND REHABILITATION
02951 PAVEMENT REPAIR AND RESURFACING 3
02983 REMOVAL AND RESTORATION OF BRICK PAVED STREETS 4

DIVISION 3 - CONCRETE
03315 CONCRETE FOR UTILITY CONSTRUCTION 18
03316 SEAL SLABS 2

DIVISION 4 - MORTAR
04061 MORTAR 5
04210 BRICK MASONRY FOR UTILITY CONSTRUCTION 4

Section 02081

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE MANHOLES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Cast-in-place concrete manholes for sanitary sewers and storm sewers, including box sewers.

B. Pile-supported concrete foundation used for unstable subgrade treatment for manhole base.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for manholes is on a unit price basis for each manhole installed.

2. Payment for Type C manhole with BB inlet top is on a unit price basis for each.

3. Payment for pile-supported concrete foundation used for unstable subgrade treatment for manhole base is on a unit price basis for each foundation installed.

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASME B 16.1 - Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings.

B. ASTM A 307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 psi Tensile.

C. ASTM C 270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry.

D. ASTM C 923 - Standard Specifications for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures and Pipes.

E. ASTM C 1107 - Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic - Cement Grout (Non-shrink).

F. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lb/ft^3).

G. ASTM D 2665 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe, and Fittings.

H. ASTM D 2996 - Standard Specification for Filament-wound Fiberglass (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe.

I. ASTM D 2997 - Standard Specification for Centrifugally Cast Fiberglass (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe.

J. AWWA C 213 - Standard for Fusion Bonded Epoxy Coating for Interior and Exterior of Steel Water Pipelines.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit proposed design mix and test data for each type and strength of concrete.

C. Submit manufacturer's data and details of following items for approval:

1. Frames, grates, rings, and covers.

2. Materials to be used in fabricating drop connections.

3. Materials to be used for pipe connections at manhole walls.

4. Materials to be used for stubs and stub plugs.

5. Plugs to be used for sanitary sewer hydrostatic testing.

6. Installation instructions for forms.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 CONCRETE

A. Conform to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

B. Provide Class A concrete with minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

2.02 REINFORCING STEEL

A. Conform to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

2.03 MORTAR

A. Conform to requirements of Section 04061 - Mortar

2.04 MISCELLANEOUS METALS

A. Provide cast-iron frames, grates, rings, and covers conforming to requirements of Section 02084 - Frames, Grates, Rings, and Covers.

2.05 DROP CONNECTIONS AND STUBS

A. Provide drop connections and stubs conforming to same pipe material requirements used in main pipe, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

2.06 PIPE CONNECTIONS

A. Sanitary Sewers.

1. Provide resilient connectors conforming to requirements of ASTM C 923. Use the following materials for metallic mechanical devices as defined in ASTM C 923:

   a. External clamps: Type 304 stainless steel

   b. Internal, expandable clamps on Standard manholes: Type 304 stainless steel, 11 gauge minimum

   c. Internal, expandable clamps on corrosion-resistant manholes:

      (1) Type 316 stainless steel, 11 gauge minimum

      (2) Type 304 stainless steel, 11 gauge minimum, coated with minimum 16 mil fusion-bonded epoxy conforming to AWWA C 213

2. Where rigid joints between pipe and cast-in-place manhole base are specified or shown on Drawings, provide polyethylene-isoprene waterstop meeting physical property requirements of ASTM C 923, such as Pres-Seal WS Series, or approved equal.

B. Storm Sewers: Use non-shrink grout for storm sewer pipe connections to concrete manholes, unless otherwise shown on Drawings. Grout pipe penetration in place on both inside and outside of manhole.

C. Water Lines

A. Where smooth exterior pipes, i.e., steel, ductile iron, or PVC pipes are connected to manhole base or barrel, seal space between pipe and manhole wall with assembly consisting of rubber gasket or links mechanically compressed to form a watertight barrier. Assemblies: Press-Wedge, Pres-Seal, Thunderline, Link-Seals, or approved equal. See Drawings for placement of assembly in manhole sections.

B. When connecting concrete or cement mortar coated steel pipes, or as option for connecting smooth exterior pipes to manhole base or barrel, space between pipe and manhole wall may be sealed with an assembly consisting of a stainless steel power sleeve, stainless steel take-up clamp and a rubber gasket. Take-up clamp: Minimum of 9/16 inch wide. Provide PSX positive seal gasket system by Press-Seal Gasket Corporation or approved equal.

2.07 SEALANT MATERIALS

A. Provide sealing materials between precast concrete adjustment ring and manhole cover frame, such as Adeka Ultraseal P 201, or approved equal.

B. Provide external sealing material from Canusa Wrapid Seal manhole encapsulation system, or approved equal.

C. Butyl Sealant: Provide Press-Seal EZ Stick, or equal, for HDPE rings.

2.08 CORROSION-RESISTANT MANHOLE MATERIALS

A. Where corrosion-resistant manholes or PVC-lined manholes are indicated on the Drawings, provide one of the following:

1. PVC liner for precast cylindrical manhole section, base sections, and cone sections

2. Precast base sections lined with PVC and fiberglass manhole sections and cone sections in accordance with Section 02083 - Fiberglass Manholes

2.09 BACKFILL MATERIALS

A. Conform to the requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

2.10 NON-SHRINK GROUT

A. Provide prepackaged, inorganic, flowable, non-gas-liberating, non-metallic, cement-based non-shrink grout requiring only addition of water.

B. Provide grout meeting requirements of ASTM C 1107 and having minimum 28-day compressive strength of 7000 psi.

2.11 VENT PIPES

A. Provide external vent pipes for manholes where indicated on Drawings.

B. Buried Vent Pipes: Provide 3 inch or 4 inch PVC DWV pipe conforming to ASTM D 2665. Alternatively, provide FRP pipe as specified for vent outlet assembly.

C. Vent Outlet Assembly: Provide vent outlet assembly as shown on Drawings, constructed of following specified materials:

1. FRP Pipe: Provide filament-wound FRP conforming to ASTM D 2996 or centrifugally cast FRP conforming to ASTM D 2997. Seal cut ends in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

2. Joints and Fittings: Provide epoxy- bodied fittings and join pipe to fittings with epoxy adhesive, according to pipe manufacturer's instructions.

3. Flanges: Provide socket-flange fittings for epoxy adhesive bonding to pipe ends where shown on Drawings. Meet bolt pattern and dimensions for ASME B 16.1, 125-pound flanges. Use Type 304 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc coated, conforming to ASTM A 307, Class A or B flange bolts.

4. Coating: Provide 2-component, aliphatic polyurethane coating, using primer or tie coat recommended by manufacturer. Provide two or more coats to yield dry film thickness of at least 3 mils. Provide Amershield, Tnemec 74, or approved equal. Project Manager selects color from manufacturer's standard colors.

2.12 MANHOLE LADDER FOR WATERLINE MANHOLES

A. Manhole Ladder: Fiberglass with 300-lb rating at appropriate length; conform to requirements of Occupational Safety and Health Standards (OSHA), U.S. Department of Labor except where shown on Drawings.

1. Use components, including rungs, made of fiberglass, fabricated with nylon or aluminum rivets and/or epoxy. Apply non-skid coating to ladder rungs. Mount ladder using manufacturer's recommended hardware.

1. Provide ladder as manufactured by Saf-Rail or approved equal. Locate ladder as shown on Drawings.

2. Fiberglass: Premium type polyester resin, reinforced with fiberglass; constructed to provide complete wetting of glass by resin; resistant to rot, fungi, bacterial growth and adverse effects of acids, alkalis and residential and industrial waste; yellow in color.

3. Provide approved petroleum-based tape encapsulating bolts in access manhole.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify lines and grades are correct.

B. Determine if subgrade, when scarified and recompacted, can be compacted to 95 percent of maximum Standard Proctor Density according to ASTM D 698 prior to placement of foundation material and base section. When proper density cannot be reached, moisture condition subgrade until that density is reached or treat as an unstable subgrade.

C. Do not build manholes in ditches, swales, or drainage paths unless approved by Project Manager.

3.02 MANHOLES

A. Construct manholes to dimensions shown on Drawings. Commence construction as soon as possible after pipes are laid. On monolithic sewers, construct manholes at same time sewer is being constructed.

B. Unstable Subgrade Treatment: When unstable subgrade is encountered, notify Project Manager for examination of subgrade to determine if subgrade has heaved upwards after being excavated. When heaving has not occurred, over-excavate subgrade to allow for 24-inch-thick layer of crushed stone wrapped in filter fabric as foundation material under manhole base. When there is evidence of heaving, provide pile-supported concrete foundation, as detailed on Drawings, under manhole base.

C. Cast manhole foundations and walls monolithically. Use cold joint with approved waterstop when manhole flow line depth exceeds 12 feet. No other joints will be allowed unless shown on Drawings. Wrap cold joints with external sealing material, minimum 6-inch with.

D. For concrete containing micro silica admixtures, place, finish, and cure concrete for manholes following procedures in Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction

E. Top of manhole elevations shown on Drawings are approximate, based on current pavement and natural ground conditions as determined from elevations measured on 50-foot spacing. No additional payment will be made if final elevation of manhole ring and cover is higher or lower due to requirements of finished grade or replaced pavement surface.

3.03 PIPE CONNECTIONS

A. Install approved resilient connectors at each pipe entering and exiting water line and sanitary sewer manholes in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Grout storm sewer connections to manhole unless otherwise shown on Drawings. Grout pipe penetrations both inside and outside of manhole.

C. Ensure no concrete, cement stabilized sand, fill, or other solid material is allowed to enter space between pipe and edge of wall opening at and around resilient connector on interior or exterior of manhole. When necessary, fill space with compressible material to ensure resilient connector will maintain full flexibility where evidence of reduced flexibility is encountered.

D. Where new manhole is to be constructed on existing sewer, a rigid joint pipe may be used. Install waterstop gasket around existing pipe at center of cast-in-place wall. Join ends of split waterstop material at pipe spring line using adhesive recommended and supplied by waterstop manufacturer.

E. Do not construct joints on sanitary sewer pipe within wall sections of manholes. Use approved connection material.

F. Construct pipe stubs with resilient connectors for future connections at locations and with material indicated on Drawings. Install approved stub plugs at interior of manhole.

G. Test connection for watertight seal before backfilling.

3.04 INVERTS FOR SANITARY SEWERS

A. Construct invert channels to provide smooth flow transition waterway with no disruption of flow at pipe-manhole connections. Conform to following criteria:

1. Slope of invert bench: 1 inch per foot minimum; 1 1/2 inch per foot maximum.

2. Depth of bench to invert:

   a. Pipes smaller than 15 inches: one-half of largest pipe diameter

   b. Pipes 15 to 24 inches: three-fourths of largest pipe diameter

   c. Pipes larger than 24 inches: equal to largest pipe diameter

3. Invert slope through manhole: 0.10 foot drop across manhole with smooth transition of invert through manhole, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

B. Form invert channels with Class A concrete if not integral with manhole base. For direction changes of mains, construct channels tangent to mains with maximum possible radius of curvature. Provide curves for side inlets and smooth invert fillets for flow transition between pipe inverts.

3.05 DROP CONNECTIONS FOR SANITARY SEWERS

A. Backfill drop assembly with crushed stone wrapped in filter fabric, cement-stabilized sand, or Class A concrete to form solid mass. Extend cement stabilized sand or concrete encasement minimum of 4 inches outside bells.

B. Install connection when sewer line enters manhole higher than 24 inches above invert of manhole.

3.06 STUBS FOR FUTURE CONNECTIONS

A. In manholes where future connections are indicated on Drawings, install resilient connectors and pipe stubs with approved watertight plugs.

3.07 ADJUSTMENT RINGS AND FRAME

A. Combine precast concrete or HDPE adjustment rings so elevation of installed casting cover matches pavement surface. Seal between concrete adjustment ring and precast top section with non-shrink grout; do not use mortar between adjustment rings. Apply latex-based bonding agent to precast concrete surfaces to be joined with non-shrink grout. Set cast iron frame on adjustment ring in a bed of approved sealant material. Install a sealant bed consisting of two beads of sealant, each bead having minimum dimensions of 1/2-inch and 1/2-inch wide.

B. Wrap manhole frame and adjustment rings with external sealing material, minimum 3 inches beyond joint between ring and frame, and ring and precast section.

C. For manholes in unpaved areas, set top of frame minimum of 6 inches above existing ground line unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Encase manhole frame in mortar or non-shrink grout placed flush with face of manhole ring and top edge of frame. Provide rounded corner around perimeter.

3.08 BACKFILL

A. After concrete obtains adequate strength, place and compact backfill materials in area of excavation surrounding manholes in accordance with requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. Use embedment zone backfill material for adjacent utilities, as shown in City of Houston Standard Details over each pipe connected to manhole. Provide trench zone backfill, as specified for adjacent utilities, above embedment zone backfill.

B. Where rigid joints are used for connecting existing sewers to manhole, backfill under existing sewer up to spring line of pipe with Class B concrete or flowable fill.

C. In unpaved areas, provide positive drainage away from manhole frame to natural grade. Provide minimum of 4 inches of topsoil conforming to requirements of Section 02911 - Topsoil. Seed in accordance with Section 02921 - Hydro-mulch Seeding, or sod disturbed areas in accordance with Section 02922 - Sodding.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Conduct leakage testing of Sanitary Sewer manholes in accordance with requirements of Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers.

3.10 PROTECTION

A. Protect manholes from damage until subsequent work has been accepted. Repair or replace damaged elements of manholes at no additional cost to City.

END OF SECTION

Section 02082

PRECAST CONCRETE MANHOLES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Precast concrete manholes for sanitary sewers, storm sewers, and water lines.

B. Precast concrete sanitary sewer manholes with PVC liner where corrosion resistant manholes are specifically indicated in Drawings.

C. Pile-supported concrete foundation used for unstable subgrade treatment for manhole base.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for normal depth manholes, up to 8 feet deep, is on a unit price basis for each manhole installed. Manhole depth is measured from top of cover to sewer invert. Air release manhole depth is measured from top of cover to inside base for air release or vacuum release manholes.

2. Payment for shallow depth manholes is on a unit price basis for each manhole installed. Shallow manholes have a depth of 5 feet or less measured from top of cover to sewer invert

3. Payment for extra depth manholes is on a unit price basis per vertical foot for each foot of depth greater than 8 feet. Sewer manhole depth is measured from top of cover to sewer invert. Air release manhole depth is measured from top of cover to inside base for air release or vacuum release manholes.

4. Payment for normal depth corrosion resistant manholes is on a unit price basis for each manhole installed

5. Payment for standard manhole drops is on a unit price basis for each drop installed. Standard manhole drops include both internal and external drops.

6. Payment for watertight manholes, including external vent pipe is on a unit price basis for each.

7. Payment for air-release manhole with valves and fittings installed is on a unit price basis for each manhole with air-release valves and fittings installed.

8. Payment for pile-supported concrete foundation used for unstable subgrade treatment for manhole base is on a unit price basis for each foundation installed.

9. Pay estimates for partial payments will be made as measured above according to the following schedule for sanitary sewer manholes:

   a. Estimate for 90 percent payment will be authorized when the manhole is completely installed and surrounding soil backfilled

   b. Estimate for 100 percent payment will be authorized when manhole has been tested as specified in Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers

10. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASME B 16.1 - Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings

B. ASTM A 307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 psi Tensile

C. ASTM A 615 - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

D. ASTM C 270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry

E. ASTM C 443 - Standard Specification for Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe, Using Rubber Gaskets.

F. ASTM C 478 - Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections

G. ASTM C 923 - Standard Specifications for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures and Pipes

H. ASTM C 1107 - Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Non-shrink)

I. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lb/ft^3)

J. ASTM D 2665 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings

K. ASTM D 2996 - Standard Specification for Filament-Wound "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe

L. ASTM D 2997 - Standard Specification for Centrifugally Cast "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Pipe

M. AWWA C 213 - Standard for Fusion Bonded Epoxy Coating for Interior and Exterior of Steel Water Pipelines

N. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturer's data and details of following items for approval:

1. Shop drawings of manhole sections, base units and construction details, including reinforcement, jointing methods, materials and dimensions.

2. Summary of criteria used in manhole design including, as minimum, material properties, loadings, load combinations, and dimensions assumed. Include certification from manufacturer that precast manhole design is in full accordance with ASTM C 478 and design criteria as established in Paragraph 2.01E of this Specification.

3. Frames, grates, rings, and covers

4. Materials to be used in fabricating drop connections

5. Materials to be used for pipe connections at manhole walls

6. Materials to be used for stubs and stub plugs, if required

7. Materials and procedures for corrosion-resistant liner and coatings, if required.

8. Plugs to be used for sanitary sewer hydrostatic testing

9. Manufacturer's data for pre-mix (bag) concrete, if used for channel inverts and benches

C. Seal submittal drawings by Professional Engineer registered in State of Texas.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 PRECAST CONCRETE MANHOLES

A. Provide manhole sections, base sections, and related components conforming to ASTM C 478. Provide base riser section with integral floors, unless shown otherwise. Provide adjustment rings which are standard components of manufacturer of manhole sections. Mark date of manufacture and name or trademark of manufacturer on inside of barrel.

B. Construct barrels for precast manholes from standard reinforced concrete manhole sections of diameter indicated on Drawings. Use various lengths of manhole sections in combination to provide correct height with fewest joints. Design wall sections for depth and loading conditions in Paragraph 2.01 E, with minimum thickness of 5 inches. Base section shall have minimum thickness of 12 inches under invert.

C. Provide tops to support HS-20 vehicle loading, and receive cast iron frame covers, as indicated on Drawings.

D. Where manholes larger than 48-inch diameter are indicated on Drawings, provide precast base sections with flat slab top precast sections used to transition to 48-inch diameter manhole access riser sections. Transition can be concentric or eccentric unless otherwise shown on Drawings. Locate transition to provide minimum of 7-foot head clearance from base to underside of transition unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

E. Design Loading Criteria: Manhole walls, transition slabs, cone tops, and manhole base slab shall be designed, by manufacturer, to requirements of ASTM C 478 for depth as shown on Drawings and to resist following loads.

1. AASHTO HS-20 vehicle loading applied to manhole cover and transmitted down to transition and base slabs

2. Unit soil weight of 120 pcf located above portions of manhole, including base slab projections

3. Lateral soil pressure based on saturated soil conditions producing an at-rest equivalent fluid pressure of 100 pcf

4. Internal liquid pressure based on unit weight of 63 pcf

5. Dead load of manhole sections fully supported by transition and base slabs

F. Design: Manhole walls, transition slabs, cone tops, and manhole base slab shall be designed according to requirements of ASTM C 478 and following:

1. Design additional reinforcing steel to transfer stresses at openings. Area of steel to be no less than shown on Drawings.

2. Wall loading conditions:

   a. Saturated soil pressure acting on empty manhole

   b. Manhole filled with liquid to a halfway depth as measured from invert to cover, with no balancing external soil pressure

3. Minimum clear distance between two wall penetrations shall be 12 inches or half diameter of smaller penetration, whichever is greater

G. Provide joints between sections with o-ring gaskets conforming to ASTM C 443.

H. When base is cast monolithic with portion of vertical section, extend reinforcing in vertical section into base.

I. Precast Concrete Base: Suitable cutouts or holes to receive pipe and connections. Lowest edge of holes or cutouts: For water line manhole, no less than 6 inches above inside surface of floor of base.

2.02 CONCRETE

A. Conform to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

B. Channel Inverts: Use 5 sack premix (bag) concrete or Class A concrete for inverts not integrally formed with manhole base, with minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi.

C. Cement Stabilized Sand Foundation: Provide cement stabilized sand foundation under base section in lieu of foundation slab, as shown on Drawings, conforming to requirements of Section 02321 - Cement Stabilized Sand.

D. Concrete Foundation: Provide Class A concrete with minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi for concrete foundation slab under manhole base section where indicated on Drawings.

2.03 REINFORCING STEEL

A. Conform to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

2.04 MORTAR

A. Conform to requirements of Section 04061 - Mortar.

2.05 MISCELLANEOUS METALS

A. Provide cast-iron frames, rings, and covers conforming to requirements of Section 02084 - Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers.

2.06 DROP CONNECTIONS AND STUBS

A. Provide drop connections and stubs conforming to same pipe material requirements used in main pipe, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

2.07 PIPE CONNECTIONS TO MANHOLE

A. Sanitary Sewers.

1. Provide resilient connectors conforming to requirements of ASTM C 923. Use the following materials for metallic mechanical devices as defined in ASTM C 923:

   a. External clamps: Type 304 stainless steel

   b. Internal, expandable clamps on standard manholes: Type 304 stainless steel, 11 gauge minimum.

   c. Internal, expandable clamps on corrosion-resistant manholes:

      1) Type 316 stainless steel, 11 gauge minimum

      2) Type 304 stainless steel, 11 gauge minimum, coated with minimum 16 mil fusion-bonded epoxy conforming to AWWA C 213

2. Where rigid joints between pipe and cast-in-place manhole base are specified or shown on Drawings, provide polyethylene-isoprene water-stop meeting physical property requirements of ASTM C 923, such as Press-Seal WS Series, or approved equal.

B. Storm Sewer Connections:

1. Provide watertight connections in accordance with ASTM C 923.

C. Water Lines

1. Where smooth exterior pipes, i.e., steel, ductile iron, or PVC pipes are connected to manhole base or barrel, seal space between pipe and manhole wall with assembly consisting of rubber gasket or links mechanically compressed to form a watertight barrier. Assemblies: Press-Wedge, Res-Seal, Thunderline Link-Seal, or approved equal. See Drawings for placement of assembly in manhole sections.

2. When connecting concrete or cement mortar coated steel pipes, or as option for connecting smooth exterior pipes to manhole base or barrel, space between pipe and manhole wall may be sealed with an assembly consisting of a stainless steel power sleeve, stainless steel take-up clamp and a rubber gasket. Take-up clamp: Minimum of 9/16 inch wide. Provide PSX positive seal gasket system by Press-Seal Gasket Corporation or approved equal.

2.08 SEALANT MATERIALS

A. Approved products in accordance with Section 01630 - Product Substitution Procedures.

B. Provide sealing materials between precast concrete adjustment ring and manhole cover frame, Adeka Ultraseal P201, or approved equal.

C. Provide approved external sealing material from Canusa Wrapid Seal manhole encapsulation system, or approved equal.

D. Provide Butyl Sealant: Provide Press-Seal EZ Stick, or equal, for HDPE rings.

2.09 CORROSION RESISTANT MANHOLE MATERIALS

A. Where corrosion-resistant manholes or PVC-lined manholes are indicated on Drawings, provide one of following:

1. PVC liner for precast cylindrical manhole section, base sections, and cone sections in accordance with Section 02427 - Plastic Liner for Large-Diameter Concrete Sewers and Structures.

2. Precast base sections, as specified above, lined with PVC or equal and fiberglass manholes in accordance with Section 02083 - Fiberglass Manholes.

2.10 BACKFILL MATERIALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

2.11 NON-SHRINK GROUT

A. Provide prepackaged, inorganic, flowable, non-gas-liberating, non-metallic, cement-based grout requiring only addition of water.

B. Meet requirements of ASTM C 1107 and have minimum 28-day compressive strength of 7000 psi.

2.12 VENT PIPES

A. Provide external vent pipes for manholes where indicated on Drawings.

B. Buried Vent Pipes: Provide 3 inch or 4 inch PVC DWV pipe conforming to ASTM D 2665. Alternatively, provide FRP pipe as specified for vent outlet assembly.

C. Vent Outlet Assembly: Provide vent outlet assembly as shown on Drawings, constructed of following specified materials:

1. FRP Pipe: Provide filament wound FRP conforming to ASTM D 2996 or centrifugally cast FRP conforming to ASTM D 2997. Seal cut ends in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

2. Joints and Fittings: Provide epoxy bodied fittings and join pipe to fittings with epoxy adhesive

3. Flanges: Provide socket-flange fittings for epoxy adhesive bonding to pipe ends where shown on Drawings. Meet bolt pattern and dimensions for ASME B 16.l, 125-pound flanges. Flange bolts shall be Type 304 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc coated, conforming to ASTM A 307, Class A or B.

4. Coating: Provide approved 2-component, aliphatic polyurethane coating using primer or tie coat recommended by manufacturer. Provide two or more coats to yield dry film thickness of at least 3 mils. Color shall be selected by Project Manager from manufacturer's standard colors.

2.13 PROHIBITED MATERIALS

A. Do not use brick masonry for construction of sanitary sewer manholes, including adjustment of manholes to grade. Use only specified materials listed above.

2.14 MANHOLE LADDER FOR WATERLINE MANHOLES

A. Manhole Ladder: Fiberglass with 300-lb rating at appropriate length; conform to requirements of Occupational Safety and Health Standards (OSHA), U.S. Department of Labor except where shown on Drawings

1. Use components, including rungs, made of fiberglass, fabricated with nylon or aluminum rivets and/or epoxy. Apply non-skid coating to ladder rungs. Mount ladder using manufacturer's recommended hardware.

2. Provide ladder as manufactured by Saf-Rail or approved equal. Locate ladder as shown on Drawings.

3. Fiberglass: Premium type polyester resin, reinforced with fiberglass; constructed to provide complete wetting of glass by resin; resistant to rot, fungi, bacterial growth and adverse effects of acids, alkalis and residential and industrial waste; yellow in color.

B. Provide approved petroleum-based tape encapsulating bolts in access manhole.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that lines and grades are correct.

B. Determine if subgrade, when scarified and recompacted, can be compacted to 95 percent of maximum Standard Proctor Density according to ASTM D 698 prior to placement of foundation material and base section. When proper density is not reached, moisture condition subgrade until that density is reached or treat as unstable subgrade.

C. Do not build manholes in ditches, swales, or drainage paths unless approved by Project Manager.

3.02 PLACEMENT

A. Install precast manholes to conform to locations and dimensions shown on Drawings.

B. Place sanitary and storm manholes at points of change in alignment, grade, size, pipe intersections, and end of sewer unless otherwise shown on Drawings.

3.03 MANHOLE BASE SECTIONS AND FOUNDATIONS

A. Place precast base on 12 inch thick (minimum) foundation of crushed stone wrapped in filter fabric, cement stabilized sand, or concrete foundation slab. Compact cement-sand in accordance with requirements of Section 02321 - Cement Stabilized Sand.

B. Unstable Subgrade Treatment: When unstable subgrade is encountered, notify Project Manager for examination of subgrade to determine if subgrade has heaved upwards after being excavated. When heaving has not occurred, over-excavate subgrade to allow for 24-inch-thick layer of crushed stone wrapped in filter fabric as foundation material under manhole base. When there is evidence of heaving, provide pile-supported concrete foundation, as detailed on Drawings, under manhole base.

3.04 PRECAST MANHOLE SECTIONS

A. Install sections, joints, and gaskets in accordance with manufacturer's printed recommendations.

B. Install precast adjustment rings above tops of cones or flat-top sections as required to adjust finished elevation and to support manhole frame.

C. Seal any lifting holes with non-shrink grout.

D. Where PVC liners are required, seal joints between sections in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

E. Place at least two precast concrete grade rings with thickness of 12 inches or less, under casting.

3.05 PIPE CONNECTIONS AT MANHOLES

A. Install approved resilient connectors at each pipe entering and exiting manholes in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1. Where smooth exterior pipes, i.e. steel, ductile iron or PVC pipes are connected to manhole base or barrel, space between pipe and manhole wall shall be sealed with an assembly consisting of rubber gaskets or links mechanically compressed to form watertight barrier. Assemblies: "Press-Wedge," "Res-Seal," "Thunderline Link-Seals," or approved equal. See Drawings for placement of assembly in manhole sections.

2. When connecting concrete or cement mortar coated steel pipes, or as an option for connecting smooth exterior pipes to manhole base or barrel, space between pipe and manhole wall may be sealed with an assembly consisting of stainless steel power sleeve, stainless steel take-up clamp and rubber gasket. Take-up clamp: Minimum of 9/16 inch wide. Provide PSX positive seal gasket system by Press-Seal Gasket Corporation or approved equal.

B. Grout storm sewer connections to manhole unless otherwise shown on Drawings. Grout pipe penetration in place on both inside and outside of manhole.

C. Ensure no concrete, cement stabilized sand, fill, or other rigid material is allowed to enter space between pipe and edge of wall opening at and around resilient connector on either interior or exterior of manhole. If necessary, fill space with compressible material to ensure full flexibility provided by resilient connector.

D. Where new manhole is constructed on existing sewer, rigid joint pipe may be used. Install waterstop gasket around existing pipe at center of cast-in-place wall. Join ends of split waterstop material at pipe springline using an adhesive recommended and supplied by waterstop manufacturer.

E. Test connection for watertight seal before backfilling.

3.06 INVERTS FOR SANITARY SEWERS

A. Construct invert channels to provide smooth flow transition waterway with no disruption of flow at pipe-manhole connections. Conform to following criteria:

1. Slope of invert bench: 1 inch per foot minimum; 1-1/2 inches per foot maximum

2. Depth of bench to invert:

   a. Pipes smaller than 15 inches: one-half of largest pipe diameter

   b. Pipes 15 to 24 inches: three-fourths of largest pipe diameter

   c. Pipes larger than 24 inches: equal to largest pipe diameter

3. Invert slope through manhole: 0.10 foot drop across manhole with smooth transition of invert through manhole, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

B. Form invert channels with concrete if not integral with manhole base section. For direction changes of mains, construct channels tangent to mains with maximum possible radius of curvature. Provide curves for side inlets and smooth invert fillets for flow transition between pipe inverts.

3.07 DROP CONNECTIONS FOR SANITARY SEWERS

A. Backfill drop assembly with crushed stone wrapped in filter fabric, cement stabilized sand, or Class A concrete to form solid mass. Extend cement stabilized sand or concrete encasement minimum of 4 inches outside bells.

B. Install drop connection when sewer line enters manhole higher than 24 inches above invert of manhole.

3.08 STUBS FOR FUTURE CONNECTIONS

A. In manholes, where future connections are indicated on Drawings, install resilient connectors and pipe stubs with approved watertight plugs.

3.09 MANHOLE FRAME AND ADJUSTMENT RINGS

A. Combine precast concrete or HDPE adjustment rings so elevation of installed casting cover matches pavement surface. Seal between concrete adjustment ring and precast top section with non-shrink grout; do not use mortar between adjustment rings. Apply latex-based bonding agent to precast concrete surfaces joined with non-shrink grout. Set cast iron frame

on adjustment ring in bed of approved sealant material. Install sealant bed consisting of two beads of sealant, each bead having minimum dimensions of 1/2-inch and 1/2-inch wide.

B. Wrap manhole frame and adjustment rings with external sealing material, minimum 3 inches beyond joint between ring and frame and adjustment rings and precast section.

C. For manholes in unpaved areas, set top of frame minimum of 6 inches above existing ground line unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. In unpaved areas, encase manhole frame in mortar or non-shrink grout placed flush with face of manhole ring and top edge of frame. Provide rounded corner around perimeter.

3.10 BACKFILL

A. Place and compact backfill materials in area of excavation surrounding manholes in accordance with requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. Provide embedment zone backfill material, as specified for adjacent utilities, from manhole foundation up to an elevation 12 inches over each pipe connected to manhole. Provide trench zone backfill, as specified for adjacent utilities, above embedment zone backfill.

B. Where rigid joints are used for connecting existing sewers to manhole, backfill under existing sewer up to springline of pipe with Class B concrete or flowable fill.

C. In unpaved areas, provide positive drainage away from manhole frame to natural grade. Provide minimum of 4 inches of topsoil conforming to requirements of Section 02911 - Topsoil. Seed in accordance with Section 02921 - Hydromulch Seeding. When shown on Drawings, sod disturbed areas in accordance with Section 02922 - Sodding.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Conduct leakage testing of sanitary sewer manholes in accordance with requirements of Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers.

3.12 PROTECTION

A. Protect manholes from damage until work has been accepted. Repair damage to manholes at no additional cost to City.

END OF SECTION

Section 02083

FIBERGLASS MANHOLES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Fiberglass manholes for unpaved areas placed on top of a precast base to form a manhole.

B. Fiberglass for construction in back lot easements placed on cast-in-place base.

C. Fiberglass manholes are not permitted underneath existing or proposed pavement.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for fiberglass manholes is on unit price basis for each manhole installed.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ANSI B 16.1 - Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings.

B. ASTM A 307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 psi Tensile Strength.

C. ASTM C 270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry.

D. ASTM C 1107 - Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Non-shrink).

E. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lb/ft^3 (600kN-m/m^3).

F. ASTM D 2665 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings.

G. ASTM D 2996 - Standard Specification for Filament-Wound “Fiberglass” (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe.

H. ASTM D 2997 - Standard Specification for Centrifugally Cast “Fiberglass” (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Pipe.

I. ASTM D 3753 - Standard Specification for Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Polyester Manholes and Wetwells.

J. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturer's data and details of following items for approval:

1. Design and fabrication details of fiberglass manhole components
2. Installation instruction for fiberglass manholes
3. Frames, grates, rings, and covers
4. Materials to be used in fabricating drop connections
5. Materials to be used for pipe connections at manhole walls
6. Materials to be used for stubs and stub plugs, if required
7. Plugs to be used for sanitary sewer hydrostatic testing
8. Manufacturer's data for pre-mix (bag) concrete if used for channel inverts and benches
9. Manufacturer's color chart for fiberglass vent pipe coatings.

C. Submittals listed in Section 02082, paragraph 1.04.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 FIBERGLASS MANHOLES AND BASE SECTIONS

A. Provide prefabricated fiberglass manholes which conform in shape, size, dimensions, and details shown on Drawings. Unless modified by Drawings, use manhole sections conforming to ASTM D 3753.

B. Provide products manufactured by companies listed on the City of Houston Standard Product List.

C. Mark date of manufacture and name or trademark of manufacturer in 1-inch high stenciled letters on inside of barrel.

D. Unless larger size is required, provide 48-inch-diameter barrel for fiberglass manholes. Provide wall section thickness for depth of manhole according to ASTM D 3753, but not less than 0.48 inches in thickness.

E. Provide fabricated reducer bonded at factory to form one continuous unit at top of manhole barrel to accept concrete grade rings and cast iron frame and cover. Reducer design shall be of sufficient strength to safely support HS-20 loading in accordance with AASHTO.

F. Provide manhole base of precast concrete conforming to Section 02082 - Precast Concrete Manholes, unless cast-in-place base is indicated on Drawings. For precast manhole bases, use an approved steel-reinforced design of sufficient strength to withstand imposed loads. Form base so that joint with fiberglass manhole barrel is sealed against leakage, as shown on Drawings.

2.02 C O N C R E T E

A. Conform to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

B. Channel Inverts: Use 5 sack premix (bag) concrete or Class A concrete for inverts not integrally formed with manhole base, with minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi.

C. Concrete Foundation: Use Class A concrete with minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi for cast-in-place base and for foundation slab under manhole base section where indicated on Drawings.

D. Cement Stabilized Sand Foundation: In lieu of foundation slab, provide cement stabilized sand foundation under base section, when shown on manhole Drawings, conforming to requirements of Section 02321 - Cement Stabilized Sand.

2.03 REINFORCING STEEL

A. Provide reinforcing steel conforming to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

2.04 MORTAR

A. Conform to requirements of Section 04061 - Mortar.

2.05 MISCELLANEOUS METALS

A. Provide cast-iron frames, rings, and covers conforming to requirements of Section 02084 - Frames, Grates, Rings, and Covers.

2.06 DROP CONNECTIONS AND STUBS

A. Provide drop connections and stubs conforming to same pipe material requirements used in main pipe, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

2.07 PIPE CONNECTIONS FOR SANITARY SEWERS

A. Provide pipe connections conforming to requirements of Section 02082 - Precast Concrete Manholes.

B. For drop, provide manufactured connector, such as Insert-a-Tee or equal, which provides positive seal between pipe and wall.

2.08 SEALANT MATERIALS

A. Provide sealing materials between precast concrete adjustment ring and manhole cover frame, such as Adeka Ultraseal P201, or approved equal.

B. Butyl Sealant: Provide Press-Seal EZ Stick, or equal, for HDPE rings.

2.09 BACKFILL MATERIALS

A. Backfill materials shall conform to requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

2.10 NON-SHRINK GROUT

A. Provide prepackaged, inorganic, flowable, non-gas-liberating, nonmetallic, cement-based grout requiring only addition of water.

B. Grout shall meet requirements of ASTM C 1107 and shall have minimum 28-day compressive strength of 7000 psi.

2.11 VENT PIPES

A. Provide external vent pipes for manholes, where indicated on Drawings.

B. Buried Vent Pipes: Provide 3-inch or 4-inch PVC DWV pipe conforming to ASTM D 2655. Alternately, provide FRP pipe as specified for vent outlet assembly.

C. Vent Outlet Assembly: Provide vent outlet assembly as shown on Drawings, constructed of following specified materials:

1. FRP Pipe: Provide filament-wound FRP conforming to ASTM D 2996 or centrifugally cast FRP conforming to ASTM D 2997. Seal cut ends in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations

2. Joints and Fittings: Provide epoxy bodied fittings and join pipe to fittings with epoxy adhesive, according to pipe manufacturer's instructions

3. Flanges: Provide socket-flange fittings for epoxy adhesive bonding to pipe ends where shown on Drawings. Flanges shall meet bolt pattern and dimensions for ANSI B16.l, 125-pound flanges. Flange bolts shall be hot-dip zinc coated, conforming to ASTM A 307, Class A or B.

4. Coating: Provide 2-component, aliphatic polyurethane coating using primer or tie coat recommended by manufacturer. Provide two or more coats to yield dry film thickness of at least 3 mils. Provide Amershield, Tnemec 74, or equal. Color shall be selected by Project Manager from manufacturer's standard colors.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that lines and grades are correct.

B. Determine if subgrade, when scarified and recompacted, can be compacted to 95 percent of maximum Standard Proctor Density according to ASTM D 698 prior to placement of foundation material and base section. When it cannot be compacted to that density, moisture condition subgrade until that density can be reached or treat as an unstable subgrade.

C. Do not build manholes in ditches, swales, or drainage paths unless approved by Project Manager.

3.02 PLACEMENT

A. Install fiberglass manholes to conform to locations and dimensions shown on Drawings. Do not install underneath existing or proposed pavement.

B. Place sanitary sewer manholes at points of change of alignment, grade, size, pipe intersections, and end of sewer.

3.03 MANHOLE BASE SECTIONS AND FOUNDATIONS

A. Place base section and foundation as required in Section 02082 - Precast Concrete Manholes.

3.04 CAST-IN-PLACE FOUNDATION

A. Where Drawings indicate cast-in-place manhole base, place concrete as shown on Drawings on 4-inch (minimum) layer of either crushed stone, cement stabilized sand, or seal slab. When unstable subgrade is identified, over-excavate subgrade to allow for placement of 12-inch thick layer of crushed stone wrapped in filter fabric.

3.05 MANHOLE BARREL

A. Lower manhole barrel onto base section. Seal with manufacturer's gasket or approved sealant. Wrap joint with external sealing material, minimum 12-inch width.

B. Where cast-in-place base is used, support manhole barrel in place and brace it from sides of excavation to prevent any movement of barrel during concrete placement and while concrete is setting. Provide minimum clearance between reinforcing steel and manhole barrel bottom as shown on Drawings. Do not support manhole barrel on reinforcing steel. Place bead of water swelling sealant around inside of barrel near bottom, as shown on Drawings, to form seal.

3.06 PIPE CONNECTIONS AT PRECAST MANHOLE BASE

A. Install approved resilient connectors at each pipe entering and exiting sanitary sewer manholes in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Ensure that no concrete, cement stabilized sand, fill, or other solid material is allowed to enter space between pipe and edge of wall opening at and around resilient connector on either interior or exterior of manhole. When necessary, fill space with compressible material to ensure full flexibility provided by resilient connector.

C. Test connection for watertight seal before backfilling.

3.07 PIPE CONNECTIONS AT CAST-IN PLACE BASE

A. Cut manhole barrel for pipe penetrations following curvature of pipe and with maximum of 1-inch clearance. Seal cut edges with resin. Hole may be circular or cutout with semi-circular top which extends to bottom of barrel.

B. Place continuous bead of water swelling sealant, as shown on Drawings, around pipe penetrations on interior of manhole barrel. Roughen surface of fiberglass prior to placement to improve bond with sealant. Allow sealant to completely cure before placing concrete against it.

C. Extend pipe entering manhole at least 8 inches into manhole. Fit pipes with neoprene water-stop gasket seal placed tightly around pipe using stainless steel clamp. Alternately, pipes may have continuous bead of water swelling sealant, as detailed on Drawings, placed around pipe circumference.

D. When forming invert surface in bottom of manhole, mound concrete around pipe penetrations so that water swelling sealant beads and neoprene water-stop gasket have minimum 2 inches of concrete cover.

E. Test connection for watertight seal before backfilling.

3.08 INVERTS FOR SANITARY SEWERS

A. Construct invert channels as required in Section 02082 - Precast Concrete Manholes.

3.09 DROP CONNECTIONS FOR SANITARY SEWERS

A. Backfill drop assembly with crushed stone wrapped in filter fabric, cement stabilized sand, or Class A concrete to form solid mass. Extend cement stabilized sand or concrete outside of bells minimum 4 inches.

B. Install drop connection when sewer line enters manhole higher than 24 inches above invert of manhole.

C. At drop pipe connections through fiberglass barrel, cut circular hole sized to requirements of manufactured connector. Seal cut edge with resin. Install watertight connector according to manufacturer's recommendations.

3.10 STUBS FOR FUTURE CONNECTIONS

A. Where future connections are indicated on Drawings, install resilient connectors and pipe stubs with approved watertight plugs in manholes.

B. At cast-in-place base, where future connections are indicated on Drawings, install section of pipe extending no further than 12 inches from edge of foundation, ending in bell and provided with rubber-gasket watertight plug.

3.11 ADJUSTMENT RINGS AND FRAME

A. Combine precast concrete or HDPE adjustment rings so that elevation of installed casting cover matches pavement surface. Do not load manhole except on load bearing shoulder of manhole. Seal between adjustment ring and fiberglass manhole with approved sealant material. Apply a latex bonding agent to precast concrete surface and join with non-shrink grout. Set cast iron frame on adjustment ring in bed of approved sealant material. Install sealant bed consisting of two beads on sealant, each bead having minimum dimensions of 1/2-inch and 1/2-inch wide.

B. Wrap manhole frame and adjustment rings with external sealing material, minimum 3 inches beyond joint between ring and frame and ring and precast section.

C. Set cast iron frame on top of cone or adjustment rings using water swelling sealant materials and adjust elevation of casting cover to match pavement surface. For manholes in unpaved areas, set top frame minimum of 6 inches above existing ground line unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

3.12 BACKFILL

A. After leakage testing, place and compact backfill material in area of excavation surrounding manholes in accordance with requirements of Section 02317- Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. Use embedment zone backfill material, as specified for adjacent utilities, from manhole foundation up to elevation 12-inches over each pipe connected to manhole. Provide trench zone backfill, as specified for adjacent utilities, above embedment zone backfill.

B. In unpaved areas, provide positive drainage away from manhole frame to natural grade. Provide minimum of 4-inches of topsoil conforming to requirements of Section 02911 - Topsoil and seed in accordance with Section 02921 - Hydro-mulch Seeding. When shown on Drawings, sod disturbed areas in accordance with Section 02922- Sodding.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Conduct leakage testing of sanitary sewer manholes in accordance with requirements of Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers.

3.14 PROTECTION

A. Protect manholes from damage until work has been finally accepted. Repair damage to manholes at no additional cost to City.

END OF SECTION

Section 02084

FRAMES, GRATES, RINGS, AND COVERS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Iron castings for manhole frames and covers, inlet frames and grates, catch basin frames and grates, meter vault frames and covers, adjustment rings, and extensions.

B. Ring grates.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No payment will be made for frames, grates, rings, covers, and seals under this Section. Include payment in unit price for related item.

2. Payment to rack over existing manhole is on a unit price basis for each manhole.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AASHTO - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials Standard Specification for Highway Bridges

B. ASTM A 48 - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings

C. ASTM A 615 - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

D. AWS - D 12.1 Welding Reinforcing Steel.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit copies of manufacturer's specifications, load tables, dimension diagrams, anchor details, and installation instructions.

C. Submit shop drawings for fabrication and installation of casting assemblies that are not included in Drawings or standard City of Houston details. Include plans, elevations, sections and connection details. Show anchorage and accessory items. Include setting drawings for location and installation of castings and anchorage devices.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 CASTINGS

A. Use castings for frames, grates, rings and covers conforming to ASTM A 48, Class 35B. Provide locking covers if indicated on Drawings.

B. Use clean castings capable of withstanding application of AASHTO M306- 40,000 pound proof loading without detrimental permanent deformation.

C. Fabricate castings to conform to shapes, dimensions, and with wording or logos shown on Drawings. Standard dimensions for manhole covers are 32 inches in diameter.

D. Use clean castings, free from blowholes and other surface imperfections. Use clean and symmetrical cast holes in covers, free of plugs.

2.02 BEARING SURFACES

A. Machine bearing surfaces between covers or grates and their respective frames so that even bearing is provided for position in which casting may be seated in frame.

2.03 SPECIAL FRAMES AND COVERS

A. Where indicated on Drawings, provide watertight manhole frames and covers with minimum of four bolts and gasket designed to seal cover to frame. Supply approved watertight manhole covers and frames.

B. Where shown on Drawing, provide manhole frames and covers with 48 inch diameter clear opening, with inner cover for 22 inch diameter clear opening. Provide approved inner cover with pattern shown on Drawings.

2.04 FINISH

A. Unless otherwise specified, uncoated coat iron.

2.05 FABRICATED RING GRATES

A. Fabricate ring grates from reinforcing steel conforming to ASTM A 615.

B. Conform to welds connecting bars to AWS D 12.1.

2.06 ADJUSTMENT RINGS FOR ASPHALT OVERLAYS

A. Use castings conforming Section 2.01.

B. One piece casting with dimensions to fit frame and cover.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install castings according to approved shop drawings, instructions in related specifications, and applicable directions from manufacturer's printed materials.

B. Set castings accurately at required locations to proper alignment and elevation. Keep castings plumb, level, true, and free of rack. Measure location accurately from established lines and grades. Brace or anchor frames temporarily in form work until permanently set.

C. Fabricate ring grates in accordance with City of Houston standard detail, “Ring Grate for Open End of 18 Inch to 72 Inch Stubs to Ditch”. Set in mortar in mouth of pipe bell.

D. Install adjustment rings in existing frames with clean bearing surfaces that are free from rocking.

END OF SECTION

Section 02085

VALVE BOXES, METER BOXES, AND METER VAULTS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Valve boxes for water service.

B. Meter boxes for water service.

C. Meter vaults for water service.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for valve boxes under this Section. Include payment in unit price for Section 02511 - Water Lines.

2. No separate payment will be made for meter boxes under this Section. Include payment in unit price for Section 02512 - Water Tap and Service Line Installation.

3. Payment for each size of meter vaults is on unit price basis per vault. Payment will be made for each vault installed, regardless of depth.

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM A 48 - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings.

B. ASTM D 256 - Standard Test Methods for Determining the Izod Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastics.

C. ASTM D 638 - Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics.

D. ASTM D 648 - Standard Test Method for Deflection Temperature of Plastics Under Flexural Load in the Edgewise Position.

E. ASTM D 790 - Standard Test Methods for Flexural Properties of Unreinforced and Reinforced Plastics and Electrical Insulating Materials.

F. ASTM D 2240 - Standard Test Method for Rubber Property-Durometer Hardness.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturers' product data for following items for approval:

1. Each type of valve box and lid.

2. Each type of meter box and cover.

3. Each type of meter vault frame and cover.

C. Submit design calculations and shop drawings for precast vault elements, sealed by an Engineer registered in State of Texas.

D. Submit shop drawings for cast-in-place meter vaults for approval if proposed construction varies from Drawings.

E. Submit manufacturer's certification that plastic meter boxes meet requirements of Paragraph 2.05, Plastic Meter Boxes.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 VALVE BOXES

A. Provide approved Type A, cast-iron/ductile-iron, slide-type, valve boxes. Design of valve box shall minimize stresses on valve imposed by loads on box lid.

B. Cast letter "W" into lid, 1/2 inch in height and raised 3/32 inch, for valves serving potable water lines.

C. Unless otherwise specified, uncoated cast iron.

D. Riser Pipe.

1. Provide 6-inch PVC, Class 150, DR 18, riser pipes in accordance with Section 02506 - Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe or

2. 6-inch ductile-iron, thickness Class 51 riser pipes in accordance with Section 02501 – Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings.

3. Provide single section of pipe.

E. Concrete for valve box placement:

1. For locations in new concrete pavement, provide strength and mix design of new pavement.

2. For other locations, provide concrete for sidewalks conforming to requirements of Section 02751 - Concrete Paving.

2.02 METER BOXES

A. Provide meter boxes for 5/8-inch through 1-inch meters of the following materials:

1. Non-traffic bearing locations: Cast iron, concrete or plastic.

2. Traffic bearing locations: Cast iron.

B. Provide meter boxes for 1 1/2-inch and 2-inch meters of cast iron.

C. Provide meter box with reading lid. Provide lids with spring-type latching devices. Lids shall contain sufficient metal that meter box can be easily located with metal detector. Cast words “CITY OF HOUSTON” and "WATER METER" into lid with letters of 1/2-inch height and raised 3/32 inch.

D. Meter box dimensions shall conform to the following approximate dimensions:

1. Length: At top – 15 1/2 inches; at bottom 20 inches

2. Width: At top – 12 1/2 inches; at bottom 14 3/4 inches

3. Height: 12 inches

E. Extensions: Meter box extensions 3 inches and 6 inches in height shall be available from manufacturer as standard item.

2.03 CAST-IRON METER BOXES

A. Cast-Iron Boxes: Clean and free from sand blow-holes or other defects conforming to requirements of ASTM A 48, Class 30B. Bearing surfaces shall be machined so that covers seat evenly in frames.

B. Boxes and lids shall have dipped, coal-tar-pitch, varnish finish.

C. Provide lock-type meter boxes when required by Drawings. Lock mechanisms shall work with ease.

2.04 CONCRETE METER BOXES

A. Concrete Meter Boxes: Made of Class A concrete, with minimum 4000 psi compressive strength, conforming to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction. Construct to dimensions shown on Drawings.

B. Castings: Free from fractures, large or deep cracks, blisters or surface roughness or any other defects that may affect serviceability.

2.05 PLASTIC METER BOXES

A. Plastic Meter Boxes: Made of high density polyethylene conforming to the following ASTM standards:

ASTM	REQUIREMENT
D 256	Impact Strength = 1.9 ft.-lb./inch (Izod, Notched)
D 256	Impact Strength = 6.4 ft.-lb./inch (Izod, Un-Notched)
D 638	Tensile Strength (2.0 min.) = 3400 psi
D 648	Deflection Temperature = 170 degrees F
D 2240	Shore D, Hardness, 55-65 Impact Strength, Falling Dart Method, 160 inch-lb.
D 790	Flexural Modulus = 90,000 psi

B. Meter boxes shall meet the following test requirements:

1. Static Load: Not less than 2500 pounds using 6-inch disc with direct compression exerted at center of top of meter box with solid plastic lid.

2. Deflection: Not less than 1000 pounds load required to deflect top edge of meter box 1/8- inch.

C. Meter box body, without lid, shall weigh approximately 7 pounds.

2.06 METER VAULTS

A. Meter vaults may be constructed of precast concrete, cast-in-place concrete, or common brick masonry unless a specific type of construction is required by Drawings.

B. Concrete for Meter Vaults: Class A concrete, conforming to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction with minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi at 28 days.

C. Reinforcing steel for meter vaults: Conform to requirements of Section 03315 Concrete for Utility Construction.

D. Grates and Covers: Conform to requirements of Section 02084 - Frames, Grates, Rings, and Covers.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Obtain approval from Project Manager for location of meter vault.

B. Verify lines and grade are correct.

C. Verify compacted subgrade will support loads imposed by vaults.

3.02 VALVE BOXES

A. Install riser pipe with suitable length for depth of cover indicated on Drawings or to accommodate actual finish grade.

1. Install with bell on top of valve

2. Place riser pipe in plumb, vertical position

B. Install valve box and riser piping plumbed in a vertical position. Provide 6-inches telescoping freeboard space between riser pipe top butt end, and interior contact flange of valve box, for vertical movement damping. End of pipe resting on valve shall be notched out sufficiently to provide a snug fit around the valve bonnet and to center valve inside of pipe.

C. Set, align, and adjust valve box so that lid is level with final grade.

D. Paint covers of new valve boxes in fluorescent orange when installed. After completion and acceptance by City, repaint covers black.

3.03 METER BOXES

A. Install cast iron or plastic boxes in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Construct concrete meter boxes to dimensions shown on Drawings.

C. Adjust top of meter boxes to conform to cover elevations specified in Paragraph 3.05, Frame and Cover for Meter Vaults.

D. Do not locate under paved areas unless approved by Project Manager. Use approved traffic-type box with cast iron lid when meter must be located in paved areas.

3.04 METER VAULTS

A. Construct concrete meter vaults to dimensions shown on Drawings. Do not cast in presence of water. Make bottom uniform. Verify lines and grades are correct and compacted subgrade will support loads imposed by vaults.

B. Precast Meter Vaults:

1. Install precast vaults in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Set level on a minimum 3-inch-thick bed of sand conforming to requirements of Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials.

2. Seal lifting holes with cement-sand mortar or non-shrink grout.

C. Meter Vault Floor Slab:

1. Construct floor slabs of 6-inch-thick reinforced concrete. Slope floor 1/4 inch per foot toward sump. Make sump 12 inches in diameter, or 12 inches square, and 4 inches deep, unless other dimensions are required by Drawings. Install dowels at maximum of 18 inches, center-to-center for keying walls to floor slab.

2. Precast floor slab elements may be used for precast vault construction

D. Cast-in-Place Meter Vault Walls:

1. Key walls to floor slab and form to dimensions shown on Drawings. Minimum wall thickness shall be 4 inches.

2. Cast walls monolithically. One cold joint will be allowed when vault depth exceeds 12 feet.

3. Set frame for cover in concrete

3.05 FRAME AND COVER FOR METER VAULTS

A. Set cast iron frame in a mortar bed and adjust elevation of cover as follows:

1. In unpaved areas, set top of meter box or meter vault cover 2 to 3 inches above natural grade

2. In paved areas, set top of meter box or meter vault cover flush with adjacent concrete but no higher than 1/2-inch

3.06 BACKFILL

A. Provide bank run sand in accordance with Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials and backfill and compact in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

B. In unpaved areas, slope backfill around meter boxes and vaults to provide a uniform slope 1-to-5 slope from top to natural grade.

C. In paved areas, slope concrete down from meter box or vault to meet adjacent paved area.

END OF SECTION

Section 02086

ADJUSTING MANHOLES, INLETS, AND VALVE BOXES TO GRADE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Adjusting elevation of manholes, inlets, and valve boxes to new grades.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for adjusting inlets and valve boxes to grade for new construction under this Section. Include payment in unit price for related item.

2. Payment for adjusting existing manhole and frame and cover to new grade is on a unit price basis for each manhole and frame and cover.

3. Payment for adjusting existing utility structures to grade is on unit price basis for each:

   a. Inlet adjusted

   b. Valve box adjusted

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Provide concrete, conforming to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

B. Provide precast concrete manhole sections and adjustment rings conforming to requirements of Section 02082 - Precast Concrete Manholes.

C. Provide mortar conforming to requirements of Section 04061 - Mortar.

2.02 CAST-IRON MATERIALS

A. Provide cast-iron materials conforming to requirements of Section 02084 - Frames, Grates, Rings, and Covers.

2.03 PIPING MATERIALS

A. For riser pipes and fittings, refer to Sections 02501 - Ductile-iron Pipe and Fittings through 02528 - Polyethylene Wrap.

2.04 MASONRY MATERIALS FOR STORM SEWER MANHOLES AND INLETS

A. Provide brick masonry units conforming to the requirements of Section 04210 - Brick Masonry for Utility Construction.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine existing structure, valve box, frame and cover or inlet box, frame and cover or inlet, piping and connections for damage or defects affecting adjustment to grade. Report damage or defects to Project Manger.

3.02 ESTABLISHING GRADE

A. Coordinate grade related items with existing grade and finished grade or paving, and relate to established bench mark or reference line.

3.03 ADJUSTING MANHOLES AND INLETS

A. Rebuild adjustment portion of manhole or inlet by adding or removing Adjustments. Follow procedures for the type of structure being adjusted detailed in the following Sections:

1. Section 02081 - Cast-In-Place Concrete Manholes
2. Section 02082 - Precast Concrete Manholes
3. Section 02083 - Fiberglass Manholes
4. Section 02087 - Brick Manholes for Storm Sewers
5. Section 02632 - Cast-In-Place Inlets, Headwalls and Wingwalls
6. Section 02633 - Precast Concrete, Inlets, Headwalls and Wingwalls

B. Salvage and reuse cast-iron frame and cover or grate.

C. Protect or block off manhole or inlet bottom using wood forms shaped to fit so that no debris or soil falls to bottom during adjustment.

D. Verify that manholes and inlets are free of visible leaks as result of reconstruction. Repair leaks in manner subject to Project Manger's approval.

3.04 ADJUSTING VALVE BOXES

A. Salvage and reuse valve box and surrounding concrete block as approved by Project Manger. No separate pay.

B. Remove and replace 6 inch ductile iron riser pipe with suitable length for depth of cover required to establish adjusted elevation to accommodate actual finish grade.

C. Reinstall valve box and riser piping plumbed in vertical position. Provide minimum 6 inches telescoping freeboard space between riser pipe top butt end and interior contact flange of valve box for vertical movement damping.

D. After valve box has been set, aligned, and adjusted so that top lid is level with final grade.

3.05 BACKFILL AND GRADING

A. Backfill area of excavation surrounding each adjusted manhole, inlet, and valve box and compact according to requirements of Section 02316 - Excavation and Backfill for Structures.

B. Grade ground surface to drain away from each manhole and valve box. Place earth fill around manholes to level of upper rim of manhole frame. Place earth fill around valve box concrete slab.

C. In unpaved areas, grade surface at uniform slope of 1 to 5 from manhole frame to natural grade. Provide minimum of 4 inches of topsoil conforming to requirements of Section 02911 - Topsoil. Provide seeding in accordance with Section 02921 - Hydro-mulch Seeding, or if sodding in accordance with Section 02922 - Sodding.

END OF SECTION

Section 02087

BRICK MANHOLE FOR STORM SEWERS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Brick masonry Work in utility construction for permanent or temporary installation of storm water manholes or vaults.

B. Brick masonry in repair and rehabilitation of storm water lines and associated structures.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for brick manholes is on a unit price basis for each manhole installed.

2. No payment will be made for brick masonry work for repair and rehabilitation of storm water lines. Include payment in unit price for applicable utility structure section.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for Unit Price Procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). When Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft^3 (600kN-m/m^3)).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit certifications required by Section 04061 - Mortar.

C. Submit certifications required by Section 04210 - Brick Masonry Utility Construction.

1.05 HANDLING AND STORAGE

A. Handle and store brick to prevent damage.

B. Store brick and mortar mix off ground and dry. Cover mortar mix to protect from weather.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 BRICK MASONRY UNITS

A. Manhole bricks not exposed to flow.

1. Clay and shale brick masonry units conforming to requirements of Section 04210 - Brick Masonry for Utility Construction.

2. Concrete brick masonry units conforming to requirements of Section 04210 - Brick Masonry for Utility Construction.

B. Sewer brick. Clay and shale brick masonry units conforming to requirements of Section 04210 - Brick Masonry for Utility Construction.

2.02 MORTAR

A. Conform to requirements of Section 04061 - Mortar.

2.03 CONCRETE AND REINFORCING STEEL

A. Conform to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

B. Provide Class A concrete with minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify lines and grades are correct.

B. Determine if subgrade, when scarified and recompacted, can be compacted to be 95 percent of maximum Standard Proctor Density according to ASTM D 698 prior to placement of foundation material and base section. When it cannot be compacted to that density, moisture condition subgrade until that density is reached or treat as unstable subgrade.

C. Do not build manholes in ditches, swales, or drainage paths unless approved by Project Manger.

3.02 MANHOLES

A. Construct manholes to dimensions shown on Drawings. Commence construction as soon as possible after pipes are laid. On monolithic sewers, construct manholes at same time sewer is being constructed.

B. Unstable Subgrade Treatment: When unstable subgrade is encountered, notify Project Manger for examination of subgrade to determine if subgrade has heaved upwards after being excavated. When heaving has not occurred, over-excavate subgrade to allow for 24-inch-thick layer of crushed stone wrapped in filter fabric as foundation material under manhole base. When there is evidence of heaving, provide pile-supported concrete foundation, as detailed on Drawings, under manhole base.

C. Construct manhole on concrete slab in accordance with requirements of Section 04210 - Brick Masonry for Utility Construction.

3.03 PIPE CONNECTIONS

A. Use non-shrink grout to seal pipe connections to manholes unless otherwise shown on Drawings.

3.04 FRAME AND COVER

A. Install frame and cover in accordance with Section 02084 - Frame, Grates, Rings, and Covers.

3.05 BACKFILL

A. Place and compact backfill materials in area of excavation surrounding manholes in accordance with requirements of Section 02316 - Excavation and Backfill for Structures. Use embedment zone backfill material for adjacent utilities, as shown in City of Houston Standard Details over each pipe connected to manhole. Provide trench zone backfill, as specified for adjacent utilities, above embedment zone backfill.

B. Backfill under existing sewer up to springline of pipe with Class B concrete or flowable fill in accordance with Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

C. In unpaved areas, provide positive drainage away from manhole frame to natural grade. Provide minimum of 4 inches of topsoil conforming to requirements of Section 02911 - Topsoil. Seed in accordance with Section 02921 - Hydromulch Seeding, or sod disturbed areas in accordance with Section 02922 - Sodding.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Visually inspect manhole for leakage.

3.07 PROTECTION

A. Protect manholes from damage until subsequent work has been accepted. Repair or replace damaged elements of manholes at no additional cost to City.

END OF SECTION

Section 02221

REMOVING EXISTING PAVEMENTS AND STRUCTURES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Removing concrete paving, asphaltic concrete pavement, brick pavement and base courses.

B. Removing concrete curbs, concrete curbs and gutters, sidewalks and driveways.

C. Removing pipe culverts, sewers, and sewer leads.

D. Removing existing inlets and manholes.

E. Removing and disposing of pre-stressed concrete beams and drill shafts.

F. Removing miscellaneous structures of concrete or masonry.

G. Removing existing bridge.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for removing and disposing of asphaltic surfacing with or without base, regardless of thickness encountered, is on square yard basis measured between lips of gutters.

2. Payment for removing and disposing of reinforced concrete pavement, with or without asphalt overlay, regardless of its thickness, is on square yard basis measured from back-to-back of curbs. Payment includes concrete pavement, esplanade curbs, curbs and gutters, and paving headers.

3. Payment for removing and disposing of cement stabilized shell base course, with or without asphaltic surfacing, is on square yard basis.

4. Payment for removing and disposing of concrete sidewalks and driveways is on square yard basis.

5. Payment for removing asphaltic surface course only is on a square yard basis paid under item description "Asphalt Surface Mill." This includes removal of existing surface to pavement base.

6. Payment for removing and disposing of miscellaneous concrete and masonry is on cubic yard basis of structure in place.

7. Payment for removing and disposing of pipe culverts, sewers, and sewer leads is on linear foot basis for each diameter and each material type of pipe removed.

8. Payment for removing and disposing of existing inlets is on unit price basis for each inlet removed.

9. Payment for removing and disposing of prestressed concrete piles and drill shafts is on linear foot basis.

10. Payment for removing and disposing of existing bridge, including piles and abutments to minimum of 4 feet below ground level, is on a lump sum basis.

11. Payment for removing and disposing of existing manholes is on unit price basis for each manhole removed.

12. No payment for saw cutting of pavement, curbs, or curbs and gutters will be made under this section. Include cost of such work in unit prices for items listed in bid form requiring saw cutting.

13. No payment will be made for work outside maximum payment limits indicated on Drawings, or for pavements or structures removed for Contractor's convenience.

    a. For utility installations: Match actual pavement replaced but no greater than maximum pavement replacement limits shown on Drawings. Limits of measurement will be as shown on Street Cut Pavement Replacement Rules.

14. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to applicable codes for disposal of debris.

B. Coordinate removal work with utility companies.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Obtain advance approval from Project Manager for dimensions and limits of removal work.

B. Identify known utilities below grade. Stake and flag locations.

3.02 PROTECTION

A. Protect following from damage or displacement:

1. Adjacent public and private property.

2. Trees, plants, and other landscape features designated to remain.

3. Utilities designated to remain.

4. Pavement and utility structures designated to remain.

5. Bench marks, monuments, and existing structures designated to remain.

3.03 REMOVALS

A. Remove pavements and structures by methods that will not damage underground utilities. Do not use drop hammer near existing underground utilities.

B. Minimize amount of earth loaded during removal operations.

C. Where existing pavement is to remain, make straight saw cuts in existing pavement to provide clean breaks prior to removal. Do not break concrete pavement or base with drop hammer unless concrete or base has been saw cut to minimum depth of 2 inches.

D. When street and driveway saw cut location is greater than one-half of pavement lane width, remove pavement for full lane width or to nearest longitudinal joint as directed by Project Manager.

E. Remove sidewalks and curbs to nearest existing dummy, expansion, or construction joint.

F. Where existing end of pipe culvert or end of sewer is to remain, install 8-inch-thick masonry plug in pipe end prior to backfill in accordance with requirements of Section 02316 - Excavation and Backfill for Structures.

3.04 BACKFILL

A. Backfill of removal areas shall be in accordance with requirements of Section 02316 - Excavation and Backfill for Structures.

3.05 DISPOSAL

A. Inlet frames, grates, and plates; and manhole frames and covers, may remain City property. Disposal shall be in accordance with requirements of Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

B. Remove from site, debris resulting from work under this section in accordance with requirements of Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

END OF SECTION

Section 02222

ABANDONMENT OF SEWERS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Abandonment in place of existing sewers, junction structures, manholes, and force mains.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for grout fill and abandonment of existing sewers, including boxes and elliptical shaped sewers, is on linear foot basis for each diameter of sewer being abandoned. Measurement will be along centerline of sewer from centerline to centerline of manholes.

2. Payment for grout fill and abandonment of sewer manholes or junction structure is by each manhole or junction structure abandoned in conformance with this Section.

3. Payment will be full compensation for all material, equipment, and labor required for complete abandonment grouting, including air venting, testing, temporary plugs, PVC pipes and incidentals.

4. No separate payment will be made for plugging and abandoning sewer force mains. Include cost of such abandonment in related work.

5. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

6. Acceptability of grout material is based on achieving average strength within range of 75 to 150 psi as defined in Paragraph 2.01B.1. Grout that is out of range after placement may be accepted with price adjustment of 1.0 percent price deduction for each psi average compressive strength below 75 psi and 0.5 percent price deduction for each psi average compressive strength above 150 psi, as applicable to material volume represented by test series. Shrinkage in grout material placements shall be remedied by Contractor according to Paragraph 3.04H without additional compensation.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Abandonment. Sewer abandonment consists of demolition and removal of portion of manholes existing within specified depth of surface, and abandonment in place of sewer lines and manholes as specified in this Section.

B. Flowable Fill. Flowable fill (abandonment grout) shall be controlled low-strength material consisting of fluid mixture of cement, fly ash, aggregate, water and with admixtures as necessary to provide workable properties. Placement of flowable fill may be by grouting techniques in sewer pipes or other restricted areas, or as mass placement by chutes or tremie methods in unrestricted locations with open access. Long-term hardened strength shall be within specified range.

C. Ballast. Large aggregate either replaced with voids subsequently filled with flowable fill injected by grouting method; or in areas with open access, placed individually and sequentially at same time as flowable fill placement.

D. Backgrouting. Secondary stage pressure grouting to ensure that voids have been filled within abandoned sewer. Backgrouting will only be required at critical locations indicated on Drawings or if there is evidence of incomplete flowable fill placements.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.

B. ASTM C 494 - Standard Specification for Chemical Admixture for Concrete.

C. ASTM C 618 - Standard Specification for Fly Ash and Raw or Calcinated Natural Pozzolan for use as Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete.

D. ASTM C 937 - Standard Specification for Grout Fluidifier for Pre-placed Aggregate Concrete.

E. ASTM C 940 - Standard Test Method for Expansion and Bleeding of Freshly Mixed Grout for Replaced Aggregate Concrete in the Laboratory.

F. ASTM C 1017 - Standard Specification for Chemical Admixture for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete.

G. ASTM C 1107 - Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Non-shrink)

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Flowable fill mix design report:

1. Flowable fill type and production method. Describe if fill will be mixed to final proportions and consistency in batch plant or if constituents will be added in transit mixer at placement location.

2. Use of ballast. Provide percentage of ballast of total placement and size limits for ballast if fill is intended to be used with ballast.

3. Aggregate gradation of fill. Aggregate gradation of mix (excluding ballast) shall be used as pilot curve for quality control during production.

4. Fill mix constituents and proportions including materials by weight and volume, and air content but excluding ballast. Give types and amounts of admixtures including air entrainment or air generating compounds.

5. Fill densities and viscosities, including wet density at point of placement.

6. Initial time of set.

7. Bleeding and shrinkage.

8. Compressive strength.

C. Technical information for equipment and operational procedures including projected slurry injection rate, grout pressure, method of controlling grout pressure, bulkhead and vent design, and number of stages of grout application.

D. Experience record for proposed crew, showing minimum of 100 cubic yards of flowable fill placed using proposed or similar equipment and methods.

E. At least 60 days prior to commencing abandonment activities, submit plan for abandonment, describing proposed grouting sequence, bypass pumping requirements and plugging, if any, and other information pertinent to completion of work.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 FLOWABLE FILL

A. Design Mix Criteria. Provide design of one or more mixes to meet design criteria and conditions for placement. Present information required by Paragraph 1.05B in mix design report including following:

1. Cement: ASTM C 150 Type I or II. Volume and weight per cubic yard of fill. Provide minimum cement content of 100 pounds per cubic yard.

2. Fly ash: ASTM C 618 Class C or F. Volume and weight per cubic yard of fill. Provide minimum Fly ash content of 200 pounds per cubic yard.

3. Potable water: Volume and weight per cubic yard of fill. Amount of water determined by mix design testing.

4. Aggregate gradation: 100 percent passing 3/8-inch sieve and not more than 10 percent passing No. 200 sieve. Mix design report shall define pilot gradation based on following sieve sizes 3/8-inch, Nos. 4, 8, 16, 30, 50, 100, and 200. Do not deviate from pilot gradation by more than plus or minus 10 percentage points for any sieve for production material.

5. Aggregate source material: Screened or crushed aggregate, pit or bank run fine gravels or sand, or crushed concrete. If crushed concrete is used, add at least 30 percent of natural aggregate to provide workability.

6. Admixtures: Use admixtures meeting ASTM C 494 and ASTM C 1017 as needed to improve pumpability, to control time of set, and reduce bleeding.

7. Fluidifier: Use fluidifier meeting ASTM C 937 as necessary to hold solid constituents in suspension. Add shrinkage compensator if necessary.

8. Performance additive: Use flowable fill performance additive, such as Darafill or approved equal, to control fill properties.

B. Flowable Fill Requirements

1. Unconfined compressive strength: minimum 75 psi and maximum 150 psi at 56 days as determined based on an average of three tests for same placement. Present at least three acceptable strength tests for proposed mix design in mix design report.

2. Placement characteristics: self-leveling.

3. Shrinkage characteristics: non-shrink.

4. Water bleeding for fill to be placed by grouting method in sewers: not to exceed 2 percent according to ASTM C 940.

5. Minimum wet density: 90 pounds per cubic foot.

2.02 BALLAST

A. Ballast Material: Natural rock or concrete pieces with minimum size equal to at least 10 times maximum aggregate size of flowable fill and maximum size of 24 inches. Maximum dimension shall not be more than 20 percent of minimum dimension of space to be filled.

B. Ballast Composition: Free of regulated waste material.

2.03 PLUGS FOR FORCE MAINS

A. Grout Plugs: Cement-based dry-pack grout conforming to ASTM C 1107, Grade B or C.

B. Manufactured Plug: Commercially available plug or cap specifically designed and manufactured to be used with pipe being abandoned.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Have fill mix design reports and other submittals required by Paragraph 1.05 accepted by Project Manager prior to start of placement. Notify Project Manager at least 24 hours in advance of grouting with flowable fill.

B. Select fill placement equipment and follow procedures with sufficient safety and care to avoid damage to existing underground utilities and structures. Operate equipment at pressure that will not distort or imperil portion of work, new or existing.

C. Clean sewer lines and video with closed circuit television to identify connections, locate obstructions, and assess condition of pipe. Locate previously unidentified connections, which have not been redirected and reconnected as part of this project, and report them to Project Manager. During placement of fill, compensate for irregularities in sewer pipe, such as obstructions, open joints, or broken pipe to ensure no voids remain unfilled.

D. Perform demolition work prior to starting fill placement. Clean placement areas of sewers and manholes of debris that may hinder fill placement. Remove excessive amounts of sludge and other substances that may degrade performance of fill. Do not leave sludge or other debris in place if filling more than 2 percent of placement volume. Dispose of waste material in compliance with Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

E. Remove free water prior to starting fill placement.

3.02 EQUIPMENT

A. Mix flowable fill in automated batch plant and deliver it to site in ready-mix trucks. Performance additives may be added at placement site if required by mix design.

B. Use concrete or grout pumps capable of continuous delivery at planned placement rate.

3.03 DEMOLITION OF SEWER MANHOLES, PIPELINE STRUCTURES, AND FORCE MAINS PRIOR TO ABANDONMENT

A. Remove manhole frames and covers and castings from other existing pipeline structures. Deliver castings to nearest City of Houston quadrant maintenance facility for future use. Alternatively, salvaged castings may be used upon approval by Project Manager, for constructing new manholes on this project.

B. Demolish and remove precast concrete adjustment rings and corner section, or brick and mortar corbel and chimney, or other pipeline structure, to minimum depth of 4 feet below finished grade. Structure may be removed to greater depth, but not deeper than 18 inches above crown of abandoned sewer.

C. When adjacent sewer lines are not to be filled, place temporary plugs in each line connecting to manhole, in preparation for filling manhole.

D. Excavate overburden from force mains to be abandoned at locations indicated on Drawings, conforming to Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. Cut existing force main, when necessary, to provide an end surface perpendicular to axis of pipe and suitable for plug to be installed. Remove force main piping material remaining outside of segment to be abandoned.

3.04 INSTALLATION

A. Abandon sewer lines by completely filling sewer line with flowable fill. Abandon manholes and other structures by filling with flowable fill, together with ballast as applicable, within depth of structures left in place.

B. Place flowable fill to fill volume between manholes. Continuously place flowable fill from manhole to manhole with no intermediate pour points, but not exceeding 500 feet in length.

C. Have filling operation performed by experienced crews with equipment to monitor density of flowable fill and to control pressure.

D. Temporarily plug sewer lines which are to remain in operation during pouring/pumping to keep lines free of flowable fill.

E. Pump flowable fill through bulkheads constructed for placement of two 2-inch PVC pipes or use other suitable construction methods to contain flowable fill in lines to be abandoned. These pipes will act as injection points or vents for placement of flowable fill.

F. Place flowable fill under pressure flow conditions into properly vented open system until flowable fill emerges from vent pipes. Pump flowable fill with sufficient pressure to overcome friction and to fill sewer from downstream end, to discharge at upstream end.

G. Inject flowable fill through replaced ballast using grouting equipment and series of grout pipes discharging at bottom of placement, allowing fill to rise through ballast effectively filling all voids. Alternatively, sequentially place individual pieces of ballast at same time as flowable fill is placed. Do not fill with ballast more than 50 percent of volume at any level, to prevent nesting and void formation.

H. Remediate placement of flowable fill which does not fill voids in sewer, in manhole or other structures, or where voids develop due to excessive shrinkage or bleeding of fill, by using pressure grouting either from inside sewer or from surface. Pressure grout shall conform to Section 02431 - Tunnel Grout.

I. Plug each end of force main being abandoned.

J. Force main abandonment

1. Clean inside surface of force main at least 12 inches from ends to achieve firm bond and seal grout plug or manufactured plug to pipe surface. Similarly, clean and prepare exterior pipe surface if manufactured cap is to be used.

2. When using grout plug, place temporary plug or bulkhead approximately 12 inches inside pipe. Fill pipe end completely with dry-pack grout mixture.

3. When using manufactured plug or cap, install fitting as recommended by manufacture's instructions, to form water tight seal.

K. Backfill to surface, above pipe or structures left in place, with flowable fill in restricted areas, compacted bank run sand in unrestricted areas to be paved or select fill in unrestricted areas outside of pavement. Place and compact backfill, other than flowable fill, in compliance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

L. Collect and dispose of excess flowable fill material and other debris in accordance with Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Provide batch plant tickets for each truck delivery of flowable fill. Note on tickets addition of admixtures at site.

B. Check flow characteristics and workability of fill as placement proceeds.

C. Obtain at least three test cylinders for each placement area for determination of 56-day compressive strength and bleeding. Acceptance of placement will be based on average strength of three tests.

D. Record volume of ballast together with flowable fill placement for same space to demonstrate that voids have been filled.

3.06 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

A. Provide safe working conditions for employees throughout demolition and removal operations. Observe safety requirements for work below grade.

B. Maintain safe access to adjacent property and buildings. Do not obstruct roadways, sidewalks or passageways adjacent to work.

END OF SECTION

Section 02233

CLEARING AND GRUBBING

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Removing surface debris and rubbish.

B. Clearing site of plant life and grass.

C. Removing trees and shrubs.

D. Removing root system of trees and shrubs.

E. Fence removal.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for clearing and grubbing is on per acre basis.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to applicable codes for disposal of debris.

B. Coordinate clearing work with utility companies.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Verify that existing plant life and features designated to remain are identified and tagged.

3.02 PROTECTION

A. Protect following from damage or displacement:

1. Living trees located 3 feet or more outside of intersection of side slopes and original ground line.

2. Plants other than trees and landscape features designated to remain.

3. Utilities designated to remain.

4. Bench marks, monuments, and existing structures designated to remain.

3.03 CLEARING

A. Remove stumps, main root ball, and root system to:

1. Depth of 24 inches below finished subgrade elevation in area bounded by lines two feet behind back of curbs.

2. Depth of 24 inches below finished surface of required cross section for other areas.

B. Clear undergrowth and deadwood without disturbing subsoil.

C. Remove vegetation from top soil scheduled for reuse.

3.04 REMOVAL

A. Remove debris, rubbish, and extracted plant material life from site in accordance with requirements of Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

B. Remove on site fences. Materials generated from removal of fences become property of Contractor. Properly dispose of in accordance with applicable local, state and federal laws.

END OF SECTION

Section 02315

ROADWAY EXCAVATION

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Excavation and compaction of materials for roadways.

B. Excavation and compaction of materials for roadside ditches.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for roadway excavation is on cubic yard basis.

2. No payment will be made for material excavated under the following conditions:

   a. More than 2 feet outside of vertical planes behind back of curbs

   b. For portion within limits of trench for utilities 24-inch and greater constructed by open-cut methods

   c. As indicated otherwise on Drawings.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12.44 ft-lbf/ft^3).

B. ASTM D 2216 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass.

C. ASTM D 2922 - Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

D. ASTM D 3017 - Standard Test Method for Water content of Soil and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

E. ASTM D 4318 - Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Provide topsoil conforming to requirements of Section 02911 - Topsoil.

B. Provide backfill which is excavated material, graded free of roots, lumps greater than 6 inches, rocks larger than 3 inches, organic material, and debris.

C. Provide structural backfill which is select material meeting following requirements:

1. Plasticity index: not less than 12 nor more than 20.

2. Maximum liquid limit: 45

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Identify required lines, levels, and datum. Coordinate with Section 01725 - Field Surveying.

B. Identify and flag surface and aerial utilities.

C. Notify utility companies to remove or relocate utilities.

D. Identify, stake, and flag known utility locations below grade. Make temporary or permanent relocation of underground pipes, ducts, or utilities where indicated on Drawings.

E. Upon discovery of unknown or badly deteriorated utilities, or concealed conditions, discontinue work. Notify Project Manager and obtain instructions before proceeding in such areas.

F. Obtain approval of top soil quality before excavating and stockpiling.

3.02 PROTECTION

A. Protect following from damage or displacement:

1. Trees, shrubs, lawns, existing structures, and other features outside of grading limits.

2. Utilities either above or below grade, which are to remain.

3.03 TOPSOIL REMOVAL

A. Strip off topsoil from area to be excavated to minimum depth of 6 inches, unless indicated otherwise on Drawings.

B. Stockpile topsoil in designated location for reuse. Stockpile topsoil to depth not exceeding 8 feet. Cover to protect from erosion.

3.04 SOIL EXCAVATION

A. Excavate to lines and grades shown on Drawings.

B. Remove unsuitable material not meeting specifications. Backfill with embankment materials and compact to requirements of Section 02330 - Embankment.

C. Record location and plug and fill inactive water and oil wells. Conform to Texas Department of Health, Texas Natural Resource Conservation Commission, and Texas Railroad Commission requirements. Notify Project Manager prior to plugging wells.

D. At intersections, grade back at minimum slope of one inch per foot. Produce smooth riding junction with intersecting street. Maintain proper drainage.

E. When area is inadvertently over excavated, fill area in accordance with requirements of Section 02330 - Embankment at no additional cost to City.

F. Remove material not qualified for use and excess soil not being reused from site in accordance with requirements of Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

3.05 COMPACTION

A. Maintain optimum moisture content of subgrade to attain required density.

B. Compact to following minimum densities at moisture content of optimum to 3 percent above optimum as determined by ASTM D 698, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:

1. Areas under future paving and shoulders: Minimum density of 95 percent of maximum dry density.

2. Other areas: Minimum density of 90 percent of maximum dry density.

3.06 TOLERANCES

A. Top of Compacted Surface: Plus or minus 1/2 inch in cross section, or in 16-foot length.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Test and analysis of soil materials will be performed in accordance with ASTM D 4318, ASTM D 2216, and ASTM D 698.

C. Compaction testing will be performed in accordance with ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 2922 and ASTM D 3017.

D. A minimum of three tests will be taken for each 1000 linear feet per lane of roadway.

E. When tests indicate work does not meet specified compaction requirements, recondition, recompact, and retest at no additional cost to City.

3.08 PROTECTION

A. Prevent erosion at all times. Maintain ditches and cut temporary swales to allow natural drainage in order to avoid damage to roadway. Do not allow water to pond.

B. Distribute construction traffic evenly over compacted areas, where practical, to aid in obtaining uniform compaction. Protect exposed areas having high moisture content from wheel loads that cause rutting.

C. Maintain excavation and embankment areas until start of subsequent work. Repair and recompact slides, washouts, settlements, or areas with loss of density.

END OF SECTION

Section 02316

EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL FOR STRUCTURES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Excavation, backfilling, and compaction of backfill for structures.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No payment will be made for structural excavation and backfill under this Section. Include payment in unit price or lump sum for construction of structures.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Unsuitable Material: Unsuitable soil materials are the following:

1. Materials that are classified as ML, CL-ML, MH, PT, OH, and OL according to ASTM D 2487.

2. Materials that cannot be compacted to required density due to gradation, plasticity, or moisture content.

3. Materials that contain large clods, aggregates, stones greater than 4 inches in any dimension, debris, vegetation, waste or any other deleterious materials.

4. Materials that are contaminated with hydrocarbons or other chemical contaminants.

B. Suitable Material: Suitable soil materials are those meeting specification requirements. Unsuitable soils meeting specification requirements for suitable soils after treatment with lime or cement shall be considered suitable, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Select Material: Material as defined in Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials.

D. Backfill: Select material meeting specified quality requirements, placed and compacted under controlled conditions around structures.

E. Foundation Backfill Materials: Natural soil or manufactured aggregate meeting Class I requirements and geotextile filter fabrics as required, to control drainage and material separation. Foundation backfill material is placed and compacted as backfill where needed to provide stable support for structure foundation base. Foundation backfill materials may include concrete fill and seal slabs.

F. Foundation Base: For foundation base material, use crushed stone aggregate with filter fabric as required, cement stabilized sand, or concrete seal slab. Foundation base provides smooth, level working surface for construction of concrete foundation.

G. Foundation Subgrade: Foundation subgrade is surface of natural soil which has been excavated and prepared to support foundation base or foundation backfill, where needed.

H. Ground Water Control Systems: Installations external to excavation such as well points, eductors, or deep wells. Ground water control includes dewatering to lower ground water, intercepting seepage which would otherwise emerge from side or bottom of excavation, and depressurization to prevent failure or heaving of excavation bottom. Refer to Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

I. Surface Water Control: Diversion and drainage of surface water runoff and rain water away from excavation. Remove rain water and surface water which accidentally enters excavation as part of excavation drainage.

J. Excavation Drainage: Removal of surface and seepage water in excavation by sump pumping and using French drains surrounding foundation to intercept water.

K. Over-Excavation and Backfill: Excavation of subgrade soils with unsatisfactory bearing capacity or composed of otherwise unsuitable materials below foundation as shown on Drawings, and backfilled with foundation backfill material.

L. Shoring System: Structure that supports sides of an excavation to maintain stable soil conditions and prevent cave-ins.

1.04 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft^3 (600kN-m/m^3)).

B. ASTM D 1556 - Standard Test Method for Density of Soil in Place by Sand-Cone Method.

C. ASTM D 2922 - Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

D. ASTM D 3017 - Standard Test Method for Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depths).

E. ASTM D 4318 - Standard Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.

F. TxDOT Tex-101-E - Preparing Soil and Flexible Base Materials for Testing.

G. TxDOT Tex-110-E - Particle Size Analysis of Soils.

H. Federal Regulations, 29 CFR, Part 1926, Standards - Excavation, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit work plan for excavation and backfill for each structure with complete written description which identifies details of proposed method of construction and sequence of operations for construction relative to excavation and backfill activities. Use descriptions, with supporting illustrations, sufficiently detailed to demonstrate to Project Manager that procedures meet requirements of Specifications and Drawings.

C. Submit excavation safety system plan.

1. Submit excavation safety system plan in accordance with applicable OSHA requirements for excavations.

2. Submit excavation safety system plan in accordance with requirements of Section 02260 - Trench Safety System, for excavations that fall under State and Federal trench safety laws.

D. Submit ground and surface water control plan in accordance with requirements in this Section and Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

E. Submit backfill material sources and product quality information in accordance with requirements of Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials.

F. Submit project record documents under provisions of Section 01785 - Project Record Documents. Record location of utilities, as installed, referenced to survey benchmarks. Include location of utilities encountered or rerouted. Give horizontal dimensions, elevations, inverts and gradients.

1.06 TESTS

A. Testing and analysis of backfill materials for soil classification and compaction during construction will be performed by an independent laboratory provided by City in accordance with requirements of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services and as specified in this Section.

B. Perform embedment and backfill material source qualification testing in accordance with requirements of Section 02320- Utility Backfill Materials.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 EQUIPMENT

A. Perform excavation with equipment suitable for achieving requirements of this Specification.

B. Use equipment which will produce degree of compaction specified. Compact backfill within 3 feet of walls with hand operated equipment. Do not use equipment weighing more than 10,000 pounds closer to walls than a horizontal distance equal to depth of fill at that time. Use hand operated power compaction equipment where use of heavier equipment is impractical or restricted due to weight limitations.

2.02 MATERIAL CLASSIFICATIONS

A. Use backfill materials conforming to classifications and product descriptions of Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials. Use classification or product description for backfill applications as shown on Drawings and as specified.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Conduct an inspection to determine condition of existing structures and other permanent installations.

B. Set up necessary street detours and barricades in preparation for excavation if construction will affect traffic. Conform to requirements of Section 01555 - Traffic Control and Regulation. Maintain barricades and warning devices at all times for streets and intersections where work is in progress, or where affected by Work, and is considered hazardous to traffic movements.

C. Perform work in accordance with OSHA standards. Employ an excavation safety system as specified in Section 02260 - Trench Safety Systems.

D. Remove existing pavements and structures, including sidewalks and driveways, in accordance with requirements of Section 02221 - Removing Existing Pavements and Structures.

E. Install and operate necessary dewatering and surface water control measures in accordance with requirements of Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

3.02 PROTECTION

A. Protect trees, shrubs, lawns, existing structures, and other permanent objects outside of grading limits and within grading limits as designated on Drawings, and in accordance with requirements of Section 01562 - Tree and Plant Protection.

B. Protect and support above-grade and below-grade utilities which are to remain.

C. Restore damaged permanent facilities to pre-construction conditions unless replacement or abandonment of facilities is indicated on Drawings.

D. Prevent erosion of excavations and backfill. Do not allow water to pond in excavations.

E. Maintain excavation and backfill areas until start of subsequent work. Repair and recompact slides, washouts, settlements, or areas with loss of density at no additional cost to City.

3.03 EXCAVATION

A. Perform excavation work so that underground structure can be installed to depths and alignments shown on Drawings. Use caution during excavation work to avoid disturbing surrounding ground and existing facilities and improvements. Keep excavation to absolute minimum necessary. No additional payment will be made for excess excavation not authorized by Project Manager.

B. Upon discovery of unknown utilities, badly deteriorated utilities not designated for removal, or concealed conditions, discontinue work at that location. Notify Project Manager and obtain instructions before proceeding in such areas.

C. Immediately notify agency or company owning any line which is damaged, broken or disturbed. Obtain approval from Project Manager and agency for any repairs or relocations, either temporary or permanent.

D. Avoid settlement of surrounding soil due to equipment operations, excavation procedures, vibration, dewatering, or other construction methods.

E. Provide surface drainage during construction to protect work and to avoid nuisance to adjoining property. Where required, provide proper dewatering and piezometric pressure control during construction.

F. Conduct hauling operations so that trucks and other vehicles do not create dirt nuisance in streets. Verify that truck beds are sufficiently tight and loaded in such a manner such that objectionable materials will not spill onto streets. Promptly clear away any dirt, mud, or other materials that spill onto streets or are deposited onto streets by vehicle tires.

G. Maintain permanent benchmarks, monumentation, and other reference points. Unless otherwise directed, replace those which are damaged or destroyed by Work.

H. Provide sheeting, shoring, and bracing where required to safely complete Work, to prevent excavation from extending beyond limits indicated on Drawings, and to protect Work and adjacent structures or improvements. Use sheeting, shoring, and bracing to protect workmen and public conforming to requirements of Section 02260 - Trench Safety Systems.

I. Prevent voids from forming outside of sheeting. Immediately fill voids with grout, cement stabilized sand, or other material approved by Project Manager and compact to 95 percent standard density.

J. After completion of structure, remove sheeting, shoring, and bracing unless shown on Drawings to remain in place or directed by Project Manager in writing that such temporary structures may remain. Remove sheeting, shoring and bracing in such a manner as to maintain safety during backfilling operations and to prevent damage to Work and adjacent structures or improvements.

K. Immediately fill and compact voids left or caused by removal of sheeting with cement stabilized sand or other material approved by Project Manager and compact to 95 percent standard density.

3.04 HANDLING EXCAVATED MATERIALS

A. Classify excavated materials. Place material which is suitable for use as backfill in orderly piles at sufficient distance from excavation to prevent slides or cave-ins.

B. Provide additional backfill material in accordance with requirements of Section 02319 - Borrow, if adequate quantities of suitable material are not available from excavation and trenching operations at site.

3.05 DEWATERING

A. Provide ground water control per Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

B. Keep ground water surface elevation minimum of 2 feet below bottom of foundation base.

C. Maintain ground water control as directed by Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water and until structure is sufficiently complete to provide required weight to resist hydrostatic uplift with minimum safety factor of 1.2.

3.06 FOUNDATION EXCAVATION

A. Notify Project Manager at least 48 hours prior to planned completion of foundation excavations. Do not place foundation base until excavation is accepted by Project Manager.

B. Excavate to elevations shown on Drawings, as needed to provide space for foundation base, forming level undisturbed surface, free of mud or soft material. Remove pockets of soft or otherwise unstable soils and replace with foundation backfill material or material as directed by Project Manager. Prior to placing material over it, recompact subgrade where indicated on Drawings, scarifying as needed, to 95 percent of maximum Standard Dry Density according to ASTM D 698. If specified level of compaction cannot be achieved, moisture condition subgrade and recompact until 95 percent is achieved, over-excavate to provide minimum layer of 24 inches of foundation backfill material, or other means acceptable to Project Manager.

C. Fill unauthorized excessive excavation with foundation backfill material or other material as directed by Project Manager.

D. Protect open excavations from rainfall, runoff, freezing groundwater, or excessive drying so as to maintain foundation subgrade in satisfactory, undisturbed condition. Keep excavations free of standing water and completely free of water during concrete placement.

E. Remove soils which become unsuitable due to inadequate dewatering or other causes, after initial excavation to required subgrade, and replace with foundation backfill material, as directed by Project Manager, at no additional cost to City.

F. Place foundation base, or foundation backfill material where needed, over subgrade on same day that excavation is completed to final grade. Where base of excavations are left open for longer periods, protect them with seal slab or cement-stabilized sand.

G. Use filter fabric as specified in Section 02621 - Geotextile to separate crushed aggregate, and other free draining Class I materials from native soils or select material backfill. Overlap fabric minimum of 12 inches beyond where another material stops contact with soil.

H. Place crushed aggregate, and other Class I materials, in uniform layers of 8-inch maximum thickness. Perform compaction by means of at least two passes of vibratory compactor.

3.07 FOUNDATION BASE.

A. Place foundation base after subgrade is properly prepared, including placement of foundation backfill where needed. Use foundation base consisting of 12-inch layer of crushed stone aggregate or cement stabilized sand. Alternately, seal slab with minimum thickness of 4 inches may be placed. Extend foundation base minimum of 12 inches beyond edge of structure foundation, unless shown otherwise on Drawings.

B. Where foundation base and foundation backfill are of same material, both can be placed in one operation.

3.08 BACKFILL

A. Complete backfill to surface of natural ground or to lines and grades shown on Drawings. Remove forms, lumber, trash and debris from structures. Use select fill for backfill. Existing material that qualifies as select material may be used, unless indicated otherwise on Drawings. Deposit backfill in uniform layers and compact each layer as specified.

B. Do not place backfill against concrete walls or similar structures until laboratory test breaks indicate that concrete has reached minimum of 85 percent of specified compressive strength. Where walls are supported by slabs or intermediate walls, do not begin backfill operations until slab or intermediate walls have been placed and concrete has attained sufficient strength.

C. Remove concrete forms before starting backfill and remove shoring and bracing as work progresses.

D. Maintain backfill material at no less than 2 percent below nor more than 2 percent above optimum moisture content, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager. Place fill material in uniform 8-inch maximum loose layers. Compact fill to at least 95 percent of maximum Standard Proctor Density according to ASTM D 698 below paved areas. Compact fill to at least 95 percent around structures below unpaved areas.

E. Where backfill is placed against sloped excavation surface, run compaction equipment across boundary of cut slope and backfill to form compacted slope surface for placement of next layer of backfill.

F. Place backfill using cement stabilized sand in accordance with Section 02321 - Cement Stabilized Sand.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Tests will be performed initially on minimum of one different sample of each material type for plasticity characteristics, in accordance with ASTM D 4318, and for gradation

characteristics, in accordance with Tex-101-E and Tex-110-E. Additional classification tests will be performed whenever there is noticeable change in material gradation or plasticity.

C. In-place density tests of compacted subgrade and backfill will be performed according to ASTM D 1556, or ASTM D 2922 and ASTM D 3017, and at following frequencies and conditions:

1. Minimum of one test for every 50 to 100 cubic yards of compacted backfill material as directed by Project Manager.

2. A minimum of three density tests for each full work shift.

3. Density tests will be performed in all placement areas.

4. Number of tests will be increased when inspection determines that soil types or moisture contents are not uniform or when compacting effort is variable and not considered sufficient to attain uniform density.

5. Identify elevation of test with respect to natural ground.

6. Record approximate depth of lift tested.

D. At least one test for moisture-density relationships will be initially performed for each type of backfill material in accordance with ASTM D 698. Perform additional moisture-density relationship test once a month or whenever there is noticeable change in material gradation or plasticity.

E. When tests indicate work does not meet specified compaction requirements, recondition, recompact, and retest at Contractor's expense.

3.10 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS MATERIAL

Dispose of excess materials in accordance with requirements of Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

END OF SECTION

Section 02317

EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL FOR UTILITIES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Excavation, trenching, foundation, embedment, and backfill for installation of utilities, including manholes and other pipeline structures.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No additional payment will be made for trench excavation, embedment and backfill under this Section. Include cost in unit price for installed underground piping, sewer, conduit, or duct work.

2. When Project Manager directs Contractor to overexcavate trench bottom, Contractor will be paid by unit price bid per linear foot under bid item - 6" Overexcavation of Trench Bottom.

   a. No payment will be paid if Project Manager does not direct Contractor to overexcavate trench bottom.

   b. No overexcavation will be measured or paid when unsuitable conditions result from dewatering system not in conformance with Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

3. No additional payment will be made for performing Critical Location exploratory excavation. Include cost for unit price for work requiring critical location.

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Pipe Foundation: Suitable and stable native soils that are exposed at trench subgrade after excavation to depth of bottom of bedding as shown on Drawings, or foundation backfill material placed and compacted in over-excavations.

B. Pipe Bedding: Portion of trench backfill that extends vertically from top of foundation up to level line at bottom of pipe, and horizontally from one trench sidewall to opposite sidewall.

C. Haunching: Material placed on either side of pipe from top of bedding up to springline of pipe and horizontally from one trench sidewall to opposite sidewall.

D. Initial Backfill: Portion of trench backfill that extends vertically from springline of pipe (top of haunching) up to level line 12 inches above top of pipe, and horizontally from one trench sidewall to opposite sidewall.

E. Pipe Embedment: Portion of trench backfill that consists of bedding, haunching and initial backfill.

F. Trench Zone: Portion of trench backfill that extends vertically from top of pipe embedment up to pavement subgrade or up to final grade when not beneath pavement.

G. Unsuitable Material: Unsuitable soil materials are the following:

1. Materials that are classified as ML, CL-ML, MH, PT, OH, and OL according to ASTM D 2487.

2. Materials that cannot be compacted to required density due to gradation, plasticity, or moisture content.

3. Materials that contain large clods, aggregates, stones greater than 4 inches in any dimension, debris, vegetation, waste or any other deleterious materials.

4. Materials that are contaminated with hydrocarbons or other chemical contaminants.

H. Suitable Material: Suitable soil materials are those meeting specification requirements. Materials mixed with lime or cement that can be compacted to required density and meeting requirements for suitable materials may be considered suitable materials, unless otherwise indicated.

I. Backfill: Suitable material meeting specified quality requirements placed and compacted under controlled conditions.

J. Ground Water Control Systems: Installations external to trench, such as well points, eductors, or deep wells. Ground water control includes dewatering to lower ground water, intercepting seepage which would otherwise emerge from side or bottom of trench excavation, and depressurization to prevent failure or heaving of excavation bottom. Refer to Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

K. Surface Water Control: Diversion and drainage of surface water runoff and rain water away from trench excavation. Rain water and surface water accidentally entering trench shall be controlled and removed as part of excavation drainage.

L. Excavation Drainage: Removal of surface and seepage water in trench by sump pumping and using drainage layer, as defined in ASTM D 2321, placed on foundation beneath pipe bedding or thickened bedding layer of Class I material.

M. Trench Conditions are defined with regard to stability of trench bottom and trench walls of pipe embedment zone. Maintain trench conditions that provide for effective placement and compaction of embedment material directly on or against undisturbed soils or foundation backfill, except where structural trench support is necessary.

1. Dry Stable Trench: Stable and substantially dry trench conditions exist in pipe embedment zone as result of typically dry soils or achieved by ground water control (dewatering or depressurization) for trenches extending below ground water level.

2. Stable Trench with Seepage: Stable trench in which ground water seepage is controlled by excavation drainage.

   a. Stable Trench with Seepage in Clayey Soils: Excavation drainage is provided in lieu of or to supplement ground water control systems to control seepage and provide stable trench subgrade in predominately clayey soils prior to bedding placement.

   b. Stable Wet Trench in Sandy Soils: Excavation drainage is provided in embedment zone in combination with ground water control in predominately sandy or silty soils.

3. Unstable Trench: Unstable trench conditions exist in pipe embedment zone if ground water inflow or high water content causes soil disturbances, such as sloughing, sliding, boiling, heaving or loss of density.

N. Sub-trench: Sub-trench is special case of benched excavation. Sub-trench excavation below trench shields or shoring installations may be used to allow placement and compaction of foundation or embedment materials directly against undisturbed soils. Depth of sub-trench depends upon trench stability and safety as determined by Contractor.

O. Trench Dam: Placement of low permeability material in pipe embedment zone or foundation to prohibit ground water flow along trench.

P. Over-excavation and Backfill: Excavation of subgrade soils with unsatisfactory bearing capacity or composed of otherwise unsuitable materials below top of foundation as shown on Drawings, and backfilled with foundation backfill material.

Q. Foundation Backfill Materials: Natural soil or manufactured aggregate of controlled gradation, and geotextile filter fabrics as required, to control drainage and material separation. Foundation backfill material is placed and compacted as backfill to provide stable support for bedding. Foundation backfill materials may include concrete seal slabs.

R. Trench Safety Systems include both protective systems and shoring systems as defined in Section 02260 - Trench Safety Systems.

S. Trench Shield (Trench Box): Portable worker safety structure moved along trench as work proceeds, used as protective system and designed to withstand forces imposed on it by cave-in, thereby protecting persons within trench. Trench shields may be stacked if so designed or placed in series depending on depth and length of excavation to be protected.

T. Shoring System: Structure that supports sides of an excavation to maintain stable soil conditions and prevent cave-ins, or to prevent movement of ground affecting adjacent installations or improvements.

U. Special Shoring: Shoring system meeting special shoring as specified in Paragraph 1.08, Special Shoring Design Requirements, for locations identified on Drawings.

1.04 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 12 - Standard Practice for Installing Vitrified Clay Pipe Lines.

B. ASTM D 558 - Standard Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soil Cement Mixtures.

C. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lb/ft).

D. ASTM D 1556 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by Sand-Cone Method.

E. ASTM D 2321 - Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity Flow Applications.

F. ASTM D 2487 - Standard Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes.

G. ASTM D 2922 - Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

H. ASTM D 3017 - Standard Test Method for Water Content of Soil and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

I. ASTM D 4318 - Standard Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.

J. TxDOT Tex-101-E - Preparing Soil and Flexible Base Materials for Testing.

K. TxDOT Tex-110-E - Particle Size Analysis of Soils.

L. Federal Regulations, 29 CFR Part 1926, Standards-Excavation, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

1.05 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule work so that pipe embedment can be completed on same day that acceptable foundation has been achieved for each section of pipe installation, manhole, or other structures.

1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit planned typical method of excavation, backfill placement and compaction including:

1. Trench widths.

2. Procedures for foundation and pipe zone bedding placement, and trench backfill compaction.

3. Procedures for assuring compaction against undisturbed soil when pre-manufactured trench safety systems are proposed.

C. Submit backfill material sources and product quality information in accordance with requirements of Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials.

D. Submit trench excavation safety program in accordance with requirements of Section 02260 - Trench Safety System. Include designs for special shoring meeting requirements defined in Paragraph 1.08, Special Shoring Design Requirements contained herein.

E. Submit record of location of utilities as installed, referenced to survey control points. Include locations of utilities encountered or rerouted. Give stations, horizontal dimensions, elevations, inverts, and gradients.

F. Submit 11 inch by 17 inch or 12 inch by 18 inch copy of Drawing with plotted utility or obstruction location titled "Critical Location Report" to Project Manager.

1.07 TESTS

A. Testing and analysis of backfill materials for soil classification and compaction during construction will be performed by an independent laboratory provided by City in accordance with requirements of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services and as specified in this Section.

B. Perform backfill material source qualification testing in accordance with requirements of Section 02320- Utility Backfill Materials.

1.08 SPECIAL SHORING DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Have special shoring designed or selected by Contractor's Professional Engineer to provide support for sides of excavations, including soils and hydrostatic ground water pressures as applicable, and to prevent ground movements affecting adjacent installations or improvements such as structures, pavements and utilities. Special shoring may be a pre-manufactured system selected by Contractor's Professional Engineer to meet project site requirements based on manufacturer's standard design.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 EQUIPMENT

A. Perform excavation with hydraulic excavator or other equipment suitable for achieving requirements of this Section.

B. Use only hand-operated tamping equipment until minimum cover of 12 inches is obtained over pipes, conduits, and ducts. Do not use heavy compacting equipment until adequate cover is attained to prevent damage to pipes, conduits, or ducts.

C. Use trench shields or other protective systems or shoring systems which are designed and operated to achieve placement and compaction of backfill directly against undisturbed native soil.

D. Use special shoring systems where required which may consist of braced sheeting, braced soldier piles and lagging, slide rail systems, or other systems meeting requirements as specified in Paragraph 1.08, Special Shoring Design Requirements.

2.02 MATERIAL CLASSIFICATIONS

A. Embedment and Trench Zone Backfill Materials: Conform to classifications and product descriptions of Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials.

B. Concrete Backfill: Conform to requirements for Class B concrete as specified in Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

C. Geotextile (Filter Fabric): Conform to requirements of Section 02621- Geotextile.

D. Concrete for Trench Dams: Concrete backfill or 3 sack premixed (bag) concrete.

E. Timber Shoring Left in Place: Untreated oak.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 STANDARD PRACTICE

A. Install flexible pipe, including "semi-rigid" pipe, to conform to standard practice described in ASTM D 2321, and as described in this Section. Where an apparent conflict occurs between standard practice and requirements of this Section, this Section governs.

B. Install rigid pipe to conform to standard practice described in ASTM C 12, and as described in this Section. Where an apparent conflict occurs between standard practice and requirements of this Section, this Section governs.

C. Classification of material will be determined by Project Manager.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Establish traffic control to conform to requirements of Section 01555 - Traffic Control and Regulation. Maintain barricades and warning lights for streets and intersections affected by Work, and are considered hazardous to traffic movements.

B. Perform work to conform to applicable safety standards and regulations. Employ trench safety system as specified in Section 02260 - Trench Safety Systems.

C. Immediately notify agency or company owning any existing utility line which is damaged, broken, or disturbed. Obtain approval from Project Manager and agency for any repairs or relocations, either temporary or permanent.

D. Remove existing pavements and structures, including sidewalks and driveways, to conform to requirements of Section 02221 - Removing Existing Pavements and Structures, as applicable.

E. Install and operate necessary dewatering and surface-water control measures to conform to Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water. Provide stable trench to allow installation in accordance with Specifications.

F. Maintain permanent benchmarks, monumentation, and other reference points. Unless otherwise directed in writing, replace those which are damaged or destroyed in accordance with Section 01725 - Field Surveying.

3.03 CRITICAL LOCATION INVESTIGATION

A. Horizontal and vertical location of various underground lines shown on Drawings, including but not limited to water lines, gas lines, storm sewers, sanitary sewers, telecommunication lines, electric lines or power ducts, pipelines, concrete and debris, are based on best information available but are only approximate locations. At Critical Locations shown on Drawings, field verify horizontal and vertical locations of such lines within zone 2 feet vertically and 4 feet horizontally of proposed work.

1. Verify location of existing utilities minimum of 7 working days in advance of pipe laying activities based on daily pipe laying rate. Use extreme caution and care when uncovering these lines.

2. Notify Project Manager in writing immediately upon identification of obstruction. In event of failure to identify obstruction in minimum of 7 days, Contractor will not be entitled to extra cost for downtime including, but not limited to, payroll, equipment, overhead, demobilization and remobilization, until 7 days has passed from time Project Manager is notified of obstruction.

B. Notify involved utility companies of date and time that investigation excavation will occur and request that their respective utility lines be marked in field. Comply with utility or pipeline company requirements that their representative be present during excavation. Provide Project Manager with 48 hours notice prior to field excavation or related work.

C. Survey vertical and horizontal locations of obstructions relative to project baseline and datum and plot on 12 inch by 18 inch copy of Drawings. For large diameter water lines, submit to Project Manager for approval, horizontal and vertical alignment dimensions for connections to existing lines, tied into project baseline, signed and sealed by R.P.L.S.

3.04 PROTECTION

A. Protect trees, shrubs, lawns, existing structures, and other permanent objects outside of grading limits and within grading limits as designated on Drawings, and in accordance with requirements of Section 01562 - Tree and Plant Protection.

B. Protect and support above-grade and below-grade utilities which are to remain.

C. Restore damaged permanent facilities to pre-construction conditions unless replacement or abandonment of facilities is indicated on Drawings.

D. Take measures to minimize erosion of trenches. Do not allow water to pond in trenches. Where slides, washouts, settlements, or areas with loss of density or pavement failures or potholes occur, repair, recompact, and pave those areas at no additional cost to City.

3.05 EXCAVATION

A. Except as otherwise specified or shown on Drawings, install underground utilities in open cut trenches with vertical sides.

B. Perform excavation work so that pipe, conduit, and ducts can be installed to depths and alignments shown on Drawings. Avoid disturbing surrounding ground and existing facilities and improvements.

C. Determine trench excavation widths using following schedule as related to pipe outside diameter (O.D.).

Nominal Pipe Size, Inches	**Minimum Trench Width, Inches**
Less than 18	O.D. + 18
18 to 30	O.D. + 24
36 to 42	O.D. + 36
Greater than 42	O.D. + 48

D. Use sufficient trench width or benches above embedment zone for installation of well point headers or manifolds and pumps where depth of trench makes it uneconomical or impractical to pump from surface elevation. Provide sufficient space between shoring cross braces to permit equipment operations and handling of forms, pipe, embedment and backfill, and other materials.

E. Upon discovery of unknown utilities, badly deteriorated utilities not designated for removal, or concealed conditions, discontinue work at that location. Notify Project Manager and obtain instructions before proceeding.

F. Shoring of Trench Walls.

1. Install Special Shoring in advance of trench excavation or simultaneously with trench excavation, so that soils within full height of trench excavation walls will remain laterally supported at all times.

2. For all types of shoring, support trench walls in pipe embedment zone throughout installation. Provide trench wall supports sufficiently tight to prevent washing trench wall soil out from behind trench wall support.

3. Leave sheeting driven into or below pipe embedment zone in place to preclude loss of support of foundation and embedment materials, unless otherwise directed by Project Manager. Leave rangers, walers, and braces in place as long as required to support sheeting, which has been cut off, and trench wall in vicinity of pipe zone.

4. Employ special methods for maintaining integrity of embedment or foundation material. Before moving supports, place and compact embedment to sufficient depths to provide protection of pipe and stability of trench walls. As supports are moved, finish placing and compacting embedment.

5. If sheeting or other shoring is used below top of pipe embedment zone, do not disturb pipe foundation and embedment materials by subsequent removal. Maximum thickness of removable sheeting extending into embedment zone shall be equivalent of 1-inch-thick steel plate. As sheeting is removed, fill in voids left with grouting material.

G. Use of Trench Shields. When trench shield (trench box) is used as worker safety device, the following requirements apply:

1. Make trench excavations of sufficient width to allow shield to be lifted or pulled freely, without damage to trench sidewalls.

2. Move trench shields so that pipe, and backfill materials, after placement and compaction, are not damaged nor disturbed, nor degree of compaction reduced. Re-compact after shield is moved if soil is disturbed.

3. When required, place, spread, and compact pipe foundation and bedding materials beneath shield. For backfill above bedding, lift shield as each layer of backfill is placed and spread. Place and compact backfill materials against undisturbed trench walls and foundation.

4. Maintain trench shield in position to allow sampling and testing to be performed in safe manner.

5. Conform to applicable Government regulations.

H. Voids under paving area outside shield caused by Contractor's work will require removal of pavement, consolidation and replacement of pavement in accordance with Contract Documents. Repair damage resulting from failure to provide adequate supports.

I. Place sand or soil behind shoring or trench shield to prevent soil outside shoring from collapsing and causing voids under pavement. Immediately pack suitable material in outside voids following excavation to avoid caving of trench walls.

J. Coordinate excavation within 15 feet of pipeline with company's representative. Support pipeline with methods agreed to by pipeline company's representative. Use small, rubber-tired excavator, such as backhoe, to do exploratory excavation. Bucket that is used to dig in close proximity to pipelines shall not have teeth or shall have guard installed over teeth to approximate bucket without teeth. Excavate by hand within 1 foot of Pipeline Company's line. Do not use larger excavation equipment than normally used to dig trench in vicinity of pipeline until pipelines have been uncovered and fully exposed. Do not place large excavation and hauling equipment directly over pipelines unless approved by Pipeline Company's representative.

K. When, during excavation to uncover pipeline company's pipelines, screwed collar or an oxy-acetylene weld is exposed, immediately notify Project Manager. Provide supports for collar or welds. Discuss with Pipeline Company's representative and determine methods of supporting collar or weld during excavation and later backfilling operations. When collar is exposed, request Pipeline Company to provide welder in a timely manner to weld ends of collar prior to backfilling of excavation.

3.06 HANDLING EXCAVATED MATERIALS

A. Use only excavated materials, which are suitable as defined in this Section and conforming to Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials. Place material suitable for backfilling in stockpiles at distance from trench to prevent slides or cave-ins.

B. When required, provide additional backfill material conforming to requirements of Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials.

C. Do not place stockpiles of excess excavated materials on streets and adjacent properties. Protect backfill material to be used on site. Maintain site conditions in accordance with Section 01504 - Temporary Facilities and Controls. Excavate trench so that pipe is centered in trench. Do not obstruct sight distance for vehicles utilizing roadway or detours with stockpiled materials.

3.08 TRENCH FOUNDATION

A. Excavate bottom of trench to uniform grade to achieve stable trench conditions and satisfactory compaction of foundation or bedding materials.

B. When wet soil is encountered on trench bottom and dewatering system is not required, overexcavate an additional 6 inches with approval by Project Manager. Place non-woven geotextile fabric and then compact 12 inches of crushed stone in one lift on top of fabric. Compact crushed stone with four passes of vibratory-type compaction equipment.

C. Perform over excavation, if directed by Project Manager, in accordance with Paragraph 3.08B above. Removal of unstable or unsuitable material may be required if approved by Project Manager;

1. Even though Contractor has not determined material to be unsuitable, or

2. If unstable trench bottom is encountered and an adequate ground water control system is installed and operating according to Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

D. Place trench dams in Class I foundations in line segments longer than 100 feet between manholes and not less than one in every 500 feet of pipe placed. Install additional dams as needed to achieve workable construction conditions. Do not place trench dams closer than 5 feet from manholes.

3.09 PIPE EMBEDMENT, PLACEMENT, AND COMPACTION

A. Remove loose, sloughing, caving, or otherwise unsuitable soil from bottoms and sidewalls of trenches immediately prior to placement of embedment materials.

B. Place embedment including bedding, haunching, and initial backfill as shown on Drawings.

C. For pipe installation, manually spread embedment materials around pipe to provide uniform bearing and side support when compacted. Protect flexible pipe from damage during placing of pipe zone bedding material. Perform placement and compaction directly against undisturbed soils in trench sidewalls, or against sheeting which is to remain in place.

D. Do not place trench shields or shoring within height of embedment zone unless means to maintain density of compacted embedment material are used. If moveable supports are used in embedment zone, lift supports incrementally to allow placement and compaction of material against undisturbed soil.

E. Place geotextile to prevent particle migration from in-situ soil into open-graded (Class I) embedment materials or drainage layers.

F. Do not damage coatings or wrappings of pipes during backfilling and compacting operations. When embedding coated or wrapped pipes, do not use crushed stone or other sharp, angular aggregates.

G. Place haunching material manually around pipe and compact it to provide uniform bearing and side support. If necessary, hold small-diameter or lightweight pipe in place during compaction of haunch areas and placement beside pipe with sand bags or other suitable means.

H. Place electrical conduit, if used, directly on foundation without bedding.

I. Shovel in-place and compact embedment material using pneumatic tampers in restricted areas, and vibratory-plate compactors or engine-powered jumping jacks in unrestricted areas. Compact each lift before proceeding with placement of next lift. Water tamping is not allowed.

J. For water lines construction embedment, use bank run sand, concrete sand, gem sand, pea gravel, or crushed limestone as specified in Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Material. For water lines adhere to the following subparagraph numbers 1 and 2; for utility installation other than water, adhere to numbers 3 and 4 below:

1. Class I, II and III Embedment Materials:

   a. Maximum 6 inches compacted lift thickness.

   b. Compact to achieve minimum of 95 percent of maximum dry density as determined according to ASTM D 698.

   c. Moisture content to be within -3 percent to +5 percent of optimum as determined according to ASTM D 698, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

2. Cement Stabilized Sand (where required for special installations):

   a. Maximum 6 inches compacted thickness.

   b. Compact to achieve minimum of 95 percent of maximum dry density as determined according to ASTM D 698.

   c. Moisture content to be on dry side of optimum as determined according to ASTM D 698 but sufficient for effective hydration.

3. Class I Embedment Materials.

   a. Maximum 6-inches compacted lift thickness.

   b. Systematic compaction by at least two passes of vibrating equipment. Increase compaction effort as necessary to effectively embed pipe to meet deflection test criteria.

   c. Moisture content as determined by Contractor for effective compaction without softening soil of trench bottom, foundation or trench walls.

4. Class II Embedment and Cement Stabilized Sand.

a. Maximum 6-inches compacted thickness.

b. Compaction by methods determined by Contractor to achieve minimum of 95 percent of maximum dry density as determined according to ASTM D 698 for Class II materials and according to ASTM D 558 for cement stabilized materials.

c. Moisture content of Class II materials within 3 percent of optimum as determined according to ASTM D 698. Moisture content of cement stabilized sands on dry side of optimum as determined according to ASTM D 558 but sufficient for effective hydration.

K. Place trench dams in Class I embedment in line segments longer than 100 feet between manholes, and not less than one in every 500 feet of pipe placed. Install additional dams as needed to achieve workable construction conditions. Do not place trench dams closer than 5 feet from manholes.

3.10 TRENCH ZONE BACKFILL PLACEMENT AND COMPACTION

A. Place backfill for pipe or conduits and restore surface as soon as practicable. Leave only minimum length of trench open as necessary for construction.

B. For water lines, backfill in trench zone, including auger pits, intermediate and site pits, with bank run sand, select fill, or random backfill material as specified in Section 02320 - Utility Backfill materials.

C. For sewer pipes, use backfill materials described by trench limits. For "trench zone backfill" under pavement and to within one foot back of curb, use cement stabilized sand for pipes of nominal sizes 36 inches in diameter and smaller to level 12 inches below the pavement. For sewer pipes 42 inches in diameter and larger, under pavement or natural ground, in satisfactory soil conditions, backfill from 12 inches above top of pipe to 12 inches below pavement with suitable on-site material or select backfill. For sewer pipes 42 inches in diameter and larger, under pavement or natural ground, in unsatisfactory soil conditions, backfill from 12 inches above top of pipe to 12 inches below pavement with suitable on-site material or select backfill. Use select backfill for rigid pavements or flexible base material for asphalt pavements for 12- inch backfill directly under pavement. For backfill materials reference Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials.

D. Where damage to completed pipe installation work is likely to result from withdrawal of sheeting, leave sheeting in place. Cut off sheeting 1.5 feet or more above crown of pipe. Remove trench supports within 5 feet from ground surface.

E. When shown on Drawings, random backfill of suitable material may be used in trench zone for trench excavations outside pavements.

F. Place trench zone backfill in lifts and compact. Fully compact each lift before placement of next lift.

1. Class I, II, III or IV or combination thereof (Random Backfill):

   a. Maximum 9-inches compacted lift thickness.

   b. Compact by vibratory equipment to minimum of 95 percent of maximum dry density determined according to ASTM D 698.

   c. Moisture content within zero percent to +5 percent of optimum determined according to ASTM D 698, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

2. Cement-Stabilized Sand:

   a. Maximum lift thickness determined by Contractor to achieve uniform placement and required compaction, but do not exceed 12 inches.

   b. Compact by vibratory equipment to minimum of 95 percent of maximum dry density determined according to ASTM D 558.

   c. Moisture content on dry side of optimum determined according to ASTM D 558 but sufficient for cement hydration.

3. Select Backfill:

   a. Place in maximum 8-inch loose layers.

   b. Compaction by equipment providing tamping or kneading impact to minimum of 95 percent of maximum dry density determined according to ASTM D 698.

   c. Moisture content within 2 percent below or 5 percent above optimum determined according to ASTM D 698, unless approved by Project Manager.

G. Unless otherwise shown on Drawings, for trench excavations not under pavement, random backfill of suitable material may be used in trench zone.

1. Fat clays (CH) may be used as trench zone backfill outside paved areas at Contractor's option. When required density is not achieved, at any additional cost to City, rework, dry out, use lime stabilization or other approved methods to achieve compaction requirements, or use different suitable material.

2. Maximum 9-inch compacted lift thickness for clayey soils and maximum 12-inch lift thickness for granular soils.

3. Compact to minimum of 90 percent of maximum dry density determined according to ASTM D 698.

4. Moisture content as necessary to achieve density.

H. For electric conduits, remove form work used for construction of conduits before placing trench zone backfill.

3.11 MANHOLES, JUNCTION BOXES AND OTHER PIPELINE STRUCTURES

A. Meet requirements of adjoining utility installations for backfill of pipeline structures, as shown on Drawings.

B. Below paved areas, encapsulate manhole with cement stabilized sand; minimum of 1 foot below base, minimum 1 foot around walls, up to within 12 inches of pavement subgrade. Compact in accordance with Paragraph 3.10.F.2 of this Section

C. In unpaved areas, use select fill for backfill. Existing material that qualifies as select material may be used, unless indicated otherwise on Drawings. Deposit backfill in uniform layers and compact each layer as specified. Maintain backfill material at no less than 2 percent below nor more than 5 percent above optimum moisture content, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager. Place fill material in uniform 8-inch maximum loose layers. Compact fill to at least 95 percent of maximum Standard Proctor Density according to ASTM D 698.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test for material source qualifications as defined in Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials.

B. Provide excavation and trench safety systems at locations and to depths required for testing and retesting during construction at no additional cost to City.

C. Tests will be performed on minimum of three different samples of each material type for plasticity characteristics, in accordance with ASTM D 4318, and for gradation characteristics, in accordance with Tex-101-E and Tex-110-E. Additional classification tests will be performed whenever there is noticeable change in material gradation or plasticity, or when requested by Project Manager.

D. At least three tests for moisture-density relationships will be performed initially for backfill materials in accordance with ASTM D 698, and for cement- stabilized sand in accordance with ASTM D 558. Perform additional moisture-density relationship tests once a month or whenever there is noticeable change in material gradation or plasticity.

E. In-place density tests of compacted pipe foundation, embedment and trench zone backfill soil materials will be performed according to ASTM D 1556, or ASTM D 2922 and ASTM D 3017, and at following frequencies and conditions.

1. For open cut construction projects and auger pits: Unless otherwise approved by Project Manager, successful compaction to be measured by one test per 40 linear feet measured along pipe for compacted embedment and two tests per 40 linear feet measured along pipe for compacted trench zone backfill material. Length of auger pits to be measured to arrive at 40 linear feet.

2. A minimum of three density tests for each full shift of Work.

3. Density tests will be distributed among placement areas. Placement areas are: foundation, bedding, haunching, initial backfill and trench zone.

4. The number of tests will be increased if inspection determines that soil type or moisture content are not uniform or if compacting effort is variable and not considered sufficient to attain uniform density, as specified.

5. Density tests may be performed at various depths below fill surface by pit excavation. Material in previously placed lifts may therefore be subject to acceptance/rejection.

6. Two verification tests will be performed adjacent to in-place tests showing density less than acceptance criteria. Placement will be rejected unless both verification tests show acceptable results.

7. Recompacted placement will be retested at same frequency as first test series, including verification tests.

8. Identify elevation of test with respect to natural ground or pavement.

F. Recondition, recompact, and retest at Contractor's expense if tests indicate Work does not meet specified compaction requirements. For hardened soil cement with nonconforming density, core and test for compressive strength at Contractor's expense.

G. Acceptability of crushed rock compaction will be determined by inspection.

3.13 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS MATERIAL

A. Dispose of excess materials in accordance with requirements of Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

END OF SECTION

Section 02318

EXTRA UNIT PRICE WORK FOR EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Measurement and payment applicable to extra unit price work items for excavation and backfill made necessary by unusual or unforeseen circumstances encountered during utility installations.

B. Extra unit price work for excavation and backfill is paid only when authorized in advance by Project Manager.

1.02 UNIT PRICES

A. Excavation Around Obstructions: Payment for excavation around obstructions is on cubic yard basis, measured in place, without deduction for volume occupied by portions of pipes, ducts, or other structures left in place across trenches excavated under this item.

B. Extra Hand Excavation: Payment for extra hand excavation is on cubic yard basis, measured in place.

C. Extra Machine Excavation: Payment for extra machine excavation is on cubic yard basis, measured in place.

D. Extra Placement of Backfill Material: Payment for extra placement of backfill material is on cubic yard basis, measured in place, for material installed as part of Work. At discretion of Project Manager, measurement of cubic yards may be calculated from volume of Extra Hand Excavation or Extra Machine Excavation for which replacement is made, minus volume of any Extra Placement of Granular Backfill authorized in conjunction with Work.

E. Extra Placement of Granular Backfill: Payment for extra placement of granular backfill material is on cubic yard basis, measured in place.

F. No separate payment will be made for surface water control, groundwater control, or for excavation drainage. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Excavation Around Obstructions: Excavation necessitated by obstruction of pipes (other than service connections 3 inches in diameter or less), ducts, or other structures, not shown on Drawings, and of an unusual or unforeseen nature which interfere with installation of utility piping by normal methods of excavation or auguring.

B. Extra Hand Excavation: Excavation by manual labor made necessary by unusual or unforeseen circumstances at locations approved in advance by Project Manager.

C. Extra Machine Excavation: Excavation by machine at or near project site to perform related work not included in original project scope but added for convenience of City, as approved in advance by Project Manager.

D. Extra Replacement of Backfill Material: Handling, backfill, and compaction of excavated material authorized under extra work bid items for Extra Hand Excavation or Extra Machine Excavation. Placement and compaction shall conform to requirements specified for excavation and backfill in Division 2- Site Work.

E. Extra Placement of Granular Backfill: Hauling, placing, and compacting granular backfill materials as approved by Project Manager in conjunction with Extra Replacement of Backfill Material. Materials placed under this item shall conform to requirements for Bank Run Sand, Cement Stabilized Sand, Concrete Sand, Gem Sand, Crushed Stone, or Crushed Concrete specified for backfill material in Division 2- Site Work.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N - Not Used

END OF SECTION

Section 02319

BORROW

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Soil materials for embankment.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for borrow is on cubic yard basis calculated by theoretical quantities using average end area method based on Drawings.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 2216 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil Aggregate Mixtures.

B. ASTM D 4318 - Standard Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit location and description of proposed borrow area for approval.

C. Submit material samples for testing.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 SOIL MATERIAL

A. Grade borrow material used for embankment free of lumps greater than 6 inches, rocks larger than 3 inches, organic material, chemical waste or other contamination, and debris. Take borrow material from sources approved by Project Manager.

B. Use material with plasticity index not less than 12, nor more than 20 when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4318. Maximum liquid limit shall be 45, unless approved by Project Manager. Do not use blend of cohesive and granular soils to achieve required plasticity index.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Notify Project Manager and testing laboratory 5 days in advance of opening borrow source to permit obtaining samples for qualification testing. When material does not meet specification requirements, locate another source of borrow.

B. Clear approved source area of trees, stumps, brush, roots, vegetation, organic matter, and other unacceptable material before excavation.

3.02 TESTS

A. Test and analyze soil materials in accordance with ASTM D 4318 and ASTM D 2216 under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

3.03 EXCAVATION

A. Provide adequate drainage of surface water so that surface water run off does not enter borrow pit excavation.

3.04 HAULING

A. Use covered trucks. Conform to requirements of Section 01555 - Traffic Control and Regulation.

3.05 EMBANKMENT

A. Conform to requirements of Section 02330 - Embankment.

END OF SECTION

Section 02320

UTILITY BACKFILL MATERIALS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Material Classifications.

B. Utility Backfill Materials:

1. Concrete sand
2. Gem sand
3. Pea gravel
4. Crushed stone
5. Crushed concrete
6. Bank run sand
7. Select backfill
8. Random backfill

C. Material Handling and Quality Control Requirements.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No payment will be made for backfill material. Include payment in unit price for applicable utility installation.
2. Payment for backfill material, when included as separate pay item or when directed by Project Manager, is on cubic yard basis for material placed and compacted within theoretical trench width limits and thickness of material according to Drawings, or as directed by Project Manager.
3. Payment for backfill of authorized over-excavation is in accordance with Section 02318 - Extra Unit Price Work for Excavation and Backfill.

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Unsuitable Material:

1. Materials classified as ML, CL-ML, MH, PT, OH, and OL according to ASTM D 2487.

2. Materials that cannot be compacted to required density due to gradation, plasticity, or moisture content.

3. Materials containing large clods, aggregates, or stones greater than 4 inches in any dimension; debris, vegetation, or waste; or any other deleterious materials.

4. Materials contaminated with hydrocarbons or other chemical contaminants.

B. Suitable Material:

1. Materials meeting specification requirements.

2. Unsuitable materials meeting specification requirements for suitable soils after treatment with lime or cement.

C. Foundation Backfill Materials: Natural soil or manufactured aggregate meeting Class I requirements and geotextile filter fabrics as required, to control drainage and material separation. Foundation backfill material is placed and compacted as backfill where needed to provide stable support for structure foundation base. Foundation backfill materials may include concrete fill and seal slabs.

D. Foundation Base: Crushed stone aggregate with filter fabric as required, cement stabilized sand, or concrete seal slab. Foundation base provides smooth, level working surface for construction of concrete foundation.

E. Backfill Material: Classified soil material meeting specified quality requirements for designated application as embedment or trench zone backfill.

F. Embedment Material: Soil material placed under controlled conditions within embedment zone extending vertically upward from top of foundation to an elevation 12 inches above top of pipe, and including pipe bedding, haunching and initial backfill.

G. Trench Zone Backfill: Classified soil material meeting specified quality requirements and placed under controlled conditions in trench zone from top of embedment zone to base course in paved areas or to surface grading material in unpaved areas.

H. Foundation: Either suitable soil of trench bottom or material placed as backfill of over-excavation for removal and replacement of unsuitable or otherwise unstable soils.

I. Source: Source selected by Contractor for supply of embedment or trench zone backfill material. Selected source may be project excavation, off-site borrow pits, commercial borrow pits, or sand and aggregate production or manufacturing plants.

J. Refer to Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities for other definitions regarding utility installation by trench construction.

1.04 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 33 - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregate.

B. ASTM C 40 - Standard Test Method for Organic Impurities in Fine Aggregates for Concrete.

C. ASTM C 123 - Standard Test Method for Lightweight Particles in Aggregate.

D. ASTM C 131 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in Los Angeles Machine.

E. ASTM C 136 - Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates.

F. ASTM C 142 - Standard Test Method for Clay Lumps and Friable Particles in Aggregates.

G. ASTM D 1140 - Standard Test Method for Amount of Material in Soils Finer Than No. 200 Sieve.

H. ASTM D 2487 - Standard Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System).

I. ASTM D 4318 - Standard Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.

J. ASTM D 4643 - Standard Test Method for Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil by Microwave Oven Method.

K. TxDOT Tex-110-E - Determining Particle Size Analysis of Soils.

L. TxDOT Tex-460-A - Material Finer Than 75 μm (No.200) Sieve In Mineral Aggregates (Decantation Test for Concrete Aggregates).

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit description of source, material classification and product description, production method, and application of backfill materials.

C. Submit test results for samples of off-site backfill materials. Comply with Paragraph 2.03, Material Testing.

D. Before stockpiling materials, submit copy of approval from landowner for stockpiling backfill material on private property.

E. Provide delivery ticket which includes source location for each delivery of material that is obtained from off-site sources or is being paid as specific bid item.

1.06 TESTS

A. Perform tests of sources for backfill material in accordance with Paragraph 2.03B.

B. Verification tests of backfill materials may be performed by City in accordance with Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services and in accordance with Paragraph 3.03.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIAL CLASSIFICATIONS

A. Classify materials for backfill for purpose of quality control in accordance with Unified Soil Classification Symbols as defined in ASTM D 2487. Material use and application is defined in utility installation specifications and Drawings either by class, as described in Paragraph 2.01B, or by product descriptions, as given in Paragraph 2.02.

B. Class Designations Based on Laboratory Testing:

1. Class I: Well-graded gravels and sands, gravel-sand mixtures, crushed well-graded rock, little or no fines (GW, SW):

   a. Plasticity index: non-plastic.

   b. Gradation: D_{60}/D_{10} - greater than 4 percent; amount passing No. 200 sieve - less than or equal to 5 percent.

2. Class II: Poorly graded gravels and sands, silty gravels and sands, little to moderate fines (GM, GP, SP, SM):

a. Plasticity index: non-plastic to 4.

b. Gradations:

1. Gradation (GP, SP): amount passing No. 200 sieve - less than 5 percent.

2. Gradation (GM, SM): amount passing No. 200 sieve - between 12 percent and 50 percent.
3. Borderline gradations with dual classifications (e.g., SP-SM): amount passing No. 200 sieve - between 5 percent and 12 percent.

3. Class III: Clayey gravels and sands, poorly graded mixtures of gravel, sand, silt, and clay (GC, SC, and dual classifications, e.g., SP-SC):

a. Plasticity index: greater than 7.

b. Gradation: amount passing No. 200 sieve - between 12 percent and 50 percent.

4. Class IVA: Lean clays (CL).

a. Plasticity Indexes:

1. Plasticity index: greater than 7, and above A line.

2. Borderline plasticity with dual classifications (CL-ML): PI between 4 and 7.

b. Liquid limit: less than 50.

c. Gradation: amount passing No. 200 sieve - greater than 50 percent.

d. Inorganic.

5. Class IVB: Fat clays (CH)

a. Plasticity index: above A line.

b. Liquid limit: 50 or greater.

c. Gradation: amount passing No. 200 sieve - greater than 50 percent.

d. Inorganic.

6. Use soils with dual class designation according to ASTM D 2487, and which are not defined above, according to more restrictive class.

2.02 PRODUCT DESCRIPTIONS

A. Soils classified as silt (ML) silty clay (CL-ML with PI of 4 to 7), elastic silt (MH), organic clay and organic silt (OL, OH), and organic matter (PT) are not acceptable as backfill materials. These soils may be used for site grading and restoration in unimproved areas as approved by Project Manager. Soils in Class IVB, fat clay (CH) may be used as backfill materials where allowed by applicable backfill installation specification. Refer to Section 02316 - Excavation and Backfill for Structures and Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

B. Provide backfill material that is free of stones greater than 6 inches, free of roots, waste, debris, trash, organic material, unstable material, non-soil matter, hydrocarbon or other contamination, conforming to following limits for deleterious materials:

1. Clay lumps: Less than 0.5 percent for Class I, and less than 2.0 percent for Class II, when tested in accordance with ASTM C 142.

2. Lightweight pieces: Less than 5 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C 123.

3. Organic impurities: No color darker than standard color when tested in accordance with ASTM C 40.

C. Manufactured materials, such as crushed concrete, may be substituted for natural soil or rock products where indicated in product specification, and approved by Project Manager, provided that physical property criteria are determined to be satisfactory by testing.

D. Bank Run Sand: Durable bank run sand classified as SP, SW, or SM by Unified Soil Classification System (ASTM D 2487) meeting following requirements:

1. Less than 15 percent passing number 200 sieve when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1140. Amount of clay lumps or balls may not exceed 2 percent.

2. Material passing number 40 sieve shall meet the following requirements when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4318: Plasticity index: not exceeding 7.

E. Concrete Sand: Natural sand, manufactured sand, or combination of natural and manufactured sand conforming to requirements of ASTM C 33 and graded within following limits when tested in accordance with ASTM C 136:

Sieve	Percent Passing
3/8"	100
No. 4	95 to 100
No. 8	80 to 100
No. 16	50 to 85
No. 30	25 to 60
No. 50	10 to 30
No. 100	2 to 10

F. Gem Sand: Sand conforming to requirements of ASTM C 33 for course aggregates specified for number 8 size and graded within the following limits when tested in accordance with ASTM C 136:

Sieve	Percent Passing
3/8”	95 to 100
No. 4	60 to 80
No. 8	15 to 40

G. Pea Gravel: Durable particles composed of small, smooth, rounded stones or pebbles and graded within the following limits when tested in accordance with ASTM C 136:

Sieve	Percent Passing
1/2”	100
3/8”	85 to 100
No. 4	10 to 30
No. 8	0 to 10
No. 16	0 to 5

H. Crushed Aggregates: Crushed aggregates consist of durable particles obtained from an approved source and meeting the following requirements:

1. Materials of one product delivered for same construction activity from single source, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

2. Non-plastic fines.

3. Los Angeles abrasion test wear not exceeding 45 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C 131.

4. Crushed aggregate shall have minimum of 90 percent of particles retained on No. 4 sieve with 2 or more crushed faces as determined by Tex-460-A, Part I.

5. Crushed stone: Produced from oversize plant processed stone or gravel, sized by crushing to predominantly angular particles from naturally occurring single source. Uncrushed gravel is not acceptable materials for embedment where crushed stone is shown on applicable utility embedment drawing details.

6. Crushed Concrete: Crushed concrete is an acceptable substitute for crushed stone as utility backfill. Gradation and quality control test requirements are same as crushed stone. Provide crushed concrete produced from normal weight concrete of uniform quality; containing particles of aggregate and cement material, free from other substances such as asphalt, reinforcing steel fragments, soil, waste gypsum (calcium sulfate), or debris.

7. Gradations, as determined in accordance with Tex-110-E.

Sieve	Percent Passing by Weight for Pipe Embedment by Ranges of Nominal Pipes Sizes		
	>15"	15" - 8"	<8"
1"	95 - 100	100	-
3/4"	60 - 90	90 - 100	100
1/2"	25 - 60	-	90 - 100
3/8"	-	20 - 55	40 - 70
No. 4	0 - 5	0 - 10	0 - 15
No. 8	-	0 - 5	0 - 5

I. Select Backfill: Class III clayey gravel or sand or Class IV lean clay with plasticity index between 7 and 20 or clayey soils treated with lime in accordance with Section 02951 - Pavement Repair and Resurfacing, to meet plasticity criteria.

J. Random Backfill: Any suitable soil or mixture of soils within Classes I, II, III and IV; or fat clay (CH) where allowed by applicable backfill installation specification. Refer to Section 02316 - Excavation and Backfill for Structures and Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

K. Cement Stabilized Sand: Conform to requirements of Section 02321 - Cement Stabilized Sand.

L. Concrete Backfill: Conform to Class B concrete as specified in Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

M. Flexible Base Course Material: Conform to requirements of applicable portions of Section 02711 - Hot Mix Asphaltic Base Course, Section 02712 - Cement Stabilized Base Course, and Section 02713 - Crushed Concrete Base Course.

2.03 MATERIAL TESTING

A. Source Qualification. Perform testing to obtain tests by suppliers for selection of material sources and products not from the project site. Test samples of processed materials from current production representing material to be delivered. Use tests to verify that materials meet specification requirements. Repeat qualification test procedures each time source characteristics change or there is planned change in source location or supplier. Include the following qualification tests, as applicable:

1. Gradation. Report complete sieve analyses regardless of specified control sieves from largest particle through No. 200 sieve.

2. Plasticity of material passing No. 40 sieve

3. Los Angeles abrasion wear of material retained on No. 4 sieve

4. Clay lumps

5. Lightweight pieces

6. Organic impurities

B. Production Testing. Provide reports to Project Manager from an independent testing laboratory that backfill materials to be placed in Work meet applicable specification requirements.

C. Assist Project Manager in obtaining material samples for verification testing at source or at production plant.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 SOURCES

A. Use of existing material in trench excavations is acceptable, provided applicable specification requirements are satisfied.

B. Identify off-site sources for backfill materials at least 14 days ahead of intended use so that Project Manager may obtain samples for verification testing.

C. Materials may be subjected to inspection or additional verification testing after delivery. Materials which do not meet requirements of specifications will be rejected. Do not use material which, after approval, has become unsuitable for use due to segregation, mixing with other materials, or by contamination. Once material is approved by Project Manager, expense for sampling and testing required to change to different material will be credited to City through change order.

D. Bank run sand, select backfill, and random backfill, if available in project excavation, may be obtained by selective excavation and acceptance testing. Obtain additional quantities of these materials and other materials required to complete work from off-site sources.

E. City does not represent or guarantee that any soil found in excavation work will be suitable and acceptable as backfill material.

3.02 MATERIAL HANDLING

A. When backfill material is obtained from either commercial or non-commercial borrow pit, open pit to expose vertical faces of various strata for identification and selection of approved material to be used. Excavate selected material by vertical cuts extending through exposed strata to achieve uniformity in product.

B. Establish temporary stockpile locations for practical material handling, control, and verification testing by Project Manager in advance of final placement. Obtain approval from landowner for storage of backfill material on adjacent private property.

C. When stockpiling backfill material near project site, use appropriate covers to eliminate blowing of materials into adjacent areas and prevent runoff containing sediments from entering drainage system.

D. Place stockpiles in layers to avoid segregation of processed materials. Load material by making successive vertical cuts through entire depth of stockpile.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Quality Control

1. The Project Manager may sample and test backfill at:

   a. Sources including borrow pits, production plants and Contractor's designated off-site stockpiles.

b. On-site stockpiles.
c. Materials placed in Work.

2. The Project Manager may re-sample material at any stage of work or location if changes in characteristics are apparent.

B. Production Verification Testing: City's testing laboratory will provide verification testing on backfill materials, as directed by Project Manager. Samples may be taken at source or at production plant, as applicable.

END OF SECTION

Section 02321

CEMENT STABILIZED SAND

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Cement stabilized sand.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for work performed under this Section. Include cost of such work in Contract unit prices for items listed in bid form requiring cement stabilized sand.

2. Refer to Paragraph 3.04 for material credit.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 33 - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates (Fine Aggregate).

B. ASTM C 40 - Standard Test Method for Organic Impurities in Fine Aggregates for Concrete.

C. ASTM C 42 - Standard Test Methods for Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete.

D. ASTM C 94 - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete.

E. ASTM C 123 - Standard Test Method for Lightweight Particles in Aggregate.

F. ASTM C 142 - Standard Test Method for Clay Lumps and Friable Particles in Aggregates.

G. ASTM C 150 - Specification for Portland Cement.

H. ASTM D 558 - Standard Test Method for Moisture-Density Relations of Soil Cement-Mixtures.

I. ASTM D 1632 - Standard Practice for Making and Curing Soil-Cement Compression and Flexure Test Specimens in the Laboratory

J. ASTM D 1633 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Molded Soil-Cement Cylinders.

K. ASTM D 2487 - Standard Test Method for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System).

L. ASTM D2922 - Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

M. ASTM D 3665 - Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials.

N. ASTM D 4318 - Standard Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit proposed target cement content and production data for sand-cement mixture in accordance with requirements of Paragraph 2.03, Materials Qualifications.

1.05 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Use sand-cement mixture producing minimum unconfined compressive strength of 100 pounds per square inch (psi) in 48 hours.

1. Design will be based on strength specimens molded in accordance with ASTM D 558 at moisture content within 3 percent of optimum and within 4 hours of batching.

2. Determine minimum cement content from production data and statistical history. Provide no less than 1.1 sacks of cement per ton of dry sand.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Cement: Type I Portland cement conforming to ASTM C 150.

B. Sand: Clean, durable sand meeting grading requirements for fine aggregates of ASTM C 33, or requirements for bank run sand of Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials, and the following requirements:

1. Classified as SW, SP, SW-SM, SP-SM, or SM by Unified Soil Classification System of ASTM D 2487.

2. Deleterious materials:

   a. Clay lumps, ASTM C 142 - less than 0.5 percent.

   b. Lightweight pieces, ASTM C 123; less than 5.0 percent.

   c. Organic impurities, ASTM C 40, color no darker than standard color.

3. Plasticity index of 4 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4318.

C. Water: Potable water, free of oils, acids, alkalies, organic matter or other deleterious substances, meeting requirements of ASTM C 94.

2.02 MIXING MATERIALS

A. Add required amount of water and mix thoroughly in pugmill-type mixer.

B. Stamp batch ticket at plant with time of loading. Reject material not placed and compacted within 4 hours after mixing.

2.03 MATERIAL QUALIFICATION

A. Determine target cement content of material as follows:

1. Obtain samples of sand-cement mixtures at production facility representing range of cement content consisting of at least three points.

2. Complete molding of samples within 4 hours after addition of water.

3. Perform strength tests (average of two specimens) at 48 hours and 7 days.

4. Perform cement content tests on each sample.

5. Perform moisture content tests on each sample.

6. Plot average 48-hour strength vs. cement content.

7. Record scale calibration date, sample date, sample time, molding time, cement feed dial settings, and silo pressure (if applicable).

B. Test raw sand for following properties at point of entry into pug-mill:

1. Gradation
2. Plasticity index
3. Organic impurities
4. Clay lumps and friable particles
5. Lightweight pieces
6. Moisture content
7. Classification

C. Present data obtained in format similar to that provided in sample data form attached to this Section.

D. The target content may be adjusted when statistical history so indicates. For determination of minimum product performance use formula:

$$f'_c + 1/2 \text{ standard deviation}$$

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PLACING

A. Place sand-cement mixture in maximum 12-inch-thick loose lifts and compact to 95 percent of maximum density as determined in accordance with ASTM D 558, unless otherwise specified. Refer to related specifications for thickness of lifts in other applications. Target moisture content during compaction is $\pm$3 percent of optimum. Perform and complete compaction of sand-cement mixture within 4 hours after addition of water to mix at plant.

B. Do not place or compact sand-cement mixture in standing or free water.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. One sample of cement stabilized sand shall be obtained for each 150 tons of material placed per day with no less than one sample per day of production. Random samples of delivered cement stabililized sand shall be taken in the field at point of delivery in accordance with

ASTM 3665. Obtain three individual samples of approximately 12 to 15 lb each from the first, middle, and last third of the truck and composite them into one sample for test purpose.

C. Prepare and mold four specimens (for each sample obtained) in accordance with ASTM D 558, Method A, without adjusting moisture content. Samples will be molded at approximately same time material is being used, but no later than 4 hours after water is added to mix.

D. After molding, specimens will be removed from molds and cured in accordance with ASTM D 1632.

E. Specimens will be tested for compressive strength in accordance with ASTM D 1633, Method A. Two specimens will be tested at 48 hours plus or minus 2 hours and two specimens will be tested at 7 days plus or minus 4 hours.

F. A strength test will be average of strengths of two specimens molded from same sample of material and tested at same age. Average daily strength will be average of strengths of all specimens molded during one day's production and tested at same age.

G. Precision and Bias: Test results shall meet recommended guideline for precision in ASTM D 1633 Section 9.

H. Reporting: Test reports shall contain, as a minimum, the following information:

1. Supplier and plant number
2. Time material was batched
3. Time material was sampled
4. Test age (exact hours)
5. Average 48-hour strength
6. Average 7-day strength
7. Specification section number
8. Indication of compliance / non-compliance
9. Mixture identification
10. Truck and ticket numbers
11. The time of molding
12. Moisture content at time of molding
13. Required strength
14. Test method designations
15. Compressive strength data as required by ASTM D 1633
16. Supplier mixture identification
17. Specimen diameter and height, in.
18. Specimen cross-sectional area, sq. in.

3.03 ACCEPTANCE

A. Strength level of material will be considered satisfactory if:

1. The average 48-hour strength is greater than 100 psi with no individual strength test below 70 psi.

2. All 7-day individual strength tests (average of two specimens) are greater than or equal to 100 psi.

B. Material will be considered deficient when 7-day individual strength test (average of two specimens) is less than 100 psi but greater than 70 psi. See Paragraph 3.04 Adjustment for Deficient Strength.

C. The material will be considered unacceptable and subject to removal and replacement at Contractor†s expense when individual strength test (average of two specimens) has 7-day strength less than 70 psi.

D. When moving average of three daily 48-hour averages falls below 100 psi, discontinue shipment to project until plant is capable of producing material, which exceeds 100 psi at 48 hours. Five 48-hour strength tests shall be made in this determination with no individual strength tests less than 100 psi.

E. Testing laboratory shall notify Contractor, Project Manager, and material supplier by facsimile of tests indicating results falling below specified strength requirements within 24 hours.

F. If any strength test of laboratory cured specimens falls below the specified strength, Contractor may, at his own expense, request test of cores drilled from the area in question in accordance with ASTM C42. In such cases, three (3) cores shall be taken for each strength test that falls below the values given in 3.03.A.

G. Cement stabilized sand in an area represented by core tests shall be considered satisfactory if the average of three (3) cores is equal to at least 100 psi and if no single core is less that 70 psi. Additional testing of cores extracted from locations represented by erratic core strength results will be permitted.

3.04 ADJUSTMENT FOR DEFICIENT STRENGTH

A. When mixture produces 7-day compressive strength greater than or equal to 100 psi, then material will be considered satisfactory and bid price will be paid in full.

B. When mixture produces 7-day compressive strength less than 100 psi and greater than or equal to 70 psi, material shall be accepted contingent on credit in payment. Compute credit by the following formula:

$$\text{Credit per Cubic Yard} = \frac{\$30.00 \times 2\,(100\text{ psi} - \text{Actual psi})}{100}$$

C. When mixture produces 7-day compressive strength less than 70 pounds per square inch, then remove and replace cement-sand mixture and paving and other necessary work at no cost to City.

END OF SECTION

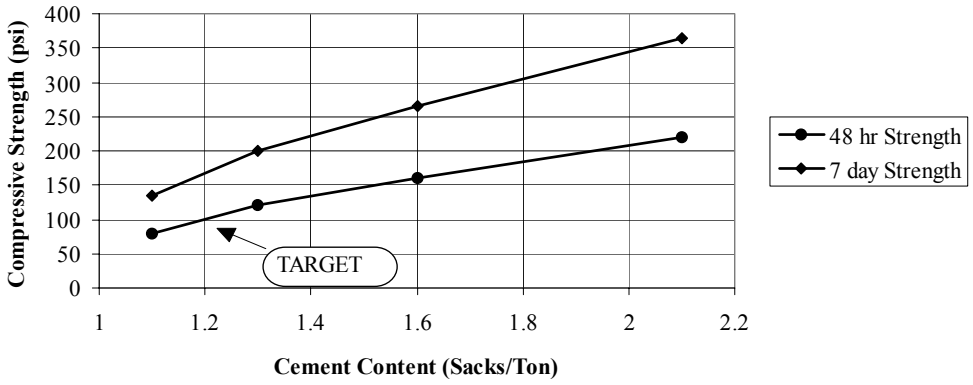
Supplier: City Stabilized Sand	**Plant No:** 1 - Main Street	**Date of Tests:** January 1, 1997

Item	Raw Sand	1.1 Sack	100 psi	1.5 Sack	2.0 Sack
Moisture Content	10.9	15.7	14.0	13.8	13.7
Cement Feed Dial Setting	--	2.25	2.5	2.75	3.75
Silo Pressure (psi)	--	4	4	4	4
Batch Time	10:00	10:10	10:15	10:20	10:25
Sample Time	--	10:10	10:15	10:20	10:25
Molding Time	--	12:30	12:45	1:00	1:15
Cement Content (sacks/ton)	--	1.1	1.3	1.6	2.1
Compressive Strength at 48 hrs. (avg of 2)	--	80	120	160	220
Compressive Strength at 7 days(avg of 2)	--	135	200	265	365

Sieve size	Percent Passing	COH Spec. Section 02320
3/8 Inch	100	--
No. 16	100	--
No. 40	100	--
No. 50	99	--
No. 100	41	--
No. 200	11	0 to 15

Raw Sand Tests	Result	City of Houston
Plasticity Index	Non-Plastic	4 Maximum
Organic Impurities	Passing	No Darker Than
Clay Lumps & Friable Parts (%)	0.0	0.5 % Maximum
Lightweight Pieces (%)	0.0	5.0 % Maximum
Classification	SP-SM	SW, SP, SW-SM, SP-SM, SM

Compressive Strength vs Cement Content



Section 02330

EMBANKMENT

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Construction of embankments with excess excavated material and borrow.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for embankment under this section. Include payment in unit price for excavation or borrow.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soils Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft^3 (600 kN-m/m^3)).

B. ASTM D 2922 - Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

C. ASTM D 3017 - Standard Test Method for Water Content of Soil and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Refer to Section 02315 - Roadway Excavation for acceptable excess materials from roadway excavation.

B. Refer to Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill For Utilities for acceptable excess materials from utility excavation and trenching.

C. Refer to Section 02319 - Borrow for acceptable borrow materials.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify borrow and excess excavated materials to be reused are approved.

B. Verify removals and clearing and grubbing operations have been completed.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Backfill test pits, stump holes, small swales and other surface irregularities. Backfill and compact in designated lift depths to requirements for embankment compaction.

B. Record location and plug and fill inactive water and oil wells. Conform to Texas State Health Department, Texas Commission on Environmental Quality and Texas Railroad Commission requirements. Notify City Engineer prior to plugging wells.

C. Excavate and dispose of unsuitable soil and other unsuitable materials which will not consolidate. Backfill and compact to requirements for embankment. Unsuitable soil is defined in Section 02316 - Excavation and Backfill for Structures and Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials.

D. Backfill new utilities below future grade. Conform to requirements of Sections 02317 - Excavation and Backfill For Utilities, 02511 - Water Lines, 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers, and 02532 - Sanitary Sewage Force Mains.

3.03 PROTECTION

A. Protect trees, shrubs, lawns, existing structures, and other features outside of embankment limits.

B. Protect utilities above and below grade, which are to remain.

C. Conform to protection requirements of Section 02315 - Roadway Excavation.

3.04 PLACING EMBANKMENT

A. Do not conduct placement operations during inclement weather or when existing ground or fill materials exceed 3 percent of optimum moisture content. Contractor may manipulate wet material to facilitate drying, by disking or windrowing.

B. Do not place embankment fill until density and moisture content of previously placed material comply with specified requirements.

C. Scarify areas to be filled to minimum depth of 4 inches to bond existing and new materials. Mix with first fill layer.

D. Spread fill material evenly, from dumped piles or windrows, into horizontal layers approximately parallel to finished grade. Place to meet specified compacted thickness. Break clods and lumps and mix materials by blading, harrowing, disking or other approved method. Extend each layer across full width of fill.

E. Each layer shall be homogeneous and contain uniform moisture content before compaction. Mix dissimilar abutting materials to prevent abrupt changes in composition of fill.

F. Layers shall not exceed the following compacted thickness:

1. Areas indicated to be under future paving or shoulders, to be constructed within 6 months: 6 inches when compacted with pneumatic rollers, or 8 inches when compacted with other rollers.

2. Other areas: 12 inches

G. For steep slopes, cut benches into slope and scarify before placing fill. Place increasingly wider horizontal layers of specified depth to level of each bench.

H. Build embankment layers on back slopes, adjacent to existing roadbeds, to level of old roadbed. Scarify top of old roadbed to minimum depth of 4 inches and recompact with next fill layer.

I. Construct to lines and grades shown on Drawings.

J. Remove unsuitable material and excess soil not being used for embankment from site in accordance with requirements of Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

K. Maintain moisture content of embankment materials to attain required density.

L. Compact to following minimum densities at moisture content of optimum to 3 percent above optimum as determined by ASTM D 698, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:

1. Areas under future paving and shoulders: Minimum density of 95 percent of maximum dry density.

2. Other areas: Minimum density of 90 percent of maximum dry density.

3.06 TOLERANCES

A. Top of compacted surface: Plus or minus 1/2 inch in cross section or 16 foot length.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Compaction Testing will be performed in accordance with ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 2922 and ASTM D 3017 under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. A minimum of three tests will be taken for each 1000 linear feet per lane of roadway or 500 square yards of embankment per lift.

C. If tests indicate work does not meet specified compaction requirements, recondition, recompact, and retest at no cost to City.

END OF SECTION

Section 02336

LIME STABILIZED SUBGRADE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Foundation course of lime stabilized subgrade material.

1. Application of lime slurry to subgrade.

2. Mixing, compaction, and curing of lime slurry, water, and subgrade into a stabilized foundation.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Measurement and payment for lime stabilized subgrade is on a square yard basis compacted in place to proper density. Separate measurement will be made for each required thickness of subgrade course.

   a. Limits of measurement shall match actual pavement replaced, but no greater than maximum pavement replacement limits shown on Drawings. Limits for measurement will be extended to include installed lime stabilized subgrade material that extends 2 foot beyond outside edge of pavement to be replaced, except where proposed pavement section shares common longitudinal or transverse edge with existing pavement section. No payment will be made for lime stabilized subgrade in areas beyond these limits.

   b. Limits of measurement and payment shall match pavement replacement limits shown on Drawings, except as noted in Paragraph 1.02.A.1.a, or as approved by Project Manager.

2. Measurement and payment for lime is by ton of 2000 pounds dry weight basis. Calculate weight of dry solids for lime slurry based on percentage by dry weight solids.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 DEFINITION

B. Moist Cure: Curing soil and lime to obtain optimum hydration.

C. 1000-Foot Roadway Section: 1000 feet per lane width or approximately 500 square yards of compacted subgrade for other than full-lane-width roadway sections.

1.04 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft^3 (600 kN-m/m^3).

B. ASTM D 2922 - Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

C. ASTM D 4318 - Standard Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.

D. TxDOT Tex-101-E (Part III) - Preparation of Soil and Flexible Base Material for Testing.

E. TxDOT Tex-140-E - Measuring Thickness of Pavement Layer.

F. TxDOT Tex-600-J - Sampling and Testing Hydrated Lime, Quicklime, and Commercial Lime Slurry.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit certification that hydrated lime, quicklime, or commercial lime slurry complies with specifications.

C. Submit weight tickets, certified by supplier, with each bulk delivery of lime to work site.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Bagged lime shall bear manufacturer's name, product identification, and certified weight. Bags varying more than 5 percent of certified weight may be rejected; average weight of 50 random bags in each shipment shall not be less than certified weight.

B. Store lime in weatherproof enclosures. Protect lime from ground dampness.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 WATER

A. Use clean, clear water, free from oil, acids, alkali, or vegetation.

2.02 LIME

A. Type A - Hydrated Lime: Dry material consisting essentially of calcium hydroxide or mixture of calcium hydroxide and an allowable percentage of calcium oxide as listed in chemical composition chart.

B. Type B - Commercial Lime Slurry: Liquid mixture consisting essentially of lime solids and water in slurry form. Water or liquid portion shall not contain dissolved material in sufficient quantity to be injurious or objectionable for purpose intended.

C. Type C - Quicklime: Dry material consisting essentially of calcium oxide. Furnish quicklime in either of the following grades:

1. Grade DS: Pebble quicklime of gradation suitable for use in preparation of slurry for wet placing.

2. Grade S: Finely-graded quicklime for use in preparation of slurry for wet placing. Donor use grade S quicklime for dry placing.

D. Conform to the following requirements:

CHEMICAL COMPOSITION	TYPE		
	A	B	C
Active lime content, % by weight $Ca(OH)_2$+CaO	90.0 min[1]	87.0 min[2]	-
Unhydrated lime content, % by weight CaO	5.0 max	-	87.0 min
Free water content, % by weight H_2O :	5.0 max	-	-
SIZING			
Wet Sieve, as % by weight residue retained:			
No. 6	0.2 max	0.2 max[2]	8.0 max[3]
No. 30	4.0 max	4.0 max[2]	-
Dry sieve, as % by weight residue retained:			
1-inch	-	-	0.0
1/2-inch	-	-	10.0 max

Notes:
1. Maximum 5.0% by weight CaO shall be allowed in determining total active lime content.
2. Maximum solids content of slurry.
3. Total active lime content, as CaO, in material retained on No. 6 sieve shall not exceed 2.0% by weight of original Type C lime.

E. Deliver lime slurry to job site as commercial lime, or prepare at job site by using hydrated lime or quicklime. Provide slurry free of liquids other than water and of consistency that can be handled and uniformly applied without difficulty.

F. Lime containing magnesium hydroxide is prohibited.

2.03 SOIL

A. Soil to receive lime treatment may include borrow or existing subgrade material, existing pavement structure, or combination of all three. Where existing pavement or base material is encountered, pulverized or scarify material so that 100 percent of sampled material passes 2-inch sieve.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify compacted subgrade will support imposed loads.

B. Verify subgrade lines and grades.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Complete backfill of utilities prior to stabilization.

B. Cut material to bottom of subgrade using an approved cutting and pulverizing machine meeting following requirements:

1. Cutters accurately provide smooth surface over entire width of cut to plane of secondary grade.

2. Provide cut to depth as specified or shown in the Drawings.

C. Alternatively, scarify or excavate to bottom of stabilized subgrade. Remove material or windrow to expose secondary grade. Obtain uniform stability.

D. Correct wet or unstable material below secondary grade by scarifying, adding lime, and compacting as directed by Project Manager.

E. Pulverize existing material so that 100 percent passes a 1-3/4-inch sieve.

3.03 LIME SLURRY APPLICATION

A. Apply slurry with distributor truck equipped with an agitator to keep lime and water in consistent mixture. Make successive passes over measured section of roadway to attain proper moisture and lime content. Limit spreading to an area where preliminary mixing operations can be completed on same working day.

B. Minimum lime content shall be 5 percent of dry unit weight of subgrade as determined by ASTM D 698

3.04 PRELIMINARY MIXING

A. Use approved single-pass or multiple-pass rotary speed mixers to mix soil, lime, and water to required depth. Obtain homogeneous friable mixture free of clods and lumps.

B. Shape mixed subgrade to final lines and grades.

C. Eliminate following operations and final mixing if pulverization requirements of Paragraph 3.05C can be met during preliminary mixing:
   1. Seal subgrade as precaution against heavy rainfall by rolling lightly with light pneumatic rollers.

   2. Cure soil lime material for 24 to 72 hours or as required to obtain optimum hydration. Keep subgrade moist during cure.

3.05 FINAL MIXING

A. Use approved single-pass or multiple-pass rotary speed mixers to uniformly mix cured soil and lime to required depth.

B. Add water to bring moisture content of soil mixture to optimum or above.

C. Mix and pulverize until all material passes 13/4-inch sieve; minimum of 85 percent, excluding non-slacking fractions, passes 3/4-inch sieve; and minimum of 60 percent excluding non-slacking fractions passes No. 4 sieve. Test according to TxDOT Tex-101-E, Part III using dry method.

D. Shape mixed subgrade to final lines and grades.

E. Do not expose hydrated lime to open air for 6 hours or more during interval between application and mixing. Avoid excessive hydrated lime loss due to washing or blowing.

3.06 COMPACTION

A. Aerate or sprinkle to attain optimum moisture content to 3 percent above optimum, as determined by ASTM D 698 on material sample from roadway after final mix with lime.

B. Start compaction immediately after final mixing.

C. Spread and compact in two or more equal layers where total compacted thickness is greater than equipment manufacturer's recommended range of mixing and compaction.

D. Compact with approved heavy pneumatic or vibrating rollers, or combination of tamping rollers and light pneumatic rollers. Begin compaction at bottom and continue until entire depth is uniformly compacted.

E. Do not allow stabilized subgrade to mix with underlying material. Correct irregularities or weak spots immediately by replacing material and recompacting.

F. Compact subgrade to minimum density of 95 percent of maximum dry density, according to ASTM D 698, at moisture content of optimum to 3 percent above optimum, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:

G. Seal with approved light pneumatic tired rollers. Prevent surface hair line cracking. Rework and recompact at areas where hairline cracking develops.

3.07 CURING

A. Moist cure for minimum of 3 days before placing base or surface course, or opening to traffic. Subgrade may be opened to traffic after 2 days when adequate strength has been attained to prevent damage. Restrict traffic to light pneumatic rollers or vehicles weighing less than 10 tons.

B. Keep subgrade surface damp by sprinkling. Roll with light pneumatic roller to keep surface knit together.

C. Place base or surface within 14 days after final mixing and compaction. Restart compaction and moisture content of base material when time is exceeded.

3.08 TOLERANCES

A. Completed surface: smooth and conforming to typical section and established lines and grades.

B. Top of compacted surface: Plus or minus 1/4 inch in cross section or in 16-foot length.

C. Depth of lime stabilization shall be plus or minus one inch of specified depth for each 1000-foot roadway section.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Test soils, lime, and mixtures as follows:

1. Tests and analysis of soil materials will be performed in accordance with ASTM D 4318, using the wet preparation method.

2. Sampling and testing of lime slurry shall be in accordance with TxDOT Tex-600-J, except using a lime slurry cup.

3. Sample mixtures of hydrated lime or quicklime in slurry form will be tested to establish compliance with specifications.

4. Moisture-density relationship will be established on material sampled from roadway, after stabilization with lime and final mixing, in accordance with ASTM 698, Moist preparation Method.

C. In-place depth will be evaluated for each 1000-foot roadway section and determined in accordance with TxDOT Tex-140-E in hand excavated holes. For each 1000-foot section, 3 phenolphthalein tests will be performed. Average stabilization depth for 1000-foot section will be based on average depth for three tests.

D. Perform compaction testing in accordance with ASTM D 2922. Three tests will be performed for each 1000-foot roadway section.

E. Pulverization analysis will be performed as required by Paragraph 3.05C on material sampled during mixing of each production area. Three tests will be performed per 1000-foot roadway section or a minimum of once daily.

3.10 REWORK OF FAILED SECTIONS

A. Rework sections that do not meet specified thickness.

B. Perform the following steps when more than 72 hours have lapsed since completion of compaction.

1. Moist cure for minimum of 3 days after compaction to required density.

2. Add lime at rate of 25 percent of specified rate at no additional cost to City.

3. Moisture density test of reworked material must be completed by laboratory before field compaction testing can be completed.

3.11 PROTECTION

A. Maintain stabilized subgrade to lines and grades and in good condition until placement of base or surface course. Protect asphalt membrane from being picked up by traffic.

B. Repair defects immediately by replacing material to full depth.

END OF SECTION

Section 02337

LIME/FLY ASH STABILIZED SUBGRADE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Foundation course of lime/fly ash stabilized subgrade material.

1. Application of lime slurry and fly ash to subgrade

2. Mixing, compaction, and curing of lime, slurry, fly ash, water and subgrade into a stabilized foundation

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Measurement and payment for lime/fly ash stabilized subgrade is on a square yard basis compacted in place to proper density. Separate measurement will be made for each required thickness of subgrade course.

   a. Limits of measurement shall match actual pavement replaced, but no greater than the maximum pavement replacement limits shown on Drawings. Limits for measurement will be extended to include installed lime/fly ash stabilized subgrade material that extends 2 foot beyond outside edge of pavement to be replaced, except where proposed pavement section shares a common longitudinal or transverse edge with existing pavement section. No payment will be made for lime/fly ash stabilized subgrade in areas beyond these limits.

   b. Limits of measurement and payment shall match pavement replacement limits shown on Drawings, except as noted in Paragraph 1.02.A.1.a, or as approved by Project Manager

2. Payment for hydrated lime and quicklime is by ton of 2000 pounds dry-weight basis

3. Payment for commercial lime slurry is by ton of 2000 pounds of lime calculated on percentage by weight of dry solids for grade of slurry

4. Payment for fly ash is on unit price basis per ton

5. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Moist Cure: Curing soil lime/fly ash material to obtain optimum hydration.

B. 1000-Foot Roadway Section: 1000 feet per lane width or approximately 500 square yards of compacted subgrade for other than full-lane-width roadway sections.

1.04 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 618 - Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcinated Natural Pozzolan for use as Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit certification that fly ash, hydrated lime, quicklime, or commercial lime slurry complies with these specifications.

C. Submit weight tickets, certified by supplier, with each bulk delivery of materials to work site.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Conform to requirements of Section 02336 - Lime Stabilized Subgrade.

B. Quicklime can be dangerous; exercise extreme caution if used for Work. Become informed about recommended precautions in handling, storage and use of quicklime.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Water: clean, clear and free from oil, acids, alkali, or vegetable matter.

B. Conform to requirements of Section 02336 - Lime Stabilized Subgrade for Type A hydrated lime, Type C quicklime, and Type B commercial lime slurry.

C. Fly ash: Residue or ash remaining after burning finely pulverized coal at high temperatures conforming to requirements of ASTM C 618, Type ‘C” or “F” and following:

1. Minimum CaO content of 20 percent
2. Loss on ignition not to exceed 3 percent

3. Contain no lignite ash

D. Asphaltic Seal Cure: Conform to requirements of Section 02336 - Lime Stabilized Subgrade.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Conform to Part 3 of Section 02336 - Lime Stabilized Subgrade with following exceptions:

1. Include fly ash in percentage amounts in lime or lime slurry as established from geotechnical evaluation for application, mixing, and compaction.

2. Apply lime/fly ash as single mix, single pass over lower PI soils.

3. Conduct operations to minimize elapsed time between mixing and compacting lime/fly ash stabilized subgrade in order to take advantage of rapid initial set characteristics. Complete compaction within 2 hours of commencing compaction and not more than 6 hours after adding and mixing last stabilizing agent.

3.02 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Soil will be sampled to establish percent of fly ash and hydrated lime, quicklime, or lime slurry to be applied to subgrade material.

C. Testing will be in accordance with Part 3 of Section 2336-Lime-Stabilized Subgrade.

END OF SECTION

Section 02338

PORTLAND CEMENT STABILIZED SUBGRADE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Foundation course of portland cement stabilized natural subgrade material.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for Portland cement stabilized subgrade is on a square yard basis compacted in place to proper density. Separate measurement will be made for each different required thickness of subgrade course.

   a. Limits of measurement shall match actual pavement replaced, but no greater than maximum pavement replacement limits shown on Drawings. Limits for measurement will be extended to include installed portland cement stabilized subgrade material that extends 2 foot beyond outside edge of pavement to be replaced, except where proposed pavement section shares common longitudinal or transverse edge with existing pavement section. No payment will be made for portland cement stabilized subgrade in areas beyond these limits.

   b. Limits of measurement and payment shall match pavement replacement limits shown on Drawings, except as noted in Paragraph 1.02.A.1.a, or as approved by Project Manager

2. Payment for Portland cement is by ton of 2000 pounds dry-weight basis.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.

B. ASTM D 558 - Standard Test Method for Moisture-Density Relations of Soil-Cement-Mixtures.

C. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12.44 ft-lbf/ft^3).

D. ASTM D 2922 - Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

E. ASTM D 4318 - Standard Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit certification that Portland cement complies with these specifications.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 WATER

A. Water: clean, clear and free from oil, acids, alkali, or organic matter.

2.02 PORTLAND CEMENT

A. ASTM C 150 Type I; bulk or sacked.

2.03 SOIL

A. Provide soil consisting of approved material free from vegetation or other objectionable matter encountered in existing roadbed.

2.04 TESTS

A. Testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Tests and analysis of soil materials will be performed in accordance with ASTM D 4318.

C. Soil will be evaluated to establish ratio of cement to soil to obtain desired stability. Normal range is 6 percent to 10 percent by weight.

D. The percentage of moisture in soil, at time of cement application, will be determined by ASTM D 558. Moisture will not be allowed to exceed quantity that will permit uniform, complete mixture of soil and cement during dry mixing operations nor specified optimum moisture content for soil cement mixture, as determined.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify compacted subgrade is ready to support imposed loads.

B. Verify subgrade lines and grades are correct.

3.02 EQUIPMENT

A. Apply Portland cement treatment with machine or combination of machines and auxiliary equipment to produce specified results. Mixing may be accomplished by multiple-pass traveling mixing plant or single-pass traveling mixing plant. Provide sufficient equipment to enable continuous prosecution of work

3.03 PREPARATION

A. Backfill for utilities below future grade.

B. Verify subgrade is firm and able to support, without displacement, construction equipment at specified density. Correct soft or yielding subgrade and stabilize by scarifying and aerating or by adding cement and compacting to uniform stability.

C. Grade, shape, and compact, as required, to allow construction of Portland cement treatment for in-place materials to lines, grades, thickness, and typical cross section shown on Drawings. Remove unsuitable soil or material and replace with acceptable material.

D. Pulverize soil so that at completion of moist-mixing, 100 percent by dry weight passes 1-inch sieve, and minimum of 80 percent passes No. 4 sieve, exclusive of gravel or stone retained on these sieves. Pulverize existing bituminous wearing surfaces so that 100 percent will pass 2-inch sieve.

3.04 MIXING

A. Do not place and mix cement when temperature is below 40 degrees F and falling. Place base when temperature taken in shade and away from artificial heat is above 35 degrees F and rising.

B. Spread cement uniformly on soil at rate specified by laboratory. When bulk cement spreader is used, position it by string lines or other approved method to ensure uniform distribution of cement. Apply cement only to area where operations can be continuous and completed in daylight, within 1 hour of application. Amount of moisture in soil at time of cement placement shall not exceed quantity that will permit uniform mixture of soil and cement during dry mixing operations. Do not exceed specified optimum moisture content for soil cement mixture.

C. Do not allow equipment other than that used in spreading and mixing, to pass over freshly spread cement until it is mixed with soil.

D. Dry mix cement with soil after cement application. Continue mixing until cement has been sufficiently blended with soil to prevent formation of cement balls when water is applied. Mixture of soil and cement that has not been compacted and finished shall not remain undisturbed for more than 30 minutes.

E. Immediately after dry mixing is complete, uniformly apply water as necessary and incorporate it into mixture. Pressurized equipment must provide adequate supply to ensure continuous application of required amount of water to sections being processed within 3 hours of cement application. Ensure proper moisture distribution at all times. After last increment of water has been added, continue mixing until thorough and uniform mix has been obtained.

F. Ensure percentage of moisture in mixture, based on dry weights, is within 2 percentage points of specified optimum moisture content prior to compaction. When uncompacted soil cement mixture is wetted by rain indicating that average moisture content exceeds tolerance given at time of final compaction, reconstruct entire section in accordance with this Section at no additional cost to City.

3.05 COMPACTION

A. Prior to beginning compaction, ensure mixture is in loose condition for its full depth. Uniformly compact the loose mixture to specified density, lines, and grades.

B. After soil and cement mixture is compacted, apply water uniformly as needed and mix thoroughly. Then reshape surface to required lines, grades, and cross section and lightly scarify to loosen imprints left by compacting or shaping equipment.

C. Roll resulting surface with pneumatic-tired roller and "skin" surface with power grader. Thoroughly compact mixture with pneumatic roller, adding small increments of moisture, as needed. When aggregate larger than No. 4 sieve is present in mixture, make one complete coverage of section with flat-wheel roller immediately after skinning operation. When approved by Project Manager, surface finishing methods may be varied from this procedure, provided dense uniform surface, free of surface compaction planes, is produced. Maintain moisture content of surface material at its specified optimum during finishing operations. Compact and finish surface within period not to exceed 2 hours, to produce smooth, closely knit surface, free of cracks, ridges, or loose material, conforming to crown, grade, and line shown on Drawings within period not to exceed 2-hours.

3.06 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

A. At end of each day's construction, form straight transverse construction joint by cutting back into total width of completed work to form true 2-inch depth vertical face free of loose and

shattered material. Construct cement treatment for large wide areas in series of parallel lanes of convenient length and width approved in advance by Project Manager.

3.07 CURING

A. Moist cure for minimum of 3 days before placing base or surface course, or opening to traffic. When open, restrict traffic to light pneumatic rollers or vehicles weighing less than 10 tons.

B. Keep subgrade surface damp by sprinkling. Roll with light pneumatic roller to keep surface knit together.

C. Place base and surface within 14 days after final mixing and compaction, unless prior approval is obtained from Project Manager.

3.08 TOLERANCES

A. Completed surface: smooth and conforming to typical section and established lines and grades.

B. Top of compacted surface: Plus or minus 1/4 inch in cross section or in 16-foot length.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. In-place density will be determined in accordance with ASTM D 2922 or ASTM D 698. Minimum of three tests will be taken for each 1000 feet per lane of roadway or 500 square yards of embankment.

3.10 PROTECTION

A. Maintain stabilized subgrade to lines and grades and in good condition until placement of base or surface course.

B. Repair defects immediately by replacing material to full depth.

END OF SECTION

Section 02400

TUNNEL SHAFTS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Construction, maintenance, and backfilling requirements of tunnel shafts.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Tunnel shafts, both those shown on Drawings and those additional ones needed for Contractor's operations, are bid as lump sum for all shafts, collectively. Prior to construction, provide schedule of values as specified in Section 01292 - Schedule of Values. Itemize cost by station for each shaft designated on Drawings and additionally required for construction operations. Seventy five percent of itemized amount will be submitted on pay estimate upon shaft installation; twenty five percent will be submitted on pay estimate upon backfill and site restoration (including topsoil, sodding and hydro-mulching). Payment will include excavation, disposal of excavated materials, ground support systems, backfilling, and cleanup. Manholes constructed in tunnel shafts are to be paid separately at contract unit price as specified in Section 02081 - Cast-in-place Concrete Manholes or Section 02082 - Precast Concrete Manholes.

2. Include removal and replacement of surface improvements necessary for shaft construction, such as sidewalks, asphaltic or concrete pavement, base and subbase, curbs, curb and gutter, driveways, topsoil, sodding, and hydro-mulch in lump sum for shafts.

3. Pay for relocation of City-owned utilities at contract unit price, only when included in Document 00405 - Schedule of Unit Price Work.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Shaft design submittals by Contractor shall be signed and sealed by Professional Engineer registered in State of Texas.

C. Submit shaft construction drawings and seal slabs. Clearly indicate allowable surcharge loads and restrictions on surcharge capacity, including live loads, on shaft construction drawings. Indicate thrust blocks or other reactions required for pipe jacking, when applicable.

2. Location of shafts by station and limits of working sites.

3. Description of site security arrangements in conformance with Paragraph 3.03, Shaft Construction.

4. Description of method of extending shaft above flood level in conformance with Paragraph 3.03, Shaft Construction.

5. Any geotechnical / boring undertaken by Contractor for whatever purpose connected to Work.

D. Shaft Monitoring Plan: Submit for review prior to construction, shaft monitoring plan that includes schedule of instrumentation design, layout of instrumentation parts, equipment installation details, manufacturer's catalog literature, and monitoring report forms.

E. Structures Assessment. Provide preconstruction and post-construction assessment reports for critical structures located within radius of shaft center equal to shaft depth plus shaft radius, measured in plan. Include photographs or video of any existing damage to structures in vicinity of shafts in assessment reports.

F. Submit shaft surface settlement monitoring plan for review prior to construction. Identify location of settlement monitoring points, reference benchmarks, survey frequency and procedures, and reporting formats on plan.

G. Submit readings of monitoring plans to Project Manager as soon as readings have been taken.

H. Submit shaft temporary deck drawings and calculations to Project Manager, signed and sealed by Contractor's Professional Engineer in event that shaft is not needed for immediate construction activity, in conformance with Paragraph 3.03, Shaft Construction.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Shaft design must include allowance for contractor's equipment and stored material and spoil stockpile as appropriate.

B. Design shaft to withstand full hydrostatic head without failure. In case of common shaft in conformance to Section 02401- Common Tunnel Shafts, design shaft with adequate factor of safety for full hydrostatic head.

C. Design shaft located within 50-year flood plain with water retaining liner extending 2 feet above 50-year flood elevation. It is acceptable when liner is stored at site for immediate installation in lieu of it being installed at shaft, provided that shaft liner extends at least 2 feet above existing ground elevation.

D. Design shaft cover for minimum 25 pounds per square foot distributed load plus 300-pound point load.

E. Design steel plate deck, when required, for H-20 loading.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S (Not Used)

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 LOCATION OF ACCESS SHAFTS

A. Contractor has sole responsibility for selection of shaft sites needed for construction operations unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Location will be subject to the approval of the Project Manager.

B. Locate shafts and associated work areas to avoid blocking driveways and cross streets, and to minimize disruption to business and commercial interests. Avoid shaft locations near areas identified as residential or potentially contaminated.

C. Plan shaft locations to minimize interference with storm drainage channels, ditches, water lines, sanitary sewers, storm water sewers or culverts, which, when damaged, could result in ground washout or flooding of shafts and tunnels.

3.02 UTILITY RELOCATION

A. Relocate utilities as shown on Drawings. Utility relocations required by Contractor for shaft construction shall take into account zone of potential settlement in vicinity of shaft.

B. Obtain approval from Project Manager for permanent relocations prior to relocating.

3.03 SHAFT CONSTRUCTION

A. Conform to the following for ground support systems:

1. Install liner elements, bracing and shoring structural members at locations and in method sequence and tolerances defined on shaft construction drawings as excavation progresses.

2. Ensure bracing and shoring are in contact with liner to provide full support as shown in shaft construction drawings. Evaluate and check modifications to liner, bracing and shoring. Obtain approval from Contractor's Professional Engineer and submit to Project Manager.

3. Install seal slab as soon as final depth and stable bottom conditions have been reached and accepted by Project Manager. Construct seal slab capable of withstanding full piezometric pressure, either by pressure relief using under drains, or in case of more permeable ground condition, by use of structural reinforced slab. Construct seal slab in accordance with design provided by Contractor's Professional Engineer.

4. Design and construct entire shaft to appropriate factors of safety against yield, deformation, or instability as determined by Contractor's Professional Engineer. Shaft must withstand full hydrostatic head without failure.

5. Special framing, bracing or shoring required around tunnel "eyes" or other penetrations shall be in-place according to shaft construction drawings before liner or any bracing or shoring at penetration is cut or removed.

6. Securely breast and shore face of starter or back tunnels to resist both soil and hydrostatic pressure.

7. When applicable, pressure grout voids or seepage paths around shafts and adjoining tunnels in accordance with Section 02431- Tunnel Grout. Pressure grout bolted steel liner plates as they are installed, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager. Perform secondary or 'back grouting' as ground measurement, voids or deformation of shaft liner are detected.

B. Install suitable thrust or reaction blocks as required for pipe jacking equipment.

C. Provide drainage from shafts while work is in progress and until adjacent pipe joints have been sealed and shaft is backfilled. Conform to requirements of Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

D. Surface Water Control. Divert surface water runoff and discharge from dewatering system away from shaft. Protect shafts from infiltration or flooding.

E. Each surface work site is to be surrounded by security fence meeting requirements of Section 01504 - Temporary Facilities and Controls, which shall be secure any time site is unattended by Contractor's personnel.

F. Protect shaft, when not in use by second security fence at perimeter of shaft, or alternatively by cover designed in accordance with Paragraph 1.04, Performance Requirements.

G. Provide portable concrete traffic barriers at locations where work site is situated adjacent to highway, road, driveway, or parking lot. Angle traffic barriers in direction of lane flow. Do not place perpendicular to on-coming traffic.

H. Provide and maintain traffic control system in accordance with provision of Section 01555 - Traffic Control and Regulation.

I. Cover shaft which is constructed more than 60 days in advance of its intended use by steel plate deck designed by Contractor's Professional Engineer, and restore surface to permit full traffic flow during time shaft is not in use. Remove from site other material and equipment used by Contractor including portable concrete traffic barriers, traffic control system, fencing and reinstall at time shaft is re-opened for use.

J. Construct suitable guardrail barrier around periphery of shaft, meeting applicable safety standards. Properly maintain barrier throughout period shaft remains open. Repair broken boards, supports, and structural members. Provide ladder with safety cage, when required by OSHA, in each shaft. Provide security barrier for each access shaft in which there is no construction activity or which is unattended by Contractor's personnel.

K. Size of Shafts: Make size adequate for construction of permanent structures indicated on Drawings and to provide adequate room to meet operational requirements for tunnel construction and backfill.

3.04 BACKFILL

A. Provide cement-stabilized sand to minimum depth of 10 feet above crown of sanitary sewer, but where shaft is located in paved area, cement-stabilized sand shall be used to within one foot of pavement subgrade elevation. Provide cement-stabilized sand in accordance with Section 02321 - Cement-stabilized Sand. Compact cement-stabilized sand in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. In locations where backfill is not subject to traffic loading, depth above initial cement-stabilized sand may be backfilled with select backfill in accordance with Section 02316 - Excavation and Backfill of Structures. When insufficient work space exists, Grout manhole or structure annular space in accordance with Section 02431 - Tunnel Grout.

B. Remove shaft liner above level of 8 feet below ground surface, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Maintain sufficient ground support to meet excavation safety requirements while removing shaft structure.

C. Where common shafts are indicated, refer to Section 02401 - Common Tunnel Shafts.

3.05 MONITORING

A. Monitoring Instrumentation. Instrumentation specified and readings shall be accessible at all times to Project Manager.

1. Install and maintain instrumentation system to monitor and detect movement of ground surface and adjacent structures. Establish vertical survey control points at distance from construction area that avoids disturbance due to ground settlement.

2. Project Manager may through independent contractor or consultant, from installing instrumentation in, on, near, or adjacent to construction work. Provide access to work for such independent installations.

3. Install instruments in accordance with Drawings and manufacturer's recommendations.

D. Surface Settlement Monitoring

1. Establish monitoring points on all critical structures.

2. Record location of settlement monitoring points with respect to construction baselines and elevations. Record elevations to an accuracy of 0.01 feet for each monitoring point location. Establish monitoring points at locations and by methods that protect them from damage by construction operations, tampering, or other external influences.

3. Monitoring points to measure ground elevation are required at distance of 10 feet and 20 feet from perimeter of shaft on each of four radial lines, at 90 degrees to each other.

4. Railroads. Monitor ground settlement of track subbase at centerline of each track when within zone of potential settlement.

C. Reading Frequency and Reporting. Submit to Project Manager, records of readings from various instruments and survey points.

1. Record all shaft monitoring readings at least once per week starting prior to shaft construction and continuing until shaft has been backfilled and until no more detectable movement occurs.

2. Immediately report to Project Manager any movement, cracking, or settlement which is detected.

3. Following substantial completion but prior to final completion, make final survey of all shaft related monitoring points.

3.06 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS MATERIAL

A. Remove spoil in accordance with Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

END OF SECTION

Section 02425

TUNNEL EXCAVATION AND PRIMARY LINER

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Tunnel construction by placement of primary liner for installation of pipe using a primary tunnel liner with a carrier pipe. Placement of sewer pipe inside tunnel constructed with primary liner shall be in accordance with Section 02426 - Sewer Line in Tunnels.

B. Various construction methods for tunneling, including tunnel boring machine (TBM), hand tunneling, or shield. Liners include rib and lagging, steel liner plate, bolted steel liner, box tunnels, and segmented concrete. Liners may be expanded or grouted.

C. Install liner types as shown on Drawings. Use techniques and liner methods appropriate for prevailing ground conditions, unless otherwise indicated.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Work performed under this Section such as excavation, primary liner, and grouting will not be paid directly. Include cost of this work in unit prices for installation of sewer line in tunnel, in accordance with Section 02426 - Sanitary Sewer Line in Tunnels.

2. Monitoring will be paid for at lump sum price for installation, observation, and reporting.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in Total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO).

B. American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA) Manual for Railway Engineering.

C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).

1. ASTM A 36 - Standard Specifications for Carbon Structural Steel.

2. ASTM A 283 - Standard Specifications for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates.

3. ASTM A 307 - Standard Specifications for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength.

D. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

1.04 DEFINITION

A. Primary liner: First tunnel support installed by Contractor in 2-pass method.

B. Carrier pipe: Sewer line as specified in Section 02426 - Sewer Line in Tunnels.

C. Zone of Active Excavation. Area located within radial distance about surface point immediately above face of excavation equal to depth to bottom of excavation.

D. Critical Structure: Building, structure, bridge, pier, or similar construction partially or entirely located within zone of active excavation.

E. Tunnel Boring Machine (TBM): Mechanized and fully shielded excavating equipment that is steerable, guided and articulated, with man entry.

F. Tunneling Methodology: Written description, together with supporting documentation that defines Contractor's plans and procedures for tunneling operations.

G. Shield: Fabricated ground support, circular in section, providing 360 degree protection to those working in it. Shield will have cutting edge, and be equipped with independently operated hydraulic propulsion rams, allowing it to be steered. Liner is erected within tail attached to shield.

H. Open Face: Face of heading or tunnel which is unsupported during excavation (e.g., in hand mining or shield excavation).

I. Closed Face: Face of heading or tunnel which is supported during excavation process from TBM, where cutter head allows both partial exposure of face and full closure, by means of hydraulically operated gates.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. The following submittals are required:

1. Tunneling Methodology. Provide a brief description of proposed tunnel methodology for review. Description should be sufficient to convey following:

   a. Proposed method of tunnel construction and type of face support and lining system.

   b. Manufacturer and type of tunneling equipment proposed; type of lighting and ventilation systems.

   c. Number and duration of shifts planned to be worked each day.

   d. Sequence of operations.

   e. Location of access shafts and work sites.

   f. Method of spoil transportation from face, surface storage, and disposal location.

   g. Method of installing pipe.

   h. Identification of critical utility crossings and special precautions proposed.

   i. Manufacturer and type of chemical grout proposed.

2. Drawings and Calculations. Submit for record purposes, drawings and calculations for tunnel support system designed by Contractor. Drawings shall be adequate for construction, and include installation details. Documents must be signed and sealed by Professional Engineer registered in State of Texas. Include calculations with clear statement of criteria used for design, as described in Paragraph 1.06, Design Criteria.

3. Quality Control. Submit for review brief description of quality control methods including:

   a. Method and frequency of survey control.

   b. Example of tunnel daily log.

   c. Instrumentation plan showing location and frequency of monitoring relative to critical structures within zone of active excavation.

   d. Settlement survey plan (may be included in instrumentation plan).

4. Geotechnical Investigation. When geotechnical investigations are conducted by Contractor, submit results to Project Manager for record purposes.

5. Monitoring Plans:

   a. Instrumentation Monitoring Plan. Submit for review, prior to construction, monitoring plan that includes schedule of instrumentation design, layout of instrumentation points, equipment installation details, manufacturer's catalog literature, and monitoring report forms.

   b. Surface Settlement Monitoring Plan. Submit settlement monitoring plan for review prior to construction. Identify location of settlement monitoring points, reference benchmarks, survey frequency and procedures, and reporting formats on plan.

6. Structures Assessment. Submit preconstruction and post-construction assessment reports for critical structures, namely those located within zone of active excavation from proposed tunnel centerline. Include photographs or video of existing damage to structures in vicinity of sewer alignment in assessment reports.

7. Submit monitor readings to Project Manager.

8. Daily Reports. Maintain shift log as defined in Paragraph 3.04, Tunneling Data, and make available to Project Manager on request.

1.06 DESIGN CRITERIA

A. Provide primary liner designed by Contractor's Professional Engineer for appropriate loading conditions and deflection criteria, including but not limited to: overburden and lateral earth pressures; handling and installation stresses; loads imposed by tunnel shield or tunnel boring machine thrust jacks; subsurface soil and water loads; grouting; and other conditions of service. Assume responsibility for design of primary liner to carry construction loads in combination with overburden, earth and hydrostatic loads.

B. At railroad crossings conform to Cooper E-80 locomotive loading distributions in accordance with AREMA specifications for culverts. In design, account for additive loadings due to multiple tracks. Provide liner type for railroad crossings as specified or as shown on Drawings.

C. For truck loading use HS-20 vehicle loading distributions in accordance with AASHTO.

D. Use liner system compatible with special requirements shown on Drawings.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 STEEL LINER PLATES

A. In locations shown on Drawings, manufacture liner plate (2-flange or 4-flange) certified by manufacturer for compliance with Specifications.

B. Provide bolts and nuts conforming to ASTM A 307, Grade A.

C. Punch plates for bolting on both longitudinal and circumferential seams and fabricate to permit complete erection from inside tunnel. Provide plates of uniform fabrication. Plates intended for one size tunnel shall be interchangeable.

D. Material used for construction of liner plates shall be in good condition.

E. Provide sufficient number of bolted steel liner plates with approximately 2-inch diameter grout holes furnished with plugs. Locate holes near plate center.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Use methods for tunneling operations that will minimize ground settlement. Select method which will control flow of water, prevent loss of soil into tunnel, and provide stability of face under anticipated conditions.

B. Conduct tunneling operations in accordance with applicable safety rules and regulations, OSHA standards, and Contractor's safety plan. Use methods which include due regard for safety of workmen, adjacent structures, utilities, and public.

C. Maintain clean working conditions inside tunnel and shafts.

D. For tunneling under railroad embankments, highways, or streets, perform installation so as to avoid interference with operation of railroads, highways, or streets, except as approved by owner of facility.

E. Support ground continuously in manner to prevent loss of ground and keep perimeters and faces of tunnel stable.

F. Completed primary tunnel lining shall have full bearing against ground. Grout peripheral space between support elements and excavated surface or close by expanding support elements against ground to achieve full bearing as tunnel advances.

G. Ground Conditions. Perform additional exploration by geotechnical borings in advance of construction to define necessary parameters for design of primary tunnel liner, planning and designing ground water control system, and for selection of tunneling method and equipment to successfully complete each tunnel reach.

H. Be aware that various existing soil borings, piezometers, or instrument wells, where indicated on Drawings, may coincide with proposed tunnel alignment. These may or may not have been backfilled with grout and, therefore, caution should be used in tunneling through these locations. Contractor shall take mitigating measures to counter effect these boreholes, piezometers, or instrument wells may have on tunneling operations.

3.02 GROUND WATER CONTROL

A. Provide necessary ground water control measures to perform work and to provide safe working conditions. Comply with provisions of Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

B. Anticipate that portions of tunnel excavation may be below ground water table and in cohesionless soils, even when not indicated on soil borings, and in conditions which may require ground water control system for tunneling operations. Install filter fabrics, backer rods and other means as necessary to prevent piping of fines into tunnel.

C. When Contractor chooses pumping installations to control ground water level or installs pervious liner through water bearing layers, install and maintain instrumentation system to monitor water level and to detect movement in adjacent structures and property.

D. Operate dewatering system for tunnels until carrier pipe has been installed and annular space is fully grouted, or until watertight liner designed for hydrostatic pressures is installed.

E. Do not proceed with tunneling for which ground water control is necessary until monitoring data indicates that ground water control system is operating in accordance with Contractor's plan.

3.03 EQUIPMENT

A. Assume responsibility for selection of tunneling equipment which, based on past experience, has proven to be satisfactory for excavation of soils to be encountered.

B. Employ tunneling equipment that will be capable of handling various anticipated ground conditions and which minimizes loss of soil ahead of face and allows satisfactory support of excavated face.

C. TBM or shield shall conform to shape of tunnel with uniform perimeter that is free of projections that could produce over excavation or voids. An appropriately sized over cutting bead may be provided to facilitate steering. In addition it shall:

1. Be capable of full directional guidance.

2. Be capable of full face closure, or permit ready installation of breasting boards.

3. Be equipped with appropriate tail in which liner is erected.

4. Be capable of correcting roll.

5. Be designed to handle adverse ground conditions including ground water ingress.

6. Be equipped with visual display to show operator actual position of TBM or shield relative to design reference.

D. Air Quality. Provide equipment to maintain proper air quality of tunnel operations during construction in accordance with OSHA requirements.

E. Enclose light fixtures in watertight enclosures with suitable guards. Provide separate circuits for lighting and other equipment.

F. Conform to requirements of National Electrical Code - NFPA70 for Electrical systems.

3.04 TUNNELING DATA

A. Maintain shift logs of construction events and observations. Project Manager shall have access to Contractor's logs with regard to the following information:

1. Location of face by station and progress of tunnel drive during shift.

2. Hours worked per shift on tunneling operations.

3. Completed field forms for checking line and grade of tunneling operation, showing achieved tolerance relative to design alignment. Steering control logs will generally be acceptable for shield or TBM driven tunnels.

4. Location, elevation and brief soil descriptions of soil strata and strata boundaries.

5. Ground water control operations and piezometric levels, ground water inflow location and rates.

6. Observation of lost ground or other ground movement.

7. Unusual conditions or events.

8. Reasons for operational shutdown in event drive are halted.

B. Clearly mark primary liner with paint every 20 feet along tunnel with distance in feet from centerline of preceding shaft.

3.05 TUNNEL EXCAVATION AND PRIMARY LINER INSTALLATION

A. Tunnel Excavation.

1. Conduct tunneling operations in accordance with applicable safety rules and regulations, and Contractor's safety plan. Use methods which include due regard for safety of workmen, adjacent structures, utilities, and public.

2. Maintain tunnel excavation within easements and rights-of-way indicated on Drawings, to lines and grades shown on Drawings. Excavation shall be of sufficient size to allow installation of sewer pipe to lines and grades indicated on Drawings.

3. Open-face excavations:

   a. Keep face breasted or otherwise supported and prevent falls, excessive raveling, or erosion. Maintain standby face supports for immediate use when needed.

   b. During shut-down periods, support face of excavation by positive means; do not rely solely on hydraulic pressure for support.

4. Closed-face excavation:

   a. Control volume of spoil removed. Determine that advance rate and excavation rate are compatible to avoid over excavation or loss of ground.

   b. When cutting head is withdrawn, keep excavated face supported and stabilized.

   c. When face of machine is open for maintenance, monitor conditions that might threaten stability of heading. Take appropriate action to prevent or limit influx of soils and water which would threaten stability of heading.

5. Whenever condition is identified which could endanger tunnel excavation or adjacent structures, operate continually for 24 hours day, including weekends and holidays, without intermission until condition no longer exists.

B. Determination of primary liner size and section shall be sole responsibility of Contractor, to match construction methods and equipment described in tunneling methodology submittal. Provide tunnels of sufficient size to permit efficient excavation operations, sufficient working space for placing primary tunnel liner, and to allow for installation of sewer pipe.

C. Primary Liner Installation:

1. Provide method to ensure full bearing of soil against primary liner without significant settlement or movement of surrounding soil. To fill void behind primary liner, either expandable liner (e.g., ring beams and timber lagging) or non-expandable liner (e.g., bolted steel liner plates) may be used provided grout is placed behind non-expandable liner. Box tunnel where ground is excavated to true shape may be ungrouted.

2. When using TBM or tunnel shield, advance equipment only far enough to permit construction of one primary liner set, entirely within equipment shield.

3. Install filter fabric around exterior of primary liner when using steel ribs and lagging. Install backer rods at ribs as required to control migration of fines. Close windows in lagging.

4. After grouting, ensure deflection of liner is no more than allowable, nor liner is distorted by excessive pressure.

D. Seal blind headings with temporary bulkhead.

E. Grouting: Requirements pertaining to grout mix design and tunnel grouting are provided in Section 02431 - Tunnel Grout.

3.06 CONTROL OF TUNNEL LINE AND GRADE

A. Construction Control.

1. Project Manager will establish baselines and benchmarks indicated on Drawings. Check baselines and benchmarks at beginning of Work and report errors or discrepancies to Project Manager.

2. Use baselines and benchmarks established by Project Manager to establish and maintain construction control points, reference lines, and grades for locating tunnel.

3. Establish control points sufficiently far from face so as not to be affected by tunneling operations.

B. Benchmark Movement. Ensure that when settlement of ground surface occurs during construction which affects accuracy of temporary benchmarks, detect and report such movement and reestablish temporary bench marks. Locations of permanent City of Houston monumentation benchmarks are indicated on Drawings. Advise Project Manager of settlement affecting permanent monumentation benchmarks. Upon completion, submit field books pertaining to monitoring of permanent monumentation benchmarks to Project Manager.

C. Line and Grade.

1. Maintain means sufficient to check alignment and grade continuously.
2. Check survey control for tunneling against aboveground undisturbed reference at least once each week and once for each 250 feet of tunnel constructed.

3. When excavation is off line or grade, make alignment corrections to avoid reverse grades in gravity sewers.

4. Construct primary liner to such tolerances that permit installation of sewer pipe to be completed to tolerances given in Section 02426 - Sanitary Sewer Line in Tunnels.

D. Earth Movement. Assume responsibility for damages due to settlement from construction-induced activities or occurrences.

1. Survey crown, invert, and springline on each side of primary liner at 50-foot intervals or minimum of once per shift or more frequently when line and grade tolerances have been exceeded, to ensure alignment is within tolerances specified. Conduct survey immediately behind tunnel excavation to allow immediate correction of misalignment.

3.07 MONITORING

A. Instrumentation Monitoring. Instrumentation requirements are shown on Drawings. Ensure instrumentation specified is accessible to Project Manager. Submit readings promptly to Project Manager.

1. Install and maintain instrumentation system to monitor and detect movement of ground surface and adjacent structures. Establish vertical control points at distance from construction areas that avoids disturbance due to ground settlement.

2. Installation of instrumentation shall not preclude Project Manager, through independent contractor or consultant, from installing instrumentation in, on, near, or adjacent to construction work. Provide access to work for such independent installations.

3. Install instruments in accordance with Drawings and manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Surface Settlement Monitoring

1. Establish monitoring points on all critical structures.

2. Record location of settlement monitoring points with respect to construction baselines and elevations. Record elevations to accuracy of 0.01 feet for each monitoring point location. Monitoring points should be established at locations and by methods that protect them from damage by construction operations, tampering, or other external influences.

3. Ground surface elevations must be recorded on centerline ahead of tunneling operations at minimum of 100-foot intervals or at least three locations per tunnel drive. For primary lined tunnels greater than 60 inches cut diameter also record similar data at approximately 20 feet each side of centerline. Clearly mark settlement monitoring points by studs or paint for ease of locating.

4. Railroads. Monitor ground settlement of track subbase at centerline of each track.

5. Utilities and Pipelines. Monitor ground settlement directly above and 10 feet before and after utility or pipeline intersection.

C. Reading Frequency and Reporting. Submit to Project Manager, records of readings from various instruments and survey points.

1. Instrumentation monitoring results to be read at frequency specified, unless otherwise specified. Start monitoring before zone of active excavation is passed and until no further detectable movement occurs.

2. Record surface settlement monitoring readings:

   a. Prior to zone of active excavation reaching that point,

   b. When tunnel face reaches monitoring point (in plan), and

   c. When zone of active excavation has passed and no further movement is detected.

3. Submit monitoring readings promptly to Project Manager.

4. Immediately report to Project Manager movement, cracking, or settlement which is detected.

5. Following substantial completion, but prior to final completion, perform final survey of monitoring points.

3.08 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS MATERIAL

A. Remove spoil from job site and dispose in accordance with Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

END OF SECTION

Section 02426

SEWER LINE IN TUNNELS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Handling, transporting, and installing sanitary and storm sewer lines in primary lined tunnels.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Length of sewer installed in primary lined tunnels will be measured by linear foot along center line of completed sewer, center line to center line of manholes, as designated on Drawings, and to end of stubs or termination of pipe; and to inside face of lift stations and treatment plant works. Installation of sewer within limits of structure other than manholes will not be considered for measurement and payment at unit price bid.

2. Payment for installation of sewer in primary lined tunnels is on a linear foot basis.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum): If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in Total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Provide brief description of method of transporting carrier pipe into tunnel; method of hoisting and positioning pipe; method of jointing and aligning pipe; and blocking plan.

C. Submit buoyant force calculations, bulkhead design, and blocking details. Include in calculations analysis of stresses and deformation induced on carrier pipe. Submittal must be signed and sealed by Professional Engineer registered in State of Texas.

D. Submit as-built survey as described in Document 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers to Project Manager prior to substantial completion.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 PIPE MATERIAL AND FITTINGS

A. Sewer pipe may consist of fiberglass pipe (FRP), vitrified clay pipe (VCP), polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe, high density polyethylene (HDPE) pipe, plastic-lined reinforced concrete pipe (RCP), plastic-lined or epoxy lined ductile iron pipe (DIP) or combinations of these. Storm sewers do not require lining.

B. Assume responsibility for selecting appropriate pipes and pipe joints to safely carry loads imposed during construction.

2.02 FIBERGLASS PIPE

A. Provide fiberglass pipe, joints, and fittings in accordance with Section 02504 - Fiberglass Pipe.

2.03 VITRIFIED CLAY PIPE

A. Provide vitrified clay pipe, joints and fittings in accordance with Section 02508 - Extra Strength Clay Pipe.

2.04 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PIPE

A. Provide Polyvinyl chloride pipe, joints and fittings in accordance with Section 02506 - Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe.

2.05 HIGH DENSITY POLYETHYLENE PIPE

A. Provide High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Solid and Profile Wall pipe, joints and fittings in accordance with Section 02505 - High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Solid and Profile Wall Pipe.

2.06 DUCTILE IRON PIPE

A. As approved for pipe jacking applications, ductile iron pipe lined with polyethylene, polyurethane, or ceramic epoxy, and fittings to be in accordance with Section 02501 - Ductile Iron Pipe.

2.07 REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE

A. Provide reinforced concrete pipe, joints, and fittings in accordance with Section 02611 - Reinforced Concrete Pipe.

B. Provide plastic-liner for sanitary sewers in accordance with Section 02427 - Plastic Liner for Large Diameter Concrete Sewers and Structures.

2.08 ANNULAR GROUT

A. Provide for grouting of annular space between pipe and tunnel liner as specified in Section 02431 - Tunnel Grout.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Prior to installing sewer pipe, verify that primary liner has been constructed so that sewer pipe may be placed in conformance with specified tolerances.

B. Tolerances from lines and grades shown on Drawings for sewer pipe installed in primary liner are plus or minus 6 inches in horizontal alignment and plus or minus 1-1/2 inches in elevation. Should misalignment of primary liner preclude installation of sewer pipe to tolerances specified, notify Project Manager.

3.02 PIPE HANDLING

A. Handle and transport pipe into tunnel in manner that prevents damage to pipe, joints, gaskets, and plastic liner. Do not install pipe damaged during placement operations. Propose repair procedures for review and approval of Project Manager.

3.03 TUNNEL CLEANUP

A. Prior to pipe placement in tunnel, remove temporary tunnel utilities, such as electrical and ventilation. Remove loose material, dirt, standing water, and debris prior to pipe placement.

B. Temporary steel construction tracks or steel pipe skids may be left in place when they do not interfere with alignment of sewer pipe or interfere with final placement of annular grout.

3.04 INVERT PIPE SUPPORT

A. Provide support adequate to establish final pipe grade. Support may include screeded concrete, steel beam, or other method as designated by Contractor's Engineer. Secure pipe support to pipe or primary liner. When concrete is used for pipe support, cure it minimum of 12 hours prior to setting pipe.

3.05 JOINING PIPE IN TUNNELS

A. Join pipe segments to properly compress gaskets and allow for correct final positioning of pipe for line and grade. Closely align pipes by bringing them loosely together by means of hydraulic jacks, locomotives, pipemobiles, or winches. Once pipes have been loosely joined, pull them home by means of hydraulic tugger or other similar method suitably protecting

pipe and joints against damage. Impact jointing such as ramming with locomotives or other mechanical equipment is not permitted.

3.06 BLOCKING PIPE IN TUNNEL AND BULKHEADS

A. Install pipe blocking system. Use pipe blocking to position sewer pipe in tunnel to allow minimum of 4 inches of grout to be placed between sewer pipe and tunnel primary liner or casing.

B. Secure blocking rigidly in place without dependence on wedges to prevent dislodging during pipe placement and grouting operations.

C. Construct bulkheads to withstand imposed grout pressure without leakage. Provide adequate venting for bulkheads.

3.07 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

A. Perform as-built survey on installed sewer pipe. Take invert elevations at each pipe joint. Take two diameter readings, at right angles, randomly at average of 20 feet spacing or less in non-rigid pipe.

B. Test for leakage by low pressure air methods in accordance with Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers.

END OF SECTION

Section 02427

PLASTIC LINER FOR LARGE-DIAMETER CONCRETE SEWERS AND STRUCTURES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Installation of plastic liners for concrete interceptor sewers and structures. Only plastic liners manufactured with integral locking ribs spaced at approximately 2-1/2 inches on center over entire liner is acceptable. Liners relying on mechanically fastened batten strips as primary means of anchorage are unacceptable.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for Work performed under this Section. Cost is incidental to work of large diameter sewers, precast concrete manholes, or cast- in-place, wastewater-containing structures.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM D 412 - Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers-Tension.

B. ASTM D 2440 - Standard Test Methods for Oxidation Stability of Mineral Insulating Oil.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Prior to submittal of shop drawings, manufacturer shall approve proposed panel layout and proposed details. Contractor shall then submit shop drawings showing proposed panel layout to cover area to be lined. Show on shop drawings proposed details for installation of liner at seams, terminations, corners, openings, pipe penetrations, etc., and type of factory and field welds and attachments.

C. Provide sufficient details to permit placement of liner without use of design Drawings. Reproduction of design Drawings for use as shop drawings will not be allowed. Do not begin fabrication of liner until after shop drawings and submitted materials have been reviewed and accepted by Project Manager.

1.05 INSTALLER QUALIFICATIONS

A. Applicators. Application of plastic liner to forms and other surfaces, liner finishing, repair, and testing is considered highly specialized work and shall be performed only by firms and individuals recommended and approved by lining manufacturer. Personnel performing such work are to be trained in methods of installation and demonstrate their ability to Project Manager.

B. Welders.

1. Each welder is to pass qualification welding test before doing welding. Requalification may be required at time deemed necessary by Project Manager. Provide at least 24 hours notice to Project Manager to schedule qualification welding test.

2. Make test welds in presence of Project Manager. Test welds are to consist of following:

   a. Begin with two pieces of liner, at least 15 inches long and 9 inches wide. Hold pieces in vertical position, lapped 1-1/2 inches.

   b. Position weld strip over edge of lap and weld to both pieces of liner. Extend each end of weld strip at least 2 inches beyond liner to provide tabs.

3. The weld specimen will be tested as follows:

   a. Subject each weld strip tab, tested separately, to 10-pound pull normal to face of liner with liner secured firmly in place. Weld is acceptable when there is no separation between weld strip and liner.

   b. Cut three test specimens from welded sample and tested in tension across welds. Tensile strength measured across welded joints is to be at least 2000 psi when tested in accordance with ASTM D 412. When none of these specimens fails when tested as indicated above, weld will be considered satisfactory.

   c. If one specimen fails to pass tension test, retest will be permitted. Retest consists of testing three additional specimens cut from original welded sample. When three retest specimens pass test, weld will be considered satisfactory.

4. A disqualified welder may submit new weld sample when welder has had sufficient off-the-job training or experience to warrant re-examination.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Plastic liner shall be as manufactured by Ameron Protective Linings Division; Poly-Tee, Inc.; or approved equal.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Manufacturing.

1. Manufacture plastic liner sheet, joint, corner and weld strips from high molecular weight thermoplastic polymer compounded to make permanently flexible material suitable for use as protective liner in concrete pipe or other concrete structures. Polyvinyl chloride resin is to constitute not less than 99 percent by weight of resin used in formulation. Copolymer resins will not be permitted.

2. During manufacture or prior to final acceptance of Work, Project Manager may sample specimens taken from sheets, strips, or welded joints for testing.

3. Changes in formulation will be permitted only after prior notice is given to Project Manager and manufacturer demonstrates that new plastic liner will meet or exceed requirements for chemical resistance and physical properties.

B. Properties.

1. Plastic liner sheets including locking extensions, joints, corners, and welding strips are to be free of cracks, cleavages or other defects adversely affecting protective characteristics of material.

2. Except at shop welds, plastic liner sheets, joint, corner, and weld strips are to have the following properties when tested at 77 degrees F plus or minus 5 degrees F.

PROPERTY	ASTM TEST METHOD	CHEMICAL RESISTANCE TEST	
		INITIAL	AFTER CHEMICAL EXPOSURE (Note 1)
Tensile strength, min.	D 412, Die B	2200 psi	2100 psi
Elongation at break, min.	D 412, Die B	200 percent	200 percent
Shore durometer, Type D	D 2240, Within 1 sec.	50-60	±5 (Note 2)
	D 2240, 10 sec.	35-50	±5 (Note 2)
Weight change	(Note 3)	-----	±1.5 % (Note 2)

Notes:
1. For 112 days in chemical solutions
2. With respect to initial test results
3. Specimen to be 1 inch x 3 inch sample sheet thickness, taken from sheet or strip prior to final acceptance of work.

2.03 MATERIAL TESTS

A. Material Properties. Test samples taken from sheets, joints or weld strips to determine material properties. Determine PVC tensile strength and elongation in accordance with ASTM D 412 using Die B. Determine indentation hardness in accordance with ASTM D 2240 using Type D durometer, except that single thickness of material will be used. Determination of change of weight and indentation hardness is to be made of 1-inch by 3-inch specimens. Thickness of specimens shall be thickness of sheet or strip.

B. Measurement of Initial Physical Properties. Determine initial values for tensile strength, weight, elongation and indentation hardness prior to chemical resistance tests.

C. Chemical Resistance Tests.

1. Determine physical properties of specimens after exposure to chemical solutions. Condition test specimens to constant weight at 110 degrees F before and after submersion in the following solutions for period of 112 days at 77 degrees F plus or minus 5 degrees F.

Chemical Solution	Concentration
Sulfuric acid	20%*
Sodium hydroxide	5%
Ammonium hydroxide	5%*
Nitric acid	1%*
Ferric chloride	1 %
Soap	0.1 %
Detergent (linear alkyl benzyl sulfonate or LAS)	0.1%
Bacteriological	BOD not less than 700 ppm

* Volumetric percentages of concentrated C.P. grade reagents.

2. At 28 day intervals, remove specimens from each chemical solution and test. When specimen fails to meet 112-day property requirements specified in paragraph 2.02B before completion of 112-day exposure, material will be rejected.

D. Pull Test for Locking Extensions. Liner locking extensions embedded in concrete are to withstand test pull of at least 100 pounds per linear inch, applied perpendicularly to concrete surface for period of 1 minute, without rupture of locking extensions or withdrawal from embedment. Perform this test at temperature between 70 degrees F and 80 degrees F, inclusive.

E. Shop-Welded Joints. Shop-welded joints used to fuse individual sections of liner together, are to meet minimum requirements of liner for thickness, corrosion resistance and impermeability. Welds shall show no cracks or separations and be tested for tensile strength. Tensile strength, measured across welded joint in accordance with ASTM D 412 using Die B, shall be at least 2000 psi. Test temperature is to be 77 degrees F plus or minus 5 degrees F and use measured minimum width and thickness of reduced test specimen section.

F. Spark Test. Shop and field test liners for holidays or flaws using an approved spark tester set to provide minimum of 20,000 volts (Tinker and Rasor Model AP-W with power pack, or approved equal). Satisfactorily repair sheets having holes in shop prior to shipment from manufacturer's plant. Repairs shall be made by welders qualified in accordance with these specifications.

2.04 MATERIAL DETAILS AND DIMENSIONS

A. Approval of Details. Liner sheet, strip, and other accessory pieces are to conform to requirements of these Specifications.

B. Thickness of Material. Minimum thickness of PVC sheet and strip shall be as follows:

Material	Thickness in Inches
Sheet, integral locking extensions	0.065
Sheet, plain	0.094
Joint strip	0.094
Weld strip	0.125

C. Material Sizes. Use pipe-size sheets for sheets of PVC liner to provide coverage required by Drawings. Structural sheets are to be standard 48-inches by 96-inches, with special size noted on shop drawings. Lengths specified shall include tolerance at ratio of plus or minus 1/4-inch for each 100 inches, or 0.25 percent. Joint strips shall be 4 inches plus or minus 0.25 inch in width and have each edge beveled prior to application. Weld strips shall be 1 inch plus or minus 0.125 inch in width. Weld strips are to have edges beveled at time of manufacture.

D. Locking Extensions.

1. No polygrip-type holding or locking extension will be permitted.

2. PVC liner to be embedded in concrete is to have integral locking extensions. Liner may not be bonded to concrete surfaces with adhesives except as specifically acceptable to Project Manager.

3. PVC locking extensions are to be same material as liner, be integrally molded or extruded with sheets, and have an approved cross section with minimum height of 0.375 inch and minimum web thickness of 0.085 inch. They are to be approximately 2.5 inches apart and be such that when extensions are embedded in concrete, liner will be held permanently in place.

4. PVC locking extensions are to be parallel and continuous except where interrupted for joint flaps, weep channels, strap channels and for other purposes shown on Drawings or permitted by Project Manager.

5. The liner sheet edge which will be lower terminal edge in structure is not to extend beyond base of final locking extension more than 0.375 inch.

E. Provisions for Strap Channels. Unless alternate methods are acceptable to Project Manager, liner required to be secured to inner form with straps are to have strap channels at not more than 20 inches on center perpendicular to locking extensions. Strap channels are to be maximum of 1-inch wide and formed by removing locking extensions so that maximum of 3/16-inch remains. Channels are not to be provided in final two locking extensions adjacent to terminal edge of liner coverage.

F. Flaps. When transverse flaps are specified or required, fabricate by removing locking extensions so that no more than 1/32 inch of base of locking extensions remains on sheet.

G. Adhesive Products. Adhesive products and application procedures used in installation of liner are to be according to manufacturer's recommendations. Adhesive products intended for use inside cast-in-place structures are to be non-flammable.

H. Cleaners. Cleaners used in installation of liner shall be reviewed by Project Manager prior to use. Cleaners are to be nonflammable and water soluble or water dispersible and not be detrimental to plastic liner.

I. Caulking Products. Caulking products and application procedures used in installation of liner and appurtenances are to be as recommended by manufacturer.

J. Mechanical Anchors. When approved for use with plain sheet liner, provide anchors and washers of Type 316 stainless steel, and as recommended by liner manufacturer.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 NOTIFICATION

A. Notify Project Manager at least 24 hours before reinforcing steel placement so that lining may be inspected and errors corrected without delaying Work.

3.02 PLACING LINER

A. Location. Place liner throughout entire length of interceptor sewer along top 300 degrees of pipe circumference, and inside structures as indicated on Drawings. Liner is to be applied and secured to forms and inspected by Project Manager prior to placement of reinforcing steel.

B. Coverage.

1. In cast-in-place structures, no offset of lower terminal edge is permitted. Unless otherwise shown on Drawings, lower terminal edge is to be one foot below low water level ("all pumps off" level for lift stations), or 6 inches below top of grout or concrete fillet, whichever is higher.

2. At station where there is difference in pipe's circumferential liner coverage, as shown on Drawings, and longitudinal terminal edges of liner downstream from that station are lower than those upstream, uniformly slope terminal edges of liner installed in section of pipe or structure immediately upstream from station for entire length of section of pipe or structure from limits of smaller coverage to those of greater coverage. Wherever longitudinal terminal edges of liner downstream from station are higher than those upstream, accomplish slope uniformly throughout length of section of pipe or structure immediately downstream from station. Provide an approved locking extension along sloping lower terminal edges of liner plate.

C. Positioning Liner.

1. Position PVC liner installed in pipe so that locking extensions are parallel to longitudinal axis of pipe.

2. Position PVC liner installed in cast-in-place structures so that locking extensions are parallel to direction of concrete placement, which is normally vertically for vertical walls.

3. Closely fit liner to inner forms. Cut sheets to fit curved and warped surfaces using minimum number of separate pieces.

4. The Project Manager may require use of patterns or marking of sheet layouts directly on forms where complicated warped surfaces are involved.

5. At transverse joints between sheets of liner used in cast-in-place structures and pipe joints, space between ends of locking extensions, measured longitudinally, shall not exceed 4 inches. Where sheets are cut and joined for purpose of fitting irregular surfaces, this space shall not exceed 2 inches.

D. Securing Liner in Place.

1. Liner shall be held snugly in place against inner forms. For pipes and similar circular sections, use light steel banding straps or other approved means. Prefabricated pipe-size tubular sheets which do not require strap channels may also be used.

2. When used, place banding straps in strap channels, as specified under provision for strap channels, at spacing not to exceed 20 inches.

3. Any method of banding, other than in strap channels, shall be reviewed by Project Manager prior to use.

4. On vertical surfaces where form ties or form stabilizing rods pass through liner, make provisions to maintain liner in close contact with forms during concrete placement. These provisions shall be reviewed by Project Manager.

5. Prevent concrete from flowing around edges of sheets at joints by sealing joint or seam with waterproof tape recommended by manufacturer.

6. Forms in contact with plastic liner need not be oiled.

E. Weep Channels.

1. At each pipe joint and at transverse joints in cast-in-place structures, gap not less than 2 inches nor greater than 4 inches shall be left in locking extensions to provide transverse

weep channel. When locking extensions are removed to provide weep channel at joints, base of extension left on sheet shall not exceed 3/16 inch.

2. Provide intermediate weep channels as required to maintain maximum spacing of 8 feet. Intermediate weep channels shall not be less than 2.0 inches nor greater than 4.0 inches in width. When locking extensions are removed to provide intermediate weep channels, base of extension left on sheet shall not exceed 3/16 inch.

3. Any area behind liner, which is not properly served by regular weep channels, shall have additional weep channels 2 inches wide provided by cutting away locking extensions.

4. Provide transverse weep channel approximately 12 inches away from each liner return where surfaces lined with plastic liner join surfaces which are not so lined.

5. As part of work of installing liner, clear outlets of weep channels of obstructions which would interfere with their proper functions.

6. Design weep channels for external hydrostatic pressures of water column equal in height to greater of 50 feet (22 psi) or 1.1 times depth of burial.

F. Liner Returns.

1. Install liner return where shown on approved shop drawings and wherever surfaces lined with plastic liner joins surfaces which are not so lined.

2. Unless otherwise indicated by Drawings or approved shop drawings showing liner installation methods, make returns as follows:

   a. Return liner at least 3 inches at surfaces of contact between concrete structure and items not concrete (including access frames, gate guides and pipe penetrations).

   b. Follow the same procedure at joints where type of protective lining is changed, or new work is built to join existing unlined concrete.

3. Provide locking extensions on returns to lock returns to concrete of plastic-lined, cast-in-place structures.

4. Seal each liner return to adjacent construction with which it is in contact by means of an adhesive system recommended by manufacturer and acceptable to Project Manager. When joint space is too wide or joint surfaces too rough to permit use of compound, fill joint space with 2 inches of densely caulked cement mortar, lead wool, or other caulking material and finished with minimum of 1 inch depth of an approved corrosion resistant sealant material.

3.03 CONCRETING OPERATIONS

A. Concrete Placement.

1. Carefully vibrate concrete placed against liner shall be so as to avoid damage to liner and to produce dense concrete securely anchoring locking extensions into concrete. Use external vibrators in addition to internal vibrators, particularly along lower terminal edge of liner.

2. Stiffeners, when used along locking extensions of liner installed in forms for pipe, shall be withdrawn completely during placement of concrete in forms. Revibrate concrete to consolidate concrete in void spaces caused by withdrawal of stiffeners.

B. Removing Forms.

1. In removing forms, take care to protect liner from damage. Do not use sharp instruments to pry forms from lined surfaces. When forms are removed, pull nails that remain in liner plate without tearing liner and clearly mark resulting holes. Mark form tie holes before ties are broken off. Mark areas of abrasion of liner.

2. Following completion of form removal, clean liner in pipe and structures for inspection.

3. Remove banding straps used in securing liner to forms for pipe and cast-in-place structures within limits of unlined invert.

3.04 FIELD JOINTING OF LINER

A. Installation Requirements.

1. No field joint shall be made in liner until lined pipe or structure has been backfilled and 7 days have elapsed after flooding or jetting has been completed. Where ground water is encountered, joint shall not be made until pumping of ground water has been discontinued for at least 7 days and no visible leakage is evident at joint. Liner at joints shall be free of mortar and other foreign material and be clean and dry before joints are made.

2. Hot joint compound shall not be brought in contact with liner.

3. No coating shall be applied over joint, corner or welding strip, except where nonskid coating is applied to liner surfaces.

B. Field Joints in Pipe Installation.

1. Field joints in lining at pipe joints shall be one of the following types:

a. Type P-1. Make joint with separate 4-inch joint strip and two welding strips. Center 4-inch joint strip over joint, heat-sealed to lining, then welded along each edge to adjacent liner sheets with 1-inch weld strip. 4-inch joint strip shall lap over each sheet minimum of 1/2 inch.

b. Type P-2

(1) Make joint with joint flap with locking extensions removed as described in paragraph 2.04 above, and extending approximately 4 inches beyond pipe end. Joint flap shall overlap lining in adjacent pipe section minimum of 1/2 inch and be heat-sealed in place prior to welding. Complete field joint by welding flap to lining of adjacent pipe using 1-inch weld strip.

(2) Take care to protect flap from damage. Avoid excessive tension and distortion in bending back flap to expose pipe joint during laying and joint mortaring. At temperatures below 50 degrees F heating of liner may be required to avoid damage.

2. Do not make field joints in liner at pipe joints until mortar in pipe joint, when used, has been allowed to cure for at least 48 hours.

3. Joints between lined pipe and lined structures are to be either Type C-1 joint or Type C-2 joint as described below.

C. Field Joints in Concrete Structures. Field joints in liner on concrete structures are to be one of following types:

1. Type C-1. Make joint with separate 4-inch joint strip and two welding strips. Center 4-inch joint strip over joint, heat-sealed to liner, then welded along each edge to adjacent sheets with 1-inch wide weld strip. Width of space between adjacent sheets is not to exceed 2 inches. 4-inch joint strip is to lap over each sheet minimum of 1/2 inch. It may be used at transverse or longitudinal joint.

2. Type C-2. Make joint by lapping sheets not less than 1/2 inch. One 1-inch weld strip is required. Upstream sheet is to overlap one downstream. Heat-seal lap into place prior to welding on 1-inch weld strip.

3. Type C-3. Make joint by applying 2-inch wide waterproof tape or 1-inch wide welding strip on back of maximum 1/4-inch gap butt joint or by some other method approved by Project Manager to prevent wet concrete from getting under sheet. After forms have been stripped, apply 1-inch weld strip over face to sheet.

D. Installation of Welding Strips.

1. All welding of joints is to be in strict conformance with specifications and instructions of lining manufacturer.

2. Welding is to fuse both sheets and weld strip together to provide continuous joint equal in corrosion resistance and impermeability to liner plate.

3. Hot-air welding tools shall provide effluent air to sheets to be joined at temperature between 500 degrees F and 600 degrees F. Hold welding tools approximately 1/2 inch from and moved back and forth over junction of two materials to be joined. Move welding tool slowly enough as weld progresses to cause small bead of molten material to be visible along both edges and in front of weld strip.

4. Maintain adequate ventilation in confined spaces during welding operations.

5. After repairs have been made, defective welds will be re-inspected and re-tested.

E. Joint Reinforcement. Apply 12-inch long welding strip as reinforcement across each transverse joint and weep channel which extends to lower terminal edge of liner. Center reinforcement strips over joint being reinforced and located as close to lower edge of liner as practicable. Weld in place after transverse welding strips have been installed.

F. Application of Liner to Concrete Surfaces with Adhesives. Application of liner plate to concrete surfaces by means of adhesive is allowed only where shown on Drawings for existing structures, or where specifically acceptable to Project Manager and called out on approved shop drawings, and is to be accomplished by following steps:

1. Etch concrete surface by abrasive blasting to develop slightly granular surface.

2. After abrasive blasting, thoroughly clean concrete surface of dust.

3. Apply primer, adhesive and liner in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, as approved by Project Manager.

4. Place mechanical anchors at 12-inch centers each way after adherence of liner to concrete surface has been achieved. Place anchors after adhesive system has cured for minimum of 24 hours. Seal penetration of liner by anchor in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

G. Nonskid Surfaces. Surfaces of liner, shown on Drawings to be nonskid, treated as follows prior to installation:

1. Liner is to be cleaned, dried, and spread with an adhesive coating recommended by manufacturer of liner plate.

2. Liberally sprinkle surface with clean, dry, well graded sand, which will pass No. 30 sieve but be retained on No. 70 sieve.

3. After sanded surface has thoroughly dried, brush away excess sand and spray seal coat of adhesive coating over sand in sufficient quantity to coat and bond sand to liner plate.

4. Allow coated sand surface to dry thoroughly before handling.

H. Protection and Repair of Liner.

1. Take necessary measures and precautions to prevent damage to liner from equipment and materials used in or taken through Work. Repair damage to installed liner plate in accordance with requirements for repair of liner.

2. Patch nail and tie holes and cut, torn and seriously abraded areas in liner plate. Patches made entirely with welding strip are to be fused to liner over entire patch. Use of this method is limited to patches which can be made with single welding strip. Use of parallel, overlapping or adjoining welding strips will not be permitted. Larger patches may consist of smooth liner over damaged area, with edges covered with welding strips fused to patch and to liner adjoining damaged area. Limit size of single patch of latter type only as to its width, which shall not exceed 4 inches.

3. Whenever liner is not properly anchored to concrete, or whenever patches larger than those permitted above are necessary, accomplish repair of liner and restoration of anchorage by injecting epoxy grout behind liner plate by method approved by Project Manager. Use of adhesives will not be allowed to repair improperly anchored liner plate.

I. Field Tests.

1. Upon completion of installation, clean surface of liner to permit visual inspection and spark testing by Project Manager, using spark-type detector complying with requirements for Spark Test. Properly repair and retest areas of liner failing to meet field test.

2. Contractor is to assist in inspection and spark testing by providing adequate ventilation, ladders for access, barricades or other traffic control devices, and is responsible for opening and closing entrances and exits.

3. Spark testing of liner by Contractor is to be done with detector complying with these Specifications.

END OF SECTION

Section 02431

TUNNEL GROUT

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Mix design requirements, testing, furnishing and production of grout for:

1. Pressure grouting of bolted liner plates for shafts
2. Pressure grouting of primary tunnel liner
3. Pressure grouting of jacked-pipe
4. Annular grouting of cased or uncased sewer pipe
5. Grouting of annular space between carrier pipe and primary tunnel liner
6. Grouting voids in ground resulting from caving, loss of ground, or settlement
7. Grouting of manholes constructed in shafts

B. Compaction grouting is not part of this specification.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for work performed under this Section. Include cost of such work in contract unit prices for work of which it is component part.
2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for Unit Price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Pressure Grouting. Filling void behind liner or pipe with grout under pressure sufficient to ensure void is properly filled but without overstressing temporary or permanent ground support, or causing ground heave to occur.

B. Back Grouting. Secondary pressure grouting to ensure that voids have been filled between primary tunnel or shaft liners and surrounding ground.

C. Annular Grouting. Filling annular space between carrier pipe and primary tunnel liner, casing, or ground, by pumping.

D. Ground Stabilization Grouting. Filling of voids, fissures, or under-slab settlement due to caving or loss of ground by injecting grout under gravity or pressure to fill void.

E. Carrier Pipe. Sanitary or storm sewer or water line installed inside primary tunnel support.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM C 138. Standard Test Method for Unit Weight, Yield and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete.

B. ASTM C 144. Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar.

C. ASTM C 150. Standard Specification for Portland Cement.

D. ASTM C 494. Standard Specification for Chemical Admixture for Concrete.

E. ASTM C 618. Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcinated Natural Pozzolan for use as Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete.

F. ASTM C 869. Standard Specification for Foaming Agents Used in Making Preformed Foam for Cellular Concrete.

G. ASTM C 937. Standard Specification for Grout Fluidifier for Pre-placed Aggregate Concrete.

H. ASTM C 942. Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Grout for Pre-placed Aggregate Concrete into Laboratory.

I. ASTM C 1017. Standard Specification for Chemical Admixture for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit description of materials, grout mix, equipment and operational procedures to accomplish each grouting operation. Description may include sketches as appropriate, indicating type and location of mixing equipment, pumps, injection points, venting method, flow lines, pressure measurement, volume measurement, grouting sequence, schedule, and

stage volumes. Tests and certifications shall have been performed within last 12 months prior to date of submittal.

C. Submit grout mix design report, including:

1. Grout type and designation

2. Grout mix constituents and proportions, including materials by weight and volume

3. Grout densities and viscosities, including wet density at point of placement

4. Initial set time of grout

5. Bleeding, shrinkage/expansion

6. Compressive strength

7. Detailed description of grout pressure limiting equipment

8. For annular space grouting, buoyant force calculations and bulkhead designs (See Section 02517 - Water Line in Tunnel for further requirements)

D. For cellular grout, also submit the following:

1. Foam concentrate supplier's certification of dilution ratio for foam concentrate.

2. A description of proposed cellular grout production procedures.

E. Maintain and submit logs of grouting operations indicating pressure, density, and volume for each grout placement.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Grouting materials: Conform to Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction, except as modified in the following paragraphs.

B. Grout Type Applications.

1. Grout for pressure grouting, backfill grouting and annular grouting: Sand-cement mortar mix.

2. Grout for annular grouting of sanitary sewer: Low density (cellular) grout, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

3. Grout for filling space around manholes in shafts: Sand-cement mortar mix.

4. Ground stabilization: Sand-cement mortar mix.

C. Do not include toxic or poisonous substances in grout mix or otherwise inject such substances underground.

2.02 GROUT

A. Employ and pay for commercial testing laboratory, acceptable to Project Manager, to prepare and test grout mix design. Develop one or more mixes based on following criteria as applicable:

1. Size of annular void between sewer pipe and liner, or size of void between primary liner and surrounding soil

2. Absence or presence of groundwater

3. Adequate retardation

4. Non-shrink characteristics

5. Pumping distances

B. Prepare mixes that satisfy required application. Provide materials conforming to the following standards:

1. Cement: ASTM C 150

2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618

3. Water: Potable

4. Foam: ASTM C 869

5. Slurry: ASTM C 138

6. Cellular Grout: ASTM C 138

7. Sand for sand-cement mortar mix: ASTM C 144

C. Provide grout meeting the following minimum requirements:

1. Minimum 28-day unconfined compressive strength: 1500 psi for water lines, 1000 psi for other carrier pipes for mortar grout and 300 psi for cellular grout.

2. Determine strength by ASTM C 942.

.

3. Maximum allowable density: Less than 130 pcf

D. Fluidifier. Provide fluidifier, meeting ASTM C 937 that holds solid constituents of grout in colloidal suspension and is compatible with cement and water used in grouting operations.

E. Admixtures.

1. Use admixtures meeting ASTM C 494 and ASTM C 1017 as required, to improve pump ability, control time of set, hold sand in suspension and reduce segregation and bleeding.

2. For cellular grout, do not use foam or admixtures that promote steel corrosion

3. Ensure that admixtures used in mix are compatible. Provide written confirmation from admixture manufacturers of their compatibility.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Notify Project Manager at least 24 hours in advance of grouting operations.

B. Select and operate grouting equipment to avoid damage to new or existing underground utilities and structures.

C. In selection of grouting placement consider pipe flotation, length of pipe, length of tunnel, depth from surface, and type of sewer pipe, type of pipe blocking and bulkheading, grout volume and length of pipe to be grouted between bulkheads.

D. Operate dewatering systems until grouting operations are complete and grout has reached initial set.

3.02 EQUIPMENT

A. Batch and mix grout in equipment of sufficient size and capacity to provide necessary quality and quantity of grout for each placement stage.

B. Use equipment for grouting of type and size generally used for work, capable of mixing grout to homogeneous consistency, and providing means of accurately measuring grout

component quantities and accurately measuring pumping pressures. Use pressure grout equipment which delivers grout to injection point at steady pressure.

3.03 PRESSURE GROUTING FOR PRIMARY TUNNEL AND SHAFT LINER

A. Perform grouting operations to fill voids outside of primary tunnel or shaft liner.

B. For nonexpendable primary liners installed behind shield or tunnel boring machine (TBM), fill voids with sand-cement grout promptly after each ring of liner is out of shield. Keep grout pressure below value that may cause damage or distortion to installed liner plate rings. Provide seals on tail of shield or TBM which will prevent grout from spilling.

C. For nonexpendable primary liners installed by hand mining or in shafts, grout once every 4 feet or more frequently when conditions dictate.

D. Control grout pressures so that tunnel or shaft liner is not overstressed, and ground heave is avoided.

E. For liner requiring grout, perform back grouting once each shift, or more often when required to ensure that all voids are filled.

3.04 ANNULAR GROUTING FOR SEWER LINE IN TUNNELS AND IN CASED OR UNCASED AUGERS

A. Fill annular space between sewer pipe and tunnel primary liner, casing or ground, with grout.

B. Placement

1. Placement Limits: Predetermine limits of each grout placement stage by size and capacity of batching equipment and initial set time of proposed grout. Under no circumstances shall placement continue at grout port longer than that period of time for mix to take initial set. Locate grout hole spacing and locations according to number of stages necessary to grout tunnel liners. Stage or lift cannot be installed on another lift until proper set has been attained. Have placement procedures approved by admixture or additive manufacturer.

2. Limit pressure on annular space to prevent damage or distortion to pipe or liner. Define limiting and estimated required pressure range. Provide an open ended, high point tap or equivalent vent and monitor it at bulkhead opposite to point of grouting.

3. Pump grout until material discharging is similar in consistency to that at point of injection.

4. In primary lined tunnel, limit length of pipe installed to 200 feet or less before grouting same length of sewer line. Repeat this cycle until all pipe is installed and grouted.

C. Remove temporary bulkheads installed for grouting.

D. Batch and mix cellular grout mechanically to ensure consistency of mix. Wet solids thoroughly before introduction of foaming agent. Operate batching system to maintain slurry weight within 3 percent of design density. Introduce foam into slurry in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.05 PRESSURE GROUTING FOR JACKED PIPE

A. For jacked pipe 60 inches in diameter or greater, pressure grout annulus after installation, displacing bentonite lubrication. Jacked pipes less than 60-inch diameter may be left ungrouted unless excavated diameter exceeds external pipe diameter by more than one inch.

B. Inject grout through grout holes in sewer pipe. Drilling holes from surface or through carrier pipe walls is not allowed. Perform grouting by injecting it at pipe invert with bentonite displacement occurring through high point tap or vent.

C. Control ground water as necessary to permit completion of grouting without separation of grout materials.

D. Limit pressures to prevent damage or distortion to pipe or to keep flexible pipe within acceptable tolerances.

E. Pump grout until material discharging is similar in consistency to that at point of injection.

3.06 GROUND STABILIZATION GROUTING

A. Completely fill voids outside limits of excavation caused by caving or collapse of ground. Fill with gravity or pressure injected sand-cement grout as necessary to fill void.

B. Take care in grouting operations to prevent damage to adjacent utilities or public or private property. Grout at pressure that will not distort or imperil portion of work or existing installations or structures.

C. Verify that void has been filled by volumetric comparisons and visual inspection. In case of settlement under existing slabs, take cores as directed by Project Manager, at no additional cost to City, to demonstrate that void has been filled.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Pressure Grouting for Primary Tunnel and Shaft Liners.

1. For each shaft, make one set of four compressive test specimens for each 30-foot depth and one set for remaining portion less than 30-foot increment.

2. Make one set of four compressive test specimens for every 200 feet of primary lined, (non-expandable) tunnel requiring grout.

B. Annular Grouting for Sewer Line in Tunnels and in Cased or Uncased Augers.

1. Make one set of four compressive test specimens for every 200 feet of sewer pipe installed in primary lined tunnel.

2. For cased or uncased augers, make one set of four compressive test specimens for each grouting operation, or for each 100 feet of pipe installed, whichever is more frequent.

3. For cellular grout, check slurry density both at point of batching and placement at least twice each hour in accordance with ASTM C 138. Record density, time, and temperature. Density must be within 3 percent of design density at point of batching and 5 percent of design density at point of placement.

C. Pressure Grouting for Jacked Pipe. Make one set of four compressive test specimens for every 400 feet of jacked pipe pressure grouting.

D. Ground Stabilization Grouting. Make one set of four compressive test specimens for every location where ground stabilization grouting is performed.

END OF SECTION

Section 02441

MICROTUNNELING AND PIPE-JACKED TUNNELS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Tunnel construction of sewers by one-pass methods with or without man entry. Construction methods involve jacking pipe following hand-shield excavation or tunnel boring machine (TBM) or micro-tunnel boring machine (MTBM), with pipe serving as both tunnel liner during construction and sewer pipe after completion of construction.

B. Select centrifugally-cast fiberglass pipe (FRP), vitrified clay pipe (VCP), reinforced concrete pipe (RCP) for storm or sanitary sewers. Use plastic-lined RCP for sanitary sewers. Unlined RCP or RCP lined with liner other than that specified in Section 02427 - Plastic Liner for Large-diameter Concrete Sewers and Structures will not be allowed for sanitary sewers.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Length of sewer installed will be measured by linear foot along center line of completed sewer from center line to center line of manholes, as designated on Drawings; and to end of stubs or termination of pipe; and to inside face of lift station and treatment plant works. Installation of sewer within limits of structure other than manholes will not be considered for measurement and payment at unit price bid.

2. Payment will include and be full compensation for labor, equipment, materials, and supervision for construction of sewer and excavation, complete in place including disposal of excess materials, sheeting, shoring or bracing, dewatering, utility adjustments, connections to existing sewers, grouting when required, tests, backfilling, clean-up, and other related work necessary for construction as specified or as shown on Drawings.

3. Payment for installation of sewer will be authorized by Project Manager in two parts. Pay estimates for partial payments will be made as measured above according to following schedule:

   a. 95 percent payment will be made for jacked pipe installed but not yet grouted, in cases where grouting is specified.

   b. 100 percent payment will be authorized on linear foot basis for amount of jacked sewer pipe installed, including grouting when specified.

4. Monitoring will be paid for at lump sum price for installations, observations, and reporting.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum): If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA) Manual for Railway Engineering.

B. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO).

C. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

D. National Electrical Code - (NFPA 70).

1.04 DEFINITION

A. Jacked Pipe. Method for installing sewer pipe that serves as initial construction lining and tunnel support, installed for stability and safety during construction, and as sewer pipe. Pipe is shoved forward, or jacked, as tunnel is advanced.

B. Microtunneling. Method of installing pipe by jacking pipe behind microtunnel boring machine which is connected to and shoved forward by pipe being installed, generally precluding man entry.

C. Tunnel Boring Machine (TBM). Mechanized excavating equipment that is steerable, guided and articulated, connected to and shoved forward by pipe being installed, with man entry.

D. Microtunnel Boring Machine (MTBM). Mechanized excavating equipment that is remotely-controlled, steerable, guided and articulated, connected to and shoved forward by pipe being installed, usually precluding man entry.

E. Tunneling Methodology. Written description, together with supporting documentation that defines plans and procedures for microtunneling or pipe jacking operations.

F. Zone of Active Excavation. Area located within radial distance about surface point immediately above face of excavation equal to depth to bottom of excavation.

G. Critical Structure. Building, structure, bridge, pier, or similar construction partially or entirely located within zone of active excavation.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Following submittals are required:

1. Tunneling Methodology. Brief description of proposed tunnel methodology. Description should be sufficient to convey following:

   a. Proposed method of tunnel construction and type of face support.

   b. Manufacturer and type of tunneling equipment proposed; type of lighting and ventilation systems.

   c. Number and duration of shifts planned to be worked each day.

   d. Sequence of operations,

   e. Locations of access shafts and work sites.

   f. Method of spoil transportation from face, surface storage and disposal location.

   g. Capacity of jacking equipment and type of cushioning.

   h. Identify critical utility crossings and special precautions proposed.

2. Drawings and Calculations: Submit for record purposes, drawings and calculations for tunnel support system. Provide adequate drawings and installation details for construction. For pipe jacking and microtunneling, show pipe and pipe joint detail. Documents must be signed and sealed by Professional Engineer registered in State of Texas. Calculations shall include clear statement of criteria used for design as described in Paragraph 1.06, Design Criteria.

3. Quality Control: Submit for review brief description of quality control methods including:

   a. Method and frequency of survey control.

   b. Example of tunnel daily log.

4. Geotechnical Investigation: When geotechnical investigations are conducted, submit results to Project Manager for record purposes.

5. Monitoring Plans:

   a. Instrumentation Monitoring Plan: Submit for review, prior to construction, monitoring plan that includes schedule of instrumentation design, layout of instrumentation points, equipment installation details, manufacturer's catalog literature, and monitoring report forms.

   b. Surface Settlement Monitoring Plan. Submit settlement monitoring plan for review prior to construction. Identify on plan location of settlement monitoring points, reference benchmarks, survey frequency and procedures, and reporting formats.

6. Structures Assessment. Provide preconstruction and post construction assessment reports for critical structures, namely those located within zone of active excavation from proposed tunnel centerline. Include photographs or video of existing damage to structures in vicinity of sewer alignment in assessment reports.

7. Readings of all monitoring shall be submitted to Project Manager.

8. Daily Reports: Maintain shift log as defined in Paragraph 3.04, Pipe-jacked Tunneling Data, and make available to Project Manager on request.

1.06 DESIGN CRITERIA

A. Assume responsibility for selection of appropriate pipe and pipe joints to carry thrust of any jacking forces or other construction loads in combination with overburden, earth and hydrostatic loads. Design of any pipe indicated on Drawings considers in-place loads only and does not take into account any construction loads. Criteria for longitudinal loading (jacking forces) on pipe and joints shall be determined, based on selected method of construction.

B. Jacked pipe shall be designed to withstand thrust from MTBM, TBM or shield and pipe advance without damage or distortion. Propulsion jacks shall be configured so that thrust is uniformly distributed and will not damage or distort pipe.

C. Take into account loads from handling and storing.

D. Criteria to be used at railroad crossings shall be Cooper E-80 locomotive loading distributions in accordance with AREMA specifications for culverts. In design, account for additive loadings due to multiple tracks.

E. Criteria to be used for truck loading shall be HS-20 vehicle loading distributions in accordance with AASHTO.

F. Provide pipes of diameter shown on Drawings. Substitution of pipe with larger diameter to suit MTBM or TBM equipment availability will only be permitted if demonstrated to satisfaction of Project Manager that design flows and velocities can be achieved.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 SEWER PIPE

A. Assume responsibility for selecting appropriate pipes and pipe joints to safely carry loads imposed during construction, including jacking forces. Pipe joints shall be flush with outside pipe face when pipes are assembled. Pipe materials shall be selected from following:

B. Centrifugally-cast fiberglass pipe, joints, and fittings to be in accordance with Section 02504 - Centrifugally-Cast Fiberglass Pipe.

C. Vitrified clay pipe, joints and fittings to be in accordance with Section 02508 - Extra Strength Clay Pipe.

D. Plastic-lined reinforced concrete pipe with joints and fittings to be in accordance with Section 02611 - Reinforced Concrete Pipe and Section 02427 - Plastic Liner for Large-Diameter Concrete Sewers and Structures. Plastic liner is not required for storm sewers.

E. Use pipe that is round with smooth, even outer surface, and has joints that allow for easy connections between pipes. Design pipe ends so that jacking loads are evenly distributed around entire pipe joint and such that point loads will not occur when pipe is installed. Pipe used for pipe jacking shall be capable of withstanding all forces that will be imposed by process of installation, as well as final in-place loading conditions. Protect driving ends of pipe and joints against damage.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 CONSTRUCTION OPERATIONS CRITERIA

A. Use methods for microtunneling and pipe-jacked tunneling operations that will minimize ground settlement. Select method which will control flow of water and prevent loss of soil into tunnel and provide stability of face under anticipated conditions.

B. Conduct tunneling operations in accordance with applicable safety rules and regulations, OSHA standards and Contractor's safety plan. Use methods which include due regard for safety of workmen, adjacent structures, utilities, and public.

C. Maintain clean working conditions wherever there is man access.

D. For tunneling under railroad embankments, highways, or streets, perform installation so as to avoid interference with operation of railroads, highways, or streets, except as approved by owner of facility.

3.02 GROUND WATER CONTROL

A. Provide ground water control measures in conformance with Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water, when necessary to perform Work.

3.03 EQUIPMENT

A. Full directional guidance of shield, TBM, or MTBM is prerequisite of this method of construction.

B. Assume responsibility for selection of tunneling equipment which, based on past experience, has proven to be satisfactory for excavation of soils to be encountered.

C. Employ tunneling equipment that will be capable of handling various anticipated ground conditions and is capable of minimizing loss of soil ahead of and around machine and shall provide satisfactory support of excavated face.

D. Tunnel Boring Machine (TBM). A TBM used for pipe-jacking shall conform to shape of tunnel with uniform perimeter that is free of projections that could produce over- excavation or voids. Appropriately sized overcutting bead may be provided to facilitate steering. In addition it shall:

1. Be capable of full face closure.

2. Be equipped with appropriate seals to prevent loss of bentonite lubricant.

3. Be capable of correcting roll by reverse drive or fins.

4. Be designed to handle adverse ground conditions including ground water ingress.

5. Be equipped with visual display to show operator actual position of TBM relative to design reference.

E. Tunnel Shield. If hand shield is used for pipe-jacked tunneling (with or without attached mechanized excavating equipment), shield must be capable of handling various anticipated ground conditions. In addition, shield shall:

1. Conform to shape of tunnel with uniform perimeter that is free of projections that could produce over-excavation or voids. Appropriately-sized overcutting bead may be provided to facilitate steering.

2. Be designed to allow face of tunnel to be closed by use of gates or breasting boards without loss of ground.

F. Microtunneling Equipment. In case of MTBM, use spoil transportation system which:

1. Balances soil and ground water pressures by use of slurry or earth pressure balance system; system shall be capable of adjustments required to maintain face stability for particular soil condition and shall monitor and continuously balance soil and ground water pressure to prevent loss of slurry or uncontrolled soil and ground water inflow, or, in case of slurry spoil transportation system:

   a. Provides pressure at excavation face by use of slurry pumps, pressure control valves, and flow meter.

   b. Includes slurry bypass unit in system to allow direction of flow to be changed and isolated, as necessary.

   c. Includes separation process. Design it to provide adequate separation of spoil from slurry so that slurry with sediment content within limits required for successful tunneling can be returned to cutting face for reuse. Appropriately contain spoil at site prior to disposal.

   d. Uses type of separation process suited to size of tunnel being constructed, soil type being excavated, and work space available at each work area for operating plant.

   e. Allows composition of slurry to be monitored to maintain slurry weight and viscosity limits required.

2. In case of cased auger earth pressure balance system, system shall be capable of adjustments required to maintain face stability for particular soil condition to be encountered. Monitor and continuously balance soil and ground water pressure to prevent loss of soil or uncontrolled ground water inflow.

   a. In cased auger spoil transportation system, manage pressure at excavation face by controlling volume of spoil removal with respect to advance rate. Monitor speed of rotation of auger flight, and addition of water.

3. Remote Control System. Provide MTBM which includes remote control system with following features:

   a. Allows for operation of system without need for personnel to enter tunnel. Has display available to operator, at remote operation console, showing position of shield in relation to design reference together with other information such

as face pressure, roll, pitch, steering attitude, valve positions, thrust force, and cutter head torque; rate of advance and installed length.

b. Integrates system of excavation and removal of spoil and its simultaneous replacement by pipe. As each pipe section is jacked forward, control system shall synchronize all of operational functions of system.

4. Active Direction Control. Provide MTBM which includes active direction control system with following features:

a. Controls line and grade by guidance system that relates actual position of MTBM to design reference (e.g., by laser beam transmitted from jacking shaft along pipe to target mounted in shield).

b. Provides active steering information which shall be monitored and transmitted to operating console.

c. Provides positioning and operation information to operator on control console.

5. Use generator which is suitably insulated for noise ("hospital" type) in residential or commercial areas.

G. Pipe Jacking Equipment. Provide pipe jacking system with following features:

1. Has main jacks mounted in jacking frame located in starting shaft.

2. Has jacking frame which successively pushes string of connected pipes following tunneling excavation equipment towards receiving shaft.

3. Has sufficient jacking capacity to push tunneling excavation equipment and string of pipe through ground. Incorporates intermediate jacking stations, if required.

4. Has capacity at least 20 percent greater than calculated maximum jacking load.

5. Develops uniform distribution of jacking forces on end of pipe by use of spreader rings and packing, measured by operating gauges.

6. Provides and maintains pipe lubrication system at all times to lower friction developed on surface of pipe during jacking.

7. Jack Thrust Reactions. Use reactions for pipe jacking that are adequate to support jacking pressure developed by main jacking system. Special care shall be taken when setting pipe guide rails in jacking shaft to ensure correctness of alignment, grade, and stability.

H. Air Quality. Provide equipment to maintain proper air quality of manned tunnel operations during construction in accordance with OSHA requirements.

I. Enclose lighting fixtures in watertight enclosures with suitable guards. Provide separate circuits for lighting, and other equipment.

J. Electrical systems shall conform to requirements of National Electrical Code - NFPA70.

3.04 PIPE-JACKED TUNNELING DATA

A. Maintain shift logs of construction events and observations. Project Manager shall have access to all logs with regard to following information:

1. Location of boring machine face or shield by station and progress of tunnel drive during shift.

2. Hours worked per shift on tunneling operations.

3. Completed field forms, such as steering control logs, for checking line and grade of tunneling operation, showing achieved tolerance relative to design alignment.

4. Maximum pipe jacking pressures per drive.

5. Location, elevation and brief soil descriptions of soil strata.

6. Ground water control operations and piezometric levels.

7. Observation of any lost ground or other ground movement.

8. Any unusual conditions or events.

9. Reasons for operational shutdown in event drive are halted.

3.05 EXCAVATION AND JACKING OF PIPE

A. Tunnel Excavation.

1. Keep tunnel excavation within easements and rights-of-way indicated on Drawings and to lines and grades designated on Drawings.

2. Perform tunneling operations in manner that will minimize movement of ground in front of and surrounding tunnel. Prevent damage to structures and utilities above and in vicinity of tunneling operations.

3. Open-face excavations:

a. Keep face breasted or otherwise supported and prevent falls, excessive raveling, or erosion. Maintain standby face supports for immediate use when needed.

b. During shut-down periods, support face of excavation by positive means; no support shall rely solely on hydraulic pressure.

4. Closed-face excavation:

a. Carefully control volume of spoil removed. Advance rate and excavation rate to be compatible to avoid over excavation or loss of ground.

b. When cutting head is withdrawn or is open for any purpose, keep excavated face supported and stabilized.

5. Excavated diameter should be minimum size to permit pipe installation by jacking with allowance for bentonite injection into annular space.

6. Whenever there is condition encountered which could endanger tunnel excavation or adjacent structures, operate without intermission including 24-hour working, weekends and holidays, until condition no longer exists.

7. Assume responsibility for damage due to settlement from any construction-induced activities.

B. Pipe Jacking

1. Cushion pipe joints as necessary to transmit jacking forces without damage to pipe or pipe joints.

2. Maintain envelope of bentonite slurry around exterior of pipe during jacking and excavation operation to reduce exterior friction and possibility of pipe seizing in place.

3. If pipe seizes up in place and elect to construct recovery access shaft, obtain approval from Project Manager. Coordinate traffic control measures and utility adjustments as necessary prior to commencing work.

4. In event section of pipe is damaged during jacking operation, or joint failure occurs, as evidenced by inspection, visible ground water inflow or other observations, submit for approval his methods for repair or replacement of pipe.

C. Grouting. Grouting requirements are defined in Section 02431 - Tunnel Grout.

3.06 CONTROL OF LINE AND GRADE

A. Construction Control.

1. Project Manager will establish baselines and benchmarks indicated on Drawings. Check baselines and benchmarks at beginning of Work and report any errors or discrepancies to Project Manager.

2. Use baselines and benchmarks established by Project Manager to establish and maintain construction control points, reference lines and grades for locating tunnel, sewer pipe, and structures.

3. Establish construction control points sufficiently far from work so as not to be affected by ground movement caused by pipe-jacked tunneling operations.

B. Bench Mark Movement. Ensure that if settlement of ground surface occurs during construction which affects accuracy of temporary benchmarks detect and report such movement and reestablish temporary bench marks. Locations of permanent City of Houston monumentation benchmarks are indicated on Drawings. Advise Project Manager of any settlement affecting permanent monumentation benchmarks.

C. Line and Grade.

1. Check and record survey control for tunnel against above-ground undisturbed reference at least once for each 250 feet of tunnel constructed.

2. Record exact position of MTBM or TBM or shield after each shove to ensure alignment is within specified tolerances. Make immediate correction to alignment before allowable tolerances are exceeded.

3. When excavation is off line or grade, make alignment corrections to avoid reverse grades in gravity sewers.

4. Acceptance criteria for sewer pipe shall be plus or minus 6 inches in horizontal alignment from theoretical at any point between manholes, including receiving end, and plus or minus 1-1/2 inches in elevation from theoretical.

5. Pipe installed outside tolerances and subsequently abandoned shall first be fully grouted.

3.07 MONITORING

A. Instrumentation Monitoring. Instrumentation requirements are shown on Drawings. Instrumentation specified shall be accessible at all times to Project Manager. Readings shall be submitted promptly to Project Manager.

1. Install and maintain instrumentation system to monitor and detect movement of ground surface and adjacent structures. Establish vertical control points at distance from construction areas that avoids disturbance due to ground settlement.

2. Installation of instrumentation shall not preclude Project Manager, through independent contractor or consultant, from installing instrumentation in, on, near, or adjacent to construction work. Access shall be provided to work for such independent installations.

3. Instruments shall be installed in accordance with Drawings and manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Surface Settlement Monitoring

1. Establish monitoring points on all critical structures.

2. Record location of settlement monitoring points with respect to construction baselines and elevations. Record elevations to accuracy of 0.01 feet for each monitoring point location. Monitoring points should be established at locations and by methods that protect them from damage by construction operations, tampering, or other external influences.

3. Ground surface elevations shall be recorded on centerline ahead of tunneling operations at minimum of 100-foot intervals or at least three locations per tunnel drive. For sewers greater than 60-inch diameter, also record similar data at approximately 20 feet each side of centerline. Settlement monitoring points must be clearly marked by studs or paint for ease of locating.

4. Railroads. Monitor ground settlement of track subbase at centerline of each track.

5. Utilities and Pipelines. Monitor ground settlement directly above and 10 feet before and after utility or pipeline intersection.

C. Reading Frequency and Reporting. Submit to Project Manager, records of readings from various instruments and survey points.

1. Instrumentation monitoring results to be read at frequency specified and unless otherwise specified, shall be started prior to zone of active excavation reaching that point, and shall be continued until zone of active excavation has passed and until no further detectable movement occurs.

2. Surface settlement monitoring readings shall be taken:

a. Prior to zone of active excavation reaching that point,

b. When tunnel face reaches monitoring point (in plan), and

c. When zone of active excavation has passed and no further movement is detected.

3. All monitoring readings shall be submitted promptly to Project Manager.

4. Immediately report to Project Manager any movement, cracking, or settlement which is detected.

5. Following substantial completion but prior to final completion, make final survey of all monitoring points.

3.08 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS MATERIAL

A. Remove spoil in accordance with Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

3.09 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

A. Acceptance testing is to be carried out by methods described in Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing For Sanitary Sewer.

END OF SECTION

Section 02447

AUGERING PIPE AND CONDUIT

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Installing water service pipe by methods of augering or casing by jacking and boring.

B. Installing Telecommunication Conduit along or under Public Ways

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for augering pipe for water lines under this Section. Include payment in unit price for Section 02511 - Water Lines.

2. When open-cut construction is requested by Contractor for his convenience in areas designated for augering, and when approved in advance by Project Manager, such areas shall be paid for at Unit Price for Section 02511 - Water Lines.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Auger Method: Installation of steel casing by excavating soil at advancing end of casing and transporting spoil through casing by otherwise uncased auger, while advancing casing by jacking at same rate as auger excavation progresses.

B. Slurry Auger Method: Installation of casing or pipe by first drilling small diameter pilot hole from pit to pit, followed by removing excess soil and installing pipe or conduit by pull-back or jacking method.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM D 638 - Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics.

B. ASTM D 648 - Standard Test Method for Deflection Temperature of Plastics under Flexural Load in the Edgewise Position.

C. ASTM D 695 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties of Rigid Plastics.

D. ASTM D 790 - Standard Test Method for Flexural Properties of Unreinforced and Reinforced Plastics and Electrical Insulating Materials.

1.05 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to TxDOT for installations under state highways. City will obtain required permits for State Highway crossings.

B. Installations Under Railroads:

1. Secure and comply with requirements of right-of-entry for crossing Railroad Company's easement or right-of-way from railroad companies affected. Comply with railroad permit requirements.

2. Use auger method only.

3. Damages due to delays caused by railroad requesting work to be done at hours which will not inconvenience railroad will be at no additional cost to City.

4. Maintain equipment and excavations minimum 35-foot clearance from centerline of tracks.

1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit product data for casing insulators, spacing of insulators for specific pipe and location on project.

C. Prior to installation of pits obtain Project Manager's approval for pit locations, size, depth, and areas for storage, material, and spoil handling. Acceptance of Project Manager does not relieve Contractor from responsibility to obtain specified results.

D. Show actual pit locations dimensioned on as-built drawings so that they can be identified in field.

E. Submit copy of executed railroad company rights of entry to Project Manager.

1.07 CRITERIA FOR SELECTION OF MATERIAL

A. Contractor shall be responsible for selection of casing, pipe, and pipe joints to carry anticipated thrust of jacks or loads.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Piping and Fittings: As required by Specification or Drawings.

B. Casings: Where shown on Drawings, in accordance with Section 02502 - Steel Pipe and Fittings.

C. Casing Spacers: Where casings are shown on Drawings, use casing spacer width 8 inches for pipe sizes 4 to 12 inches; 12 inches for pipe sizes 14 inches and larger. Wood skids or concrete "donuts" are not acceptable.

1. For welded steel pipe 12 inches and smaller, use Pipeline Seal & Insulator Model PE, or approved equal.

2. For other pipe materials, use Pipeline Seal & Insulator Model C8G-2 or approved equal for pipe sizes up to 12 inches.

3. For all pipe sizes above 12 inches, use Pipeline Seal & Insulator Model C12G-2 or approved equal.

4. Obtain approval for equal product in writing from Project Manager prior to bid.

5. Use ISO-9002 registered casing spacer manufacturer or supplier. Submit copy of current certificate with submittal package.

D. Casing End Seals: Provide Pipeline Seal and Insulator Model C, or approved equal.

E. Casing Spacers (For Pipes Diameters 16 Inches or Greater): Bolt-on style with shell made of two sections of 14-gauge carbon steel, hot rolled, cleaned, and lined with PVC liner, 0.090 inch thick with Durometer A 85-90 overlapping edges to secure liner to spacer; deep embossed flanges for added strength; coated prior to installation of liner and runner with fusion-bonded PVC powder of 14 to 20 mils thickness; electroplated studs, nuts, and washers.

1. Runners (For Pipe Diameters 16 Inches or Greater): Supported by 10-gauge carbon steel MIG risers welded to shell. Total length of weld beads shall be at least 50 percent of the length of the runner. Fill bolt holes with caulk or approved equal to provide a water-tight seal. Minimum requirements: Glass reinforced plastic conforming to the following tests:

a. Tensile Strength: ASTM D 638; 17,600 psi

b. Flexural Strength: ASTM D 790; 25,300 psi

c. Compression Strength: ASTM D 695; 18,000 psi

d. Deflection Temperature at 264 psi: ASTM D 648; 405 F

e. Polyethylene runners are not acceptable

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 LIMITS ON AUGER LENGTH WITHOUT CASING

A. Do not exceed 100 feet for length of auger hole without receiving pit.

B. Do not exceed 75 feet for length of auger hole for PVC pipe 12 inches and less in diameter without receiving pit.

C. Do not exceed 40 feet for length of auger hole for PVC pipe 14 inches to 24 inches in diameter without receiving pit.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Conform to applicable provisions of Section 02233 - Clearing and Grubbing.

B. Utility Relocations: Relocate utility lines clear of pit and zone of potential significant settlement or other ground disturbance.

C. Install casings as required by Drawings, in accordance with this Section.

D. Install temporary solid plug at open end of water line to prevent contamination.

3.03 TRAFFIC CONTROL

A. Conform to applicable provisions of Section 01555 - Traffic Control and Regulation.

B. Secure right-of-entry for crossing Railroad Company's easement or right-of-way.

C. During construction operations, furnish, and maintain barricades and lights to safeguard traffic and pedestrians, until such time as backfill has been completed and removed from site. Provide additional barricades and lights as directed by Project Manager.

3.04 PITS

A. Construct pits on segments of line and within right-of-way. Locate auger pits where there is minimum interference with traffic or access to property. Avoid locating pits close to storm drainage channels, ditches, storm water lines, culverts, or near potentially contaminated areas.

B. Pit Size: Size pits to provide adequate room to meet operational requirements for auger construction as well as structures indicated on Drawings. Provide minimum 6-inch space between pipe and walls of auger pit. Maximum allowable width of pit shall be 5 feet. Width of pit at surface shall not be less than at bottom. Maximum allowable length of pit shall be no more than 5 feet longer than one full section of pipe and shall not exceed 25 feet.

C. Excavate bore pits to finished grade at least 6 inches lower than grade indicated by stakes.

D. Backfill in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

E. Auger pits that are excavated and backfilled as part of open-cut water line construction shall be in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

F. Provide and properly maintain safety protection against traffic, and accidental or unauthorized entry. Provisions to include concrete traffic barriers or other suitable barrier around periphery of pit as appropriate. Fully cover and secure pits where no construction activity is in progress.

G. Install sheeting, lining, shoring, and bracing required for protection of workmen and public in accordance with Section 02260 - Trench Safety Systems.

H. Provide groundwater control and drainage from pits while work is in progress and until pit is properly backfilled. Conform to requirements of Section 01578 - Control of Groundwater and Surface Water.

3.05 AUGERING (BORING)

A. Auger from approved pit locations. Excavate for pits and install shoring as outlined above under Paragraph 3.04, Pits. Auger mechanically with use of pilot hole entire length of crossing and check for line and grade. Diameter of auger hole not to exceed pipe bell diameter plus 2 inches. Place excavated material outside working pit and dispose of as specified. Use water or other fluids in connection with boring operation only to lubricate cuttings; jetting is not permitted.

B. In unconsolidated soil formations, gel-forming colloidal drilling fluid may be used. Fluid is to consist of at least 10 percent of high-grade processed bentonite and shall consolidate cuttings of bit, seal walls of hole, and shall furnish lubrication for subsequent removal of cuttings and installation of pipe.

C. Depending on character of soil encountered during augering operation, conduct operations without interruption, insofar as practical, to prevent hole from collapsing or pipe from seizing up in hole before installation is complete.

D. Allowable variation from line and grade shall be as specified under Paragraph 3.08, Jacking.

E. Remove and replace pipe damaged in augering operations.

3.06 AUGERING OF CASING

A. Provide jacks, mounted on frame or against backstop, of capacity suitable for forcing excavating auger and casing through soil conditions to be encountered. Operate jacks so that even pressure is applied to casing.

B. Provide steerable front section of casing to allow vertical grade adjustments. Provide water level or other means to allow monitoring of grade elevation of auger casing.

C. Bentonite slurry may be used to lubricate casing during installation. Use of water to facilitate removal of spoil and to lubricate exterior casing is permitted; however, water jetting for excavation of soil is not allowed when jacking casing.

D. Tolerances from lines and grades shown on Drawings for gravity sewer pipe installed in casing are plus or minus 6 inches in horizontal alignment, and plus or minus 1-1/2 inches in elevation.

3.07 FILLING ANNULAR SPACE

A. For installation of water line, block void space around pipe in augered hole with approximately 12 inches of packed clay or approved equal material to prevent bedding or backfill from entering void around pipe in augered hole when compacted. For pipe diameters 4 inches through 8 inches use minimum 1/2-cubic-foot clay; for pipe diameters 12 inches through 16 inches use minimum 3/4-cubic- foot clay.

3.08 JACKING

A. Comply with Section 02260 – Trench Safety for all pits, end trenches, and other excavations relating to work required by specifications. Dewater as required to provide safe working conditions.

B. Wherever end trenches are cut into sides of embankment or beyond it, sheath securely and brace such work to prevent earth caving.

C. Make up only one joint at time in pit or trench prior to jacking.

D. Do not interfere with operation of railroad, street, highway, or other facility, nor to weaken or damage embankment or structure.

E. Use heavy-duty jacks sized for forcing casing through embankment. Use appropriate jacking head, usually of timber, and bracing between jacks and jacking head and jacking frame or backstop. Apply jacking pressure uniformly around ring of casing. Set casing to be jacked

on guides, properly braced together, to support section of casing and to direct it in proper line and grade. Place jacking assembly in line with direction and grade of casing. Excavate embankment material just ahead of casing and remove material through casing. Force casing through embankment with jacks into excavated auger hole.

F. Conform excavation for underside of casing to contour and grade of casing, for at least one third of circumference of casing. Provide clearance of not more than 2 inches for upper half of casing. Taper off upper clearance to zero at point where excavation conforms to contour of casing.

G. Excavation may extend beyond end of casing depending on character of material, but shall not exceed 2 feet. Decrease advance excavation at direction of Project Manager, when character of material being excavated makes it desirable to keep advance excavation closer to end of casing.

H. Jack casing from low or downstream end. Lateral or vertical variation in final position of casing from line and grade as shown on Drawings will be permitted only to extent of 1 inch in 10 feet, provided such variation is regular and only in one direction and that final grade of flow line is in direction indicated on Drawings.

I. Use cutting edge of steel plate around head end of casing extending short distance beyond end of casing with inside angles or lugs to keep cutting edge from slipping back onto casing.

J. Once jacking of casing is begun, carry on without interruption, insofar as practicable, to prevent casing from becoming firmly set in embankment.

K. Remove and replace casing damaged in jacking operations.

L. Backfill pits or trenches excavated to facilitate jacking operations immediately after completion of jacking of casing.

M. Grout annular space between casing and excavated hole when loss of embankment occurs or when clearance of 2 inches is exceeded.

3.09 SPACER INSTALLATION

2. There must be no inadvertent metallic contact between casing and carrier pipe. Place spacers to ensure that carrier pipe is adequately supported throughout length, particularly at ends, to offset settling, and possible electrical shorting unless otherwise approved by City. Place end spacer within 6 inches of end of casing pipe, regardless of size of casing and carrier pipe or type of spacer used. Spacing between spacers depends largely on load bearing capabilities of pipe coating and flexibility of pipe.

B. Grade bottom of trench adjacent to each end of casing to provide firm, uniform, and continuous support for carrier pipe. When trench requires some backfill to establish final

trench bottom grade, place backfill material in 6-inch lifts and compact to density of undisturbed soil.

C. Install casing spacers in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Take special care to ensure that sub-components are correctly assembled and evenly tightened, and that no damage occurs during tightening of insulators or carrier pipe insertion.

D. Seal annulus between carrier pipe and casing with casing end seals at each end of casing.

E. Insulator Spacing:

1. Spacing shall be as shown on Drawing with maximum distance between spacers to be 10 feet for pipe sizes 4 to 14 inches and 8 feet for pipe sizes 16 to 30 inches.

2. For ductile iron pipe or bell-and-spigot pipe, install spacers within one foot on each side of bell or flange and one in center of joint when 18- to 20-foot-long joints are used.

3. If casing or carrier pipe is angled, bent, or dented, reduce spacing as directed by Project Manager. Provide casing with smooth, continuous interior surface.

3.10 SETTLEMENT MONITORING

A. Monitor ground surface elevation along length of augering operation. Locate and record settlement monitoring points with respect to construction baseline and elevations. Record elevations to accuracy of 0.01 feet for each monitoring point location.

1.

2. Railroads: Track subbase at centerline of each track.

3. Product pipelines: Directly above and 10 feet before and after pipeline intersection

B. Reading Frequency and Reporting. Take settlement survey readings:

1. Prior to auger excavation reaching point

2. After auger reaches monitoring point in plan

3. After grouting of ground supporting casing is complete

C. Immediately report to Project Manager movement, cracking, or settlement which is detected.

D. Following substantial completion but prior to final completion, make final survey of monitoring points.

3.11 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS MATERIAL

A. Conform to applicable provisions of Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

END OF SECTION

Section 02448

PIPE AND CASING AUGERING FOR SEWERS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Installation of casing for sewer pipe by dry augering or slurry boring methods, together with installation of sewer pipe in casing.

B. Installation of sewer pipe by slurry boring methods. Construction casing may be used at Contractor's option.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Casing, including sewer pipe, installed by augering methods in mid-run of open cut segments where shown on Drawings, will be measured and paid by linear foot from end to end of casing. Casing may be installed, at Contractor's option, at locations other than shown on Drawings, at no additional cost to City.

2. Sewer pipe installed by augering method in mid-run of open-cut segments where shown on Drawings, will be measured and paid by linear foot from end to end of augered section.

3. Pipe or casing segments installed by augering methods in locations other than mid-run of open cut segments and shown on Drawings, will be measured and paid by linear foot along centerline of completed sewer from centerline to centerline of manholes to ends of stubs or termination of pipe, and to inside face of lift stations and other structures.

4. Payment will include and be full compensation for labor, equipment, materials and supervision for excavation and construction of sewer, complete in place including disposal of excess materials, shoring, dewatering, utility adjustments, grouting, backfill, clean-up, and other related work necessary for construction as indicated on Drawings and specified in this Section.

5. Cost for pits and other excavations are included in unit price for pipe with or without casing.

6. Trench safety systems for pits are paid as specified in Section 02260 - Trench Safety Systems.

7. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Augering means either “dry augering” or “slurry augering”.

B. Dry augering is jacking casing while excavating soil at heading and transporting spoil back through casing by otherwise uncased auger.

C. Slurry Auger Method: Installation of casing or pipe by first drilling small diameter pilot hole from shaft to shaft, followed by removing excess soil and installing pipe or conduit by pull back or jacking method.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA) Manual for Railway Engineering.

B. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO).

1.05 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to Texas State Department of Highways and Public Transportation for installations under state highways. City will obtain required permits for State Highway crossings.

B. Installations under Railroads:

1. Secure and comply with requirements of right-of-entry for crossing railroad company's easement or right-of-way from railroad companies affected. Comply with railroad permit requirements.

2. Use dry auger method only.

3. Damages due to delays caused by railroad requesting work to be done at hours which will not inconvenience the railroad will be at no additional cost to City.

4. Maintain minimum 35-foot clearance from centerline of tracks.

1.06 SUBMITTAL

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. For installation by augering, submit for review:

1. Description of mechanized excavating equipment.

2. Method of controlling line and grade.

3. Grouting techniques to be used for filling annular void between sewer pipe and casing, and void between sewer pipe or casing and ground, including equipment, pumping and injection procedures, pressure grout types, and mixes.

4. Locations and dimensions of pits.

5. Pit design and construction drawings.

6. Identification of casings required and paid under Contract and casings installed at Contractor's option.

7. Design of casings.

8. Copy of railroad company permits and right-of-entry.

C. Prepare auger pit and casing design submittals that are site specific. Have auger pit and casing design submittals signed and sealed by qualified Professional Engineer registered in State of Texas.

D. Include in construction phase submittals:

1. Daily logs of augering and boring operations.

2. Settlement monitoring data to meet requirements of paragraph 3.05, Settlement Monitoring.

3. Submit daily logs and settlement monitoring data within 5 days after day of observation.

1.07 CRITERIA FOR DETERMINING CASING INSTALLATION LOADS

A. Select and design casing pipe and pipe joints to carry thrust of jacks or loads due to pulling mechanism in combination with overburden, earth and hydrostatic loads. Select casings for dry augering to withstand action of auger without damage.

B. Use Professional Engineer to determine design stresses, design deflections and factors of safety for design of casing. Present such determination as part of design submittal. Apply the following maximum casing pipe stresses and deflections to casings shown on Drawings:

1. Design stress in pipe wall: 50 percent of minimum yield point of steel or 18,000 psi, whichever is less, when subjected to applicable loading conditions.

2. Wall thickness: Maximum allowable deflection which does not exceed 3 percent of nominal casing diameter.

C. Use Cooper E-80 locomotive loading distributions as criteria for railroad crossings in accordance with AREMA specifications for culverts. In design, account for additive loadings due to multiple tracks.

D. Use H-20 vehicle loading distributions as criteria for truck loading in accordance with AASHTO.

E. When not specifically indicated on Drawings, select casing diameter to permit practical installation (including skids when applicable) and grouting.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Provide casing pipe which is straight, circular in section, uncoated, welded steel pipe, in accordance with Section 02502 - Steel Pipe and Fittings.

B. Provide sewer pipe in accordance with Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers. Do not use high density polyethylene pipe for augering.

C. Provide restrained-joint sewer pipe when installing sewer pipe in slurry bored holes by pull-back method.

D. Supply grout as specified in Section 02431 - Tunnel Grout.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 LOCATION AND SIZE OF AUGER PITS

A. Show location of auger pits on auger pit construction drawings. Locate auger pits for slurry boring so that distance between pits is no greater than 80 feet; and for dry augering not more than 120 feet apart.

B. Locate auger pits and associated work areas to avoid blocking driveways and cross streets and to minimize disruption to business and commercial interests. Avoid auger pit locations near areas identified as potentially contaminated.

C. Make size adequate for construction of structures indicated on Drawings. Provide adequate room to meet Contractor's operational requirements for augering.

D. Provide portable concrete traffic barrier around periphery of pit, meeting applicable safety standards. Properly maintain barrier throughout period pit remains open. Angle traffic barriers in direction of lane flow; do not place barriers perpendicular to on-coming traffic.

E. Provide full cover or other security fencing for each access pit in which there is no construction activity or which is unattended by Contractor's personnel.

3.02 DRY AUGERING OF CASING

A. Provide jacks, mounted on frame or against backstop, of capacity suitable for forcing excavating auger and casing through soil conditions to be encountered. Operate jacks so that even pressure is applied to casing.

B. Provide steerable front section of casing to allow vertical grade adjustments. Provide water level or other means to allow monitoring of grade elevation of auger casing.

C. Bentonite slurry may be used to lubricate casing during installation. Use of water to facilitate removal of spoil is permitted; however, water jetting for excavation of soil is not allowed when jacking casing.

D. Tolerances from lines and grades shown on Drawings for gravity sewer pipe installed in casing are plus or minus 6 inches in horizontal alignment, and plus or minus 1-1/2 inches in elevation.

3.03 SLURRY BORING OF CASING OR PIPE

A. Drill small diameter pilot hole and check for line and grade at receiving end. Redrill pilot hole when bored pipe does not meet specified tolerances.

B. Using pilot hole as guide bore larger diameter hole of sufficient size for pipe or casing installation. Water jetting is not permitted.

C. Bentonite slurry may be used to maintain stable hole and furnish lubrication for pipe or casing installation.

D. Tolerances from lines and grades shown on Drawings for installed sewer pipe are plus or minus 6 inches in horizontal alignment and plus or minus 1-1/2 inches in elevation.

E. Completely fill annular space between sewer pipe and surrounding soil or casing with grout, without displacing pipe during grouting operation.

3.04 SEWER PIPE IN CASING

A. Grout annular void between sewer pipe and casing from end to end of casing. Block and brace sewer pipe to prevent movement during grout placement and to maintain specified line and grade. Grout as specified in Section 02431 - Tunnel Grout.

3.05 SETTLEMENT MONITORING

A. Monitor ground surface elevation along length of augering operation. Locate and record settlement monitoring points with respect to construction baseline and elevations. Record elevations to accuracy of 0.01 feet for each monitoring point location. Establish monitoring points at locations and by methods that protect them from damage by construction operations, tampering, or other external influences. As minimum, locate survey points as follows:

1. For road crossings: Centerline and each shoulder

2. Railroads: Track subbase at centerline of each track

3. Utilities and Pipelines: Directly above and 10 feet before and after utility or pipeline intersection

4. Long bores under improved areas such as pavements: Ground surface elevations must be recorded on centerline ahead of augering operations at locations not to exceed 50 feet apart (including points located for roads, railroads, utilities, and pipelines), or at least three locations per augering drive

B. Reading Frequency and Reporting. Take settlement survey readings:

1. Prior to auger excavation reaching point

2. After auger reaches monitoring point in plan

3. After grouting of ground supporting pipe or casing is complete

C. Immediately report to Project Manager movement, cracking, or settlement which is detected.

D. Following substantial completion but prior to final completion, make final survey of monitoring points.

3.06 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS MATERIAL

A. Remove and dispose of spoil from job site in accordance with Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

3.07 LEAKAGE TESTING

A. Test sanitary sewers for leakage by low pressure air methods in accordance with Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewer.

END OF SECTION

Section 02465

DRILLED SHAFT FOUNDATIONS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Construction of foundations consisting of reinforced concrete drilled shafts.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for drilled shaft foundations under this Section. Include cost in lump sum payment for structure requiring drilled shaft foundations.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit work plan for each structure with complete written description which identifies details of proposed method of construction and sequence of operations for construction relative to drilled shaft activities. Descriptions, with supporting illustrations, shall be sufficiently detailed to demonstrate to Project Manager that procedures meet requirements of Specifications and Drawings.

C. Submit project record documents under provisions of Section 01785 - Project Record Documents. Record locations of drilled shafts, as installed referenced to survey benchmarks. Include location of utilities encountered or rerouted. Give horizontal dimensions, elevations, inverts and gradients.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ACI 336.1 - Standard Specification for Construction of Drilled Piers

B. TxDOT Standard Specification Item 416 - Drilled Shaft Foundations

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 EQUIPMENT

A. Perform excavation with equipment suitable for achieving requirements of this Specification.

2.02 MATERIAL

A. For cast-in-place concrete, use Class A concrete. Refer to Section 03310 - Structural Concrete.

B. For reinforcing steel, refer to Section 03211 - Reinforcing Steel

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Conduct an inspection to determine condition and locations of existing structures and other permanent installations, prior to commencing work.

3.02 EXCAVATION

A. Perform excavation required for drilled cylindrical shafts, at locations shown on Drawings through whatever materials encountered, to dimensions and elevations shown or required by site conditions. When satisfactory material is not encountered at plan depth, bottom of shaft will be adjusted or foundation altered, as determined by Project Manager, to satisfactorily comply with design requirements.

B. Do not make shaft excavations within 3 shaft diameters (edge to edge) of shafts which have been concreted within previous 24 hours.

C. Inspect drilled shaft excavations for verticality and side sloughing. Verticality is specified at one inch in 10 feet of shaft length. Check to full depth of dry auguring prior to introducing drilling mud. Straighten or add suitable reinforcing steel to shafts not meeting specified tolerance.

D. Slurry is to contain 4 to 8 percent by weight of bentonite additive and satisfy slurry specifications set forth in ACI 336.1, Section 2.3.5.2e. These requirements are more stringent than TxDOT Standard Specification Item 416.3.1. Stricter slurry specifications are required to assure suspension of detritus from drilling operations, and to ensure adequate cleaning of slurry prior to concreting. Cleaning of slurry is important to prevent deposition of detritus on reinforcement cages and ensure that inclusions of detritus will not be formed within concrete mass.

E. At final bearing elevation, clean bottom of each shaft and remove seepage water for examination by Project Manager before reinforcing steel and concrete is placed. Suitable access and lighting for proper inspection of completed excavation is to be provided. Reinforcing steel and concrete is to be placed in drilled shaft without delay after approval of excavation by Project Manager.

3.03 DRILLED SHAFT CONSTRUCTION

A. Drilled shaft construction and installation is to follow TxDOT Standard Specification Item 416 (with exceptions noted below) and ACI 336.1.

B. Before placing concrete, clean out shaft bottom with drilling bucket in order to remove sediments which may not be displaced by concrete. Clean shaft bottom with "clean-out" bucket until rotation on bottom without crowd (i.e., penetration under force) produces little spoil. Probing after cleaning out is essential to verify condition of base of shaft.

C. Concrete is to conform to requirements of ACI 336.1 Section 2.3.5.5.

D. Concrete is to be placed continuously in shaft to construction joint indicated on Drawings or as directed in TxDOT Standard Specification Item 416.3.3. Concrete is to be placed through suitable tube or tremie to prevent segregation of materials. Tremie pipe diameter is to be at least 8 times as large as largest concrete aggregate size.

E. Computation of final concrete volume for each shaft is to be made. Core and check the integrity of shafts taking an unreasonably high or low volume of concrete.

F. If caving soil conditions or excessive groundwater is encountered, use of temporary casing is permitted to prevent caving of material around shaft and to control seepage of groundwater into excavation.

G. Casing material is to be metal of ample strength to withstand handling stresses, pressure of concrete and of surrounding earth or backfill materials and is to be water-tight. Casing shall be smooth, clean and free of accumulations of hardened concrete. Outside diameter of casing is not to be less than specified diameter of drilled shaft.

H. Elapsed time is not to exceed one hour from beginning of concrete placement in cased portion of shaft, until extraction of casing is begun.

I. Withdraw temporary casings as shaft is filled with concrete, or immediately following concreting operation. Bottom of casing is to always remain at least one foot below level of concrete during placement to overcome hydrostatic pressure. Smoothly extract casing with vibratory hammer. Casing extraction is to be at slow, uniform rate with pull in line with vertical axis of shaft. Leave no casing in place.

J. If upward movement of concrete or reinforcing steel occurs inside casing at beginning of pulling operation or at anytime during pulling, stop pulling immediately and leave casing in place.

K. If casing must be left in place, Project Manager is to be informed to determine shaft capacity calculations.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

3.05 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS MATERIAL

A. Dispose of excess materials in accordance with requirements of Section 01504 - Temporary Facilities and Control or Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

END OF SECTION

Section 02476

CAISSON FOR LIFT STATION

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Constructing external walls of lift station wet well structures by caisson method, including base slab and excavation cell partitions. Valve/pump chamber to be constructed by open cut.

B. If method of construction is not specified, Contractor may select caisson method as an alternate to open-cut method for wet well construction.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for lift station construction using caisson method. Include cost for caisson construction in lump sum for lift station.

2. No separate measurement will be made for payment of concrete in wet well caisson except listed in an approved schedule of values.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 DEFINITION

A. Caisson is defined as external walls of concrete structure, together with excavation cell partition walls, erected at-grade or in starter pit and sunk by gravity to final position through excavation inside structure under dry or wet conditions. Complete caisson includes structural base slab. Caisson walls provide ground support during construction and for permanent installation.

B. Dry construction means that Contractor operates sufficient external ground water control system to maintain ground water level and piezometric head safely below excavation bottom within caisson.

C. Wet construction means that external hydrostatic ground water pressure is counteracted by water or slurry within caisson.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM D 698 - Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lb/ft^3 (600 kN-m/m^3)).

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit drawings and design calculations prepared by Contractor's Engineer.

1. Show modifications proposed to lift station structure design required for caisson construction.

2. Submit wall design including water jet, bentonite and grout pipes, and injection ports, and dimensions of annular space for bentonite lubrication. Show increased wall thickness for dead weight when required to sink caisson.

3. Show height of each concrete placement lift and construction joint locations.

C. Submit safety plan to meet OSHA requirements. These procedures will not be subject to approval by Project Manager and are for record purposes only. Address in plan, as minimum but not limited to the following:

1. Protection against caisson instability, soil instability, and ground water inflow.

2. Safety for caisson access and exit, including ladders, stairs, walkways, and hoists.

3. Protection against equipment operations, and for lifting and hoisting equipment and material.

4. Support of surcharge weights.

5. Ventilation systems.

6. Monitoring for hazardous gases.

7. Protection against flooding of caisson and inflow into sewers when connected to caisson structure.

8. Protection of workers and public, including traffic barriers, accidental or unauthorized entry, and falling objects.

9. Safety supervising responsibilities.

D. Building and Structures Assessment. Submit for review prior to construction, Building and Structures Assessment Plan. Provide preconstruction and post-construction assessment reports for buildings and structures located within distance equal to depth of caisson but at least 50 feet in plan from proposed caisson perimeter. Include photographs or video of existing damage to structures in vicinity of caisson in assessment reports.

E. Caisson Survey. Submit Caisson Survey identifying required modifications to complete lift station and to comply with specified tolerances.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 CONCRETE

A. Concrete is to be in accordance with Section 03310 - Structural Concrete.

2.02 REINFORCEMENT

A. Reinforcement is to be in accordance with Section 03211 - Concrete Reinforcement.

2.03 EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Embedded items are to be in accordance with Section 15140 - Pipe Hangers, Supports, and Restraints.

2.04 BACKFILL

A. Select material is to be in accordance with Section 02316 - Excavation and Backfill for Structures.

B. Cement stabilized sand is to be in accordance with Section 02321 - Cement Stabilized Sand.

2.05 GROUT

A. Use grout conforming to Section 02431 - Tunnel Grout.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 SITE PREPARATION

A. Perform site preparation for site clearing and for grading of site to required elevation. Provide for site drainage.

B. Relocate and protect utilities to remain that may be affected by caisson construction area, including starter pit.

C. Install security fencing around caisson construction areas to prevent accidental or unauthorized entry.

D. Provide for control of ground water and surface water according to Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

E. Compact disturbed soils to 95 percent of maximum density as determined by ASTM D 698. Compact soil at moisture content sufficient to develop required density.

3.02 CAISSON WALL CONSTRUCTION

A. Place concrete as specified in Section 03310 - Structural Concrete.

B. Inspect concrete surfaces after form removal and repair defects before wall section is sunk into ground.

3.04 CAISSON CLEAN UP AND INSPECTION

A. Clean interior of caisson after seal slab has been poured. Remove soil, mud, slurries, spilled grout or concrete, or other materials not part of structure from caisson and clean surfaces.

B. Inspect caisson for possible structural damage or damage to embedded items occurring during excavation and caisson sinking. Notify and allow Project Manager to witness caisson inspection. Repair and replace damage before proceeding with construction.

3.03 CAISSON CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

A. Maximum acceptable deviation of caisson from vertical is 1 inch in 5 feet.

B. Maximum acceptable horizontal deviation from design location of center of caisson at ground surface level is 12 inches.

C. Install elevation of base of caisson structure equal to or lower than elevation shown in Drawings. Show top of caisson structure elevation on Drawings.

D. Provide block-outs with allowance for pipe entry deviations of plus or minus 1.5 inches vertically and plus or minus 6 inches horizontally, plus caisson construction tolerances.

E. Tolerances defined above are only acceptable provided that Contractor can adjust sewer connections, structural, mechanical and electrical components to resolve deviation from plumpness and horizontal or vertical location as approved by Project Manager. Adjustments must be made without adversely affecting operation or maintenance of lift station.

F. Monitor caisson installation to verify that no settlement or heave is observed for 10 consecutive days starting not later than 50 days after structural completion.

3.05 BACKFILL

A. Remove starter pit shoring to depth of at least 8 feet below ground surface and for at least 5 feet from pipes and tunnels penetrating shoring. Remove shoring concurrent with backfilling operations. Perform shoring removal and backfilling so that stability of pit is maintained.

B. Compact backfill material in accordance with Sections 02316 - Excavation and Backfill for Structures.

3.06 MONITORING

A. Settlement. Install series of settlement monitoring points on ground and structures within area of potential influence due to soil movements at caisson, before start of caisson or starter pit construction.

1. As minimum, equally space 4 monitoring points around caisson at distance of 15 feet and 4 more at distance 30 feet from caisson for total of 8 monitoring points.

2. Survey monitoring point elevations before start of caisson excavation and weekly thereafter until structure has been completed and dewatering terminated.

B. Caisson

1. Determine plumpness of caisson at least once each shift at two locations, 90 degrees apart, during caisson sinking operations until caisson is secured by grout and base slab hardened, .

2. As soon as caisson has been secured, install 3 benchmarks, 120 degrees apart, on top concrete placement for settlement monitoring of installed caisson. Transfer benchmarks to higher elevation on structure as required due to continued lift station construction. Continue weekly monitoring of settlement points until 60 days after completed construction of structure.

3. Install and monitor borehole heave points in caisson for dry construction as defined on Drawings. Survey heave points before excavation starts and upon retrieval when final excavation bottom has been reached.

C. Submit monitoring results to Project Manager weekly.

3.07 CAISSON SURVEY

A. When caisson has been secured, seal slab poured, and, in case of wet construction, when fluid has been pumped out, survey installed caisson for compliance with tolerances defined in Paragraph 3.04, Caisson Construction Tolerances. Include in Survey:

1. Location of center of caisson at ground level

2. Elevation of top and bottom of caisson and structural slab connection

3. Elevation and locations of penetrations and embedded items and other support points for lift station installation completion

4. Deviation from plumb from caisson top to structural slab at two locations 90 degrees apart

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform field inspection and testing in accordance with Section 03310 - Structural Concrete and Section 01450 - Contractor's Quality Control.

3.09 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS MATERIAL

A. Remove excavated material from job site in accordance with Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

END OF SECTION

Section 02501

DUCTILE IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Ductile iron pipe and fittings for water lines, wastewater force mains, gravity sanitary sewers, and storm sewers.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for ductile iron pipe and fittings under this Section, with the exception of extra fittings in place. Include cost in unit prices for work as specified in the following Sections, as applicable:

   a. Section 02511 - Water lines

   b. Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers

   c. Section 02532 - Sanitary Sewage Force Mains

   d. Section 02631 - Storm Sewers

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Extra Ductile Iron Compact Fittings in Place shall be for additional fittings required to complete job. This is not to exclude extension of pipe across driveway or intersection for purpose of terminating line in more advantageous position. This determination shall be at discretion of Project Manager. This bid item includes additional fittings as may be necessary to complete job in conformance with intent of Drawings.

C. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ANSI A 21.4 (AWWA C 104) - Standard for Cement-Mortar Lining for Ductile-Iron Pipe and Fittings, for Water.

B. ANSI A 21.10 (AWWA C 110) - Standard for Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings, 3-in. through 48-in.

C. ANSI A 21.11 (AWWA C 111) - Standard for Rubber Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings.

D. ANSI A 21.15 (AWWA C 115) - Standard for Flanged Ductile-Iron Pipe With Ductile-Iron or Gray-Iron Threaded Flanges.

E. ANSI A21.16 (AWWA C 116) - Protective Fusion Bonded Epoxy Coating for the Interior and Exterior Surfaces of Ductile Iron and Grey iron Fittings for Water Supply Service.

F. ANSI A 21.50 (AWWA C 150) - Standard for Thickness Design of Ductile-Iron Pipe.

G. ANSI A 21.51 (AWWA C 151) - Standard for Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast, for Water and Other Liquids.

H. ANSI A 21.53 (AWWA C 153) - Standard for Ductile Iron Compact Fittings, 3 inches through 24 inches and 54 inches through 64 inches for Water Service.

I. ASME B 16.1 - Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings.

J. ASTM D 1248 - Standard Specification Polyethylene Plastics Molding and Extrusion Materials for Wire and Cable.

K. ASTM F 477 - Elastomeric Seals (gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe.

L. ASTM G 62 - Standard Test Methods for Holiday Detection in Pipeline Coatings.

M. AWWA C 102 - American National Standard for Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe Systems.

N. AWWA C 300 - Standard for Prestressed Concrete Pressure Pipe, Steel-Cylinder Type, for Water and other Liquids.

O. AWWA C 600 - Standard for Installation of Ductile-Iron Water Mains and Their Appurtenances.

P. SSPC-SP 6 - Steel Structures Painting Council, Commercial Blast Cleaning.

Q. American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA) Manual for Railway Engineering.

R. American Association of State Highway Transportation Officials (AASHTO).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. For pipes 16 inches and greater submit shop drawings signed and sealed by Professional Engineer registered in State of Texas showing the following:

1. Manufacturer's pipe design calculations.

2. Provide lay schedule of pictorial nature indicating alignment and grade, laying dimensions, fitting, flange, and special details, with plan view of each pipe segment sketched, detailing pipe invert elevations, horizontal bends, restrained joints, and other critical features. Indicate station numbers for pipe and fittings corresponding to Drawings. Do not start production of pipe and fittings prior to review and approval by Project Manager. Provide final approved lay schedule on CD-ROM in Adobe portable document format (*.PDF).

3. Calculations and limits of thrust restraint.

4. Class and length of joint.

C. Submit manufacturer's certifications that ductile iron pipe and fittings meet provisions of this Section and have been hydrostatically tested at factory and meet requirements of ANSI A 21.51.

D. Submit certifications that pipe joints have been tested and meet requirements of ANSI A 21.11.

E. Submit affidavit of compliance in accordance with ANSI A21.16 for fittings with fusion bonded epoxy coatings or linings.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 DUCTILE IRON PIPE

A. Ductile Iron Pipe Barrels: ANSI A 21.15, ANSI A 21.50 or ANSI A 21.51; bear mark of Underwriters' Laboratories approval; minimum thickness Class 51 for water lines and thickness Class 52 for sanitary sewers, or as shown on Drawings. Provide minimum thickness Class 53 for flanged pipe.

B. Provide pipe sections in standard lengths, not less than 18 feet long, except for special fittings and closure sections as indicated on shop drawings.

C. Modify pipe for cathodic protection in accordance with Section 16640 - Cathodic Protection

for Pipelines. In lieu of furnishing ductile iron pipe with cathodic protection system, furnish ductile iron pipe with polyethylene encasement, provided the following criteria is met:

1. Provide minimum thickness class.

2. Provide polyethylene encasement material and installation in accordance with AWWA C105, and backfill as specified. Minimum of two complete wraps of 8-mil-thick polyethylene.

3. Use polyethylene encasement for open cut installations only. For augered sections or sections installed inside a casing, provide coating in accordance with paragraph 2.05 D.1.

4. Adhere to other requirements specified herein (e.g., insulation kits, etc.).

D. For use of pressure class pipe for water lines, design pipe and fittings to withstand most critical simultaneous application of external loads and internal pressures. Base design on minimum of AASHTO HS-20 loading, AREMA E-80 loads and depths of bury as indicated on Drawings. Design pipes with Marston's earth loads for a transition width trench for zero to 16 feet of cover. Use Marston's earth loads for a trench width of O.D. (of pipe) + 4 feet for pipe greater than 16 feet of cover. Use Marston's equations for a trench condition in both open-cut and tunnel applications. Design for most critical groundwater level condition. Pipe design conditions:

1. Working pressure = 100 psi.

2. Hydrostatic field test pressure = 150 psi.

3. Maximum pressure due to surge = 150 psi.

4. Minimum Pressure due to surge = -5 psi.

5. Design tensile stress due to surge or hydrostatic test pressure: No greater than 50% minimum yield.

6. Design bending stress due to combined earth loads and surge or hydrostatic test pressure: No greater than 48,000 psi.

7. Unit weight of fill $\geq$ 120 pcf.

8. Deflection lag factor (D_l) = 1.2.

9. Bedding constant (K) = 0.1.

10. Moment coefficient = 0.16.

11. Fully saturated soil conditions hw=h=depth of cover above top of pipe.

E. Hydrostatic Test of Pipe: AWWA C 151, Section 5.2.1, at point of manufacture. Hold test for a minimum 2 minutes for thorough inspection of pipe. Repair or reject pipe revealing leaks or cracks.

F. Pipe Manufacturer for large diameter water lines: Minimum of 5 years of successful pipe installations in continuous service. Manufacturer must maintain on site or in plant enough fittings to satisfy the following requirements:

Line Diameter	Required Bends*
20 and 24 inches	Four 45° bends per 5,000 LF of water line
> 24 inches	Four 22.5° bends per 10,000 LF of water line
*Based on total length of contract (minimum of four). Any combination of bends may be substituted at manufacturer's option (i.e. two 22.5° bends are equivalent to one 45° bend) and will be counted as one fitting.	

Manufacturer or supplier must be capable of delivering bends to job site within 12 hours of notification. Use fittings at direction of Project Manager where unforeseen obstacles are encountered during construction. These fittings are in addition to any fittings called out in construction documents and must be available at all times.

G. Provide flange adapter with insulating kit as required when connecting new piping to existing piping and piping of different materials, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

H. Clearly mark pipe section to show location and thickness/pressure class color coded.

2.02 JOINTS

A. Joint Types: ANSI A 21.11 push-on; ANSI A 21.11 mechanical joint; or ANSI A 21.16 flanged end. Provide push-on joints unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings or required by these specifications. For bolted joints, conform to requirements of AWWA C111; provide minimum 304 stainless steel for restraint joints.

B. Where required by Drawings, provide approved restrained joints for buried service.

C. Threaded or grooved-type joints which reduce pipe wall thickness below minimum required are not acceptable.

D. Provide for restrained joints designed to meet test pressures required under Section 02515 - Hydrostatic Testing of Pipelines or Section 02532 - Sanitary Sewer Force Mains, as

applicable. Provide restrained joints for test pressure or maximum surge pressure as specified, whichever is greater for water lines. Do not use passive resistance of soil in determining minimum restraint lengths.

E. Bond rubber gasketed joints to provide electrical continuity along entire pipeline, except where insulating flanges are required by Drawings.

F. Make curves and bends by deflecting joints. Do not exceed maximum deflection recommended by pipe manufacturer for pipe joints or restraint joints. Submit details of other methods of providing curves and bends for consideration by Project Manager. When other methods are deemed satisfactory, install at no additional cost to City.

2.03 GASKETS

A. Furnish, when no contaminant is identified, plain rubber (SBR) gasket material in accordance with ANSI A21.11 or ASTM F 477 (One Bolt only); for flanged joints 1/8-inch-thick gasket in accordance with ANSI A 21.15.

B. For pipes to be installed in potentially contaminated areas, see Specification Section 02105 - Sampling and Analysis in PPCA.

2.04 FITTINGS

A. Use fittings of same size as pipe. Reducers are not permitted to facilitate an off-size fitting. Reducing bushings are also prohibited. Make reductions in piping size by reducing fittings. Line and coat fittings as specified for pipe they connect to.

B. Push-on Fittings: ANSI A 21.10; ductile iron ANSI A 21.11 joints, gaskets, and lubricants; pressure rated at 250 psig.

C. Flanged Fittings: ANSI 21.10; ductile iron ANSI A 21.11 joints, gaskets, and lubricants; pressure rated at 250 psig.

D. Mechanical Joint Fittings: ANSI A 21.11; pressure rated at 250 psi.

E. Ductile Iron Compact Fittings for Water lines: ANSI A 21.53; 4 inch through 12 inch diameter fusion bonded epoxy-lined or cement mortar lining.

2.05 COATINGS AND LININGS

A. Water line Interiors: ANSI A21.4, cement lined with seal coat; ANSI A 21.16 fusion bonded epoxy coating for interior; comply with NSF 61.

B. Sanitary Sewer and Force Main Interiors:

1. Preparation: Commercial blast cleaning conforming to SSPC-SP6.

2. Liner thickness: Nominal 40 mils, for pipe barrel interior; minimum 6 to 10 mils at gasket groove and outside spigot end to 6-inches back from end.

3. Testing: ASTM G 62, Method B for voids and holidays; provide written certification.

4. Acceptable Lining Materials:

a. Provide approved virgin polyethylene conforming to ASTM D 1248, with inert fillers and carbon black to resist ultraviolet degradation during storage; heat bonded to interior surface of pipe and fittings.

b. Ceramic Epoxy – Protecto 401.

C. Sanitary Sewer Point Repair Pipe: For pipes which will be lined with high density polyethylene liner pipe or cured-in-place liner, provide cement-lined with seal coat in accordance with ANSI A 21.4. For pipes which will not be provided with named liner, provide pipe as specified in Paragraph 2.05B, Sanitary Sewer and Force Main Interiors.

D. Exterior:

1. Water Lines

a. Auger Holes: Conform to requirements of Section 02527 - Polyurethane Coatings on Steel or Ductile Iron Pipe.

b. Above Ground (or Exposed): Conform to requirements of Section 02502 - Steel Pipe and Fittings, Paragraph 2.03.

c. Tunnel, Casing or Direct Bury: Conform to requirements of Paragraph 2.05E.

2. Sanitary Sewers: Prime coat and outside asphaltic coating conforming to ANSI A21.10, ANSI A21.15, or ANSI A21.51 for pipe and fittings in open cut excavation and in casings.

E. Polyethylene Wrap: For buried pipes not cathodically protected, provide polyethylene wrap unless otherwise specified or shown. Conform to requirements of Section 02528 - Polyethylene Wrap.

F. For flanged joints in buried service, provide petrolatum wrapping system, Denso, or equal, for the complete joint and alloy steel fasteners. Alternatively, provide bolts made of Type 304 stainless steel.

G. Pipe to be installed in potentially contaminated areas shall have coatings and linings recommended by the manufacturer for maximum resistance to the contaminants identified in the Phase II Environmental Site Assessment Report.

H. For water lines cathodically protected, supply ductile iron pipe with either tape coatings or some other bonded dielectric coating as specified in Section 02518 - Steel Pipe and Fittings for Large Diameter Water Lines.

2.06 MANUFACTURERS

A. Use pre-approved manufacturers listed in City of Houston approved products.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Conform to installation requirements of Sections 02511 - Water Lines, 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers, 02532 - Sanitary Sewer Force Mains 02561 - Storm Sewers and 02553 - Point Repairs and Obstruction Removal, except as modified in this Section.

B. Install in accordance with AWWA C 600 and manufacturer's recommendations.

C. Install all ductile iron pipe in double polyethylene wrap, unless cathodic protection is provided. Do not use polyethylene wrap with a cathodic protection system.

D. Holiday Testing.

1. Polyurethane: Conform to requirements of Section 02527 - Polyurethane Coatings for Steel or Ductile Iron Pipe.

2. Fusion Bonded Epoxy: Conform to requirements for new fittings in ANSI A 21.16.

3.02 FIELD REPAIR OF COATINGS

A. Polyurethane: Conform to requirements of Section 02527 - Polyurethane Coatings for Steel or Ductile Iron Pipe.

B. Fusion Bonded Epoxy: Conform to requirements for new fittings in ANSI A 21.16.

END OF SECTION

Section 02502

STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Steel pipe and fittings for water lines for aerial crossings, aboveground piping, and encasement sleeves. Do not bury steel pipe, unless it is large diameter water line.

B. Specifications identify requirements for small-diameter less than or equal to 20 inches.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No payment will be made for steel pipe and fittings under this Section. Refer to Section 02511 - Water Lines for measurement and payment.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AASHTO - Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges.

B. ASME B 16.1 - Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings.

C. ASTM A 36 - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel.

D. ASTM A 53 - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless.

E. ASTM A 105 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Pipe Forgings for Piping Applications

F. ASTM A 106 - Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service.

G. ASTM A 135 - Standard Specification for Electric-Resistance-Welded Steel Pipe.

H. ASTM A 139 - Standard Specification for Electric-Fusion (ARC) - Welded Steel Pipe (NPS 4 and Over).

I. ASTM A 1011 - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural High-Strength Low-Alloy and High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability.

J. ASTM D 4541 - Standard Test Method for Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable Adhesion Testers

K. AWWA C 200 - Standard for Steel Water Pipe 6 in. and Larger.

L. AWWA C 206 - Standard for Field Welding of Steel Water Pipe.

M. AWWA C 207 - Standard for Steel Pipe Flanges for Waterworks Service - Sizes 4 in. through 144 in.

N. AWWA C 210 - Standard for Liquid Epoxy Coating Systems for the Interior and Exterior of Steel Water Pipelines.

P. AWWA M 11 – Steel Pipe – A Guide for Design and Installation.

O. SSPC Good Painting Practice, Volume 1.

P. SSPC SP 1 - Surface Preparation Specification No. 1 Solvent Cleaning.

Q. SSPC SP 5 - Joint Surface Preparation Standard White Blast Cleaning.

R. SSPC SP 6 - Surface Preparation Specification No. 6 Commercial Blast Cleaning.

S. SSPC SP 10 - Surface Preparation Specification No. 10 Near-White Blast Cleaning.

T. SSPC VIS 1 - Visual Standard for Abrasive Blast Cleaned Steel.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures. For aerial crossings and above ground piping, include lay schedule of new pipe and fittings indicating alignment and grade, laying dimensions, lining and coating systems, proposed welding procedures, fabrication, fitting, flange, and special details. Show station numbers for pipe and fittings corresponding to Drawings.

B. Submit manufacturer's certifications that pipe and fittings are new and unused.

C. Submit manufacturer's certifications that pipe and fittings have been hydrostatically tested at factory in accordance with AWWA C 200.

D. Submit manufacturer's affidavits that coatings and linings comply with applicable requirements of this Section and:

1. Polyurethane coatings were applied in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendation and allowed to cure at temperature 5 degrees above dew point.

2. Linings were applied and allowed to cure at temperature above 32 F.

E. Submit certification from NACE Certified Coatings Inspector, having Level III certification for coatings and linings, that steel pipe furnished on project was properly inspected and defective coatings detected were properly repaired.

1.05 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prior to start of work, provide proof of certification of qualification for welders employed for type of work, procedures and positions involved. Provide welder qualifications in accordance with AWWA C 206.

B. Shop-applied coatings and linings; provide services of an independent coating and lining inspection service or testing laboratory with qualified coating inspectors. Perform inspection by NACE trained inspectors under supervision of NACE Level III Certified Coatings Inspector verifying compliance with same requirements specified in Paragraph 3.02.

C. Coatings: Measure temperature and dew point of ambient air before applying coatings. Inspect physical dimensions and overall condition of coatings. Inspect for visible surface defects, thickness, and adhesion of coating to surface and between layers.

D. Final Inspection:

1. Before shipment, inspect each finished pipe, fitting, special and accessory for markings, metal thickness, coating thickness, lining thickness (if shop applied), joint dimensions, and roundness.

2. Inspect for coating placement and defects. Test exterior coating for holidays.

a. Inspect linings for thickness, pitting, scarring, and adhesion.

E. Ensure workmen engaged in manufacturing are qualified and experienced in performance of their specific duties.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 STEEL PIPE

A. Manufacture pipe with nominal diameter 20 inches and less but more than 2 inches to conform to ASTM A106 or A 53 Grade B, standard weight.

B. Provide steel pipe and encasement sleeves designed and manufactured in conformance with AWWA C 200 and AWWA M 11 except as modified herein. Steel to be minimum of ASTM A 36, ASTM A 1011 Grade 36, ASTM A 53 Grade B, ASTM A 135 Grade B, or ASTM A 139 Grade B.

C. Minimum Allowable Steel-Wall Thickness:

CARRIER PIPE			
Nom. Pipe Size (In.)	Min. Wall		Approx. Wt. Per L. F. Uncoated (Lb.)
	O.D. (In.)	Thick. (In.)	
4	4.50	0.250	11.35
6	6.625	0.280	18.97
8	8.625	0.322	28.55
10	10.75	0.365	40.48
12	12.75	0.375	49.56
16	16.00	0.375	62.58
20	20.00	0.375	78.60

Notes Carrier Pipe:

1. Review pipe and fitting design for conditions exceeding those specified herein.

2. Provide pipe with wall thickness of no less than listed in table above.

MINIMUM DIAMETER CASING PIPE (ENCASEMENT SLEEVES)			
Corresp. Casing Pipe Size (In.)	Min. Wall		Approx. Wt. Per L. F. Uncoated (Lb.)
	O.D. (In.)	Thick. (In.)	
8	8.625	0.219	19.64
10	10.75	0.219	24.60
12	12.75	0.219	29.28
16	16.00	0.219	36.86
18	18.00	0.25	47.39
20	20.00	0.250	52.73
24	24.00	0.250	63.41

Notes for Casing Pipe:

1. Provide casing pipe with wall thickness of no less than listed in table above.

2. Casing pipe: AWWA C 200 new uncoated welded steel.

3. Verify casing diameter required with dimensions of casing spacer.

D. Provide pipe sections in lengths of no less than 16 feet except as required for special sections, and no greater than 40 feet.

E. Provide short sections of steel pipe no less than 4 feet in length unless indicated on Drawings or specifically permitted by Project Manager.

F. Fittings: Factory forged for sizes 4 inches through 20 inches; long radius bends; beveled ends for field butt welding; wall thickness equal to or greater than pipe to which fitting is to be welded unless otherwise shown on Drawings.

G. Joints:

1. Standard field joint for steel pipe and encasement sleeve: AWWA C 206. Single-welded, butt joint.

2. Provide mechanically coupled or flanged joints for valves and fittings, as shown on Drawings. Flanges: AWWA C 207, Class D; same diameter and drilling as Class 125 cast iron flanges ASME B 16.1. Maintain electrically isolated flanged joints between steel and cast iron by using epoxy-coated bolts, nuts, washers and insulating type gasket.

3. Elbows to be standard weight seamless elbows per ASTM A106, Grade A or B.

4. Flanges for pipe 20 inches in diameter and smaller shall be ANSI 150 lb. flat face, slip on or weld neck flanges, meeting ASTM A105 requirements. Where flanges are to join to valves with raised face flanges, use ANSI 150 lb. raised flange.

5. Provide same coating for exposed portions of nuts and bolts as flanges which they secure.

H. Fabricate flanges with over-size bolt holes, with flanges drilled in pairs, to accommodate insulating sleeves.

2.02 INTERNAL LINING SYSTEMS FOR STEEL PIPE, ALL INSTALLATIONS

A. Supply steel pipe with epoxy lining, capable of conveying water at temperatures not greater than 140 degrees F. Provide linings conforming to American National Standards Institute/National Sanitation Foundation (ANSI/NFS) Standard 61 and certification to be from organization accredited by ANSI. Unless otherwise noted, coat exposed (wetted) steel parts of flanges, blind flanges, bolts, access manhole covers, etc., with epoxy lining, as specified.

B. Epoxy Lining AWWA C 210, White, or approved equal for shop and field joint applied, except as modified in this Section. Provide material from same manufacturer. For Pipe larger than 2 inches in diameter protect interior surface with liquid two-part chemically cured epoxy primer specified for interior surfaces.

Surface Preparation 2.0 to 3.0 mils surface profile	SSPC-5 (64) White Blast Clean
Prime Coat 4.0 to 6.0 mils DFT	NSF Certified Epoxy - Buff, or approved equal
Intermediate Coat 4.0 to 6.0 mils DFT	NSF Certified Epoxy - Buff, or approved equal
Finish Coat 4.0 to 6.0 mils DFT	NSF Certified Epoxy - White, or approved equal

1. Total allowable dry film thickness for system:

   a. Minimum: 12.0 mils.

   b. Maximum: 18.0 mils.

   c. Minimum field adhesion: 700 psi.

2. Dry film thicknesses for approved alternate products in accordance with product manufacturer's recommendations.

3. Lining system may consist of three or more coats of same approved alternate epoxy lining without use of separate primer.

2.03 EXTERNAL COATING SYSTEM FOR STEEL PIPE INSTALLED ABOVEGROUND AND IN VAULTS (EXPOSED)

A. Provide 3-coat-epoxy/polyurethane coating system as designated below. Provide material from same manufacturer.

Surface Preparation 2.0 to 3.0 mils surface profile	SSPC SP 10 Near White Blast Clean
Prime Coat 4.0 to 6.0 mils DFT	Inhibitive Epoxy Primer, or approved equal
Intermediate Coat 4.0 to 6.0 mils DFT	Chemical Resistant Epoxy, or approved equal
Finish Coat 1.5 to 2.5 mils DFT	Polyurethane, or approved equal Barr Blue color as approved by Project Manager

B. Total Allowable Dry Film Thickness (DFT) for System:

1. Minimum: 9.5 mils.

2. Maximum: 12.5 mils.

C. Clean bare pipe free from mud, mill lacquer, oil, grease, or other contaminant. Inspect and clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP-1 to remove oil, grease, and loosely adhering deposits prior to blast cleaning. Remove visible oil and grease spots by solvent wiping. Use only approved safety solvents which do not leave residue. Use preheating to remove oil, grease, mill scale, water, and ice provided pipe is preheated in uniform manner to avoid distortion.

D. Remove surface imperfections such as slivers, scabs, burrs, weld spatter, and gouges, presence of metallic defects may be cause for rejection of pipe.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Conform to applicable provisions of Section 02511 - Water lines, except as modified in this Section.

B. Comply with the following:

1. Bedding and Backfilling: Conform to requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

2. For pipes with coating: Do not roll or drag pipe on ground, move pipe in such a manner as not to damage pipe or coating. Carefully inspect pipe for abrasions and repair damaged coating before pipe is installed.

C. Static Electricity:

1. Properly ground steel pipeline during construction as necessary to prevent build-up of static electricity.

2. Electrically test where required after installation is complete.

3.02 EXTERNAL COATING SYSTEM FOR STEEL PIPE INSTALLED ABOVE GROUND AND IN VAULTS (EXPOSED) AND EPOXY INTERNAL LINING SYSTEM.

A. Safety: Paints, coatings, and linings specified in this Section are hazardous materials. Vapors may be toxic or explosive. Protective equipment, approved by appropriate regulatory agency, is mandatory for personnel involved in painting, coating, and lining operations.

B. Workmanship:

1. Application: By qualified and experienced workers who are knowledgeable in surface preparation and application of high-performance industrial coatings.

2. Paint Application Procedures: SSPC Good Painting Practices, Volume 1.

C. Surface Preparation:

1. Prepare surfaces for painting by using abrasive blasting.

2. Schedule cleaning and painting so that detrimental amounts of dust or other contaminants do not fall on wet, newly-painted surfaces. Protect surfaces not intended to be painted from effects of cleaning and painting operations.

3. Prior to blasting, clean surfaces to be coated or lined of grease, oil and dirt by steaming or detergent cleaning in accordance with SSPC SP 1.

4. Metal and Weld Preparation: Remove surface defects such as gouges, pits, welding and torch-cut slag, welding flux and spatter by grinding to 1/4-inch minimum radius.

5. Abrasive Material:

   a. Blast only as much steel as can be coated same day of blasting.

   b. Use sharp, angular, properly graded abrasive capable of producing depth of profile specified herein. Transport abrasive to job site in moisture-proof bags or airtight bulk containers. Copper slag abrasives are not acceptable.

   c. After abrasive blast cleaning, verify surface profile with replica tape such as Tes-Tex Coarse or Extra Coarse Press-O-Film Tape, or approved equal. Furnish tapes to Project Manager.

   d. Do not blast if metal surface may become wet before priming commences, or when metal surface is less than 5 degrees F above dew point.

6. Evaluate degree of cleanliness for surface preparation with use of SSPC Pictorial Surface Preparation Standards for Painting Steel Surfaces, SSPC-Vis 1.

7. Remove dust and abrasive residue from freshly blasted surfaces by brushing or blowing with clean, dry air. Test cleanliness by placing ¾-inch by-4 inch piece of clear Scotch type tape on blasted surface, then removing and placing tape on 3x5 white index card. Reclean areas exhibiting dust or residue.

D. Coating and Lining Application:

1. Environmental Conditions: Do not apply coatings or linings when metal temperature is less than 50 degrees F; when ambient temperature is less than 5 degrees F above dew point; when expected weather conditions are such that ambient temperature will drop below 40 degrees F within 6 hours after application; or when relative humidity is above 85 percent. Measure relative humidity and dew point by use of sling psychrometer in conjunction with U.S. Department of Commerce Weather Bureau Psychometric Tables. Provide dehumidifiers for field-applied coatings and linings to maintain proper humidity levels.

2. Application Procedures:

   a. Apply in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and requirements of this Section. Provide finish free of runs, sags, curtains, pinholes, orange peel, fish eyes, excessive over spray, or delaminations.

b. Thin materials only with manufacturers recommended thinners. Thin only amount required to adjust viscosity for temperature variations, proper atomization and flow-out. Mix material components using mechanical mixers.

c. Discard catalyzed materials remaining at end of day.

3. Thoroughly dry pipe before primer is applied. Apply primer immediately after cleaning surface. Apply succeeding coats before contamination of undersurface occurs.

4. Cure a minimum of 24 hours at 77 degrees F before successive coats are applied. During curing process, provide force air ventilation in volume sufficient to maintain solvent vapor levels below published threshold limit value. Apply successive coats within recoat threshold time as recommended by coating or lining manufacturer on printed technical data sheets or through written communications. Brush blast joints of pipe which have been shop primed and are to receive intermediate and finish coats in field prior to application of additional coats. After interior coatings are applied, provide forced air ventilation in sufficient volume and for sufficient length of time to ensure proper curing before filling pipe with water.

E. Testing of Coatings and Linings:

1. Inspect pipe for holidays and damage to coating:

a. If test indicates no holidays and coating is damaged, remove damaged layers of coating and repair in accordance with coating manufacturer's recommendations.

2. Perform holiday test in accordance with NACE Standard Recommended Practice, RPO 188-90, Discontinuity (Holiday) Testing of Protective Coatings.

3. Begin testing of completed coating after coating has sufficiently cured, usually one to 5 days. Consult coating manufacturer for specific curing schedule.

4. Perform adhesion test on pipe in accordance with ASTM D 4541.

5. For coating thickness of 20 mils or less, test with wet sponge low-voltage holiday detector. For coating thickness in excess of 20 mils, test with high-voltage holiday detector. Perform electrical holiday test with 60-cycle current audio detector. Select test voltage as suggested in table below.

MINIMUM VOLTAGES FOR
HIGH VOLTAGE SPARK TESTING

Total Dry Film Thickness (mils)	Suggested Inspection (V)
20 to 40	3,000
41 to 55	4,000
56 to 80	6,000

3.03 JOINTS AND JOINTING

A. Welded Joints:

1. Conform to requirements of Section 02511 - Water Lines.

2. Field weld to be full penetration butt welded joints for steel pipe and encasement sleeves for entire circumference.

3. City will employ an independent certified testing laboratory to perform weld acceptance tests on welded joints. Testing Laboratory will test by X-ray methods for butt welds, for 100 percent of joint welds. Project Manager has final decision as to suitability of welds tested.

B. Flanged Joints: Conform to requirements of Section 02511 - Water Lines.

C. Joint Grouting and Testing: Conform to requirements of Section 02511 - Water Lines.

3.04 COATINGS AND LININGS INSPECTION RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Contractor is responsible for quality control of coatings and linings applications and testing and inspection stipulated in this Section. Project Manager is responsible for quality assurance and reserves the right to inspect or acquire services of an independent third-party inspector who is fully knowledgeable and qualified to inspect surface preparation and application of high-performance coatings at all phases of coatings and linings work, field- or shop-applied. Contractor is responsible for proper application and performance of coatings and linings whether or not Project Manager provides such inspection.

END OF SECTION

Section 02503

COPPER TUBING

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Copper tubing for water service lines.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No payment will be made for copper tubing under this Section. Include cost in unit price for water taps and service lines.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM B 88 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube.

B. AWWA C 800 - Standard for Underground Service Line Valves and Fittings.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit certified test results of ASTM B 88.

C. Submit manufacturer's testing certification that copper tubing conforms to requirements of ASTM B 88. Number of samples for testing of each size of tubing is modified as follows:

1. For each 7500 feet of tubing: 1 sample

2. For each set of tubing less than 7500 feet: 1 sample

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Provide Type K annealed, seamless, copper tubing, 3/8 inch to 2 inch in diameter conforming to requirements of ASTM B 88.

B. Provide 3/8-inch and 1-inch tubing in coils of minimum 60 feet in length, and 11/2-inch and 2-inch tubing in coils 40 feet in length.

C. Provide tubing manufactured in United States of America. Tubing shall be inspected and tested by laboratory designated by Project Manager at point of manufacture or locally. Furnish tubing, at no additional cost to designated testing laboratory along with mill compliance certificates.

D. Provide flared or compression-type brass fittings for use with Type K annealed copper tubing in accordance with AWWA C 800.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Conform to installation requirements of Section 02512 - Water Tap and Service Line Installation, except as modified in this Section.

3.02 JOINTS

A. Minimum joint spacing for 3/4-inch and 1-inch tubing shall be 60 feet and for 1 1/2-inch and 2-inch tubing shall be 40 feet.

B. Cut copper tubing squarely by using cutting tools designed specifically for purpose and avoid procedures that cause pipe to bend or pipe walls to flatten.

C. After tubing has been cut, but before flaring, use reamer to remove inside rolled lip from tubing. Expand flared ends by use of flaring tool using care to avoid splitting, crimping, or over stressing metal. Provide at least 10 inches of straight pipe adjacent to fittings.

D. When compression fittings are used, cut copper tubing squarely prior to insertion into fitting. Assemble in accordance with manufacturer's recommended procedure.

3.03 BENDS

A. Bend tubing by using appropriate sized bending tool. No kinks, dents, flats, or crimps shall be permitted. Cut out and replace damaged section. Install no bends with radius smaller than radius of coil of tubing as packaged by manufacturer. Copper tubing shipped in straight lengths conforms to the following:

1. For 2-inch diameter: Maximum of one 45-degree bend per 4-foot section.

2. For 1 1/2-inch diameter: Maximum of one 45-degree bend per 3-foot section.

END OF SECTION

Section 02504

CENTRIFUGALLY CAST FIBERGLASS PIPE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Centrifugally cast fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP) pipe for sanitary sewers.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for fiberglass pipe under this Section. Include cost in unit price for Work, as specified in Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers, Section 02532 - Sanitary Sewage Force Mains, or Section 02550 - Sliplining Sanitary Sewers.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If the Contract is a Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in the total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 3262 - Standard Specification for "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Sewer Pipe.

B. ASTM D 3681 - Method for Determining Chemical Resistance of "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin Pipe in a Deflected Condition.

C. ASTM D 3754 - Standard Specification for "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Sewer and Industrial Pressure Pipe.

D. ASTM D 4161 - Standard Specification for "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe Joints Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals.

E. ASTM F 477 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Provide sufficient data for the Project Manager to properly evaluate the pipe.

C. Product data submittals shall include the following, as a minimum:

1. Details of the proposed pipe.

2. Properties and strengths of the pipe.

3. Details of pipe joint.

4. Pipe design analysis.

5. Instruction on storage, handling, transporting, and installation.

6. Standard catalog sheets.

D. Test Reports: Provide test reports upon request, certifying that the pipe has been tested in accordance with and exceeds minimum requirements of ASTM D 3262 and ASTM D 3681.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Provide centrifugally cast fiberglass pipe manufactured by Hobas Pipe USA, Inc.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Resin Systems: The manufacturer shall use only polyester resin systems with a proven history of performance in this particular application. The historical data shall have been collected from applications of a composite material of similar construction and composition as the proposed product.

B. Glass Reinforcements: The reinforcing glass fibers used to manufacture the components shall be of highest quality commercial grade glass filaments with binder and sizing compatible with impregnating resins.

C. Fillers: Silica sand or other suitable materials may be used.

D. Additives: Resin additives, such as pigments, dyes, and other coloring agents, if used, shall in no way be detrimental to the performance of the product nor shall they impair visual inspection of the finished products.

E. Rubber Gaskets: Supply from an approved gasket manufacturer in accordance with ASTM F 477, when no contaminant is identified and suitable for the service intended. Gaskets shall either be affixed to the pipe by means of a suitable adhesive or shall be installed in such a manner so as to prevent the gasket from rolling out of the pre-cut groove in the pipe or sleeve coupling. When pipe is to be installed in potentially contaminated areas, especially where free product is found near the elevation of the proposed sewer, provide the following gasket materials for the noted contaminants.

CONTAMINANT	GASKET MATERIAL REQUIRED
Petroleum (diesel, gasoline)	Nitrile Rubber
Other Contaminants	As recommended by the pipe manufacturer

F. The internal liner resin shall be suitable for service as sewer pipe, and shall be highly resistant to exposure to sulfuric acid as produced by biological activity from hydrogen sulfide gases. Pipe shall meet or exceed requirements of ASTM D 3681.

2.03 MANUFACTURE AND CONSTRUCTION

A. Pipes

1. Furnish pipes in the diameters specified and within the tolerances specified below.

2. Manufacture pipe by the centrifugal casting process to result in a dense, nonporous, corrosion-resistant, consistent composite structure to meet the operating conditions as shown on the Drawings.

3. Do not use stiffening ribs or rings.

B. Couplings: Unless otherwise specified, the pipe shall be field connected with fiberglass sleeve couplings that utilize elastomeric sealing gaskets as the sole means to maintain joint watertightness. The joints must meet the performance requirements of ASTM D 4161.

C. Fittings: Flanges, elbows, reducers, tees, and other fittings shall be capable of withstanding operating conditions when installed. They may be contact molded or manufactured from mitered sections of pipe joined by glass fiber reinforced overlays.

D. Manhole Connections: Provide a water stop flange (wall pipe) for connection to manhole base or other structure in accordance with Section 02081 - Cast-in-Place Concrete Manholes, or Section 02082 - Precast Concrete Manholes.

E. Grout Ports: Provide grout ports in the wall of pipe when required. Provide plugs of 316 stainless steel or other corrosion-resistant material compatible with the pipe. Grout port plugs shall be designed and installed to meet the test pressure of the pipe.

2.04 DIMENSIONS

A. Diameters: The actual outside diameter of the pipes shall be in accordance with Table 3 of ASTM D 3262 for gravity sewers, or ASTM D 3754 for force mains.

B. Lengths: The pipe standard length will be approximately 20 feet. A maximum of 10 percent of the lengths, excluding special order pipes, may be supplied in random lengths.

C. Wall Thickness: The minimum average wall thickness shall be the stated design thickness. The minimum single point thickness shall not be less than 90 percent of the stated design thickness.

D. End Squareness: Pipe ends shall be square to the pipe axis.

E. Tolerance of Fittings: The tolerance of the angle of an elbow and the angle between the main and leg of a wye or tee shall be plus or minus 2 degrees. The tolerance on the laying length of a fitting shall be plus or minus 2 inches.

2.05 STIFFNESS CLASSES

A. Stiffness class of FRP pipe shall satisfy design requirements, but shall not be less than 46 psi, when used in direct bury operation; 36 psi, when installed within a primary tunnel liner.

B. Stiffness class of FRP in a pipe jacking operation shall be governed either by the ring deflection limitations or by a pipe design providing longitudinal strength required by the jacking method and shall satisfy design requirements stated below. Submit design calculations as required in Paragraph 1.04, Submittals.

1. Pipe stress calculations based on jacking loads shall be performed to conform to Section 02441 - Microtunneling and Pipe Jacked Tunnels.

2. Ring deflection calculations shall conform to design requirements of 30 TAC Chapter 317.20 pertaining to flexible pipe used in gravity sewers. The pipe deflection calculations shall ensure that predicted deflection will be less than 5 percent under long-term loading conditions (soil prism load) for the highest density of soil overburden and surcharge loads. Deflection on calculations shall be prepared using long-term (drained) values for soil parameters contained in the geotechnical investigation report for the Project, or other site-specific data obtained by the Contractor as approved by the Engineer.

2.06 TESTING

A. Pipes shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D 3262 or ASTM D 3754, as applicable, except that the factory hydrostatic pressure testing is not required.

B. Joints: Coupling joints shall be qualified per the tests of Section 7 of ASTM D 4161.

2.07 INSPECTION

A. The Project Manager shall be entitled to inspect pipes or witness the pipe manufacturing. Such inspection shall not relieve the manufacturer of the responsibilities to provide products that comply with the applicable standards and these Specifications.

B. Manufacturer's Notification: Should the Project Manager wish to see specific pipes during any phase of the manufacturing process, the manufacturer must provide the Project Manager with adequate advance notice of when and where the production of those pipes will take place.

C. Failure to Inspect: Should the Project Manager elect not to inspect the manufacturing, testing, or finished pipes, it in no way implies approval of products or tests.

2.08 PACKAGING, HANDLING, AND SHIPPING

A. Packing, handling, and shipping should be done in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install pipe and fittings in accordance with requirements of Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers, 02532 - Sanitary Sewage Force Mains, or Section 02550 - Sliplining Sanitary Sewers.

B. The manufacturer must supply a suitable qualified field service representative to be present periodically during the installation of pipe.

C. Pipe Bedding: Conform to requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

D. Pipe Handling: Use textile slings.

E. Jointing

1. Clean ends of pipe and coupling components.

2. Check pipe ends and couplings for damage. Correct any damage found.

3. Coupling grooves must be completely free of dirt.

4. Apply joint lubricant to pipe ends and rubber seals of coupling. Use only lubricants approved by the pipe manufacturer.

5. Use suitable auxiliary equipment, such as a wire rope puller, to pull joints together.

6. Do not exceed forces recommended by the manufacturer for coupling pipe. If excessive force is required, remove coupling, determine source of problem, and correct it.

7. In the process of jointing the pipe, do not allow the deflection angle to exceed the deflection permitted by the manufacturer.

F. If pressure grouting of the pipe is conducted as part of a pipe-jacked tunnel installation, seal the grout holes with liner resin to a thickness equal to the pipe liner thickness or with a threaded plug for that purpose.

G. Tests: Conform to requirements of Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers.

END OF SECTION

Section 02505

HIGH DENSITY POLYETHYLENE (HDPE) SOLID AND PROFILE WALL PIPE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. High density polyethylene (HDPE) pipe for gravity sewers and drains, including fittings.

B. High density polyethylene (HDPE) pipe for sanitary sewer force mains, including fittings.

C. High density polyethylene (HDPE) pipe for storm sewers culverts.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for HDPE pipe under this Section. Include cost in unit prices for work, as specified in following sections:

   a. Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers.

   b. Section 02532 - Sanitary Sewer Force Mains.

   c. Section 02631 - Storm Sewers.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AASHTO M 294 - Standard Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene Drainage Pipe, 18"- 48" diameter.

B. AASHTO Section 18 - Soil Thermoplastic Pipe Interaction Systems.

C. AASHTO Section 30 - Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewer and Other Gravity Flow Applications.

D. ASTM D 618 - Standard Practice for Conditioning Plastics for Testing.

E. ASTM D 1248 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Extrusion Materials for Wire and Cable.

F. ASTM D 2321 - Standard Recommended Practice for Underground Installation of Flexible Thermoplastic Pipe.

G. ASTM D 2657 - Standard Practice for Heat Fusion Joining Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings.

H. ASTM D 2837 - Standard Test Method for Obtaining Hydrostatic Design Basis for Thermoplastic Pipe Materials.

I. ASTM D 3035 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Controlled Outside Diameter.

J. ASTM D 3212 - Standard Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals.

K. ASTM D 3350 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Pipe and Fittings Materials.

L. ASTM F 477 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe.

M. ASTM F 714 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastic (PE) Pipe (SDR-PR) Based on Outside Diameter.

N. ASTM F 894 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Large-Diameter Profile Wall Sewer and Drain Pipe.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit shop drawings showing design of pipe and fittings, laying dimensions, fabrication, fittings, flanges, and special details.

1.05 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Provide manufacturer's certificate of conformance to Specifications.

B. Furnish pipe and fittings that are homogeneous throughout and free from visible cracks, holes, foreign inclusions, or other injurious defects. Provide pipe as uniform as commercially practical in color, opacity, density, and other physical properties.

C. Project Manager reserves right to inspect pipes or witness pipe manufacturing. Inspection shall in no way relieve manufacturer of responsibilities to provide products that comply with applicable standards and these Specifications.

1. Manufacturer's Notification: Should Project Manager wish to witness manufacture of specific pipes, manufacturer shall provide Project Manager with minimum three weeks notice of when and where production of those specific pipes will take place.

2. Failure to Inspect. Approval of products or tests is not implied by Project Manager's decision not to inspect manufacturing, testing, or finished pipes.

1.06 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with documented experience of minimum 5 years of pipe installations that have been in successful, continuous service for same type of service as proposed Work.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 GENERAL

A. For sewer pipe provide HDPE pipe as follows:

1. NEW CONSTRUCTION PIPE PRODUCTS
GRAVITY SANITARY SEWER
DIRECT BURY

INSTALLATION SPEC NO.	GENERIC NAME	TRADE NAME OR MANUFACTURER	ASTM OR AASHTO	SDR (NUMERIC MAXIMUM)	PIPE STIFFNESS (NUMERIC MINIMUM)	SIZE RANGE
02505	Solid Wall Polyethylene (HDPE)	Chevron Plexco Phillips 66 Quail Poly Pipe	ASTM F-714	DR 17 DR 21	115 46	8" - 10" 12" - 48"
02531	Polyethylene Profile Wall	Spirolite	ASTM F-894	n/a	46	18" - 120"

2. REHABILITATION CONSTRUCTION PIPE PRODUCTS
SLIPLINING OF SANITARY SEWER

INSTALLATION SPEC NO.	GENERIC NAME	TRADE NAME OR MANUFACTURER	ASTM	SDR (NUMERIC MAXIMUM)	PIPE STIFFNESS (NUMERIC MINIMUM)	SIZE RANGE
02550	Solid Wall Poly	Chevron Plexco Quail Poly Pipe AmeriFlow by NAPCO AmeriFlow by KWH	F-714	DR 21	46	8" - 48" 3" - 12" 14" - 63"
02550	Polyethylene Profile Wall	Spirolite	F-894	n/a	46	18" - 120"

B. For Residential Driveway Culverts provide HDPE as follows:

1. N-12 and N-12 HC by Advanced Drainage Systems, Inc. (ADS).

2. Sure-Lok F477 by Hancor, Inc.

C. Furnish solid wall pipe with plain end construction for heat joining (butt fusion) conforming to ASTM D 2657. Utilize controlled temperatures and pressures for joining to produce fused leak-free joint.

D. Furnish profile-wall gravity sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot end construction conforming to ASTM D 3212. Joining will be accomplished with elastomeric gasket in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Use integral bell-and-spigot gasketed joint designed so that when assembled, elastomeric gasket, contained in machined groove on pipe spigot, is compressed radially in pipe bell to form positive seal. Design joint to avoid displacement of gasket when installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

E. Furnish solid wall pipe for sanitary sewer force mains with minimum working pressure rating of 150 psi, and with inside diameter equal to or greater than nominal pipe size indicated on Drawings.

F. Furnish corrugated polyethylene pipe (CPP) for gravity storm sewer pipe. Joints shall be installed such that connection of pipe sections will form continuous line free from irregularities in flow line. Suitable joints are:

1. Integral Bell and Spigot. Bell shall overlap minimum of two corrugations of spigot end when fully engaged.

2. Exterior Bell and Spigot. Bell shall be fully welded to exterior of pipe and overlap spigot end so that flow lines and ends match when fully engaged.

G. Jointing:

1. Gaskets:

a. Meet requirements of ASTM F 477. Use gasket molded into circular form or extruded to proper section and then spliced into circular form. When no contaminant is identified, use gaskets of properly cured, high-grade elastomeric compound. Basic polymer shall be natural rubber, synthetic elastomer, or blend of both.

b. Pipes allowed to be installed in potentially contaminated areas, where free product is found near elevation of proposed sewer, shall have the following gasket materials for noted contaminants:

CONTAMINANT	GASKET MATERIAL REQUIRED
Petroleum (diesel, gasoline)	Nitrile Rubber
Other Contaminants	As recommended by pipe manufacturer

2. Lubricant. Use lubricant for assembly of gasketed joints which has no detrimental effect on gasket or on pipe, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

2.02 MATERIALS FOR SANITARY SEWER

A. Pipe and Fittings: High density, high molecular weight polyethylene pipe material meeting requirements of Type III, Class C, Category 5, Grade P34, as defined in ASTM D 1248. Material meeting requirements of cell classification in accordance with ASTM D 3350 are also suitable for making pipe products under these specifications.

B. Other Pipe Materials: Materials other than those specified in Paragraph 2.02A, Pipe and Fittings, may be used as part of profile construction, e.g., as core tube to support shape of profile during processing, provided that these materials are compatible with base polyethylene material and are completely encapsulated in finished product and in no way compromise performance of pipe products in intended use. Examples of suitable material include polyethylene and polypropylene.

2.03 MATERIALS FOR RESIDENTIAL DRIVEWAY CULVERTS

A. Pipe and Fittings: High density, high molecular weight polyethylene HDPE virgin compound material meeting requirements of cell class outlined in AASHTO M 294, AASHTO MP7 and ASTM D 3350.

B. Types: CPP shall meet one or both of following:

1. Type S: Outer corrugated wall with smooth inner liner.

2. Type D: Inner and outer smooth walls braced circumferentially or spirally with projections or ribs.

C. Lubricant: Use lubricant for assembly of gasketed joints, which has no detrimental effect on gasket or on pipe, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

2.04 TEST METHODS FOR SANITARY SEWER

A. Conditioning. Conditioning of samples prior to and during tests is subject to approval by Project Manager. When referee tests are required, condition specimens in accordance with Procedure A in ASTM D 618 at 73.4 degrees F plus or minus 3.6 degrees F and 50 percent relative humidity plus or minus 5 percent relative humidity for not less than 40 hours prior to test. Conduct tests under same conditions of temperature and humidity unless otherwise specified.

B. Flattening. Flatten three specimens of pipe, prepared in accordance with Paragraph 2.05A, in suitable press until internal diameter has been reduced to 40 percent of original inside diameter of pipe. Rate of loading shall be uniform and at 2 inches per minute. Test specimens, when examined under normal light and with unaided eye, shall show no evidence of splitting, cracking, breaking, or separation of pipe walls or bracing profiles.

C. Joint Tightness. Test for joint tightness in accordance with ASTM D 3212, except replace shear load transfer bars and supports with 6-inch-wide support blocks that can be either flat or contoured to conform to pipe's outer contour.

D. Purpose of Tests. Flattening and joint tightness tests are not intended to be routine quality control tests, but rather to qualify pipe to a specified level of performance.

2.05 TEST METHODS FOR RESDENTIAL DRIVEWAY CULVERTS

A. Pipe stiffness at 5 percent deflection, when determined in accordance with ASTM D 2412, shall be as specified in Section 7.4 of AASHTO M 294.

B. Minimum inner wall thickness shall be as specified in Section 7.2.2 of AASHTO M 294.

2.06 MARKING

A. Mark each standard and random length of pipe in compliance with these Specifications with following information:

1. Pipe size.

2. Pipe class.

3. Production code.

4. Material designation.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Conform to requirements of following Sections:

1. Section 02550 - Sliplining Sanitary Sewers.

2. Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers.

3. Section 02532 - Sanitary Sewage Force Mains.

4. Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers.

5. Section 02631 - Storm Sewers

B. Install pipe in accordance with the manufacturers recommended installation procedures.

C. HDPE pipe is not approved in applications requiring augering of pipe.

D. Bedding and backfill: Conform to requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

END OF SECTION

Section 02506

POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PIPE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Polyvinyl chloride pressure pipe for water distribution, in nominal diameters 4 inches through 20 inches.

B. Polyvinyl chloride sewer pipe for gravity sewers in nominal diameters 4 inches through 48 inches.

C. Polyvinyl chloride pressure pipe for gravity sewers and force mains in nominal diameters 4 inches through 20 inches.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for PVC pipe under this Section. Include cost in unit price for work included as specified in the following sections:

   a. Section 02511 - Water Lines

   b. Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers

   c. Section 02532 - Sanitary Sewer Force Mains

   d. Section 02631 - Storm Sewers

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ANSI A 21.16 (AWWA C 116) - Protective Fusion Bonded Epoxy Coating for the Interior and Exterior Surfaces of Ductile Iron and Grey Iron Fittings for Water Supply Service.

B. ASTM D 1248 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Molding and Extrusion Materials.

C. ASTM D 1784 - Standard Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds.

D. ASTM D 2241 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR Series).

E. ASTM D 2321 - Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications.

F. ASTM D 2444 - Standard Test Method for Determination of the Impact Resistance of Thermoplastic Pipe and Fittings by Means of a Tup (Falling Weight).

G. ASTM D 2680 - Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Composite Sewer Piping.

H. ASTM D 3034 - Specification for Type PSM Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings.

I. ASTM D 3139 - Standard Specification for Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals.

J. ASTM D 3212 - Standard Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals.

K. ASTM F 477 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe.

L. ASTM F 679 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Large-Diameter Plastic Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings.

M. ASTM F 794 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings Based on Controlled Inside Diameter.

N. ASTM F 949 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Corrugated Sewer Pipe with Smooth Interior and Fittings.

O. AWWA C 110 - American National Standard for Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings, 3 Inches Through 48 Inches for Water.

P. AWWA C 111 - American National Standard for Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings.

Q. AWWA C 900 - Standard for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe, 4 Inches Through 12 Inches for Water Distribution.

R. AWWA C 905 - Standard for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe and Fabricated Fittings, 14 In. Through 48 In., for Water Transmission and Distribution.

S. AWWA C 909 - Standard for Molecularly-Oriented Polyvinyl Chloride (PVCO) Pressure Pipe, 4 Inches through 12 Inches (100mm through 300 mm), for Water Distribution.

T. PPI TR3 - Policies and Procedures for Developing Recommended Hydrostatic Design Stresses for Thermoplastic Pipe Materials.

U. UNI-B-13 - Recommended Standard Performance Specification for Joint Restraint Devices for Use with Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit shop drawings showing design of new pipe and fittings indicating alignment and grade, laying dimensions, fabrication, fittings, flanges, and special details.

1.05 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Submit manufacturer's certifications that PVC pipe and fittings meet requirements of this Section and AWWA C 900, AWWA C 909 and AWWA C 905 for pressure pipe applications, or appropriate ASTM standard specified for gravity sewer pipe.

B. Submit manufacturer's certification that PVC pressure pipe for water lines and force mains has been hydrostatically tested at factory in accordance with AWWA C 900, AWWA C 909 and AWWA C 905, and this Section.

C. When foreign manufactured material is proposed for use, have material tested for conformance to applicable ASTM requirements by certified independent testing laboratory located in United States. Certification from other source is not acceptable. Furnish copies of test reports to Project Manager for review. Cost of testing paid by Contractor.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIAL

A. Use PVC compounds in manufacture of pipe that contain no ingredient in amount that has been demonstrated to migrate into water in quantities considered to be toxic.

B. Furnish PVC pressure pipe manufactured from Class 12454-A or Class 12454-B virgin PVC compounds as defined in ASTM D 1784. Use compounds qualifying for rating of 4000 psi for water at 73.4 F per requirements of PPI TR3. Provide pipe which is homogeneous

throughout, free of voids, cracks, inclusions, and other defects, uniform as commercially practical in color, density, and other physical properties. Deliver pipe with surfaces free from nicks and scratches with joining surfaces of spigots and joints free from gouges and imperfections which could cause leakage.

C. PVC Restrained Pipe: Must be listed on City's current Product Approval List.

1. Pipe Material:

a. DR 18: For restrained joints where shown on Drawings.

b. DR 14: For alternate to offset pipe sections shown on Drawings. Do not use PVC for offset sections with depth of cover greater than 20 feet or less than 4 feet. Do not use PVC in potentially petroleum contaminated areas.

D. Water Service.

1. Provide self-extinguishing PVC pipe that bears Underwriters' Laboratories mark of approval and is acceptable without penalty to Texas State Fire Insurance Committee for use in fire protection lines.

2. Bear National Sanitation Foundation Seal of Approval (NSF-PW).

E. Gaskets:

1. Gaskets shall meet requirements of ASTM F 477. Use elastomeric factory-installed gaskets to make joints flexible and watertight.

2. Flat Face Mating Flange: Full faces 1/8-inch-thick ethylene propylene (EPR) rubber.

3. Raised Face Mating Flange: Flat ring 1/8-inch ethylene propylene (EDR) rubber, with filler gasket between OD of raised face and flange OD to protect flange from bolting moment.

F. Lubricant for rubber-gasketed joints: Water soluble, non-toxic, non-objectionable in taste and odor imparted to fluid, non-supporting of bacteria growth, having no deteriorating effect on PVC or rubber gaskets.

H. Do not use PVC in potentially or known contaminated areas.

I. Do not use PVC in areas exposed to direct sunlight.

2.02 WATER SERVICE PIPE

A. Pipe 4 inch through 12 inch: AWWA C 900, AWWA C 909, Class 150, DR 18; AWWA C 900, Class 200, DR 14 as alternate to offset pipe sections; nominal 20-foot lengths; cast-iron equivalent outside diameters.

B. Pipe 14 inch through 20 inch: AWWA C 905; Class 235; DR 18; nominal 20-foot lengths; cast-iron equivalent outside diameter.

C. Provide Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe from approved manufacturers.

D. Make curves and bends by deflecting joints. Do not exceed maximum deflection recommended by pipe manufacturer. Submit details of other methods of providing curves and bends for review by Project Manager.

E. Hydrostatic Test: AWWA C 900, AWWA C 905, AWWA C 909, ANSI A 21.10 (AWWA C 110); at point of manufacture; submit manufacturer's written certification.

2.03 GRAVITY SEWER PIPE

A. PVC gravity sanitary sewer pipe and storm sewer pipe shall be in accordance with provisions in following table:

WALL CONSTRUCTION	MANUFACTURER	ASTM DESIGNATION	SDR (MAX.)/ STIFFNESS (MIN.)	DIAMETER SIZE RANGE
Solid	J-M Pipe CertainTeed Diamond Uponor ETI North American	D3034	SDR 26 / PS 115	6" to 10"
		D3034	SDR 35 / PS 46	12" & 15"
		F679	SDR 35 / PS 46	18" to 27"
		AWWA C900	DR 18 / N/A	4" to 12"
		AWWA C909	DR 18 / N/A	4" to 12"
		AWWA C905	DR 18 / N/A	14" to 16"
Truss (Gasketed)	Contech	D2680	N/A /200 psi	8" to 15"
Profile	Contech A-2000	F949	N/A / 46 psi	12" to 36"
	Contech A-2026	F949	N/A / 115 psi	8" to 10"
	ETI, Ultra-Rib	F794	N/A / 46 psi	8" to 30"
	ETI, Ultra-Corr	F794	N/A / 46 psi	24" to 36"

B. When solid wall PVC pipe 18 inches to 27 inches in diameter is required in SDR 26, provide pipe conforming to ASTM F 679, except provide wall thickness as required for SDR 26 and pipe strength of 115 psi.

C. For sewers up to 12-inch diameter crossing over water lines, or crossing under water lines with less than 2-feet separation, provide minimum 150 psi pressure-rated pipe conforming to ASTM D 2241 with suitable PVC adapter couplings.

D. Joints: Spigot and integral wall section bell with solid cross section elastomeric or rubber ring gasket conforming to requirements of ASTM D 3212 and ASTM F 477, or ASTM D 3139 and ASTM F 477. Gaskets shall be factory-assembled and securely bonded in place to prevent displacement. Manufacturer shall test sample from each batch conforming to requirements ASTM D 2444.

E. Fittings: Provide PVC gravity sewer sanitary bends, tee, or wye fittings for new sanitary sewer construction. PVC pipe fittings shall be full-bodied, either injection molded or factory fabricated. Saddle-type tee or wye fittings are not acceptable.

F. Conditioning. Conditioning of samples prior to and during tests is subject to approval by Project Manager. When referee tests are required, condition specimens in accordance with Procedure A in ASTM D 618 at 73.4 degrees F plus or minus 3.6 degrees F and 50 percent relative humidity plus or minus 5 percent relative humidity for not less than 40 hours prior to test. Conduct tests under same conditions of temperature and humidity unless otherwise specified.

G. Pipe Stiffness. Determine pipe stiffness at 5 percent deflection in accordance with Test Method D 2412. Minimum pipe stiffness shall be 46 psi. For diameters 4 inches through 18 inches, test three specimens, each a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) in length. For diameters 21 inch through 36 inch, test three specimens, each a minimum of 12 inch (305 mm) in length.

H. Flattening. Flatten three specimens of pipe, prepared in accordance with Paragraph 2.04F, in suitable press until internal diameter has been reduced to 60 percent of original inside diameter of pipe. Rate of loading shall be uniform. Test specimens, when examined under normal light and with unaided eye, shall show no evidence of splitting, cracking, breaking, or separation of pipe walls or bracing profiles. Perform the flattening test in conjunction with pipe stiffness test.

I. Joint Tightness. Test for joint tightness in accordance with ASTM D 3212, except that joint shall remain watertight at minimum deflection of 5 percent. Manufacturer will be required to provide independent third party certification for joint testing each diameter of storm sewer pipe.

J. Purpose of Tests. Flattening and pipe stiffness tests are intended to be routine quality control tests. Joint tightness test is intended to qualify pipe to specified level of performance.

2.04 SANITARY SEWER FORCE MAIN PIPE

A. Provide approved PVC pressure pipe conforming to requirements for water service pipe, and conforming to minimum working pressure rating specified in Section 02532 - Sanitary Sewage Force Mains.

B. Acceptable pipe joints are integral bell-and-spigot, containing a bonded-in elastomeric sealing ring meeting requirements of ASTM F 477. In designated areas requiring restrained joint pipe and fittings, use approved joint restraint device conforming to UNI-B-13, for PVC pipe 12-inch diameter and less.

C. Fittings: Provide approved ductile iron fittings as per Section 02501 - Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings, Paragraph 2.04, except furnish fittings with one of following approved internal linings:

1. Nominal 40 mils (35 mils minimum) virgin polyethylene complying with ASTM D 1248, heat fused to interior surface of fitting

2. Nominal 40 mils (35 mils minimum) polyurethane

3. Nominal 40 mils (35 mils minimum) ceramic epoxy

4. Nominal 40 mils (35 mils minimum) fusion bonded epoxy

D. Exterior Protection: Provide polyethylene wrapping of ductile-iron fittings as required by Section 02528 - Polyethylene Wrap.

E. Hydrostatic Tests: Hydrostatically test pressure rated pipe in accordance with Paragraph 2.02E.

2.05 BENDS AND FITTINGS FOR PVC PRESSURE PIPE

A. Bends and Fittings: ANSI A 21.10 or ANSI A 21.53, ductile iron; ANSI A 21.11 single rubber gasket push-on type joint; minimum 150 psi pressure rating. Approved restrained joints, 250 200 psi, may be provided for up to 12 inches in diameter (water or sanitary).

B. Provide approved restrained joint fittings: Integral restrained joint fittings and pipe do not require secondary restraint.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PROTECTION

A. Store pipe under cover out of direct sunlight and protect from excessive heat or harmful chemicals in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Conform to requirements of Section 02511 - Water Lines, Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers, and Section 02532 - Sanitary Sewer Force Mains, as applicable.

B. Install PVC pipe in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities, ASTM D 2321 for Sewer Pipe, and manufacturer's recommendations.

C. Install PVC water service pipe to clear utility lines and have minimum depth of cover below property line grade of street, unless otherwise required by Drawings:

1. Water service pipe 12 inches in diameter and smaller 4 feet of cover.

2. Water service pipe 16 inches in diameter and larger 5 feet of cover.

D. Avoid imposing strains that will overstress or buckle pipe when lowering pipe into trench.

E. Hand shovel pipe bedding under pipe haunches and along sides of pipe barrel and compact to eliminate voids and ensure side support.

F. Store PVC pipe under cover out of direct sunlight. Protect pipe from excessive heat or harmful chemicals. Prevent damage by crushing or piercing.

G. Allow PVC pipe to cool to ground temperature before backfilling when assembled out of trench to prevent pullout due to thermal contraction.

3.03 PVC RESTRAINED MECHANISM

A. Do not apply lubricant to spline or pipe or coupling spline grooves.

B. Do not use excessive force while inserting the spline through coupling.

C. Insert spline until it is fully seated around circumference of pipe.

D. Field Cutting of Pipe Ends:

1. Perform by workers certified by manufacturer.

2. Use a PVC pipe cutter and provide square ends.

3. Use manufacturer approved power routing and grooving tool to field fabricate required pipe groove.

END OF SECTION

Section 02507

PRESTRESSED CONCRETE CYLINDER PIPE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Priestesses concrete cylinder pipe (PCCP) and fittings for buried water lines sizes 20 inches and larger.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for PCCP under this Section. Include cost in price for water lines.

2. Maintain on site minimum of two 3-degree and two 5-degree grade angle adapters. Adapters are considered "extra unit price." When used during construction, adapter will be paid at unit price.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AASHTO - Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges.

B. AREA - Manual of Railway Engineering, Volume II, Chapter 15.

C. ASTM A 648 - Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Hard Drawn for Prestressing Concrete Pipe.

D. ASTM C 33 - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates.

E. ASTM C 35 - Standard Specification for Inorganic Aggregates for Use in Gypsum Plaster.

F. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.

G. ASTM C 497 - Standard Test Methods for Concrete Pipe, Manhole Sections, or Tile.

H. ASTM C 1107 (CRD C-621) - Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink).

I. ASTM D 512 - Standard Test Methods for Chloride Ion In Water.

J. ASTM D 1293 - Standard Test Methods for pH of Water.

K. ASTM E 165 - Standard Test Methods for Dye Penetration.

L. ASTM E 340 - Standard Test Methods for Macroetching Metals and Alloys.

M. ASTM E 709 - Standard Test Methods for Magnetic Particle Testing.

N. ASTM E 1032 - Standard Test Methods for Radiographic Examination of Weldments.

O. ANS1/AWS A3.0 - Standard Welding Terms and Definitions.

P. AWWA C 206 - Standard for Field Welding of Steel Water Pipe.

Q. AWWA C 207 - Standard for Steel Pipe Flanges for Waterworks Service - Sizes 4 in. through 144 in.

R. AWWA C 301 - Standard for Prestressed Concrete Pressure Pipe, Steel-Cylinder Type, for Water and Other Liquids.

S. AWWA C 304 - Standard for Design of Prestressed Concrete Cylinder Pipe.

T. AWWA M 9 - Standard for Concrete Pressure Pipe.

U. NSF 61 - Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects.

V. SSPC SP 7 - Surface Preparation Specification No. 7 - Brush Off Blast Cleaning.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit shop drawings and certification signed and sealed by Professional Engineer registered in State of Texas showing following:

1. Manufacturer's pipe design calculations.

2. Provide lay schedule of pictorial nature indicating alignment and grade, laying dimensions, welding procedures, fabrication, fitting, flange, and special details, with plan view of each pipe segment sketched, detailing pipe invert elevations,

horizontal bends, welded joints, and other critical features. Indicate station numbers for pipe and fittings corresponding to Drawings. Do not start production of pipe and fittings prior to review and approval by Project Manager. Provide final approved lay schedule on CD-ROM in Adobe portable document format (*.PDF).

3. Include hot tapping procedure.

4. Submit certification from manufacturer that design was performed for project in accordance with requirements of this section.

C. Within 30 calendar days following Notice to Proceed and before initiation of manufacture of prestressing wire, submit following:

1. Name and location of prestressing wire manufacturer.

2. General description of quality control procedures used by wire manufacturer. Include physical and chemical property tests utilized, testing frequency and test records; and description of methods employed to assure compliance with AWWA C301 regarding wire surface temperature, type of thermometer, location of temperature measurement, frequency of temperature tests and test records.

3. Approximate dates when wire will be manufactured for use in pipe.

4. Hydrogen embrittlement sensitivity test report for wire.

D. Submit inspection procedures to be used by manufacturer and for quality control and assurance for materials and welding. Submit standard repair procedures that describe in detail shop and field work to be performed.

E. Submit following within 45 days after manufacturing of pipe and fittings:

1. Prestressing wire records.

a. ASTM A 648 for wire.

b. Steel reports as required in AWWA C301, Section 4.4.7.

c. Records of testing accomplished to measure wire surface temperature as required in AWWA C301, Section 4.4.8.

d. Results of other tests of steel reinforcement required in AWWA C301, Section 4.4.

e. Wire tension records required in AWWA C301, Section 4.4.8. Indicate heat and coil of prestressing wire used.

2. Test results.

   a. Hydrostatic testing, acid etching, dye penetration, magnetic particle and x-ray weld test reports as required.

   b. Compressive strength (28 day) test results for each type of coating, lining and core mix design.

3. Pipe manufacturer's certification that PCCP:

   a. Cylinder assembly has been hydrostatically tested at factory for two (2) minutes minimum in accordance with Section 2.01 J and AWWA C301.

   b. Mortar coatings and linings were applied or allowed to cure at temperature above 32 degrees F.

F. Submit following for nonshrink grout for special applications:

1. Manufacturer's technical literature including specifications for mixing, placing, and curing grout.

2. Results of tests performed by certified independent testing laboratory showing conformance to ASTM C 1107, Nonshrink Grout and requirements of this specification.

3. Certification product is suitable for use in contact with potable water.

G. Submit certification for welder and welding operator demonstrating their certification within past 6 months in accordance with AWWA C 301. Indicate certified procedures and position each welder is qualified to perform.

H. Submit certification showing calibration within last 12 months for equipment such as scales, measuring devices, and calibration tools used in manufacture of pipe. Each device used in manufacture of pipe is required to have tag recording date of last calibration. Devices are subject to inspection by Project Manager.

1.05 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer to have permanent quality control department and laboratory facility capable of performing inspection and testing required. Inspection procedures and manufacturing process are subject to inspection by Project Manager. Perform manufacturer tests and inspections required by AWWA C 301 as modified by these Specifications. Repair defects when as substandard welds, excessive radial offsets (misalignment), pitting, gouges, cracks, other nonconforming conditions.

1. Cylinder and Joint Ring Assembly:

    a. Review mill certifications for conformance to requirements of Specifications.

    b. Perform physical testing of each heat of steel for conformance to applicable ASTM standards.

    c. Inspect physical dimensions and overall condition of joint rings and cylinder/joint ring assembly to verify compliance with requirements of AWWA C 301.

    d. Test cylinder/joint ring weld for tensile strength. Test one specimen for each 500 cylinder/joint ring assemblies in addition to those tests required by AWWA C 301.

    e. Reject pipe with dented steel cylinders.

2. Prestressing Wire:

    a. Inspect wire spacing during wire placement on core.

    b. Test wire splices for each production run or a minimum of once a week, whichever is less, for conformance with minimum strength criteria.

3. Pipe Cores and Coating:

    a. Review mill certificates for each load of cement for conformance to ASTM C 150.

    b. Perform sieve analysis weekly for each source of coarse and fine aggregate for conformance to ASTM C 33.

    c. Inspect kiln recorder charts daily to confirm proper curing environment.

    d. Prior to prestressing, inspect each core for voids, chips, cracks, deleterious surfaces and foreign matter.

    e. Check outer core moisture of each pipe core immediately prior to applying mortar coating.

    f. Check mortar batch proportions, moisture content and slurry application rate. Check coating thickness over wire on each pipe.

g. Check physical integrity of cured mortar coating.

h. Reject pipe with cracks in mortar coating exceeding 0.01 inches wide.

4. Protective Coatings: Check daily application rate and resulting dry film thickness.

B. Gaskets: Randomly test rubber cord for diameter, tensile strength, elongation, compression set, hardness, and specific gravity after oven aging on one out of 100 gaskets.

C. Weld Testing:

1. Perform macroetching tests for full-penetration production welds on normal production weld tests. Complete joint penetration welds are defined in ANSI/AWS A3.0. Verify complete joint penetration by means of macroetch of joint weld cross section. Macroetch technique in accordance with ASTM E 340.

2. Perform ultra-sonic or x-ray testing of manual butt welds for fittings and special pipes. Perform dye penetration testing of manual lap welds for fittings and special pipes and for joint ring weld onto cylinder.

3. Perform minimum of one set of weld test specimens in accordance with ANS1/AWS A3.0 on each size, grade and wall thickness at minimum of every 3,000 feet of pipe manufactured. Perform no less than one test per project by each welding machine and each operator.

D. Cast four standard test cylinders each day for each 50 cubic yards of mortar coating or portion thereof for each coating and lining placed in day. Perform compressive strength test at 28 days. No cylinder test result shall be less than 80 percent of specified strength.

E. Make available copy of Physical and Chemical testing reports for steel cylinders and provide reports at request of Project Manager.

F. Check physical dimensions of pipe and fittings: Physical dimensions to include pipe lengths, pipe LD., pipe O.D. and bend angles.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE CYLINDER PIPE

A. Furnish pipe by same manufacturer.

B. Provide prestressed concrete cylinder pipe in conformance with AWWA C 301, AWWA C 304 and AWWA M 9 except as modified in this Section. Use of pipe from inventory is permitted only if specifications and certifications are met. Provide testing records for pipe.

C. Do not use prestressed concrete cylinder pipe in aerial crossings, exposed or other unburied areas.

D. Pipe manufacture.

1. Must have minimum of 5 years of manufacturer's pipe installations that have been in successful and continuous service.

2. Must maintain on site or in plant minimum of four 22.5 degree bends per 10,000 linear feet of water line. Any combination of bends may be substituted at manufacturer's option (i.e. two 11.25 degree bends are equivalent to one 22.5 degree bend and will be counted as one fitting). Must be capable of delivering bends to job site within 12 hours of notification. These fittings are in addition to fittings called out on Drawing and must be available at all times.

E. Pipe Design Conditions:

1. Working pressure: 100 psi.

2. Hydrostatic field test pressure: 150 psi.

3. Maximum pressure due to surge: 150 psi.

4. Minimum Pressure due to surge: -5 psi.

5. Unit weight of soil: 120 pcf minimum, unless otherwise specified.

6. Minimum trench width: O.D. of pipe + four (4) feet.

7. Pipe and Fittings: Designed to withstand most critical simultaneous application of external loads including construction loads and internal pressures.

8. Design: Based on minimum of AASHTO HS-20 loading, AREA Cooper E-80 loads when under railroads, and depths of bury as indicated. Design pipe with Marston's earth loads for transition width trench for all heights of cover.

   a. Calculate moments and thrusts in wall based on height of earth load.

   b. For earth load heights up to 16 feet, use bedding sand as bedding material and use ninety degree Olander coefficients for earth load and water weight contained in pipe along with 15 degree Olander coefficients for pipe weight.

c. For earth load heights 16 feet and greater, use cement stabilized sand as bedding material below springline of pipe and use, one hundred and fifty degree Olander coefficients for earth load and water weight.

9. Groundwater level: Assume below pipe for pipe design. Assume equal to natural ground surface for other conditions.

10. Design pipe for transmitting potable water, unless otherwise shown on Drawings.

11. Manufacture pipe for adverse environmental conditions in accordance with Section 7.5.5 of AWWA C304.

12. Design pipe for buried conditions and kept empty for up to 365 days.

13. Tunnel and Augered sections. Provide constant outside diameter from bell to spigot end for pipe. Exclude structural benefits associated with primary liner. Design pipe and pipe joints to carry loads including but not limited to: Overburden and lateral earth pressures, subsurface soil, grouting, other conditions of service, thrust of jacks, and stress anticipated during handling and installation.

F. Coatings and Linings:

1. Provide Portland cement; ASTM C 150, Type I or II. Provide one type of cement for entire project.

2. Water Absorption Test: ASTM C 497, Method A; perform on samples of cured mortar coating taken from each working shift. Cure mortar coating samples in same manner as pipe.

a. Test value: Average minimum of 3 samples taken from same working shift, no greater than 9 percent for average value, 11 percent for individual value.

b. Test frequency: Perform tests each working shift until conformance to absorption requirements has been established by 10 consecutive passing test results, at which time testing may be performed weekly. Resume testing for each working shift when absorption test results fail until conformance to absorption requirements is reestablished by 10 consecutive passing test results.

3. Apply one coat of primer to exposed steel parts of steel bell and spigot rings. Prior to coating, blast clean in accordance with SSPC-SP7 (Brush Off Blast Cleaning). Apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

4. Coat and line access inlets, service outlets, test inlets and air release/vacuum relief riser pipe with same coating and lining of water line in accordance with AWWA C 301, Section 4, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

5. Do not exceed two hours between application of first and last course when cement mortar is applied in more than one course, otherwise do not defer placing of coating of any portion of pipe length. Verify cement mortar coating thickness on each size of pipe by nondestructive method before removing pipe from coating machine.

6. Remove and replace disbonded lining or coating. Reject pipe requiring patches larger than 100 square inches or 12 inches in greatest dimension. Allow no more than one patch on either lining or coating of pipe. Provide WELD-CRETE Probond Epoxy Bonding Agent ET-150, parts A and B; Sikadur 32 Hi-Mod, or approved equal bonding agent for pipe patching.

G. Fittings and specials:

1. Design fittings to same internal and external loads as straight pipe.

2. Manufacture in accordance with Section 02518 - Steel Pipe and Fittings for Large Diameter Water Lines.

3. Provide fabricated bends or fittings with minimum radius of 2-1/2 times pipe diameter.

4. Design test plugs to withstand forces generated by hydrostatic test and test pressure from either side. Do not exceed 50 percent of minimum yield for design stresses due to hydrostatic pressure. Assume opposite side of plug does not contain water.

5. Provide no specials less than 4 feet in length unless indicated on Drawings or approved by Project Manager.

6. Butt Straps for Closure Piece: Provide at locations indicated on Drawings or authorized by Project Manager. Minimum 12-inch-wide split butt strap; minimum plate thickness equal to thinnest member being joined; fabricated from material equal in chemical and physical properties to thinnest member being joined. Permit no angular deflection at butt-strap joints.

7. Provide minimum 6 inch welded outlet for inspecting each closure section, unless access manway is within 40 feet of closure section.

8. Provide Densco petroleum based tape or approved equal for exposed portions of nuts and bolts.

H. Joints:

1. AWWA C 301 rubber-gasketed or welded bell-and-spigot type except where flanged joints are required for valves and fittings as shown on Drawings. Refer to Section 02511 - Water Lines for details on joints and jointing.

2. Rubber-Gasketed Joints: Single weld bell and spigot ring onto steel cylinder. In thrust areas, double weld bell-and-spigot onto steel cylinder. Bond as shown on Drawings to provide electrical continuity along entire pipeline.

3. Restrained Joints: Restrain joints by welding or harnessing joints.

   a. Design pressure: 1.5 times working pressure.

   b. Harnessed joints: AWWA M 9, clamp or snap ring type, except where prohibited.

   c. Groundwater level: Assumed to be equal to natural ground surface.

   d. Provide restrained joint pipe with adequate cylinder thickness to transmit full thrust generated by internal pressure across joints.

      1) Calculate distance of restrained joints based on resistance along each leg of bend with thrust based on bend angle.

      2) Calculate cylinder thickness not to be less than that defined in following table.

Inside Diameter (inches)	Gauge Size
Greater than 84	6
72 to 84	8
48 to 66	10
Less than 48	12

      3) Allow cylinder thickness to reduce linearly from maximum calculated thickness or from minimum cylinder thickness (as determined in Paragraph 2.01 H.3.d.1, whichever controls, to minimum thickness required by design over required length (as determined in Paragraph 2.01 H.3.d.1) of restrained joints.

4. Use only fully circumferentially welded joints in areas considered potentially petroleum contaminated, within tunnels and under foreign pipelines. Perform

welding in accordance with Section 02502 - Steel Pipe and Fittings and 02518 - Steel Pipe and Fittings for Large Diameter Water Lines.

5. Pipe Flanges: AWWA C 207 for standard steel flanges of pressure class corresponding to pipe class.

I. Pipe lengths: Provide pipe sections in standard lengths with minimum length of 16 feet and maximum length of 25 feet, and as indicated on approved shop Drawings or approved by Project Manager. Gasketed joints are allowed on standard lengths of pipe. Non-standard pipe lengths must be approved by Project Manager and joints must be welded as specified herein to achieve equal to or greater than standard pipe length before gasketed joints can be used. Internally and externally mark pipe section with durable marking to show location and pipe pressure.

J. Hydrostatic Test of Cylinder: AWWA C 301, Section 4.6.4.3, at point of manufacture. Hold test for minimum 2 minutes for thorough inspection of cylinder. Repair or reject cylinders revealing leaks or cracks.

K. Transport fittings 42 inches in diameter and larger with end caps and stulls. Remove end caps just prior to installation. Remove stulls after completion of backfill operation.

L. Provide radius of curve as indicated on Drawings unless approved by Project Manager. Make curves and bends by deflecting joints, by use of beveled joints, or by combination of two methods, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Do not exceed deflection angle recommended by pipe manufacturer. Provide beveled pipe sections of standard length used in curved alignment, except when shorter sections are required to limit radius of curvature. In such case provide sections throughout curve of substantially equal length.

M. When manufacturing straight pipe sections manual welding is allowed for following:

1. Tack welding of coils and plates during continuous pipe making process.

2. Rewelding and repairing structural defects in plate and automatic machine welds.

3. Attaching new coil of steel to previous coil.

N. Prior to arrival on project site, identify pipe sections within limits of thrust restraint with permanent, brightly colored, and highly visible markings on outer pipe coating as approved by Project Manager.

2.02 PRESTRESSING WIRE

A. General

1. Conform to requirement of ASTM A 648, AWWA C 301 and this specification.

2. Furnish test results from independent manufacturer (i.e., manufacturer with no legal or financial ties to pipe manufacturer). Tests must have been performed within 12 months prior to submittal or when supplier changes.

3. Test foreign manufactured wire by local independent laboratory.

4. Prestressing wire surface temperature: Not more than 360 degrees at any point in drawing process. Audit surface temperature of wire throughout length of wire drawing process daily for each working shift producing ASTM A 648 wire.

5. Do not use wire with visible pitting or rust that cannot be wiped off.

6. Do not use wire that fails, for no observable mechanical reason other than tension force, during circumferential wrap. Do not splice, but reject this section of wire.

B. Perform mechanical tests per AWWA C301 - Steel Reinforcement except as modified below:

1. Retest coil for which failed torsion test sample has radial, spiral (that is, longitudinal) split visible to unaided eye or evidenced by abrupt offset in wire surface detectable with fingernail.

2. Test sample, for mechanical requirements, from 1 of each 10 consecutively produced coils or fraction thereof in each lot. Pipe manufacturer to establish procedures so samples are randomly selected from entire length of wire coils.

C. Perform hydrogen embrittlement sensitivity testing on samples of prestressing wire. Test one set of pre-qualified samples for each anticipated wire manufacturing source anticipated by pipe manufacturer for project. Perform tension, wrapping, and torsion on wire samples. Perform pre-qualification testing prior to pipe manufacturing and for each source of supply for wire. Do not use wire failing to conform to test requirements of specification. Utilize only wire that meets both of following:

1. Passed aforementioned test.

2. Manufactured from same source and manufacturing procedures.

D. Hydrogen embrittlement sensitivity test.

1. Apply tensile force using lever apparatus, closed still frame in either vertical or horizontal orientation, or stable hydraulic loading system equipped with force indicator. Use chronometer with precision of at least 0.1 hour and capable of being stopped automatically on fracture of sample.

2. Use cylindrical ammonium thiocyanate (NH_4SCN_1) cell constructed of material which is inert to ammonium thiocyanate. Expose minimum 150 mm long sample to solution. Open and closed test cells permitted. Minimum internal diameter of cell (D_i): Provide minimum 5 ml of solution per cm^2 of surface area of sample in contact with solution. Calculate minimum diameter as follows:

   D_i # $[(200 + d) \times d]^{0.5}$ in mm, where d is wire diameter.

3. Solution replacement is recommended, but not required, during test. When replacement is performed, continuously replace cell volume at rate not less than two times per 24-hour period.

4. Sample from lot of wire in which mechanical properties have been previously determined in accordance with ASTM A 648 and AWWA C301. Provide sample consisting of minimum of one (1) full loop of wire from each of minimum of ten (10) coils. Tag each loop with appropriate heat number and coil number permanently identifying source of wire.

5. Provide certified mill report for each heat represented in sample, showing chemical composition, including as minimum:

Carbon (C)	Titanium (Ti)
Manganese (MN)	Nickel (Ni)
Silicon (SI)	Chromium (Cr)
Phosphorus (P)	Vanadium (V)
Sulfur (S)	Copper (Cu)
Nitrogen (N)	Molybdenum (Mo)
Aluminum (Al)	

6. Analyze dissolved hydrogen concentration for purposes of establishing baseline value prior to conducting hydrogen embrittlement sensitivity tests.

7. Test minimum of ten (10) pieces, at least one (1) piece chosen from each of ten (10) or more coils represented in lot, in ammonium thiocyanate solution for determination of time to failure.

8. Clean each test piece by wiping with soft cloth and degreased in acetone, or in trichlorethylene, and air dry. Protect test piece by varnish or similar means, as

necessary, in zones where it enters test cell to prevent crevice corrosion failures at these locations. When necessary, extend protection at least 25 mm into cell.

9. Place ammonium thiocyanate, solution concentration of 200 grams (99 percent) pure NH_4SCN per 800 ml of water, cell on test sample. Seal in place and then place cell/test sample assembly in tensioning device.

10. Apply load to test piece until force equal to 70 percent of ASTM A 648 class minimum tensile load is indicated. Maintain force within " 2.0 percent for duration of test.

11. Upon completion of application of force, fill cell with ammonium thiocyanate solution, preheated to temperature of 50 degree C " 1 degree C. Fill cell within one minute. Upon completion, set chronometer to zero to indicate test starting point.

12. Check applied force and adjust as necessary to ensure force is maintained within specified range at appropriate time intervals throughout test. Record times when force was checked or adjusted.

13. Adjust temperature of test solution in cell to 50 degree C " 1 degree C within 5 minutes of starting test. Maintain temperature throughout test.

14. Test is completed on fracture of sample or test time reaching 150 hours. Note time to fracture on chronometer, recorded to nearest 0.1 hour.

15. When fracture occurs elsewhere than within exposed test length, test is invalid. Record no time.

E. Hydrogen embrittlement sensitivity report, include following:

1. Test samples:

   a. Wire manufacturer.

   b. Size and class of wire with heat number.

   c. Mechanical properties indicated by mean results from other required physical tests.

   d. Chemical composition.

2. Test conditions:

   a. Cell design: Open or closed, with or without solution replacement and replacement rate.

b. Physical length of test sample (exposed).

c. Deviations from specified procedure.

d. Copy of this specification and statement that procedures described herein have been followed, except where noted otherwise.

3. Report results:

a. Description of type of fracture and presence or absence of pitting and splits for each sample.

b. Position of sample fracture in relation to test cell.

c. Table of individual sample times to failure.

d. Mean lifetime to failure and standard deviation for samples of diameter and class from wire manufacturer, using same wire drawing procedures.

4. Evaluate performance of wire in general, and specific performance as defined by following pass/fail criterion:

a. Pass/fail Criterion for ASTM A 648 prestressing wire. Wire considered passing provided mean time to failure minus one standard deviation for ten samples tested exceeds 75 hours.

b. Time to failure in hydrogen charging test of individual sample from group of ten (10) samples tested and reported less than, 75 hours. When one sample from group of ten (10) samples tested fails in less than 75 hours, single sample retest is permitted on sample from same loop of wire.

1) Reject lot when retest is less than 75 hours.

2) When retest is greater than 75 hours, use time (to failure) to replace rejected data in ten (10) sample groups mean and standard deviation from adjusted result.

2.03 GROUT FOR JOINTS AND SPECIAL APPLICATION

A. Joint Grout

1. Cement Grout Mixture: One part cement to two parts of fine, sharp clean sand. Mix interior joint mortar with as little water as possible until very stiff but

workable. Mix exterior joint mortar with water until it has consistency of thick cream.

2. Water: Potable water with total dissolved solids less than 1000 mg/1; ASTM D 512 chloride ions less than 100 mg/1 for slurry and mortar cure; ASTM D 1293 pH greater than 6.5. Use potable water with 250 ppm limit on chlorides and sulfates.

3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II. Provide one type of cement for entire project.

4. Sand:

   a. Interior joints: ASTM C 35 fine graded plaster sand.

   b. Exterior joints: ASTM C 33 natural sand with 100 percent passing No. 16 sieve.

5. Mix cement grout to specific gravity of 19 lb/gallon or greater as measured by grout/slurry balance. Use balance manufactured grout/slurry by Baroid or approved equal. Perform test in presence of and at request of Project Manager. Add additional cement grout or water to mixed cement grout to bring mix to proper moisture content or specific gravity. Discard cement grout that has been mixed more than 20 minutes and is not at proper specific gravity or moisture content.

B. Provide approved Nonshrink Grout for Special Applications, Patches and Repairs.

1. Conform to requirements of ASTM C 1107, Nonshrink Grout.

2. Pre-blended factory-packaged material manufactured under rigid quality control.

3. Contain non-metallic natural aggregate, be non-staining and non-corrosive.

4. Meeting NSF 61 Standard suitable for use in contact with potable water supply.

5. Exterior: Highly flowable to fill joint wrapper without leaving voids or trapped air. Interior capable of being placed with plastic consistency.

6. Non-bleeding and non-segregating at fluid consistency.

7. Contain no chlorides or additives which may contribute to corrosion of prestressed concrete cylinder pipe.

8. Free of gas-producing, gas-releasing agents.

9. Resist attack by oil or water.

10. Mix, place, and cure in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Upon 72 hours notice, provide services of qualified representative of nonshrink grout manufacturer to aid in use of product under job conditions.

11. Mix non-shrink grout to specific gravity of 17.7 lb/gallon or greater as measured by grout/slurry balance. Use grout/slurry balance manufactured by Baroid or approved equal. Perform test in presence of and at request of Project Manager. Add additional cement grout or water to bring mix to proper moisture content or specific gravity. Discard grout that has been mixed more than 20 minutes and is not at proper specific gravity or moisture content.

12. Compressive strength: ASTM C 1107 2500 psi minimum 7-day unconfined; 5000 psi minimum 28-day unconfined.

C. Finished surface of lining and interior joint to be comparable to surface rubbed with No. 16 Carborundum stone. Rub joint mortar sufficiently to bring paste to surface, to remove depressions and projections, and to produce smooth, dense surface. Add cement to form surface paste as necessary. Leave interior with clean, neat and uniform-appearing finish.

D. Joint Wrapper: Minimum width of 9 inches for 33-inch diameter and smaller; minimum width of 12 inches for diameters greater than 33 inch hemmed at edge to allow threading with minimum 5/8-inch-wide steel strap. Provide minimum 6-inch-wide wire Ethafoam strip sized, positioned, and sewn circumferential in center of wrapper.

2.04 CATHODIC PROTECTION

A. Connect each joint of pipe with bonding straps or approved devices to maintain continuity of current. Provide bonding straps free of foreign material.

B. Electrically isolate water line from other connections. Use insulating type joints or non-metallic pipe unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Conform to requirements of Section 02511 - Water Lines. Do not install pipe without approved lay schedule.

B. Manufacturer will make available services of representative, throughout project duration when deemed necessary by Project Manager, to advise aspects of installation including but not limited to handling, storing, cleaning and inspecting, coatings and linings repairs, and general construction methods affecting pipe.

C. Bedding and Backfilling:

1. Conform to requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

2. Align pipe at proper grade prior to joint connection and do not shift after jointing operation has been completed.

3. Do not move trench support system (trench safety system) once bedding material is compacted.

4. Excavate outside specified trench section for bell holes, and for spaces sufficient to permit removal of slings. Provide bell holes at proper locations for unrestricted access to joint. Form bell holes large enough to facilitate joint wrapping and to permit visual examination of process. Enlargement of bell holes as required or directed by Project Manager. Subsequent backfilling thereof will not be considered as authorized additional excavation and backfill. Backfill bell holes and spaces to satisfaction of Project Manager.

5. Remove blocking after placing sufficient backfill to hold pipe in position.

6. Use cement-stabilized sand in areas of trench excavation 16 feet and greater, as bedding material up to springline of pipe.

D. Follow nonshrink grout manufacturer's specifications for nonshrink grouting.

E. Deviation of installed pipe in any one pipe section from line and grade shown on approved shop drawing layout will not exceed 2 inches from grade and 3 inches from line. No deviation from line and grade at contact interfaces are allowed.

F. Install each pipe section in sequence identified on lay schedule. Deviations from lay schedule sequence shall be approved by Project Manager and denoted on final lay schedule.

G. Use adequate surveying methods, procedures and employ competent surveying personnel to ensure pipe sections are laid to line and grade and within stipulated tolerances. Measure and record, in form approved by Project Manager, in-place survey data for pipe laid each day and submit copy of data to Project Manager at end of that day. Survey data to include unique pipe number, deflection angle at pipe joint and whether beveled ends were used, invert elevation at pipe joint, deviation of joint from project line, deviation of joint from project grade, inside pipe joint lap measured at top, bottom, and at springline (each side).

H. Static Electricity:

1. Properly ground steel pipeline during construction as necessary to prevent build-up of static electricity.

2. Electrically test where required after installation of pipeline is complete.

3.02 CLOSURES AND APPROVED PIPE MODIFICATIONS

A. No modifications of standard pipe for closures will be permitted in field. No field cutting of pipe or exposure of prestressed wire is permitted without written approval from Project Manager.

B. Pipe manufacturer's representative and Project Manager to entirely witness closures and approved pipe modification efforts.

C. Provide minimum lap of 4 inches between member being joined and ed of butt strap. Weld on both interior and exterior, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

D. Provide full circumferential welds on joints required to be welded. Employ independent certified testing laboratory, approved by Project Manager, to perform weld tests on field welds. Include cost of testing in contract unit price for water line. Use magnetic particle test method for lap welds or X-ray methods for butt welds, for 100 percent of joint welds. Maintain records of tests. When defective weld is revealed, repair defective weld, and retest. Use wire and flux from same manufacturer throughout entire project.

E. Fill wrapper in field and allow excess grout water to seep out. Refill wrapper as necessary. When joint mortar level has stabilized and begun to mechanically stiffen, lap Ethafoam wrapper over top of joint, and secure in place.

F. Stretch test each gasket splice to twice its unstretched length and inspect for defects.

3.03 VISIBLE CRACKS

A. No visible cracks longer than 6 inches, measured to be within 15 degrees of line parallel to pipe longitudinal axis, are permitted except:

1. In surface laitance of centrifugally cast concrete,

2. In sections of pipe with steel reinforcing collars or wrappers, or

3. Within 12 inches of pipe ends.

B. Repair interior lining cracks that exceed 1/16-inch (0.0625 inches) wide.

C. Reject pipe with exterior coating cracks that exceed 0.01 inches wide.

D. Immediately remove pipe from site when pipe has cracks exceeding limitations and cracks are not repairable.

3.04 FIELD REPAIR PROCEDURES FOR COATING/LINING

A. Areas less than or equal to 6 inches in diameter: Patch honeycomb and minor defects in concrete surfaces with non shrink grout conforming to section 2.03 B. Use only manual or small (low pressure) air chisels to chip away mortar coating or lining. Cut out unsatisfactory material and replace with nonshrink grout, securely bonded to existing coating or lining. Finish junctures between patches and existing concrete as inconspicuous as possible. Strike off nonshrink grout flush with surrounding surface after patch has stiffened sufficiently to allow for greatest portion of shrinkage. Finish surface in accordance with lining requirements.

B. Pipe with defective coating areas greater than 6 inches in diameter cannot be used. Immediately remove pipe from project.

C. Reject pipe when steel cylinder is dented while making field repair. Immediately remove pipe from project.

END OF SECTION

Section 02508

EXTRA STRENGTH CLAY PIPE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Extra strength vitrified clay pipe for direct burial.

B. Vitrified clay pipe for jacking and microtunneling.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for extra strength vitrified clay pipe under this section. Include cost in unit price work, as specified in the following sections:

   a. Section 02441 - Microtunneling and Pipe Jacked Tunnels

   b. Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If the Contract is a Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in the total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 12 - Practice for Installing Vitrified Clay Pipe Lines.

B. ASTM C 301 - Test Methods for Vitrified Clay Pipe.

C. ASTM C 425 - Specification for Compression Joints for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Fittings.

D. ASTM C 700 - Specification for Vitrified Clay Pipe, Extra Strength, Standard Strength, and Perforated.

E. ASTM C 828 - Test Method for Low-Pressure Air Test of Vitrified Clay Pipe Lines.

F. ASTM C 1091 - Test Method for Hydrostatic Infiltration and Exfiltration Testing of Vitrified Clay Pipe Lines.

G. ASTM C 1208 - Standard Specification for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Joints for Use in Jacking, Sliplining and Tunnels.

H. ASTM D 1784 - Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds.

I. National Clay Pipe Institute (NCPI) Clay Pipe Engineering Manual.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit complete product data for pipe, fittings, gaskets and couplings for approval. Indicate conformance to appropriate reference standards.

C. Submit certificates by a testing laboratory, hired and paid by the manufacturer, that clay pipes meet applicable standards when tested in accordance with ASTM C 301.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 VITRIFIED CLAY PIPE

A. Vitrified clay pipe for direct burial shall conform to ASTM C 700 requirements for extra strength clay pipe.

B. Approved manufacturers of extra strength clay pipe are Mission Clay Products Corporation and the Dickey Company.

2.02 JOINTS

A. Joints for extra strength vitrified clay shall conform to ASTM C 425.

1. For clay pipe 21 inches in diameter and larger, conform to requirements for compression joints for bell-and-spigot pipe.

2. For clay pipe 18 inches in diameter and smaller, conform to requirements for compression couplings for plain-end pipe.

B. Joints for jacking, sliplining, and microtunneling pipe shall conform to ASTM C 1208.

2.03 GASKETS

A. When no contaminant is identified, furnish rubber or polyurethane elastomer gasket material conforming to standards listed above.

B. Pipe to be installed in potentially contaminated areas, especially where free product is found near the elevation of the proposed sewer, shall have the following gasket material for the noted contaminants:

CONTAMINANT	GASKET MATERIAL REQUIRED
Petroleum (diesel, gasoline)	Nitrile Rubber
Other contaminants	As recommended by the pipe manufacturer

2.04 COMPRESSION COUPLINGS

A. The PVC collar material for compression couplings of plain-end pipe shall conform to requirements of ASTM D 1784, Class 12454-B.

B. Couplings for microtunneling and other pipe jacking methods shall be made with Type 316 stainless steel sleeve couplings that utilize elastomeric sealing gaskets as the sole means to maintain joint watertightness. The joints shall have the same outside diameter as the pipe so when the pipes are assembled, the joints are flush with the pipe outside surface.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Conform to installation requirements of Section 02441 - Microtunneling and Pipe Jacked Tunnels and Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers.

B. Install pipe in accordance with ASTM C 12, the NCPI Clay Pipe Engineering Manual, and manufacturer's recommendations.

3.02 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

A. Perform acceptance testing in accordance with Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewer, and ASTM C 1091. Do not use procedures from ASTM C 828 unless authorized by Project Manager.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The City may run tests on field samples following applicable ASTM standards at an independent laboratory to verify the required physical properties and characteristics of supplied materials. Provide product samples as requested by Project Manager.

END OF SECTION

Section 02511

WATER LINES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Installation of water lines.

B. Specifications identify requirements for both small diameter water lines and large diameter water lines. When specifications for large diameter water lines differ from those for small diameter water lines, large diameter specifications will govern for large diameter pipe.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for water lines installed by open-cut, augered with or without casing, aerial crossing, and pipe offset section or within limits of Potentially Petroleum Contaminated Area (PPCA) is on linear foot basis for each size of pipe installed. Separate pay items are used for each type of installation.

   a. Mains: Measure along axis of pipe and include fittings and valves.

   b. Branch Pipe: Measure from axis of water line to end of branch.

2. Payment for interconnection is on lump sum basis for each interconnection identified on Drawings. Payment will include tapping sleeve and valves piping, connections and other related work necessary for construction as shown on Drawings or specified herein.

3. Payment for removal of existing internal elliptical or dished head plug is on unit price basis for each internal elliptical or dished head plug removed. Payment will include deletion of plug, drainage or dewatering of water lines, repair of damaged linings, rechlorination and items incidental to operation.

4. Payment for plug and clamp is on a unit price basis for each size of pipe.

5. Payment for drainline connection with service manhole is on unit price basis for each drainline shown on drawings. Payment includes valve, access manhole and connection.

6. Payment for cylindrical corrosion barriers is on a unit price basis for each pipe fitting installed with one or more barriers.

7. When directed by Project Manager to install extra fittings as required to avoid unforeseen obstacles, payment will be based on the following:

   a. Each extra fitting requested by Project Manager and delivered to jobsite will be paid according to unit price for "Extra Fittings in Place."

   b. Payment will include and be full compensation for items necessary for installation and operation of water line.

8. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ANSI A 21.11/AWWA C111 - Standard for Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile - Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings.

B. ANSI/NSF Standard 61 - Drinking Water System -Health Components.

C. ASTM A 36 - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

D. ASTM A 536 - Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings

E. ASTM A 126 - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges, and Pipe Fittings.

F. ASTM B 21 - Standard Specification for Naval Brass Rod, Bar, and Shapes.

G. ASTM B 98 - Standard Specification for Copper-Silicon Alloy Rod, Bar, and Shapes.

H. ASTM B 301 - Standard Specification for Free-Cutting Copper Rod and Bar.

I. ASTM B 584 - Standard Specification for Copper Alloy Sand Casting for General Application.

J. ASTM E 165 - Standard Test Method for Liquid Penetrant Examination

K. ASTM E 709 - Standard Guide for Magnetic Particle Examination

L. ASTM F 1674 - Standard Test Method for Joint Restraint Products for Use with PVC Pipe.

M. AWWA C 206 - Standard for Field Welding of Steel Water Pipe.

N. AWWA C 207 - Standard for Steel Pipe Flanges for Waterworks Service - Sizes 4 Inches through 144 Inches.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Conform to submittal requirements of applicable Section for type of pipe used.

C. Photographs: Submit photographs conforming to requirements of Section 01321 - Construction Photographs prior to commencement of construction.

D. Submit videotapes conforming to requirements of Section 01323 - Construction Videotapes, if applicable.

E. Submit Lone Star notification transmittal number prior to beginning excavation.

F. Submit, a minimum of 15 days before beginning pipe laying operations, layout drawing identifying proposed sections for disinfecting, hydrostatic testing and site restoration for entire project for review and approval. Layout drawing to identify sequence of sections for:

1. Disinfection; not to exceed 4,000 linear feet per section.

2. Hydrostatic testing and transfer of services; to immediately follow sequence of disinfected section.

3. Site restoration; not to exceed limits specified; Sequence in order of disturbance.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 PIPE MATERIALS

A. Install pipe materials which conform to following:

1. Section 02501 - Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings.

2. Section 02502 - Steel Pipe and Fittings. Water line piping within plant site and aerial crossings to be welded joint steel pipe with flange or approved restraint joint connections, unless otherwise shown on Drawings.

3. Section 02506 - Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe.

4. Section 02507 - Prestressed Concrete Cylinder Pipe.

5. Section 02518 - Steel Pipe and Fittings for Large Diameter Water Lines.

6. Section 02613 - Bar-Wrapped Steel Cylinder Pipe.

B. Conform to American National Standards Institute/National Sanitation Foundation (ANSI/NSF) Standard 61 and have certified by an organization accredited by ANSI.

C. Type of pipe materials used is Contractor's option unless specifically identified on Drawings.

D. Provide minimum of 3/8 inch inside joint recess between ends of pipe in straight pipe sections.

2.02 WELDED JOINT PROTECTION FITTING FOR SMALL DIAMETER STEEL PIPE

A. Cylindrical Corrosion Barrier: Provide approved cylindrical corrosion barrier.

B. O-rings: Conform to National Sanitary Foundation requirements.

2.03 RESTRAINED JOINTS

A. Ductile-Iron Pipe: See Section 02501 - Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings.

B. PVC Pipe: See Section 02506 - Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe. Perform hydrostatic testing in accordance with ASTM F 1674.

C. Prestressed Concrete Cylinder Pipe, Bar-Wrapped Pipe and Steel Pipe: Welded joints (see Paragraph 3.06 D).

D. Restrained Joints where required on DIP and PVC pipe:

1. Restraint devices: Manufacture of high strength ductile iron, ASTM A 536 up to 24 inches, and ASTM A 36 for sizes greater than 30 inches. Working pressure rating twice that of design test pressure.

2. Bolts and connecting hardware: High strength low alloy material in accordance with ANSI A21.11/AWWA C111.

2.04 COUPLINGS AND APPURTENANCES FOR LARGE DIAMETER WATERLINE

A. Flexible (Dresser-type) Couplings.

1. Install where shown on Drawings or where allowed by Project Manager for Contractor's convenience. Use galvanized flexible couplings when installed on galvanized pipe which is cement lined, or when underground. Provide gaskets manufactured from Neoprene or Buna-N.

2. For steel pipe; provide approved sleeve-type flexible couplings. Thickness of middle ring equal to or greater than thickness of pipe wall.

3. Provide approved flanged adapter couplings for steel pipe

4. Use Type 316 stainless steel bolts, nuts and washers where flexible couplings are installed underground. Coat entire coupling with 20-mil of approved coal tar coating.

B. Flap Valves: Provide approved flap valves on discharge of manhole drainline as shown on Drawings.

1. Body and Flap: ASTM A 126-B cast iron.

2. Seats: ASTM B 21-CA482 or ASTM B 301-CA145 bronze.

3. Resilient Seat:

4. Hinge Arms: ASTM B 584-CA865 high tensile bronze.

5. Hinge pins: ASTM B 98-CA655 silicon bronze.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Conform to applicable installation specifications for types of pipe used.

B. Employ workmen who are skilled and experienced in laying pipe of type and joint configuration being furnished. Provide watertight pipe and pipe joints.

C. Lay pipe to lines and grades shown on Drawings.

D. Confirm that nine feet minimum separation from gravity sanitary sewers and manholes or separation of four feet minimum from force mains as specified in this Section in all directions unless special design is provided on Drawings.

E. Where above clearances cannot be attained, and special design has not been provided on Drawings, obtain direction from Project Manager before proceeding with construction.

F. Inform Project Manager if unmetered sprinkler or fire line connections exist which are not shown on Drawings. Make transfer only after approval by Project Manager.

G. For projects involving multiple subdivisions or locations, limit water line installation to maximum of two project site locations. Maximizing 2 pipe installation crews shall be permitted, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

H. City of Houston Utility Operations Division will handle, at no cost to Contractor, operations involving opening and closing valves for wet connections and for chlorination. Contractor is responsible for handling necessary installations and removal of chlorination and testing taps and risers.

I. If asbestos-cement (A.C.) pipe is encountered, follow safety practices outlined in American Water Works Association's publication, "Work Practices for A/C Pipe". Strictly adhere to "recommended practices" contained in this publication and make them "mandatory practices" for this Project.

J. For pipe diameters 36 inches and greater, clearly mark each section of pipe and fitting with unique designation on inside of pipe along with pressure class. Locate unique identifying mark minimum of five feet away from either end of each section of pipe. Provide one unique identifying mark in middle of each fitting. Place markings at consistent locations. Use permanent black paint and minimum letter height of 4 inches to mark designations.

K. Contractor is responsible for assuring chosen manufacturer fulfills requirements for extra fittings and, therefore, is responsible for costs due to downtime if requirements are not met.

L. Do not remove plugs or clamps during months of peak water demands; June, July and August, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

3.02 HANDLING, CLEANING AND INSPECTION

A. Handling:

1. Place pipe along project site where storm water or other water will not enter or pass through pipe.

2. Load, transport, unload, and otherwise handle pipe and fittings to prevent damage of any kind. Handle and transport pipe with equipment designed, constructed and arranged to prevent damage to pipe, lining and coating. Do not permit bare chains, hooks, metal bars, or narrow skids or cradles to come in contact with coatings. Where required, provide pipe fittings with sufficient interior strutting or cross bracing to prevent deflection under their own weight.

3. Hoist pipe from trench side into trench by means of sling of smooth steel cable, canvas, leather, nylon or similar material.

4. For large diameter water lines, handle pipe only by means of sling of canvas, leather, nylon, or similar material. Sling shall be minimum 36 inches in width. Do not tear or wrinkle tape layers.

5. Use precautions to prevent injury to pipe, protective linings and coatings.

    a. Package stacked pipe on timbers. Place protective pads under banding straps at time of packaging.

    b. Pad fork trucks with carpet or other suitable material. Use nylon straps around pipe for lift when relocating pipe with crane or backhoe.

    c. Do not lift pipe using hooks at each end of pipe.

    d. Do not place debris, tools, clothing, or other materials on pipe.

6. Repair damage to pipe or protective lining and coating before final acceptance.

7. For cement mortar line and coated steel pipe and PCCP, permit no visible cracks longer than 6 inches, measured within 15 degrees of line parallel to pipe longitudinal axis of finished pipe, except:

    a. In surface laitance of centrifugally cast concrete.

    b. In sections of pipe with steel reinforcing collars or wrappers.

    c. Within 12 inches of pipe ends.

8. Reject pipe with visible cracks (not meeting exceptions) and remove from project site.

B. Cleaning: Thoroughly clean and dry interior of pipe and fittings of foreign matter before installation, and keep interior clean until Work has been accepted. Keep joint contact surfaces clean until jointing is completed. Do not place debris, tools, clothing or other

materials in pipe. After pipe laying and joining operations are completed, clean inside of pipe and remove debris.

C. Inspection: Before installation, inspect each pipe and fitting for defects. Reject defective, damaged or unsound pipe and fittings and remove them from site.

3.03 EARTHWORK

A. Conform to applicable provisions of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfilling for Utilities and Section 02447 - Augering Pipe and Conduit.

B. Bedding: Use bedding materials in conformance with Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials.

C. Backfill: Use bank run sand or earth or native soil as specified in Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials. Backfill excavated areas in same day excavated. When not possible, cover excavated areas using steel plates on paved areas and other protective measures elsewhere.

D. Place material in uniform layers of prescribed maximum loose thickness and wet or dry material to approximately optimum moisture content. Compact to prescribed density Water tamping is not allowed.

E. Pipe Embedment: Including 6-inch pipe bedding and backfill to 12 inches above top of pipe.

3.04 PIPE CUTTING

A. Cut pipe 12 inches and smaller with standard wheel pipe cutters. Cut pipe larger than 12 inches in manner approved by Project Manager. Make cuts smooth and at right angles to axis of pipe. Bevel plain end with heavy file or grinder to remove sharp edges.

3.05 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. General Requirements:

1. Lay pipe in subgrade free of water.

2. Make adjustments of pipe to line and grade by scraping away subgrade or filling in with granular material.

3. Properly form bedding to fully support bell without wedging or blocking up bell.

4. Open Cut Construction: Keep pipe trenches free of water which might impair pipe laying operations. Grade pipe to provide uniform support along bottom of pipe.

Excavate for bell holes after bottom has been graded and in advance of placing pipe. Lay not more than nominal city block length of not more than 300 feet of pipe in trench ahead of backfilling operations. Cover or backfill laid pipe if pipe laying operations are interrupted and during non-working hours. Place backfill carefully and simultaneously on each side of pipe to avoid lateral displacement of pipe and damage to joints. If adjustment of pipe is required after it has been laid, remove and re-lay as new pipe.

B. Install pipe continuously and uninterrupted along each street on which work is to be performed. Obtain approval of Project Manager prior to skipping any portion of Work.

C. Protection of Pipeline: Securely place stoppers or bulkheads in openings and in end of line when construction is stopped temporarily and at end of each day's work.

D. Perform Critical Location as shown on Drawings. Refer to Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities for additional requirements at critical locations.

E. Laying Large Diameter Water Line

1. Lay not more than 50 feet of pipe in trench ahead of backfilling operations.

2. Dig trench proper width as shown. When trench width below top of pipe becomes 4 feet wider than specified, install higher class of pipe or improved bedding, as determined by Project Manager. No additional payment will be made for higher class of pipe or improved bedding.

3. Use adequate surveying methods and equipment; employ personnel competent in use of this equipment. Horizontal and vertical deviations from alignment as indicated on Drawings shall not exceed 0.10 feet. Measure and record "as-built" horizontal alignment and vertical grade at maximum of every 100 feet on record drawings.

4. Prevent damage to coating when placing backfill. Use backfill material free of large rocks or stones, or other material which could damage coatings.

5. Before assembling couplings, lightly coat pipe ends and outside of gaskets with cup grease or liquid vegetable soap to facilitate installation.

6. Prior to proceeding with critical tie-ins submit sequence of work based on findings from "critical location" effort.

F. Perform following additional procedures when working on plant sites.

1. Seventy-two hours prior to each plant shut down or connection, schedule coordination meeting with Project Manager and Water Production personnel. At

this meeting, present proposed sequencing of Work and verification of readiness to complete Work as required and within time permitted. Do not proceed with Work until Project Manager agrees key personnel, equipment and materials are on hand to complete Work.

2. Prior to fully excavating around existing piping, excavate as minimal as possible to confirm type and condition of existing joints. Verify size, type, and condition of pipe prior to ordering materials or fully mobilizing for Work.

3. Do not proceed with connections to existing piping and identified critical stages of work unless approved by Project Manager and City's Utility Maintenance Division operator is present to observe.

4. Coordinate with City's Water Production Division operators to obtain reduction in operating pressures prior to performing connections to existing piping.

5. Make connections to existing piping only when two valves are closed off between connection and source of water pressure. Do not make connection relying solely on one valve, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

6. Perform critical stages of Work identified on Drawings at night or during low water demand months as specified in Section 01110 - Summary of Work.

7. Excavation equipment used on plant sites to have smooth bucket; no teeth or side cutters.

8. Submit to Project Manager Lone Star Notification transmittal number prior to beginning excavation.

9. Before each "dig" with mechanical excavator, probe ground to determine potential obstructions. Repeat procedure until existing pipe is located or excavation reaches desired elevation. Perform excavations within one foot to existing piping by hand methods.

10. Provide adequate notice to pipe manufacture's representative when connecting or modifying existing prestressed or pretension concrete cylinder pipe.

11. Provide field surveyed (horizontal and vertical elevations) "as-builts" of new construction and existing underground utilities encountered. Submit in accordance with Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

12. Prior to performing plant work to be done on weekend, provide list of sites and contact person with phone numbers to Project Manager by noon on Thursday of week. Contact person must be accessible during weekend, have Houston Metro Area phone number, and be authorized to make emergency decisions.

13. No night work or plant shut down will be scheduled to begin two working days before or after designated City Holidays.

G. For tie-ins to existing water lines, provide necessary material on hand to facilitate connection prior to shutting down existing water line. Provide City a minimum of two weeks notice prior to shutting down existing water line.

3.06 JOINTS AND JOINTING

A. Rubber Gasketed Bell-and-Spigot Joints for Concrete Cylinder Pipe, Bar Wrapped Pipe PVC, Steel, and DIP:

1. After rubber gasket is placed in spigot groove of pipe, equalize rubber gasket cross section by inserting tool or bar recommended by manufacturer under rubber gasket and moving it around periphery of pipe spigot.

2. Lubricate gaskets with nontoxic water-soluble lubricant before pipe units are joined.

3. Fit pipe units together in manner to avoid twisting or otherwise displacing or damaging rubber gasket.

4. After pipe sections are joined, check gaskets to ensure that no displacement of gasket has occurred. If displacement has occurred, remove pipe section and remake joint as for new pipe. Remove old gasket, inspect for damage and replace if necessary before remaking joint.

5. Where preventing movement of 16-inch diameter or greater pipe is necessary due to thrust, use restrained joints as shown on Drawings.

a. Include buoyancy conditions for soil unit weight when computing thrust restraint calculations.

b. Do not include passive resistance of soil in thrust restraint calculations.

6. Except for PVC pipe, provide means to prevent full engagement of spigot into bell as shown on Drawings. Means may consist of wedges or other types of stops as approved by Project Manager.

B. Flanged Joints where required on Concrete Cylinder Pipe, Bar Wrapped Pipe, Ductile Iron Pipe, or Steel Pipe:

1. AWWA C 207. Prior to installation of bolts, accurately center and align flanged joints to prevent mechanical prestressing of flanges, pipe and equipment. Align

bolt holes to straddle vertical, horizontal or north-south center line. Do not exceed 3/64 inch per foot inclination of flange face from true alignment.

2. Use full-face gaskets for flanged joints. Provide 1/8-inch-thick cloth inserted rubber gasket material. Cut gaskets at factory to proper dimensions.

3. Use galvanized or black nuts and bolts to match flange material. Use cadmium-plated steel nuts and bolts underground. Tighten bolts progressively to prevent unbalanced stress. Maintain at all times approximately same distance between two flanges at points around flanges. Tighten bolts alternately (180° apart) until all are evenly tight. Draw bolts tight to ensure proper seating of gaskets. Provide Densco petroleum based tape or approved equal for all exposed portions of nuts, bolts and pipe.

4. Full length bolt isolating sleeves and washers shall be used with flanged connections. Furnish kits in accordance with City's "Approved Products List."

5. For in-line flange joints 30 inches in diameter and greater and at butterfly valve flanges, provide Pyrox G-10 with nitrite seal, conforming to ANSI A 21.11 mechanical joint gaskets. For in-line flange joints sized between 12 inches in diameter and greater and 24 inches in diameter and smaller, provide Phenolic PSI with nitrite seal gasket conforming to ANSI A 21.11 mechanical joint gaskets.

C. Welded Joints (Concrete Cylinder Pipe, Bar Wrapped Pipe, Steel Pipe):

1. Prior to starting work, provide certification of qualification for welders employed on project for type of work procedures and positions involved.

2. Joints: AWWA C 206. Full-fillet, single lap-welded slip-type either inside or outside, or double butt-welded type; use automatic or hand welders; completely penetrate deposited metal with base metal; use filler metal compatible with base metal; keep inside of fittings and joints free from globules of weld metal which would restrict flow or become loose. Do not use mitered joints. For interior welded joints, complete backfilling before welding. For exterior field-welded joints, provide adequate working room under and beside pipe. Use exterior welds for 30-inch and smaller.

3. Furnish welded joints with trimmed spigots and interior welds for 36-inch and larger pipe.

4. Bell-and-spigot, lap-welded slip joints: Deflection may be taken at joint by pulling joint up to 3/4 inch as long as 1 ½ inch minimum lap is maintained. Spigot end may be miter cut to take deflections up to 5 degrees as long as joint tolerances are maintained. Miter end cuts of both ends of butt-welded joints may be used for joint deflections of up to 5 degrees.

5. Align piping and equipment so that no part is offset more than 1/8 inch. Set fittings and joints square and true, and preserve alignment during welding operation. For butt welded joints, align abutting ends to minimize offset between surfaces. For pipe of same nominal wall thickness, do not exceed 1/16 inch offset. Use line-up clamps for this purpose; however, take care to avoid damage to linings and coatings.

6. Protect coal-tar-epoxy lining during welding by draping an 18-inch-wide strip of heat resistant material over top half of pipe on each side of lining holdback to avoid damage to lining by hot splatter. Protect tape coating similarly if external welding is required.

7. Welding rods: Compatible with metal to be welded to obtain strongest bond, E-70XX.

8. Deposit metal in successive layers to provide at least 2 passes or beads for automatic welding and 3 passes or beads for manual welding in completed weld.

9. Deposit no more than 1/4 inch of metal on each pass. Thoroughly clean each individual pass with wire brush or hammer to remove dirt, slag or flux.

10. Do not weld under weather condition that would impair strength of weld, such as wet surface, rain or snow, dust or high winds, unless work is properly protected.

11. Make tack weld of same material and by same procedure as completed weld. Otherwise, remove tack welds during welding operation.

12. Remove dirt, scale, and other foreign matter from inside piping before tying in sections, fittings, or valves.

13. Welded Joints for Large Diameter Water Lines:

    a. Furnish pipe with trimmed spigots and interior welds for 36-inch and larger pipe.

    b. Use exterior welds for 30 inch and smaller.

    c. Only one end may be miter cut. Miter end cuts of both ends of butt-welded joints may be used for joint deflections of up to 2 ½ degrees.

    d. For large diameter water lines, employ an independent certified testing laboratory, approved by Project Manager, to perform weld acceptance tests on welded joints. Include cost of such testing and associated work to accommodate testing in contract unit price bid for water line. Furnish

copies of test reports to Project Manager for review. Project Manager has final decision as to suitability of welds tested.

1) Weld acceptance criteria:

a) Conduct in accordance with ASTM E165- Standard Test Method for Liquid Penetrant Examination and ASTM E709 Standard Guide for Magnetic Particle Examination. Use X-ray methods for butt welds, for 100 percent of joint welds.

b) Examine welded surfaces for the following defects:

i) Cracking.

ii) Lack of fusion/penetration.

iii) Slag which exceeds one-third (t) where (t) equals material thickness.

iv) Porosity/Relevant rounded indications greater than 3/16 inch; rounded indication is one of circular or elliptical shape with length equal to or less than three times its width.

v) Relevant linear indications in which length of linear indication exceeds three times its width.

vi) Four or more relevant 1/16-inch rounded indications in line separated by 1/16 inch or less edge to edge.

14. After pipe is joined and prior to start of welding procedure, make spigot and bell essentially concentric by jacking, shimming or tacking to obtain clearance tolerance around periphery of joint except for deflected joints.

15. Furnish each welder employed steel stencil for marking welds, so work of each welder can be identified. Mark pipe with assigned stencil adjacent to weld. When welder leaves job, stencil must be voided and not duplicated. Welder making defective welds must discontinue work and leave project site. Welder may return to project site only after recertification.

16. Provide cylindrical corrosion barriers for epoxy lined steel pipe 24-inch diameter and smaller, unless minimum wall thickness is 0.5 inches or greater.

a. In addition to welding requirements contained here in Paragraph 3.06, conform to protection fitting manufacturer's installation recommendations.

b. Provide services of technical representative of manufacturer available on site at beginning of pipe laying operations. Representative to train welders and advise regarding installation and general construction methods. Welders must have 12 months prior experience installing protection fittings.

c. All steel pipe is to have cutback 3/4 inch to no greater than 1 inch of internal diameter coating from weld bevel.

d. Furnish steel fittings with cylindrical corrosion barriers with shop welded extensions to end of fittings. Extension length to measure no less than diameter of pipe. Shop apply lining in accordance with AWWA C 210 or AWWA C 213.

e. All steel pipe receiving field adjustments are to be cold cut using standard practices and equipment. No cutting using torch is to be allowed.

D. Harnessed Joints (Concrete Cylinder Pipe, Bar Wrapped Pipe):

1. Use of snap-ring type restrained joints on pipe is limited to 20-inch through 48-inch diameters.

2. Position snap-ring joint bolt on top (12 o'clock portion). Provide minimum 1/2-inch joint recess. Use joint "diapers" minimum of 12 inches wide.

3. For field adjustments with deflections beyond manufacturer's recommendations:

a. Field trim spigot.

b. Do not engage ring.

4. Harnessed joints are not permitted in areas defined on Drawings as potentially petroleum contaminated material, in tunnels, or at bend greater than 5 degrees.

5. Install harness type joints including snap rings at straight sections of pipe.

E. Restrained Joints

1. For existing water lines and water lines less than 16 inches in diameter, restrain pipe joints with concrete thrust blocks.

2. Thrust restraint lengths shown on Drawings are minimum anticipated lengths. These lengths are based on deflections indicated and on use of prestressed concrete cylinder pipe for large diameter lines and ductile iron pipe for small diameter lines. Adjustments in deflections or use of other pipe material may result in reduction or increase of thrust lengths. Perform calculations by pipe manufacturer to verify proposed thrust restraint lengths. Submit calculations for all pipe materials sealed by a registered Professional Engineer in State of Texas for review by Project Manager. Make adjustments in thrust restraint lengths at no additional cost to City.

3. Passive resistance of soil will not be permitted in calculation of thrust restraint.

4. For 16-inch lines and larger use minimum 16-foot length of pipe in and out of joints made up of beveled pipe where restraint joint lengths are not identified on Drawings. Otherwise, provide restraint joints for a minimum length of 16 feet on each side of beveled joints.

5. Installation.

   a. Install restrained joints mechanism in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

   b. Examine and clean mechanism; remove dirt, debris and other foreign material.

   c. Apply gasket and joint NSF 61 FDA food grade approved lubricant.

   d. Verify gasket is evenly seated.

   e. Do not over stab pipe into mechanism.

6. Prevent any lateral movement of thrust restraints throughout pressure testing and operation.

7. Place 2500 psi concrete conforming to Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction, for blocking at each change in direction of existing water lines, to brace pipe against undisturbed trench walls. Finish placement of concrete blocking, made from Type I cement, 4 days prior to hydrostatic testing of pipeline. Test may be made 2 days after completion of blocking if Type II cement is used.

F. Joint Grout (Concrete Cylinder Pipe, Bar Wrapped Pipe, Steel Pipe):

1. Mix cement grout mixture by machine except when less than 1/2 cubic yard is required. When less than 1/2 cubic yard is required, grout may be hand mixed. Mix grout only in quantities for immediate use. Place grout within 20 minutes

after mixing. Discard grout that has set. Retempering of grout by any means is not permitted.

2. Prepare grout in small batches to prevent stiffening before it is used. Do not use grout which has become so stiff that proper placement cannot be assured without retempering. Use grout for filling grooves of such consistency that it will adhere to ends of pipe.

3. Surface Preparation: Remove defective concrete, laitance, dirt, oil, grease and other foreign material from concrete surfaces with wire brush or hammer to sound, clean surface. Remove rust and foreign materials from metal surfaces in contact with grout.

4. Follow established procedures for hot and cold weather concrete placement.

5. Complete joint grout operations and backfilling of pipe trenches as closely as practical to pipe laying operations. Allow grouted exterior joints to cure at least 1 hour before compacting backfill.

6. Grouting exterior joint space: Hold wrapper in place on both sides of joint with minimum 5/8-inch-wide steel straps or bands. Place no additional bedding or backfill material on either side of pipe until after grout band is filled and grout has mechanically stiffened. Pull ends of wrapper together at top of pipe to form access hole. Pour grout down one side of pipe until it rises on other side. Rod or puddle grout to ensure complete filling of joint recess. Agitate for 15 minutes to allow excess water to seep through joint band. When necessary, add more grout to fill joint completely. Protect gap at top of joint band from backfill by allowing grout to stiffen or by covering with structurally protective material. Do not remove band from joint. Proceed with placement of additional bedding and backfill material.

7. Interior Joints for Pipe 24 inches and Smaller: Circumferentially butter bell with grout prior to insertion of spigot, strike off flush surplus grout inside pipe by pulling filled burlap bag or inflated ball through pipe with rope. After joint is engaged, finish off joint grout smooth and clean. Use swab approved by Project Manager for 20-inch pipe and smaller.

8. Protect exposed interior surfaces of steel joint bands by metallizing, by other approved coatings, or by pointing with grout. Joint pointing may be omitted on potable water pipelines if joint bands are protected by zinc metallizing or other approved protective coatings.

9. Remove and replace improperly cured or otherwise defective grout.

10. Strike off grout on interior joints and make smooth with inside diameter of pipe.

11. When installed in tunnel or encasement pipe and clearance within casing does not permit outside grout to be placed in normal manner, apply approved flexible sealer, such as Flex Protex or equal, to outside joint prior to joint engagement. Clean and prime surfaces receiving sealer in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Apply sufficient quantities of sealer to assure complete protection of steel in joint area. Fill interior of joint with grout in normal manner after joint closure.

12. Interior Joints for Water Lines 30 inches and Larger: Clean joint space, wet joint surfaces, fill with stiff grout and trowel smooth and flush with inside surfaces of pipe using steel trowel so that surface is smooth. Accomplish grouting at end of each work day. Obtain written acceptance from Project Manager of inside joints before proceeding with next day's pipe laying operation. During inspection, insure no delamination of joint mortar has occurred by striking joint mortar lining with rubber mallet. Remove and replace delaminated mortar lining.

13. Work which requires heavy equipment to be over water line must be completed before mortar is applied to interior joints.

G. Large Diameter Water Main Joint Testing: In addition to testing individual joints with feeler gauge approximately 1/2 inch wide and 0.015-inch thick, use other joint testing procedure approved or recommended by pipe manufacturer which will help ensure watertight installation prior to backfilling. Perform tests at no additional cost to City.

H. Make curves and bends by deflecting joints or other method as recommended by manufacturer and approved by Project Manager. Submit details of other methods of providing curves and bends which exceed manufacturer's recommended deflection prior to installation.

1. Deflection of pipe joints shall not exceed maximum deflection recommended by pipe manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

2. If deflection exceeds that specified but is less than 5 percent, repair entire deflected pipe section such that maximum deflection allowed is not exceeded.

3. If deflection is equal to or exceeds 5 percent from that specified, remove entire portion of deflected pipe section and install new pipe.

4. Replace, repair, or reapply coatings and linings as required.

5. Assessment of deflection may be measured by Project Manager at location along pipe. Arithmetical averages of deflection or similar average measurement methods will not be deemed as meeting intent of standard.

6. When rubber gasketed pipe is laid on curve, join pipe in straight alignment and then deflect to curved alignment.

I. Closures Sections and Approved Field Modifications to Steel, Concrete Cylinder Pipe, Bar Wrapped Pipe and Fittings:

1. Apply welded-wire fabric reinforcement to interior and exterior of exposed interior and exterior surfaces greater than 6 inches in diameter. Welded-wire fabric: minimum W1; maximum spacing 2 inches by 4 inches; 3/8 inch from surface of steel plate or middle third of lining or coating thickness for mortar thickness less than 3/4 inch.

2. Fill exposed interior and exterior surfaces with nonshrink grout.

3. For pipe diameters 36 inches and greater, perform field welds on interior and exterior of pipe.

4. For large diameter water lines, provide minimum overlap of 4 inches of butt strap over adjacent piece on butt-strap closures.

3.07 CATHODIC PROTECTION APPURTENANCES

A. Where identified on Drawings, modify pipe for cathodic protection as detailed on Drawings and specified. Unless otherwise noted, provide insulation kits including test stations at connections to existing water system or at locations to isolate one type of cathodic system from another type, between water line, access manhole piping and other major openings in water line, or as shown on Drawings.

B. Bond joints for pipe installed in tunnel or open cut, except where insulating flanges are provided. Weld strap or clip between bell and spigot of each joint or as shown on Drawings. No additional bonding required where joints are welded for thrust restraint. Repair coatings as specified by appropriate AWWA standard, as recommended by manufacturer, and as approved by Project Manager.

C. Bonding Strap or Clip: Free of foreign material that may increase contact resistance between wire and strap or clip.

3.08 SECURING, SUPPORTING AND ANCHORING

A. Support piping as shown on Drawings and as specified in this Section, to maintain line and grade and prevent transfer of stress to adjacent structures.

B. Where shown on Drawings, anchor pipe fittings and bends installed on water line by welding consecutive joints of pipe together to distance each side of fitting. Restrained length, as shown on Drawings, assumes that installation of pipe and subsequent

hydrostatic testing begins upstream and proceed downstream, with respect to normal flow of water in pipe. If installation and testing differs from this assumption, submit for approval revised method of restraining pipe joints upstream and downstream of device used to test against (block valve, blind flange or dished head plug).

C. Use adequate temporary blocking of fittings when making connections to distribution system and during hydrostatic tests. Use sufficient anchorage and blocking to resist stresses and forces encountered while tapping existing water line.

3.09 POLYETHYLENE WRAP FOR DUCTILE IRON PIPE

A. Double wrap pipe and appurtenances (except fire hydrants and fusion bond or polyurethane coated fittings) with 8-mil polyethylene film.

B. Do not use polyethylene wrap if pipe is cathodically protected.

C. Conform to requirements of Section 02528 - Polyethylene Wrap.

3.10 CLEANUP AND RESTORATION

A. Provide cleanup and restoration crews to work closely behind pipe laying crews, and where necessary, during disinfection and hydrostatic testing, service transfers, abandonment of old water lines, backfill and surface restoration.

B. Unless otherwise approved by Project Manager, comply with the following;

1. Once water line is installed to limits approved in layout submitted, immediately begin preparatory work for disinfection effort.

2. No later than three days after completing disinfection preparatory work, submit to City appropriate request for disinfection.

3. If City fails to perform initial disinfection of lines in accordance with Section 2514 - Disinfection of Water Lines, within seven days from submission of appropriate request, and if approved by Project Manager, pipe laying operations may continue beyond approved limits until the City responds.

4. Immediately after transfer of services, begin abandonment of old water lines and site restoration.

5. Do not exceed a total of 50% of total project linear feet of disturbed right-of-way and easement until site is restored in accordance with Section 01740 - Site Restoration.

6. Exceeding any of the above footage limitations shall be considered a material breach of the Contract and subject to termination in accordance with the General Conditions.

C. For large diameter water lines, do not install more than 2,000 linear feet of water line, without previous 2,000 linear feet being restored in accordance with Section 01740 - Site Restoration. Schedule paving crews so repaving work will not lag behind pipe laying work by more than 1,000 linear feet. Failure to comply with this requirement shall be considered a material breach of the Contract and subject to termination in accordance with the General Conditions.

3.11 CLEANING PIPING SYSTEMS

A. Remove construction debris or foreign material and thoroughly broom clean and flush piping systems. Provide temporary connections, equipment and labor for cleaning. City must inspect water line for cleanliness prior to filling.

3.12 DISINFECTION OF WATER LINES

A. Conform to requirements of Section 02514 - Disinfection of Water Lines.

3.13 FIELD HYDROSTATIC TESTS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 02515 - Hydrostatic Testing of Pipelines.

END OF SECTION

Section 02512

WATER TAP AND SERVICE LINE INSTALLATION

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Tapping existing mains and furnishing and installing new service lines for water.

B. Relocation of existing small water meters.

C. Specifications identify requirements for both small-diameter (less than or equal to 20 inches) water lines and large-diameter (greater than 20 inches) water lines. When specifications for large-diameter water lines differ from those for small- diameter water lines, paragraphs for large-diameter water lines will govern for large-diameter pipe.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for water taps and copper service lines 3/4 inch through 1 inch is on unit price basis for each installation. Separate measurements will be made for "short side", "long side" and "extra long side" connections as defined in Paragraph 1.04, Definitions.

2. Payment for water taps and service lines 1 1/2 inch through 2 inch is on unit price basis for each installation. Separate measurements will be made for "short side", "long side" and "extra long side" connections as defined in Paragraph 1.04, Definitions.

3. Payment for "short side, "long side" and "extra long side" includes locating water line, tap installation and connection to meter and restoring site.

4. Payment for each small meter includes labor, materials, and equipment to relocate existing small meter.

5. No additional payment will be made for bedding, backfill, compaction, push under pavement, etc.

6. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AWWA C 800 - Standard for Underground Service Line Valves and Fittings.

B. AWWA C 900 - Standard for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe, 4 in. Through 12 in., for Water Distribution.

1.04 DEFINITIONS

A. Short Side Connection: Service line connecting proposed curb stop, located inside water meter box, to water line on same side of street.

B. Long Side Connection: Service line connecting proposed curb stop, located inside water meter box, to water line on opposite side of street or from center of streets where supply line is located in street center such as boulevards and streets with esplanades. Distance not to exceed 60 linear feet (at right angles to water line).

C. Extra Long Side Connection: Service line connecting proposed curb stop, located inside water meter box, to water line on opposite side of street or from center of streets where supply line is located in street center such as boulevards and streets with esplanades. Distance greater than 60 linear feet (at right angles to water line).

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Copper Tubing: In accordance with Section 02503 - Copper Tubing. Polybutylene tubing is not permitted.

B. Corporation Stops: AWWA C 800 as modified in this Section:

1. Inlet End: AWWA standard thread.

2. Valve Body: Tapered plug type, O-ring seat ball type, or rubber seat ball type.

3. Outlet End: Flared-copper connection for use with Type K, soft copper or compression type fitting.

C. Provide taps for water line types and sizes in accordance with pipe tapping schedule located at end of this Section.

D. Dual Strap Saddles: Red brass body and straps; ductile-iron; vinyl-coated body and straps; or ductile-iron, vinyl-coated body and stainless-steel straps.

E. Taps for PVC Water Lines: Use dual-strap or single, wide-band strap saddles which provide full support around circumference of pipe and bearing area of sufficient width along axis of pipe, 2 inches minimum, ensuring that pipe will not be distorted when saddle is tightened. Provide approved stainless-steel tapping saddle with AWWA standard thread .

F. Taps for Steel Pipe: Not allowed, unless specifically approved by Project Manager. Use saddle only when tap is approved on steel pipe.

G. Curb Stops and Brass Fittings: AWWA C 800 as modified in this Section.

1. Inlet End: Flared copper connection or compression-type fitting

2. Valve Body: Straight-through or angled, meter-stop design equipped with following:

   a. O-ring seal straight plug type.

   b. Rubber seat ball type.

3. Outlet End: Female, iron-pipe thread or swivel-nut, meter-spud thread on 3/4-inch and 1-inch stops and 2-hole flange on 1 1/2 and 2-inch sizes.

4. Fittings: Provide approved fittings. Use same size open end wrenches and tapping machines as used with respective Mueller fittings.

5. Factory Testing of Brass Fittings:

   a. Submerge in water for 10 seconds at 85 psi with stop in both closed and open positions.

   b. Reject fitting that shows air leakage. Project Manager may confirm tests locally. Entire lot from which samples were taken will be rejected when random sampling discloses unsatisfactory fittings.

H. Angle Stops: In accordance with AWWA C 800; ground-key, stop type with bronze lock-wing head stop cap; inlet and outlet threads conform to application tables of AWWA C 800; and inlets flared connection or compression.

1. Outlet for 3/4-inch and 1-inch size: Meter swivel nut with saddle support.

2. Outlet for 1 1/2-inch through 2-inch size: O-ring sealed meter flange, iron pipe threads.

I. Fittings: In accordance with AWWA C 800 and following:

1. Castings: Smooth, free from burrs, scales, blisters, sand holes, and defects which would make them unfit for intended use.

2. Nuts: Smooth cast and has symmetrical hexagonal wrench flats.

3. Flare-Joint Fittings: Smooth cast. Machine seating surfaces for metal-to-metal seal to proper taper or curve, free from pits or protrusions.

4. Thread fittings, of all types, shall have N.P.T. or AWWA threads, and protect male threaded ends in shipment by plastic coating, or approved equal.

5. Compression tube fittings shall have Buna-N beveled gasket.

6. Stamp of manufacturer's name or trademark and of fitting size on body.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 GENERAL

A. For service lines and lateral connections larger than those allowed in Pipe Tapping Schedule, branch connections and multiple taps may be used. Space corporation stops minimum of 2 feet apart.

B. Tapped collars of appropriate sizes: Approved in new construction only provided they are set at right angles to proposed meter location.

C. Use tapping machine manufactured for pressure tapping purposes for 2-inch and smaller service taps on pressurized water lines.

D. For new meter or when existing meter is in conflict with proposed pavement improvements, locate water meters one foot inside street right-of-way, or when this is not feasible, one foot on curb side of sidewalk. Contact Project Manager when major landscaping or trees conflict with service line and meter box location. No additional payment will be made for work on customer side of meter.

E. New location and installation of existing small meter shall conform to requirements of this Section.

3.02 SERVICE INSTALLATION

A. Set service taps at right angles to proposed meter location and locate taps in upper pipe segment within 45 degrees of pipe springline.

B. Install service lines in open-cut trench in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. Install service lines under paved roadways, other paved areas and areas indicated on Drawings in bored hole in accordance with Paragraph 3.01G.

C. Lay service lines with minimum of 30 inches of cover as measured from top of curb or, in absence of curbs, from centerline elevation of crowned streets or roads. Provide minimum of 18 inches of cover below flow line of ditches to service lines.

D. Service lines across existing street (push-unders): Pull service line through prepared hole under paving. Use only full lengths of tubing. Take care not to damage copper tubing when pulling it through hole. Compression-type union is only permitted when span underneath pavement cannot be accomplished with a full standard length of tubing. Use one compression-type union for each full length of tubing.

E. Maintain service lines free of dirt and foreign matter.

F. Install service lines so that top of meter will be 4 to 6 inches below finished grade.

G. Anticipate existing sanitary sewers to have cement stabilized sand backfill to bottom of pavement. Include cost of such crossings in unit price for services.

3.03 CURB STOP INSTALLATION

A. Set curb stops or angle stops at outer end of service line inside of meter box. Secure opening in curb stop to prevent unwanted material from entering. In close quarters, make S-curve in field. Do not flatten tube. In 3/4-inch and 1-inch services, install meter coupling, swivel-nut, or curb stop ahead of meter. Install straight meter coupling on outlet end of meter.

3.04 SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS

A. Open trench for proposed service line in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

B. Install curb stop on meter end of service line.

C. With curb stop open and prior to connecting service line to meter in slack position, open corporation stop and flush service line thoroughly. Close curb stop, leaving corporation stop in full-open position.

D. Check service line for apparent leaks. Repair leaks before proceeding.

E. Schedule inspection with Project Manager prior to backfilling. After inspection, backfill in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

F. Install meter box centered over meter with top of lid flush with finished grade. Meter box: Refer to Section 02085 - Valve Boxes, Meter Boxes, and Meter Vaults.

END OF SECTION

Table 02512-1

PIPE TAPPING SCHEDULE				
WATERLINE TYPE AND DIAMETER	SERVICE SIZE			
	3/4"	1"	1-1/2"	2"
4" Cast Iron or Ductile Iron	DSS,WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS,WBSS	DSS, WBSS
4" Asbestos Cement	WBSS	WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS
4" PVC (AWWA C900)	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS
6" and 8" Cast Iron or Ductile Iron	DSS,WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS
6" and 8" Asbestos Cement	DSS,WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS
6" and 8" Cast Iron or Ductile Iron	DSS,WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS
6" and 8" PVC (AWWA C900)	DSS,WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS
12" Cast Iron or Ductile Iron	DSS,WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS
12" Asbestos Cement	DSS,WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS
12" PVC (AWWA C900)	DSS,WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS	DSS, WBSS
16" and Up Cast Iron or Ductile Iron	DWBSS	DWBSS	DWBSS	DWBSS
16" and Up Asbestos Cement	DWBSS	DWBSS	DWBSS	DWBSS
16" and Up PVC (AWWA C900)	DWBSS	DWBSS	DWBSS	DWBSS

DSS - DUAL STRAP SADDLES
WBSS - WIDE BAND STRAP SADDLES
DWBSS - DUAL WIDE BAND STRAP SADDLES

Section 02513

WET CONNECTIONS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Wet connections for new water lines and service lines to existing water lines.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for wet connections shown on Drawings is on unit price basis for each wet connection. Separate payment will be made for each size of water line.

2. No compensation will be given for extra work or for damages occurring as result of incomplete shutoff.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AWWA C 800 - Standard for Underground Service Line Valves and Fittings.

1.04 DEFINITIONS

A. Wet connections consist of isolating sections of pipe to be connected with existing valves, draining isolated sections, and completing connections.

B. Connection of 2-inch or smaller lines, which may be referred to on Drawings as "2-inch standard connections" or "gooseneck connections" will be measured as 2-inch wet connections. This item is not to be used as part of 2-inch service line.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Pipe shall conform to requirements of applicable portions of Sections 02501 through 02528 related to piping materials and to water distribution.

B. Corporation cocks and saddles shall conform to requirements of Section 02512 - Water Tap and Service Line Installation.

C. Valves shall conform to requirements of Section 02521 - Gate Valves.

D. Brass fittings shall conform to requirements of AWWA C 800.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 CONNECTION OPERATIONS

A. Plan wet connections in manner and at hours with least inconvenience public. Notify Project Manager at least 72 hours in advance of making connections.

B. Do not operate valves on water lines in use by City. City of Houston Utility Operations Division will handle, at no cost to Contractor, operations involving opening and closing valves for wet connections.

C. Conduct connection operations when Inspector is at job site. Connection work shall progress without interruption until complete once existing water lines have been cut or plugs have been removed for making connections.

3.02 2-INCH WET CONNECTIONS

A. Tap water line. Use corporation cocks, saddles, copper tubing as required for line and grade adjustment, and brass fittings necessary to adapt to existing water line. Use 2-inch valves when indicated on Drawings for 2-inch copper gooseneck connections.

END OF SECTION

Section 02514

DISINFECTION OF WATER LINES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Disinfection of potable water lines.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for disinfection of water lines under this Section. Include cost in unit price of water lines being disinfected.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Adjusting Payment for Retesting.

1. Subsequent disinfection operations which may be necessary due to nonconforming or incomplete construction will be charged to Contractor. Charges will be deducted from retainage amounts when construction estimates are processed for final payment.

2. Total charge will consist of base charge of $135.00 plus footage charge based on number of feet of specified diameter pipe in construction project. Footage charge is as follows:

Size of Pipe	Charge per Linear Foot
2 inch to 4 inch	$0.03
6 inch	$0.04
8 inch	$0.05
10 inch to 12 inch	$0.07
16 inch to 20 inch	$0.09
24 inch to 30 inch	$0.13
32 inch to 48 inch	$0.16
54 inch	$0.20
60 inch	$0.22
66 inch	$0.31
72 inch to 84 inch	$0.40
90 inch to 96 inch	$0.58
108 inch	$0.75
120 inch or larger	$1.00

C. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AWWA C 651 - Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 CONDUCTING DISINFECTION

A. Promptly disinfect water lines constructed before tests are conducted on water lines and before water lines are connected to City water distribution system.

B. Water for disinfection and flushing will be furnished by City without charge.

C. Unless otherwise provided in Contract Documents, City will conduct disinfection operations assisted by Contractor.

D. Coordinate chlorination operations through Project Manager.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Provide temporary blind flanges, cast-iron sleeves, plugs, necessary service taps, copper service leads, risers and jumpers of sizes, location and materials, and other items needed to facilitate disinfection of new water lines prior to connection to City water distribution system. Normally, each valved section of water line requires two each 3/4-inch taps. A 2-inch minimum blow-off is required for water lines up to and including 6-inch diameter.

B. Use fire hydrants as blow-offs to flush newly constructed water lines 8 inch diameters and above. Where fire hydrants are not available on water lines, install temporary blow-off valves and remove promptly upon successful completion of disinfection and testing.

C. Slowly fill each section of pipe with water in manner approved by Project Manager. Average water velocity when filling pipeline should be less than one foot per second and shall not, under any circumstance, exceed 2 feet per second. Before beginning disinfection operations, expel air from pipeline.

D. Backfill excavations immediately after installation of risers or blow-offs.

E. Install blow-off valves at end of water line to facilitate flushing of dead-end water lines. Install permanent blow-off valves according to drawings.

3.03 DISINFECTION BY CITY PERSONNEL

A. Correct problems that may prevent disinfection operations prior to advising Project Manager to perform disinfection work. When disinfection work cannot be performed due to covered up valves, missing valve stacks, inoperative fire hydrants or other nonconforming construction, charge will be levied against Contractor for each trip made by City personnel.

B. Notify and coordinate with Project Manager minimum of 72 hours before disinfection work is to be performed. Assist City personnel during disinfection operations.

3.04 DISINFECTION BY CONTRACTOR

A. The following procedure will be used when disinfection by Contractor is required by Contract Documents:

1. Use not less than 100 parts of chlorine per million parts of water.

2. Introduce chlorinating material to water lines in accordance with AWWA C 651.

3. After contact period of not less than 24 hours, flush system with clean water until residual chlorine is no greater than 1.0 parts per million parts of water.

4. Open and close valves in lines being sterilized several times during contact period.

5. If chemical compound is used for sterilizing agent, place in pipes as directed by Project Manager.

3.03 BACTERIOLOGICAL TESTING

A. After disinfection and flushing of water lines, bacteriological tests will be performed by City or testing laboratory in accordance with Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services. When test results indicate need for additional disinfection of water lines based upon Texas Department of Health requirements, assist City with additional disinfection operations.

3.06 COMPLETION

A. Upon completion of disinfection and testing, remove risers except those approved for use in subsequent hydrostatic testing, and backfill excavation promptly.

END OF SECTION

Section 02515

HYDROSTATIC TESTING OF PIPELINES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Field hydrostatic testing of newly installed water pipelines.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No payment will be made for hydrostatic testing of pipelines under this Section. Include cost in unit price of pipelines being tested.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S - Not Used

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Disinfect water system pipelines prior to hydrostatic testing.

B. Hydrostatically test newly installed water pipelines after disinfection, when required, and before connecting to City water distribution system.

C. Water for testing will be charged to Contractor in accordance with City Ordinances. Prior to hydrostatic testing, obtain a transient meter from the City Deposit is required for transient meter.

D. Test pipelines in lengths between valves, or plugs, of not more than 4,000 feet.

E. Conduct hydrostatic tests in presence of Project Manager.

3.02 TEST PROCEDURES

A. Furnish, install, and operate connections, pump, meter and gages necessary for hydrostatic testing.

B. Allow pipeline to sit minimum of 24 hours from time it is initially disinfected until testing begins, to allow pipe wall or lining material to absorb water. Periods of up to 7 days may be required for mortar lining to become saturated.

C. For small diameter pipelines, expel air and apply minimum test pressure of 125 psi. For large diameter water lines, expel air and apply minimum test pressure of 150 psi.

D. Begin test by 9:00 a.m. unless otherwise approved by Project Manager. Maintain test pressure for 8 hours. When large quantity of water is required to maintain pressure during test, discontinue testing until cause of water loss is identified and corrected.

E. Keep valves inside pressure reducing stations closed during hydrostatic pressure test.

3.03 ALLOWABLE LEAKAGE FOR WATERLINES

A. During hydrostatic tests, no leakage will be allowed for sections of water lines consisting of welded joints.

B. Maximum allowable leakage for water lines with rubber gasketed joints: 3.19 gallons per inch nominal diameter per mile of pipe per 24 hours while testing.

C. For meter run installation, when work cannot be isolated and line fails pressure test, visual inspection of work by Project Manager for leakage during pressure test may be used to fulfill requirements of this section.

3.04 CORRECTION FOR FAILED TESTS

A. Repair joints showing visible leaks on surface regardless of total leakage shown on test. Check valves and fittings to ensure that no leakage occurs that could affect or invalidate test. Remove cracked or defective pipes, fittings, and valves discovered during pressure test and replace with new items.

B. Project Manager may require failed lines to be disinfected after repair and prior to retesting. Conduct and pay for subsequent disinfection operations in accordance with requirements of Section 02514 - Disinfection of Water Lines. Pay for water required for additional disinfection and retesting.

C. Repeat test until satisfactory results are obtained.

3.05 COMPLETION

A. Upon satisfactory completion of testing, remove risers remaining from disinfection and hydrostatic testing, and backfill excavation promptly.

END OF SECTION

Section 02516

CUT, PLUG AND ABANDONMENT OF WATER LINES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Cut, plug and abandonment of water lines.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for cut, plug, and abandonment of water lines is on a unit price basis for each cut, plug, and abandonment performed. Separate payment will be made for each size of water line.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit product data for proposed plugs and clamps for approval.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Concrete for reaction blocks: Class B conforming to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

B. Plugs and clamps: Applicable for type of pipe to be plugged.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 APPLICATION

A. Do not begin cut, plug and abandonment operations until replacement water line has been constructed, disinfected, and tested, and service lines have been transferred to replacement water line.

B. Install plug, clamp, and concrete reaction block and make cut at location shown on Drawings.

C. Main to be abandoned shall not be valved off and shall not be cut or plugged other than at supply water line or as shown on Drawings.

D. After water line to be abandoned has been cut and plugged, check for other sources feeding abandoned water line. When sources are found, notify Project Manager immediately. Cut and plug abandoned water line at point of other feed as directed by Project Manager.

E. Plug or cap ends or openings in abandoned water line in manner approved by Project Manager.

F. Remove and dispose of surface identifications such as valve boxes and fire hydrants. Valve boxes in improved streets, other than shell, may be filled with concrete after removing cap.

G. Backfill excavations in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

H. Repair street surfaces in accordance with Section 02951- Pavement Repair and Resurfacing.

END OF SECTION

Section 02517

WATER LINE IN TUNNELS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Handling, transporting, and installing water line in primary liner tunnels, including invert cleanup and blocking and water line in casings that will be backfilled with concrete or grout.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment of water line installed by tunneling is by linear foot along center line of completed water line as designated on Drawings.

2. Payment for installation of water line in tunnel constructed according to Section 02425 - Tunnel Excavation and Primary Liner will be authorized by Project Manager in three parts. Pay estimates for partial payments will be made as measured above according to following schedule:

   a. 60 percent of installation will be authorized when excavation and primary liner installation is complete.

   b. 95 percent of installation will be authorized when water line installation and grouting is complete.

   c. 100 percent of installation will be authorized when section successfully hydrostatically tested.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work is in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASME B 40.1 - Pressure Gauge and Gauge Attachments.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit work plan including following information in accordance with Section 01330 - Submittals.

1. Method of transporting pipes into tunnel.

2. Method of hoisting and positioning pipe in tunnel.

3. Method of jointing and aligning pipe.

4. Method of supporting and blocking pipe.

5. Tunnel ventilation while setting pipe and completing joints, when applicable

.

6. Material, equipment and procedures for grout placement and other information required by Section 02431 - Tunnel Grout.

B. Submit results of tunnel primary liner survey in accordance with Paragraph 3.02, Tunnel Survey.

C. Submit results of installed water line survey in accordance with Paragraph 3.10, As-built Survey and Installation Tolerances.

1.05 PROCEDURES

A. Joints: Prepare joints as recommended by pipe manufacturer and in accordance with Section 02511 - Water Lines.

B. Handling: Handle, store, and transport pipe in accordance with pipe manufacturer's recommendations and to prevent damage to pipe ends, pipe barrel, steel reinforcement, and pipe protective linings.

C. Grouting: Perform grouting of annular space between water line and tunnel liner to fill voids with grout, without dislocating or damaging pipe.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 ANNULAR GROUT

A. Specified in Section 02431 - Tunnel Grout

2.02 CONCRETE

A. Meeting requirement of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction, Class B concrete.

2.03 PIPE MATERIAL AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacture and deliver pipe material and fittings as described in Section 02511 - Water Lines.

2.04 SPACERS

A. Unless otherwise noted on Drawings, use casing spacers between water line and casing tunnel liner for water lines less than 36 inches in diameter. Refer to Paragraph 3.01 for exception. See Section 02447 - Augering Pipe for Water lines for spacer requirements and installation.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 APPLICATION

A. Grout in place tunnels for water lines with diameters of 36 inches or greater. When tunnel liner plate is used, grout water line in place regardless of water line diameter.

3.02 TUNNEL SURVEY

A. Prior to installing water line in tunnel: Perform survey of tunnel in accordance with Paragraph 3.10B. Verify tunnel has been constructed within specified tolerances for line, grade, and roundness and water line to be placed in tunnel can be placed in conformance with tolerances specified. Should misalignment of tunnel preclude proper installation of water line, notify Project Manager of proposed correction method. Project Manager will make final decision on acceptability of correction.

3.03 PIPE TRANSPORT

A. Transport pipe in tunnel for final placement so that no damage occurs to pipe ends or pipe barrel and interior lining or exterior coating. Repair pipe damaged during transport or final placement in tunnel in manner acceptable to Project Manager prior to joining. Remove damaged pipe from tunnel and replace, when directed by Project Manager, at no additional cost to City.

3.04 TUNNEL CLEANUP

A. Remove temporary tunnel utilities, loose material, dirt, and debris prior to pipe placement. Broom clean concrete invert. Control seepage and remove standing water in invert.

B. Temporary construction tracks or pipe skids may be left in place when they do not interfere with alignment of water line, short circuit cathodic protection system, or interfere with final placement of annular grout.

3.05 INVERT PIPE SUPPORT

A. Construct invert pipe support of screeded concrete, steel beam, or other method, as approved, to final grade of outside of water line. Secure invert support to primary liner to prevent movement. Cure concrete support minimum of 48 hours prior to setting pipe. Maintain minimum of 4 inches clearance between outside of water line and steel beam or steel member.

3.06 JOINING PIPE IN TUNNELS

A. Lay pipe in accordance with pipe manufacturer's recommendations, and as specified in this Section. Join pipe segments so as to properly compress gaskets and allow for correct final positioning of pipe for line and grade. Closely align pipe and bring loosely together by means of hydraulic jacks, locomotives, pipe mobiles, or winches. Once pipes have been loosely joined, pull home by means of hydraulic tugger or other similar methods suitably protecting pipe and joints against damage. Impact joining, such as ramming with locomotives or other mechanical equipment, is not permitted.

3.07 BLOCKING PIPE IN TUNNEL AND BULKHEADS

A. Develop and submit pipe blocking system that will prevent water line from floating and deforming beyond specified limits. Loads imposed on pipe, primary liner and surrounding soil during grouting shall be determined by Registered Professional Engineer in State of Texas. Show essential details in plan for supporting system. Position water line in tunnel to allow minimum of 4 inches of grout to be placed between water line and tunnel primary liner or casing.

B. Prevent pipe from floating during backfill operations by properly installed blocking. Remove and replace segment of pipe which is distorted or moved from final line and grade.

C. Secure blocking in place so that it cannot be dislodged during adjacent pipe laying and during grouting operations.

D. Construct bulkheads of material, compatible with grout, to withstand imposed grout pressure without leakage. Provide bulkheads at frequency to allow completion of grouting in continuous operation and to permit timely removal of pipe and grout which may be needed as result of pipe distortion or movement. Modifications to bulkhead spacing will be reviewed by Project Manager. Provide adequate venting for bulkheads.

3.08 ANNULAR GROUT

A. Fill annular void between water line and tunnel primary liner or casing with grout, in accordance with Section 02431 - Tunnel Grout.

B. Test annular grout material, equipment, and procedures in accordance with approved submittal. Perform test on first 200 feet of water line to be backfilled. When grout does not totally fill annular space or other problems occur, correct defects in first test section and adjust method or mix and rerun test on next 200 feet. Repeat procedure as necessary.

C. Placement:

1. Placement Limits: Predetermine limits of each grout placement stage by size and capacity of batching equipment and initial set time of proposed grout. Under no circumstances shall placement at grout port continue longer than period of time for mix to take initial set. Locate grout hole spacing and locations according to number of stages necessary to backfill tunnel liner. Do not install another lift until proper set has been attained. Placement procedures shall be approved by admixture or additive manufacturers.

2. Equipment - Pumps: Pumping equipment must be of sufficient size and capacity to place grout to distances and volumes compatible with batching and mixing equipment. Maintain equipment and clean thoroughly each day. No hydrocarbons shall enter pumping chamber. Under no circumstances shall grout be pumped in excess of 1000 linear feet without prior approval by Project Manager. Pumping test and verification testing of resulting grout quality will be required for approval.

3. Slickline: Convey grout to point of placement in clean steel or rubber hoses designed to handle safely pump pressure and volumes during placement. Do not allow hardened grout or concrete to obstruct or coat steel pipe or hose internally.

4. Grout Connections: Grout connections shall be sized minimum of 2-inch inside diameter, consisting of grout hose attached immediately to pressure gauge. Gauged pumping pressure shall not exceed water line manufacturer's recommendations. Monitor grout pressure.

5. Gauges:

a. Type: Instrument oil-filled and attached to saddle-type diaphragm seal (gauge saver) to prevent clogging with grout.

b. Calibration: Certified and calibrated in accordance with ASME B 40.1.

c. Range: Not more than 100 percent greater than design grout pressure.

d. Accuracy: No more than one-half percent error over full range of gauge.

e. Fitting: Attach gauge to valve immediately attached to grout port in tunnel liner. Provide T-fitting in injection line for sampling.

6. Limit pressure on annular space to prevent damage to pipe or liner. Define limiting and estimated required pressure range. Provide and monitor open ended, high point tap or equivalent vent at bulkhead opposite point of grouting.

7. Pump grout until grout within 5 percent of specified density discharges from end opposite injection point to ensure grout is not diluted by extraneous water in annulus.

8. Drilling of access holes from surface to facilitate grouting shall not be allowed.

9. Communication: There shall be constant communications via telephone between headerman at point of injection and pump, batch plant, and supervisor. Under no circumstance shall grouting continue without continuity of communications.

10. The headerman at point of placement shall advise batch plant of variations of density and make corrections as necessary. Record and submit to Project Manager for each days pour variations and corrections.

D. Delay grouting until all significant differential movement has stopped as determined by monitoring.

E. Remove bulkheads unless constructed of masonry.

F. Repair or replace damage or distortion to water line.

3.09 GROUTING JOINTS

A. Materials and procedures for filling interior joint recesses shall conform to Section 02511 - Water Lines.

3.10 AS-BUILT SURVEY AND INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Perform as-built survey on installed water line. Determine horizontal and vertical location for invert of each pipe joint.

B. Acceptable tolerances: Within plus or minus 3 inches of horizontal alignment, within plus or minus 2 inches of vertical alignment.

C. Correct pipe section outside acceptable tolerances.

3.11 FINAL CLEANUP

A. Clean interior to pipe after interior work is completed. Remove loose material, dirt, and debris from completed pipeline. After completion of work inside pipe, prevent dirt, water, and other debris from entering until water line work is completed.

END OF SECTION

Section 02518

STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS FOR LARGE DIAMETER WATER LINES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Large diameter (24 inches and greater) steel pipe and fittings for water lines and pumping facilities.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No payment will be made for steel pipe and fittings under this Section. Include cost in unit price for water lines, pumping facilities, and encasement sleeves.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AASHTO - Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges.

B. AREMA - Manual for Railway Engineering, Volume II, Chapter 15.

C. ASTM A 36 - Standard Specification for Structural Steel.

D. ASTM A 53 - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless.

E. ASTM A 135 - Standard Specification for Electric-Resistance-Welded Steel Pipe.

F. ASTM A 139 - Standard Specification for Electric-Fusion (ARC) - Welded Steel Pipe (NPS 4 and Over).

G. ASTM A 570 - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Carbon, Hot-Rolled, Structural Quality.

H. ASTM C 33 - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates.

I. ASTM C 35 - Standard Specification for Inorganic Aggregates for Use in Gypsum Plaster.

J. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.

K. ASTM C 494 - Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.

L. ASTM C 595 - Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements.

M. ASTM C 881 - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Resin-Base Bonding Systems for Concrete.

N. ASTM C 1107 - Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink).

O. ASTM D 512 - Standard Test Methods for Chloride Ion in Water.

P. ASTM D 1293 - Standard Test Methods for pH of Water.

Q. ASTM D 3363 - Standard Test Method for Film Hardness by Pencil Test.

R. ASTM D 4541 - Standard Test Method for Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable Adhesion Tests.

S. ASTM D 4752 - Standard Test Method for Measuring MEK Resistance of Ethyl Silicate (Inorganic) Zinc-Rich Primers by Solvent Rub.

T. AWWA C 200 - Steel Water Pipe 6 in. and Larger.

U. AWWA C 205 - Cement-Mortar Protective Lining and Coating for Steel Water Pipe.

V. AWWA C 206 - Standard for Field Welding of Steel Water Pipe.

W. AWWA C 207 - Standard for Steel Pipe Flanges for Waterworks Service - Sizes 4 in. through 144 in.

X. AWWA C 208 - Dimensions for Fabricated Steel Water Pipe Fittings; Addendum C 208A.

Y. AWWA C 209 - Cold-Applied Tape Coatings for the Exterior of Special Sections, Connections and Fittings for Steel Water Pipelines.

Z. AWWA C 210 - Liquid Epoxy Coating Systems for the Interior and Exterior of Steel Water Pipelines.

AA. AWWA C 214 - Tape Coating Systems for the Exterior of Steel Water Pipelines.

BB. AWWA C 602 - Cement-Mortar Lining of Water Pipelines - 4 In. (100 mm) and Larger - In Place.

CC. AWWA M 11 - Steel Pipe-A Guide for Design and Installation.

DD. SSPC Good Painting Practice, Volume 1.

EE. SSPC SP 1 - Surface Preparation Specification No. 1 Solvent Cleaning.

FF. SSPC SP 5 - Joint Surface Preparation Standard White Blast Cleaning.

GG. SSPC SP 6 - Surface Preparation Specification No. 6 Commercial Blast Cleaning.

HH. SSPC SP 10 - Surface Preparation Specification No. 10 Near-White Blast Cleaning.

II. SSPC VIS 1 - Visual Standard for Abrasive Blast Cleaned Steel.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit shop drawings signed and sealed by Professional Engineer registered in State of Texas showing following:

1. Manufacturer's pipe design calculations.

2. Provide lay schedule of pictorial nature indicating alignment and grade, laying dimensions, welding procedures, fabrication, fitting, flange, and special details, with plan view of each pipe segment sketched, detailing pipe invert elevations, horizontal bends, welded joints, and other critical features. Indicate station numbers for pipe and fittings corresponding to Drawings. Do not start production of pipe and fittings prior to review and approval by Project Manager. Provide final approved lay schedule on CD-ROM in Adobe portable document format (*.PDF).

3. Include hot tapping procedure.

4. Submit certification from manufacturer that design was performed for project in accordance with requirements of this section. Certification to be signed and sealed by professional Engineer registered in State of Texas.

C. Submit manufacturer's certifications that pipe and fittings have been hydrostatically tested at factory in accordance with AWWA C 200, Section 3.4.

D. Submit certification from NACE Certified Coatings Inspector, under supervision of inspector having Level III certification for coatings and linings, that steel pipe furnished on project was properly inspected and defective coatings detected properly repaired.

E. Submit inspection procedures to be used by manufacturer and for quality control and assurance for materials and welding. Submit at least 30 days prior to repair work, procedures that describe in details shop and field work to be preformed. Repair defects such as substandard welds, excessive radial offsets (misalignment), pitting, gouges, cracks, etc.

F. Submit following for nonshrink grout for special applications:

1. Manufacturer's technical literature including specifications for mixing, placing, and curing grout.

2. Results of tests performed by certified independent testing laboratory showing conformance to ASTM C 1107, Nonshrink Grout and requirements of this specification.

3. Certification product is suitable for use in contact with potable water.

G. Submit proof of certification for welders. Indicate certified procedures and position each welder is qualified to perform. Ensure welder and welding operator have been certified within past 6 months in accordance with AWWA C206.

H. Within 45 calendar days after manufacturing of all pipe, submit affidavit of compliance that materials and work furnished comply with applicable requirements of referenced standards and these specifications. Make available copy of physical and chemical testing reports.

I. Within 45 days of manufacturing of all pipe, submit manufacturer's affidavits that coatings and linings comply with applicable requirements of this Section and:

1. Polyurethane coatings were applied in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation and allowed to cure at temperature 5 degrees above dew point.

2. Mortar coatings and linings were applied and allowed to cure at temperature above 32 degrees F.

3. Test Results

a. Compressive strength (7 and 28 day) test results for mortar coating.

b. Hydrostatic testing, magnetic particle and x-ray weld test reports as required

J. Prior to start of field-applied cement mortar lining operation, submit comprehensive plan which identifies and describes as minimum:

1. Equipment used for batching, weighing, mixing transporting and placing mortar.

2. Qualifications and specific experience of machine operators.

3. Source and type of cement, pozzolan, sand and admixtures used and certifications from suppliers that materials meet specifications.

4. Mix proportions to be used and slump limits (max. and min.).

5. A quality control plan which identifies quality control material tests and documented inspections necessary to ensure compliance with specified requirements.

K. Submit certification showing calibration within last 12 months for equipment such as scales, measuring devices, and calibration tools used in manufacture of pipe. Each device used in manufacture of pipe is required to have tag recording date of last calibration. Devices are subject to inspection by Project Manager.

1.05 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer to provide permanent quality control department and laboratory facility capable of performing inspections and testing as required by specifications. Material testing, inspection procedures, and manufacturing process are subject to inspection by Project Manager. Perform manufacturer's tests and inspections required by referenced standards and these specifications, including the following. Correct nonconforming conditions.

1. Steel Plate and Coils: Review mill certifications for conformance to requirements of specifications; perform physical and chemical testing of each heat of steel for conformance to applicable ASTM standards.

2. Pipe:

a. Inspect thickness, circumference, roundness, strength and size of seam welds (spiral or longitudinal), and squareness of pipe ends to verify compliance with AWWA C200.

b. Inspect physical dimensions and overall conditions of all joints for compliance with AWWA C200, approved submittals, and Specifications.

c. Hydrostatically test finished pipe section to 75 percent of specified minimum yield strength of steel being used with zero leakage.

d. For wall thickness greater than 1/2-inch perform Charpy V-Notch (CVN) Test in accordance with AWWA C200.

3. Linings:

   a. Inspect unlined pipe for overall condition of inside barrel. Maintain inside barrel free of corrosive products, oil, grease, dirt, chemical, and deleterious material.

   b. Inspect lined pipe for physical dimensions and overall condition of lining, visible surface defects, thickness of lining, and adhesion to steel surface.

   c. Review certifications by manufacturers of lining components for conformance to AWWA standards and these Specifications.

4. Coatings: Measure temperature and dew point of ambient air before applying coatings. Inspect physical dimensions and overall condition of coatings. Inspect for visible surface defects, thickness, and adhesion of coating to surface and between layers.

5. Final Inspection:

   a. Before shipment, inspect finished pipe, fittings, specials and accessories for markings, metal, coating thickness, lining thickness (if shop applied), joint dimensions, and roundness.

   b. Inspect for coating placement and defects. Test exterior coating for holidays.

   c. Inspect linings for thickness, pitting, scarring, and adhesion.

B. Shop-applied coatings and linings; provide services of independent coating and lining inspection service or testing laboratory with qualified coating inspectors. Perform inspection by NACE trained inspectors under supervision of NACE Level III Certified Coatings Inspector.

C. Ensure workmen engaged in manufacturing are qualified and experienced in performance of their specific duties.

D. Cast four standard test cylinders each day for each 50-cubic yards of mortar coating or portion thereof for each coating and lining placed in a day. Perform compressive strength test at 28 days. No cylinder test result will be less than 80 percent of specified strength.

E. Dented steel cylinders will result in rejection of pipe.

F. Make available copy of physical and chemical testing reports for steel cylinders and provide reports at request of Project Manager.

G. Check physical dimensions of pipe and fittings. Physical dimensions to include at least pipe lengths, pipe I.D., pipe O.D. and bend angles.

1.06 INSPECTION

A. Project Manager may witness manufacture and fabrication of pipe and appurtenances. Independent testing laboratory under contract to Project Manager may perform tests at direction of Project Manager to verify compliance with these specifications. Provide assistance to accomplish such testing, including equipment and personnel, at no additional cost to City.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 STEEL PIPE

A. Furnish pipe by same manufacturer.

B. Furnish pipe smaller than 24 inch in accordance with Section 02502 - Steel Pipe and Fittings.

C. Fabricate and supply miscellaneous steel pipe and fittings with nominal diameter of 24 inches and larger in accordance with AWWA C200, C207, C208 and AWWA M11 except as modified herein. Steel to be minimum of ASTM A 36, ASTM A 570 Grade 36, ASTM A 53 Grade B, ASTM A 135 Grade B, or ASTM A 139 Grade B.

D. Provide pipe sections in lengths no greater than 40 feet and no less than 10 feet except as required for special fittings or closure sections.

E. Provide shop-coated and shop-lined steel pipe with minimum of one coat of shop-applied primer approved for use in potable water transmission on all exposed steel surfaces. Primer for tape-coated steel pipe to be used for field-applied coatings shall have no less than 5 percent solids. Provide primer compatible with coating system and in accordance with coating manufacturer's recommendations.

F. Provide closure sections and short sections of steel pipe not less than 4 feet in length unless indicated on Drawings or specifically permitted by Project Manager.

G. Square flanges with pipe with bolt holes straddling both horizontal and vertical axis. Provide 1/2 -inch gap between pipe ends to be coupled with sleeve coupling unless otherwise indicated on Drawings
   1. Provide standard ring or hub type flanges, conforming to AWWA C207, Class D.
   2. Apply Densco petroleum-based tape or approved equal to exposed portions of nuts and bolts.

H. Pipe Design Conditions:

1. Design: Design pipe and fittings to withstand most critical simultaneous application of external loads and internal pressures. Base design on minimum of AASHTO HS-20 loading, AREMA E-80 loads and depths of bury as indicated on Drawings. Design pipes with Marston's earth loads for transition width trench for all heights of cover.

2. Groundwater Level: Design for most critical ground water level condition,

3. Working pressure = 100 psi.

4. Hydrostatic field test pressure = 150 psi.

5. Maximum pressure due to surge = 150 psi.

6. Minimum pressure due to surge = -5 psi.

7. Modulus of elasticity (E) = 30,000,000 psi.

8. Maximum deflection from specified diameter: Two percent for mortar coating; three percent for flexible coatings and three percent for mortar lining.

9. Design stress due to working pressure to be no greater than 50 percent of minimum yield, and stress not to exceed 16,500 psi for mortar coated pipe.

10. Design stress due to maximum hydraulic surge pressure to be no greater than 75 percent of minimum yield, and stress not to exceed 24,750 psi for mortar coated pipe.

11. Modulus of soil reaction (E') < 1500 psi. If E' > 1000 psi, do not use silty sand (SM) for embedment.

12. Unit weight of fill (w) > 120 pcf.

13. Deflection lag factor (D1) = 1.2.

14. Bedding constant (K) = 0.1.

15. Fully saturated soil conditions: hw = h = depth of cover above top of pipe.

16. Do not allow diameter (D) over thickness (t) ratio to be greater than 230.

17. Provide minimum inside clear diameter for tunnel liners or casing in accordance with Section 02425LD- Tunnel Excavation and Primary Liner.

18. Exclude structural benefits associated with primary liner in design of pipe in tunnel installations.

a. Design pipe and joints to carry loads including overburden and lateral earth pressures, subsurface soil and water loads, grouting, other conditions of service, thrust of jacks, and stresses anticipated during handling and construction loads during installation of pipe.

b. Do not use internal removable stiffeners for pipe in tunnel, unless approved by Project Manager.

c. External welded steel stiffeners will be permitted in design calculations for steel pipe, provided wall thickness is minimum of 1/2 inch. Minimum clearances specified between exterior pipe wall and tunnel liner applies to distance between outside diameter of external welded stiffener and tunnel liner.

19. Nominal Allowable Steel-wall Thickness for Water Lines: Provide in accordance with following table for HS-20 live loads and depths of cover of up to 16 feet. Net internal diameter (including inside linings) to be no less than net inside diameter listed. Contractor to review design for conditions more extreme than those indicated by this specification and design accordingly. If, in opinion of Project Manager, proposed pipe wall thicknesses appear inadequate for indicated loading conditions, submittal of design calculations will be required for review. Pipe wall not to be less than that defined in following table.

Net Inside Diameter (Inches)	**Minimum Wall Thickness (Inches)**	
	Flexible Coating	**Mortar Coating**
96	0.484	0.464
90	0.454	0.430
84	0.423	0.395
78	0.393	0.359
72	0.362	0.320
66	0.333	0.295
60	0.301	0.268
54	0.271	0.250
48	0.235	0.215
42	0.207	0.189
36	0.178	0.163
30	0.149	0.136
24	0.149	0.136

I. Fittings for Water Lines: Fabricate in accordance with AWWA M11, Section 13.3-13.7, and AWWA C208.

1. Wall Thickness: Equal to or greater than pipe to which fitting is to be welded.

2. Elbows: 2-piece for 0 degrees to 22-1/2 degrees; 3-piece for 23 degrees to 45 degrees; 4-piece for 46 degrees to 67-1/2 degrees; and 5-piece for 68 degrees to 90 degrees, unless otherwise shown on Drawings.

3. Outlets: Reinforced in accordance with AWWA M11, Sections 13.3-13.7, AWWA C200, and AWWA C208. Provide interior lining and exterior coating in accordance with paragraphs on coating and lining and matching pipe to access inlets, service outlets, test inlets, and air-vacuum valve and other outlets, including riser pipes.

4. Radius: Minimum radius of two and one-half times pipe diameter.

5. Butt Straps for Closure Piece: Minimum 12-inch-wide split butt strap; minimum plate thickness equal to thinnest member being joined; fabricated from material equal in chemical and physical properties to thinnest member being joined. Provide minimum lap of 4 inches between member being joined and edge of butt strap, welded on both inside and outside, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager. Provide minimum 6-inch welded outlet for inspecting each closure section, unless access manway is within 40 feet of closure section.

6. Joints are to be double-welded and butt or lap joints as shown on drawings. Use flanged joints at valves.

7. Provide double-welded lap field joints or full penetration butt-welded joints for tee fitting supported on pier foundation, aboveground piping and field welds for risers including vertical portion of crossover piping.

J. Joints:

1. Standard field joint for steel pipe: AWWA C206. Rubber gasket Carnegie shape joint or rolled-groove rubber gasket and O-ring joint, 66-inch maximum diameter. Joints may be lap-welded slip type in accordance with AWWA C206, except where flanged joints or butt strap joints are required.

2. Provide double-welded butt joints at aerial crossings and where noted on Drawings.

3. Pipe Manufacturer: Minimum of 5 years of successful service with proposed field joint or submit results from joint tests determined by Project Manager. Tests which may be required include tensile strength or yield tests of base material and spiral

welded sections (API 5L), flattening tests, chemical analysis, impact and hardness tests. Project Manager's decision as to acceptability of joint is final.

4. Capable of withstanding jacking forces.

5. Design restrained joints for test pressure or maximum surge pressure as specified, whichever is greater. Only minimum restrained joint lengths for prestressed concrete cylinder pipe are shown on Drawings.

6. Provide full circumferential welds at joints required to be welded.

7. Use wire and flux from same manufacturer throughout entire project.

8. Rubber Gasketed Bell-and-Spigot Joints.

   a. Bells: Formed by either expansion of pipe end, or by segmental expander which stretches steel past its elastic limit, or by attaching sized weld-on bell rings. Spigot ends: Sized prior to rolling gasket groove. Joints: Interchangeable and match up during installation, even if used out of sequence. Weld-on bell rings: AWWA M11; AWWA C200; attached with single or double, full thickness fillet welds (double weld in areas of thrust restraint).

   b. Provide bells and spigots with dimensions and tolerances in accordance with AWWA C200, as modified herein. Difference in diameter between I.D. of bell and O.D. of spigot shoulder at point of full engagement with allowable deflection range of 0.00 inch to 0.04 inch as measured on circumference with diameter tape. Minimum thickness of completed bell ring is equal to thickness of pipe wall in barrel of pipe between joint ends.

   c. Furnish joint suitable for safe working pressure equal to class of pipe and will operate satisfactorily with deflection, tangent of which is not to exceed 0.75 inch/D where D is outside diameter of pipe in inches or with pull-out of 3/4 inch.

   d. Design clearance between bells and gasketed spigots so, when joint is assembled, it will be self-centered and gasket will be restrained or confined to annular space in such manner that movement of pipe or hydrostatic pressure cannot displace it. Compression of gasket when joint is completed will not be dependent upon water pressure in pipe and will provide watertight joints under operating conditions when properly installed.

K. Manufacturer must maintain on site or in plant enough fittings to satisfy the following requirements:

Line Diameter	Required Bends*
20 and 24 inches	Four 45 degree bends per 5,000 LF of water line
> 24 inches	Four 22.5 degree bends per 10,000 LF of water line
*Based on total length of contract (minimum of four). Any combination of bends may be substituted at manufacturer's option (i.e. two 22.5 degree bends are equivalent to one 45 degree bend) and will be counted as one fitting.	

L. Manufacturer must be capable of delivering bends to job site within 12 hours of notification. Use fittings at direction of Project Manager where unforeseen obstacles are encountered during construction. These fittings are in addition to fittings called out on Drawings and must be available at all times. Use same product throughout entire project.

M. Perform x-ray or ultrasonic testing of manual welds on special pipe and fittings.

N. Hydrostatic Test of Pipe:

1. AWWA C200, Section 3.5.3, at point of manufacture. Hold test for minimum 2 minutes and conduct thorough inspection of pipe. Repair or reject pipe revealing leaks or cracks.

2. Calibrate pressure gauges within one year prior to testing as specified in Section 1.04 L.

O. Provide forged steel threaded outlets of approved design where required for use in passing hose or lead wires into pipe. Tap plugs with standard pipe threads and weld to pipe in approved manner and use solid forged steel plugs for closure.

P. Flanges:

1. Fabricate flanges with oversize bolt holes, with flanges drilled in pairs, to accommodate insulating sleeves.

2. Test, coat, line and ship each shop-assembled insulated flange assembly to field as fitting. Use no less than two snug-fitting alignment pins to assist in aligning flanges during assembly. Do not remove pins until bolts have been installed in all remaining holes and have been drawn up tight. After insulating joints have been assembled, subject each assembly (fitting) to shop hydrostatic test pressure of 150 psi and electrically test to ensure that insulated sections are effective. After assembly has been tested, coat insulating joint and adjacent steel pipe as specified for below-ground installation. Line assembly as specified for interior surfaces and in accordance with details shown on Drawings.

Q. Dished Head Plugs: Design dished head plugs (test plugs) to withstand field hydrostatic test pressure from either side of plug. Design stress due to hydrostatic pressure to be no greater than 50 percent of minimum yield. Pipe on opposite side of hydrostatic test may or may not contain water. Manufacturer of the steel pipe to hydrostatically test plug at factory.

R. Make curves and bends by deflecting joints, or by using beveled joints, or by combination of two methods, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings or permitted by Project Manager. Do not exceed deflection angle at joint as recommended by pipe manufacturer. Make penetration of spigot into bell at all points of circumference at least equal to minimum required penetration shown on Drawings. Beveled pipe sections used in curved alignment to be of standard length except when shorter sections are required to limit radius of curvature, in which case all sections throughout curve are to be of equal length. Do not allow bevel to exceed 5 degrees.

2.02 INTERNAL LINING SYSTEMS FOR STEEL PIPE, ALL INSTALLATIONS

A. Supply steel pipe with either epoxy lining or cement-mortar lining, capable of conveying water at temperatures not greater than 140 degrees F. Provide linings conforming to American National Standards Institute/National Sanitation Foundation (ANSI/NFS) Standard 61, and certification to be from organization accredited by ANSI. Unless otherwise noted, coat all exposed (wetted) steel parts of flanges, blind flanges, bolts, access manhole covers, with epoxy lining, as specified.

B. Epoxy Lining:

1. AWWA C210, color White, or approved equal for shop and field joint applied, except as modified in this Section. Provide materials from same manufacturer.

a. Protect interior surface with approved liquid two-part chemically cured epoxy primer specified for interior surfaces.

Surface Preparation	SSPC-SP5 White Blast Clean 2.0 to 3.0 mils surface profile.
Prime Coat 4.0 to 6.0 mils DFT	NSF Certified Epoxy - Buff, or approved equal
Intermediate Coat 4.0 to 6.0 mils DFT	NSF Certified Epoxy - Buff, or approved equal
Finish Coat 4.0 to 6.0 mils DFT	NSF Certified Epoxy - White, or approved equal

2. Total allowable dry film thickness for system:

   a. Minimum: 12.0 mils.

   b. Maximum: 18.0 mils.

3. Provide dry film thicknesses for approved alternate products in accordance with product's manufacturer recommendations.

4. Lining system may consist of three or more coats of same approved alternate epoxy lining without use of separate primer.

5. Perform adhesion test on pipe 48 inches in diameter and larger in accordance with ASTM D 4541. Minimum field adhesion: 700 psi. Perform test on pipe for project at frequency of one for every 1000 square feet of epoxy lining. Perform cure test in accordance with ASTM D 4752 (solvent rub test) and ASTM D 3363 (pencil hardness) for each section of pipe. Repair tested areas with approved procedures.

C. Shop-applied Cement-mortar Lining:

1. AWWA C205; except as specified herein: 1/2-inch minimum thickness for pipe diameters 42 inches and larger; 3/8-inch minimum thickness for pipe diameters 36 inches and smaller. Cut back lining from joint ends no more than 2 inches to facilitate joining and welding of pipe.

2. Apply cement-mortar lining to inside of pipe by centrifugally spinning. For special sections (shape of which precludes application by spinning method) accomplish by mechanical placement or pneumatic placement and finish to produce smooth, dense surface comparable to centrifugally spinning.

3. Use galvanized wire mesh when shop-applied mortar is not applied by machine. Do not extend wire mesh across welded portion of mitered fittings. Crimp mesh to provide integral "chair" so wire does not fully rest against steel cylinder.

4. Make repairs of cement-mortar lining for widths exceeding 6 inches by bonding to steel and adjacent faces of lining with bonding agent conforming to ASTM C 881, Type II.

5. Restrict usage of sprinkler heads during moist curing to prevent over spraying onto lining. No alternative curing methods are allowed as described in Section 4.4.7.4 of AWWA C205.

6. Satisfy Project Manager that above requirements can be accomplished by manufacturer prior to shipment of pipe.

D. Field-applied Cement-mortar Lining (for pipe ≥ 48 inches in diameter): Provide field-applied internal cement-mortar linings in accordance with AWWA C602, latest edition, except as modified in this Section.

1. Lining: Applied in one-course application of cement-mortar by machine that centrifugally places mortar against wall of pipe and mechanically trowel lining to smooth finish.

2. Steel pipe, fittings, receives cement-mortar lining.

3. Cement-mortar for lining.

a. Cement-mortar: Dense, smooth, and of uniform quality and consistency to assure efficient machine operation and uniform cement-mortar lining on pipe wall.

b. Water-cement ratio: Kept as low as possible; consistent with proper plasticity for application, allowing slight variations dependent upon temperature, length of haul for mortar, and moisture condition in pipe.

c. Mortar: Mixture of one part cement with not less than one or more than 1-1/2 parts of dry screened sand, by volume. After determining mixture, control materials to within plus or minus 2-1/2 percent by weight throughout entire work.

d. Comply with following materials for cement-mortar:

1) Provide Type II low-alkali Portland cement conforming to ASTM C 150, or Type IP (MS) Portland-Pozzolan cement conforming to ASTM C 595, unless otherwise specified. Conform to low alkali requirements of Table IA of ASTM C 150. Type IP (MS) cement to contain no more than 20 percent Pozzolan, to be inter-ground with clinker.

2) Use suitable facilities approved by Project Manager when available for handling and weighing bulk cement. Otherwise, deliver cement in original unopened sacks that have been filled by manufacturer. Plainly mark sacks with manufacturer's name or brand, cement type lot number and weight. Discard unused cement. Use unopened bags of cement for each new batch.

3) Material storage: Store cement to permit ready access for inspection and sampling. Protect cement and sand against contamination or moisture. Do not use and remove from site cement delivered with

evidence of contamination or otherwise unsuitable. Store admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's directions.

4) Use Portland cement of same brand and type unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

5) Pozzolanic material: AWWA C602, Paragraph 2.2.

6) Sand: AWWA C205, Section 2.3, except gradation of sand to yield fineness modulus of approximately 1.7; having no material coarser than that passing No. 16 sieve. Submit certification for compliance of sand with these specifications at least 10 calendar days before start of lining placement.

7) Water: Clean; free of deleterious amounts of acids, alkalis or organic materials; total dissolved solids less than 1000 mg/l; ASTM D 512 chloride ions less than 100 mg/l for slurry and mortar cure; ASTM D 1293 pH greater than 6.5.

2.03 EXTERNAL COATING SYSTEM FOR STEEL PIPE INSTALLED ABOVEGROUND AND IN VAULTS (EXPOSED)

A. Provide approved 3-coat epoxy/polyurethane coating system as designated below. Provide materials from same manufacturer.

Surface Preparation	SSPC SP 10 Near White Blast Clean 2.0 to 3.0 mils surface profile
Prime Coat 4.0 to 4.0 mils DFT	Inhibitive Epoxy Primer, or approved equal
Intermediate Coat 4.0 to 6.0 mils DFT	Chemical Resistant Epoxy, or approved equal
Finish Coat 1.5 to 2.5 mils DFT	Polyurethane, or approved equal

B. Total Allowable Dry Film Thickness for System:

1. Minimum: 9.5 mils.

2. Maximum: 12.5 mils.

C. Perform adhesion test on pipe 48 inches in diameter and larger in accordance with ASTM D 4541. Minimum field adhesion: 700 psi. Perform test on pipe for project at frequency of one for every 1000 square feet of epoxy lining. Perform cure test in accordance with ASTM D 4752 (solvent rub test) and ASTM D 3363 (pencil hardness) for each section of pipe. Repair tested areas with approved procedures.

2.04 EXTERNAL COATING SYSTEMS FOR BURIED STEEL PIPE

A. Supply pipe with one of the following coatings specified.

1. Tape Coating: Provide approved tape for external tape coating. Apply in accordance with AWWA C214 and requirements of this section; 80-mil.

a. Components: Primer, one 20-mil layer of inner-layer tape for corrosion protection and two 30-mil layers of outer-layer tape for mechanical protection.

b. Where sleeve type or victaulic couplings are required, bond coupling to adjacent pipes with bonding cables as shown on Drawings.

c. Use approved filler putty type insulating putty to fill in gap and create smooth sloped transition between top of reinforcing plate and pipe, before tape coating is applied.

d. Primer: Compatible with tape coating, supplied by coating-system manufacturer.

e. Provide pipe with shop coatings cut back approximately 4 to 4-1/2 inches from joint ends to facilitate joining and welding of pipe. Taper successive tape layers by 1-inch staggers to facilitate field wrapping and welding of joints.

f. Inner and outer tape width: 12 or 18 inches.

g. Do not expose tape coating to direct sunlight for more than 60 days.

2. Cement-mortar Coating: AWWA C205; shop-applied, cement-mortar coating except as modified in this Section; 1-inch minimum thickness; cut back coating from joint ends no more than 2 inches to facilitate joining and welding of pipe.

3. Polyurethane Coating: See Section 02527 - Polyurethane Coatings on Steel or Ductile Iron Pipe for requirements for use of polyurethane coating system.

B. Heat Shrink Joint Sleeves for Tape and Polyethane Coating: Aqua-shield, or approved equal. For repairs to heat shrink joint sleeves, use Aqua-shield Repair Patch Kit or approved equal.

2.05 EXTERNAL COATING SYSTEM FOR STEEL PIPE IN TUNNEL, CASING

A. Provide exterior coating system of pipe in tunnel, without annular grout, as specified in Cement Mortar Coating for Buried Steel Pipe, or provide minimum 80 mils of polyurethane coating in accordance with Specification Section 02527 - Polyurethane Coatings for Steel or Ductile Iron Pipe.

B. For water lines in tunnel where annular grout will be used, shop prime external surfaces of steel pipe with 4.0 to 6.0 mils DFT of approved Inhibited Epoxy Primer unless pipe has cement-mortar coating.

1. Surface Preparation: SSPC-SP 10(64); Near White Blast Clean 2.0 to 3.0 mils surface profile.

2. Prime Coat: Approved Inhibitive Epoxy Primer 4.0 to 6.0 mils DFT.

3. Use coating procedures and dry film thicknesses for approved alternate product in accordance with product manufacturer's recommendations.

2.06 GROUT FOR JOINTS AND SPECIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Cement Grout Mixture: One part cement to two parts of fine, sharp clean sand. Mix interior joint mortar with as little water as possible until very stiff but workable. Mix exterior joint mortar with water until it has consistency of thick cream. Mix cement grout to specific gravity of 19 lb/gallon or greater as measured by grout/slurry balance. Use balance manufactured grout/slurry by Baroid or approved equal. Perform test in presence of and at request of Project Manager. Add additional cement grout or water to mixed cement grout to bring mix to proper moisture content or specific gravity. Discard cement grout that has been mixed more than 20 minutes and is not at proper specific gravity or moisture content.

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II. Provide one type of cement for entire project.

2. Sand:

a. Interior joints: ASTM C 35 fine graded plaster sand.

b. Exterior joints: ASTM C 33; natural sand with 100 percent passing No. 16 sieve.

3. Water: Potable water with total dissolved solids less than 1000 mg/l; ASTM D 512 chloride ions less than 100 mg/l for slurry and mortar cure; ASTM D 1293 pH greater than 6.5. Use potable water with 250 ppm limit on chlorides and sulfates.

B. Provide approved Nonshrink Grout for Special Applications, Patches and Repairs.

1. Conform to requirements of ASTM C 1107, Nonshrink Grout.

2. Pre-blended factory-packaged material manufactured under rigid quality control, suitable for use in joints of prestressed concrete cylinder pipe.

3. Contain non-metallic natural aggregate and be nonstaining and noncorrosive.

4. Meeting NSF 61 Standard suitable for use in contact with potable water supply.

5. Exterior: Highly flowable to fill joint wrapper without leaving voids or trapped air. Interior capable of being placed with plastic consistency.

6. Compressive strength: ASTM C 1107 2500 psi minimum 7-day unconfined; 5000 psi minimum 28-day unconfined.

7. Non-bleeding and non-segregating at fluid consistency.

8. Contain no chlorides or additives which may contribute to corrosion of steel pipe.

9. Free of gas-producing, gas-releasing agents.

10. Resist attack by oil or water.

11. Mix, place, and cure in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Upon 72 hours' notice, provide services of qualified representative of nonshrink grout manufacturer to aid in assuring proper use of product under job conditions. Representative to be on site when product is first used.

12. Mix cement grout to specific gravity of 17.7 lb/gallon or greater as measured by grout/slurry balance. Use balance manufactured grout/slurry by Baroid or approved equal. Perform test in presence of and at request of Project Manager. Add additional cement grout to mixed cement grout or water to bring mix to proper moisture content or specific gravity. Discard cement grout that has been mixed more than 20 minutes and is not at proper specific gravity or moisture content.

13. Compressive strength: ASTM C 1107 2500 psi minimum 7-day unconfined; 5000 psi minimum 28-day unconfined.

C. Finished surface of lining and interior joint to be comparable to surface rubbed with No. 16 Carborundum stone. Rub joint mortar sufficiently to bring paste to surface, to remove depressions and projections, and to produce smooth, dense surface. Add cement to form surface paste as necessary. Leave interior with clean, neat and uniform-appearing finish.

D. Joint Wrapper: Minimum width of 9 inches for 33-inch diameter and smaller; minimum width of 12 inches for diameters greater than 33-inch hemmed at edge to allow threading with

minimum 5/8-inch-wide steel strap. Provide minimum 6-inch-wide Ethafoam strip sized, positioned, and sewn such that two circumferential edges of Ethafoam are 1-1/2 inches from outer edge of wrapper.

2.07 COLD-APPLIED TAPE COATING

A. Shop-applied Tape Wrap Coating

1. Use primer furnished by tape manufacturer.

2. Wrap, specials and fittings that cannot be machine wrapped due to configuration with primer layer and two layers of prefabricated tape each 35 mils thick.

3. Overlap machine applied tape with hand applied tape by minimum of two inches and bind to it.

4. Apply approved 30 mil filler tape parallel to spiral weld seams if weld height measures greater than or equal to 1/8 inch.

B. Surface Preparation

1. Clean bare pipe from mud, mill lacquer, oil, grease, or other contaminants. Inspect and clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP-1 to remove oil, grease, and loosely adhering deposits prior to blast cleaning. Remove visible oil and grease spots by solvent wiping. Use approved safety solvents which do not leave residue. Preheating to remove oil, grease, mill scale, water, and ice may be used provided pipe is preheated in uniform manner to avoid distortion.

2. Remove surface imperfections such as slivers, scabs, burrs, weld spatter, and gouges by hand filling or grinding to prevent excessive number of holidays. Presence of metallic defects may be cause for rejection of pipe.

2.08 EXTERNAL TAPE COATING SHOP APPLICATION

A. Separate tape dispensing equipment far enough apart to visually inspect continuous steps.

B. Make cutbacks straight and for total thickness of coating.

C. State of dryness of primer prior to application of weld filler and inner layer of tape to be in accordance with written recommendation of manufacturer.

D. Apply weld filler tape over primer and extend minimum of one inch on each side of weld seam. Filler tape may contact rollers as long as release liner is in place and adhesion requirements are met. Remove release liner before applying inner layer tape.

E. Spirally apply inner layer of tape in direction of helix weld. Overlap each spiral of tape1 inch or greater with next successive spiral of tape applied.

F. Overlap end of new roll on top of previous roll minimum of 6 inches.

G. Tape-roll body temperature to be greater than 70 degrees F; pipe surface temperature to be greater than 60 degrees F.

H. Spirally apply outer layer tapes in direction of helix weld and use overlap width and application tensions as recommended by manufacturer.

2.09 INSPECTION AND TESTING OF COATINGS

A. Perform electrical inspection on inner layer of tape before intermediate layer of tape is applied.

B. If holidays are detected, repair holidays immediately before applying outer layer of tape. Clear holiday area of material and reprime if necessary. Recoat area with inner wrap tape. Overlap inner wrap tape onto surrounding inner wrap coating by at least 2 inches. Perform electrical retest at repaired area after repairing holiday, and before outer wrap is continued.

C. Shrink Wrap: Perform electrical inspection on shrink wrap to check for holidays. Perform peel tests over heat affected zone. Minimum acceptable result: 15 lbs-ft/in.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Conform to applicable provisions of Section 02511 - Water Lines, except as modified in this Section.

B. Comply with following:

1. Make available services of manufacturer's representative when deemed necessary by Project Manager. Representative to advise in aspects of installation, including but not limited to handling and storing, cleaning and inspecting, coating and lining repair, and general construction methods as applicable to pipe.

2. Install stulls prior to placement of pipe, bends, and fittings to prevent deflection during installation. Provide stulls consisting of timber struts with end blocks shaped to fit curvature of interior surface of pipe or other appropriate configuration and material. Firmly edge and secure stulls to blocks so that they will remain intact position during handling and installation. Provide stulls adequate to resist loads encountered without structural failure to stull members or damage to pipe. Where

applicable, place stulls at such lengths so as to elongate vertical diameter of pipe as required to suit trench conditions encountered.

3. Handling and Storage: Install padded struts or stulls prior to shipping, horizontally and vertically at 10-foot intervals, or as proposed by manufacturer and approved by Project Manager. Spiders: Installed in joint ends of fittings. Stulls to remain in place, horizontally and vertically positioned under following conditions:

   a. During storage and shipping.

   b. Until welding is complete.

4. Reject and remove immediately from site pipe that arrives at site with defects in lining, including sand pockets, voids, and oversanded areas.

5. Store pipe at job site with securely fastened plastic endcaps to maintain moist pipe interior. Promptly replace damaged endcaps to avoid shrinkage or cracking of cement-mortar lining.

6. Immediately replace damaged plastic end caps. Do not leave uncapped for more than 4 hours.

7. Bedding and Backfilling:

   a. Conform to requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

   b. Align pipe at proper grade prior to joint connection and do not shift after jointing operation has been completed.

   c. Take necessary precautions during bedding and backfilling operations to prevent deformation or deflection of cylindrical shape of pipe by more than allowable pipe deflection. Do not move trench support system (trench safety system) once bedding material is compacted.

   d. Excavate outside specified trench section for bell holes, and for spaces sufficient to permit removal of slings. Provide bell holes at proper locations for unrestricted access to joint. Form bell holes large enough to facilitate joint wrapping and to permit visual examination of process. Enlargement of bell holes as required or directed by Project Manager. Subsequent backfilling thereof will not be considered as authorized additional excavation and backfill. Backfill bell holes and spaces to satisfaction of Project Manager.

   e. Blocking may be removed 24 hours after placing backfill to top of pavement or natural ground level.

8. Pipe Deflection: After backfill is complete, test pipe for excessive deflection by measuring actual inside vertical diameter. For maximum deflection allowable, see Section 2.01.

   a. Deflection may be measured by Project Manager at location along pipe. Arithmetical averages of deflection are not acceptable.

   b. If deflection exceeds that specified, do one of the following:

      1) Remove backfill and side support. Reround the pipe and properly replace compacted backfill and side support. Review cement mortar lining to assure that no harmful damage has occurred.

      2) Remove entire portion of deflected pipe section and install new pipe as directed by Project Manager at no additional cost to City.

9. Move pipe in such manner not to damage pipe or coating. Do not roll pipe nor drag on ground. Inspect and repair coating abrasions before pipe is lowered into trench.

10. Use of dogs, clips, lugs, or equivalent devices welded to steel pipe for purpose of forcing it into position will not be permitted unless approved by Project Manager. Remove foreign matter and protective material from surfaces that are to be in contact at joints. Leave surfaces of joint areas thoroughly clean for metal-to-metal contact of field joints.

C. Static Electricity:

1. Properly ground steel pipeline during construction as necessary to prevent build-up of static electricity.

2. Electrically test where required after installation of pipeline is complete.

D. Deviation of installed pipe in one pipe section from line and grade shown on approved shop drawing layout will not exceed 2 inches from grade and 3 inches from line. No deviation from line and grade at contact interfaces are allowed.

E. Use adequate surveying methods, procedures and employ competent surveying personnel to ensure pipe sections are laid to line and grade and within stipulated tolerances. Measure and record, in form approved by Project Manager and submit copy of data to Project Manager at end of that day. Survey data to include unique pipe number, deflection angle at pipe joint and whether beveled ends were used, invert elevation at pipe joint, deviation of joint from project line, deviation of joint from project grade, inside pipe joint lap measured at top, bottom, and at springline (each side).

F. Any time that laying of additional pipe is stopped for more than eight hours; plug ends of installed pipe and take proper precautions against flotation of pipe segments.

3.02 EXTERNAL COATING SYSTEM FOR STEEL PIPE INSTALLED ABOVE GROUND AND IN VAULTS (EXPOSED) AND EPOXY INTERNAL LINING SYSTEM

A. Safety: Paints, coatings, and linings specified in this Section are hazardous materials. Vapors may be toxic or explosive. Protective equipment, approved by appropriate regulatory agency, is mandatory for personnel involved in painting, coating, and lining operations.

B. Workmanship:

1. Application: By qualified and experienced workers who are knowledgeable in surface preparation and application of high-performance industrial coatings.

2. Paint Application Procedures: SSPC Good Painting Practices, Volume 1.

C. Surface Preparation:

1. Use abrasive blasting to prepare surfaces.

2. Schedule cleaning and painting so that detrimental amounts of dust or other contaminants do not fall on wet, newly-painted surfaces. Protect surfaces not intended to be painted from effects of cleaning and painting operations.

3. Prior to blasting, clean surfaces to be coated or lined of grease, oil and dirt by steaming or detergent cleaning in accordance with SSPC SP 1.

4. Metal and Weld Preparation: Remove surface defects such as gouges, pits, welding and torch-cut slag, welding flux and spatter by grinding to 1/4-inch minimum radius.

5. Abrasive Material:

a. Blast only as much steel as can be coated within same day of blasting.

b. Use sharp, angular, properly graded abrasive capable of producing depth of profile specified herein. Transport abrasive to jobsite in moisture-proof bags or airtight bulk containers. Copper slag abrasives are not acceptable.

c. After abrasive blast cleaning, verify surface profile with replica tape such as Tes-Tex Coarse or Extra Coarse Press-O-Film Tape, or approved equal. Furnish tapes to Project Manager.

d. Do not blast if metal surface may become wet before priming commences, or when metal surface is less than 5 degrees F above dew point.

6. Evaluate degree of cleanliness for surface preparation with use of SSPC Pictorial Surface Preparation Standards for Painting Steel Surfaces, SSPC-Vis 1.

7. Remove dust and abrasive residue from freshly blasted surfaces by brushing or blowing with clean, dry air. Test cleanliness by placing 3/4-inch by 4-inch piece of clear Scotch-type tape on blasted surface, then removing and placing tape on 3x5 white index card. Reclean areas exhibiting dust or residue.

D. Coating and Lining Application:

1. Environmental Conditions: Do not apply when metal temperature is less than 50 degrees F; when ambient temperature is less than 5 degrees F above dew point; when expected weather conditions are such that ambient temperature will drop below 40 degrees F within 6 hours after application; or when relative humidity is above 85 percent. Measure relative humidity and dew point by use of sling psychrometer in conjunction with U.S. Department of Commerce Weather Bureau Psychometric Tables. Provide dehumidifiers for field-applied coatings and linings to maintain proper humidity levels.

2. Application Procedures:

   a. Apply in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and requirements of this Section. Provide finish free of runs, sags, curtains, pinholes, orange peel, fish eyes, excessive over spray, or delaminations.

   b. Thin materials only with manufacturer's recommended thinners. Thin only amount required to adjust viscosity for temperature variations, proper atomization and flow-out. Mix material components using mechanical mixers.

   c. Discard catalyzed materials remaining at end of day.

3. Thoroughly dry pipe before primer is applied. Apply primer immediately after cleaning surface. Apply succeeding coats before contamination of undersurface occurs.

4. Cure minimum of 24 hours at 77 degrees F before successive coats are applied. During curing process, provide force air ventilation in volume sufficient to maintain solvent vapor levels below published threshold limit value. Apply successive coats within recoat threshold time as recommended by coating or lining manufacturer on printed technical data sheets or through written communications. Brush blast joints of pipe which have been shop primed and are to receive intermediate and finish coats in field prior to application of additional coats. After interior coats are applied, provide forced-air ventilation in sufficient volume and for sufficient length of time to ensure proper curing before filling pipe with water.

3.03 EXTERNAL COATING SYSTEM FOR BURIED STEEL PIPE

A. Tape Coating System:

1. Joint Protection

a. Coating field joints, tie-ins, and other field-welded joints: Provide application of approved insulating putty at bell step-offs, and two wraps of Field Joint Tape Primer: Furnished by tape manufacturer.

b. At Contractor's option, apply approved special heat resistant tape system prior to internal welding of pipe. Coat entire pipe with shop-applied tape. Coat bell end with shop-applied heat-resistant tape. In field, fill joint step off area with insulating putty. Field apply two layers of field joint tape over joint followed by high shear strength outerwrap. Follow manufacturer's recommendation for field-applied tape coating.

c. At Contractor's option, provide field-applied shrink-wrap coating system for coating field joints, tie-ins and other field welded joints. Apply heat-shrink sleeves prior to internal welding of pipe using approved procedure compatible with coating system. Install heat-shrink joint sleeves in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Provide shrink-wrap systems consisting of primer, tape coating and polyurethane coating and high-strength application of Aqua-shield Wrap for pipeline. Provide services of technical representative of manufacturer available on site at beginning of pipelaying operations. Representative to advise Contractor and Project Manager regarding installation, repairs, and general construction methods.

2. Field Application: AWWA C209 around joint cutbacks except as modified:

a. Field-welded joints: Clean shop-primed ends of weld splatter, damaged primer, and rust to achieve required surface preparation prior to field repair of coatings.

b. Extend joint cleaning 4 inches onto existing coating. Completely remove damaged and loose end-coatings.

c. Prior to placing pipe in trench, remove shop-applied primer by abrasive blasting, solvent or other method as approved by Project Manager. Avoid damage to adjacent existing coatings.

d. Clean surfaces to achieve surface preparation at least equivalent to SSPC SP 6 in accordance with AWWA C209. Provide solvent that is environmentally safe and compatible with coating system primer.

e. Apply insulating putty onto bell step-off as shown on Drawings. Remove release liner during application.

f. Apply primer immediately prior to application of first layer of tape to achieve maximum bond. Apply tape while primer is still "tacky" with 3-inch minimum overlap over shop-applied coating.

3. Joint Tape

a. Extend inner wrap minimum of 2 inches onto existing coating on each side of joint. Extend outer wrap minimum of 4 inches onto existing coating each side of joint. Stagger end laps minimum of 6 inches. Overlap adjacent tape wraps at least 1 inch, and overlap seam of outer wrap. Do not allow to be coincident with overlap seam of inner wrap. Wash with Xylol area that will be overlapped.

b. Apply approved joint wrap tape to uncontaminated primer at proper roll body temperature. If necessary, store joint wrap material in heated box up to point of application.

c. Apply joint wrap material to pipe in either spiral or cigarette fashion dependent upon specification. Begin wrapping process 2 to 4 inches onto mill-applied pipe wrap and proceed wrinkle-free up over bell and across joint to spigot side pipe wrap.

d. Apply joint wrap under machine tension of 5 to 10 pounds per inch width. Joint wrap width should narrow (neck down) as material is applied tightly around pipe.

e. Apply first 1/3 and last 1/3 turn of joint material around pipe with less tension to prevent wrap crawlback. Overlap of joint wrap material and system's total thickness as specified in this specification section.

f. End joint wrap process such that its final edge is directed downwards when pipe is placed in ditch to prevent backfill from pulling exposed joint wrap edge.

4. Do not expose tape coatings or heat-shrinkable joint sleeves to harmful ultraviolet light for more than 90 days. Discard (remove) and replace outer layer of tape coating when exposure exceeds 90 days. In case of factory-applied coatings, remove pipe from site for removal and reapplication of outer layer of tape coatings.

5. At option of Project Manager, coating system and application may be tested and inspected at plant site in accordance with AWWA C214.

B. Test for holidays:

1. Inspect pipe for holidays and damage to coating.

   a. If test indicates no holidays and outer wrap is torn, remove damaged layers of outer wrap by carefully cutting with sharp razor-type knife. Wash with Xylol area to be patched and at least 4 inches of undamaged tape where hand-applied tape wrap will overlap. AWWA C209 cold-applied tape compatible with tape-wrapping system applied for each layer of outer-wrap tape that has been removed.

   b. If test indicates holiday, remove outer layers and expose inner wrap. Prime exposed area and overlaps with light coat of primer. Firmly press into place patch of two 35-mil inner wrap tape extending 4 inches from affected area in all directions. Second patch to overlap first patch by 2 inches. Perform holiday test of patch to verify satisfactory installation. Wash exposed outer wrap tape with Xylol and prime.

   c. For severe outer wrap tape tears or damage, and holiday is not detected, remove outer wrap to boundaries of damaged area, taking care not to damage inner wrap coating. Before replacing outer wrap, apply holiday detector to exposed area to determine that no damage has been made to primary coating. After verification that no holidays exist in underlying tape, clean damaged area and use patch of 35-mil outer wrap tape. Apply as specified herein for repair of areas where bare pipe is exposed.

2. Do not allow bubbles in tape coating system regardless of holiday test results, cut out bubbles and patch as described above as directed by Project Manager.

3. Perform test procedure in accordance with NACE Standard RP-02-74. Perform electrical holiday test with 60-cycle current audio detector. Use test voltage below:

Total Coating Thickness (Mils)	Test Voltage (Volts)
20	6,000
30/35	7,500
50	9,000
70	11,500
80	12,000

C. Remove areas having physical damage and recoat. After repairing area, apply holiday detector as stated above to verify area is adequately repaired.

D. Cement mortar coating. AWWA C 205; 1-inch minimum thickness; Cut back from joint ends no more than 2 inches to facilitate joining and welding of pipe.

3.04 JOINTS AND JOINTING

A. Rubber Gasketed Bell-and-Spigot Joints.

1. Use O-ring gasket with sufficient volume to approximately fill area of groove and gasket material in accordance with AWWA C200. Check each splice in gasket by stretching gasket to at least twice original length of gasket. Visually check stretched splice by rotating 360 degrees. Reject splices showing visible separation or cracks.

2. Equalize rubber gasket cross section after rubber gasket is placed in spigot groove of pipe by inserting tool or bar such as large screwdriver under rubber gasket and moving it around periphery of pipe spigot. Lubricate gaskets with nontoxic water-soluble lubricant before pipe units are joined. Fit pipes together in manner to avoid twisting or otherwise displacing or damaging rubber gasket. Check gaskets after pipe sections are joined with feeler gauge to ensure that no displacement of gasket has occurred at point around circumference after joining. If displacement has occurred, remove pipe section and remake joint as if for new pipe. Remove old gasket and replace before remaking joint.

B. Welded Joints:

1. Conform to requirements of Section 02511 - Water Lines.

2. Field weld to be double-welded lap field joints or full penetration butt welded joints for steel pipe and encasement sleeves for entire circumference.

3. Employ independent certified testing laboratory, approved by Project Manager, to perform weld acceptance tests on welded joints. Include cost of such testing in contract unit price bid for water line. Furnish copies of all test reports to Project Manager for review. Test by magnetic particle test method for lap welds and fillet welds or by X-ray methods for butt welds, for 100 percent of all joint welds. Project Manager has final decision as to suitability of welds tested.

C. Flanged Joints: Conform to requirements of Section 02511 - Water Lines.

D. Joint Grouting and Testing: Conform to requirements of Section 02511 - Water Lines.

E. Do not allow steel plugs for threaded outlets to project beyond inner surface of pipe shell and seal weld by at least two passes. Apply weld around outside of plug after it has been inserted in final position. Coat outlets and plugs inside and outside as required at field joints on pipe.

3.05 FIELD-APPLIED CEMENT-MORTAR LINING

A. Entrances Into Pipeline:

1. Establish means to permit entry and exit of labor, materials and equipment necessary for progress of work, as approved by Project Manager.

2. Provide dikes and channeling for diversion of flood and drainage waters away from these openings in pipeline. Use temporary airtight covers over openings to provide proper curing conditions in completed sections of lined pipe. Where operation of equipment requires that end of pipe be left open, install temporary bulkhead inside pipe to eliminate direct draft through pipe over completed sections.

3. Brace closure sections of pipeline left out to facilitate field lining above ground to conform as nearly as possible to shape of pipe in ground and then place cement-mortar lining by machine or hand trowel to same thickness as in adjoining machine-lined sections. Bulkhead sections immediately after being lined to maintain proper curing conditions for period of not less than 48 hours before sections are installed in pipeline. Install these sections of steel pipe.

4. Coat exterior surface of buttstraps and uncoated exterior surface area of steel pipe within excavations in accordance specifications. Place cement-mortar lining inside areas of joints in accordance with specifications.

B. Mixing of Cement-mortar: Mix ingredients for cement-mortar for not less than 1-1/2 and not more than 6 minutes; use mortar promptly after mixing for lining pipe. Do not use mortar that has attained its initial for lining. Do not retemper mortar. Add water to mix last.

C. Placing Cement-mortar Lining:

1. Complete joint work, backfill and welding before cement-mortar lining begins. After cement-mortar lining has cured hydrostatic testing of pipe can begin.

2. Provide provisions necessary for Project Manager to conduct inspections of work in safe and thorough manner during and after initial application of mortar and after necessary repairs made. Include, as minimum, space on application machine, and adequate lighting to inspect gross surface areas

3. Comply with ASTM C 494 and with manufacturer's recommendations when using chemical admixtures, bonding agents, accelerators, and other additives.

4. Remove dirt, debris, oil, grease and loose mill scale and rust from interior surfaces of pipe, and scrape or brush surface with stiff bristle brush and/or water blast as may be necessary, and approved by Project Manager, to ensure clean surfaces for successful application of cement-mortar lining. Interior surfaces to be approved by Project Manager prior to placing lining.

5. Provide cement-mortar lining uniform in thickness along entire length of pipe. Provide cement-mortar no less than 1/2 inch over all surfaces with tolerance of plus 1/8 inch, and no allowance for minus tolerance.

6. Mechanically control travel of machine and rates of discharge of mortar to produce uniform thickness of lining without segregation around perimeter and along length of pipe.

7. Check finished surface by placing 12-inch straightedge parallel to axis of pipe along surface of straight section of lining. At no point will space between lined surface and straightedge be greater than 1/16 inch.

8. Provide smooth finished surface, within tolerances specified. Repair or replace surface irregularities including corrugations, ripples, or pits in any direction, to satisfaction of Project Manager. Remove defective lining material, including, sand pockets, voids, oversanded areas, blisters, delaminations, or unbounded areas, cracked areas, irregular surfaces, and unsatisfactory thin spots. Remove to pipe wall and area repaired to full thickness of mortar lining.

9. Repair cracks 1/16 inch and larger to satisfaction of Project Manager.

10. Place cement-mortar lining by machine having following features:

    a. An applicator head which can be centered within pipe and which will centrifugally project mortar against wall of pipe at high velocity producing dense, uniformly distributed mortar on wall of pipe.

    b. Equipped with mechanically driven, rotating steel trowels that immediately follow applicator, providing smooth, hard surface without spiral shoulders. Compensate for torque so that machine will sit true in pipe and trowel faces will not vary in angle with mortar face during complete 360-degree cycle. Clean trowels at frequent intervals to prevent accumulated mortar from obtaining initial set resulting in sanded or unglazed finish. Continuously operate trowels during application of cement-mortar and forward progress of lining machine.

    c. Design applicator so that nothing will come in contact with troweled surface until it has attained final set, and so that forward progress of machine and mechanical placing of mortar can be controlled to assure uniform thickness of lining.

11. Cement-mortar Lining: Adhere to steel at all points; provide consistent thickness except that lining of bell end of pipe where lining is to be thicker in order to fill depression and make smooth surface.

12. Immediately prior to application of cement-mortar lining, sweep and clean off slime, dirt, loose rust, loose mill scale, and other foreign materials. Free interior surface of pipe after cleaning of accumulated water on pipe wall or at joints.

13. After receiving its finish troweling, do not roughen lining by rebound material or by mortar direct from machine.

14. Temporarily close outlets in pipeline with easily removable stoppers to prevent spun mortar from being thrown into such openings. After lining is applied, remove stoppers from outlets and repair lining damaged by removal of stoppers. Point outlet openings up to provide smooth flow.

D. Hand Finishing:

1. Repair defective areas in machine-applied lining and unlined joints by hand patching to yield lining equal to that required for machine-applied troweled lining.

2. Provide nonshrink grout for patching or lining joints as specified in this Section.

3. Clean defective areas of loose foreign material and moisten with water just prior to application of hand-applied mortar.

4. Use steel finishing trowels for hand application of cement-mortar.

5. Complete hand finishing required in given pipe section not later than day following machine application of mortar lining to that particular pipe section, whether normal working day or otherwise. Slow down or stop machine application of mortar lining to allow time for hand patching.

E. Curing of Lining: Begin curing operations immediately after completing any portion of mortar lining. Close pipe by airtight bulkheads, and maintain moist atmosphere in completed section of pipe to keep lining damp and to prevent evaporation of entrained water from mortar lining. Humidify air introduced into pipe for ventilating or curing purposes and maintain moist atmosphere inside pipe until Project Manager accepts Work.

3.06 INSPECTION (EXCEPT MORTAR COATED PIPE)

A. Include cost of inspection described in Paragraph 3.08, Inspection, in contract unit price for water line. Furnish copies of certified inspection reports to Project Manager for review.

B. Holiday Test and Adhesion Test: Provide services of independent coating and lining inspection service or testing laboratory with qualified coating inspectors. Provide inspections by NACE trained inspectors under supervision of NACE Certified Coatings Inspector having Level III Certification.

3.07 COATINGS AND LININGS INSPECTION RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Contractor is responsible for quality control of coatings and linings applications and testing and inspection stipulated in this Section. Project Manager is responsible for quality assurance and reserves right to inspect or acquire services of independent third-party inspector who is fully knowledgeable and qualified to inspect surface preparation and application of high-performance coatings at phases of coatings and linings, field or shop applied. Contractor is responsible for proper application and performance of coatings and linings whether or not Project Manager provides such inspection.

B. Cement Mortar Lining and Joint Finish: Finished surface of lining and joint to be comparable to surface rubbed with No. 16 Carborundum stone. Rub joint mortar sufficiently to bring paste to surface, to remove depressions and projections, and to produce smooth, dense surface. Add cement to form surface paste as necessary. Leave interior with clean, neat and uniform-appearing finish.

3.08 FIELD REPAIR PROCEDURES AND SPECIAL FITTINGS APPLICATION FOR CEMENT MORTAR LINING

A. Areas less than or equal to 6 inches in diameter: Patch honeycomb and minor defects in concrete surfaces with nonshrink grout. Repair defects by cutting out unsatisfactory material and replacing with nonshrink grout, securely bonded to existing concrete. Finish to make junctures between patches and existing concrete as inconspicuous as possible. After each patch has stiffened sufficiently to allow for greatest portion of shrinkage, strike off grout flush with surrounding surface.

B. Areas greater than 6 inches in diameter:

1. Remove defective lining down to bare steel by chipping, making sure care is taken to prevent further lining damage. Ends of lining where defective lining is removed are to be left square and uniform not feathered.

2. Clean bare steel with wire brush to remove loose or other foreign matter.

3. Remove existing wire reinforcement and replace. Overlap new reinforcement to existing reinforcement by 1/2 inch. Secure reinforcement, against wall of pipe, at frequent intervals, by tack welding to pipe.

4. Prepare cement mortar mixture. Mixture to compose of Portland Type II cement, sand, and water. Proportions of sand to cement not to exceed 3 parts sand to 1 part cement, by weight. Use only enough water to obtain proper placement characteristics. Set up time before mixture is to be discarded is to be no longer than 1/2 hour. Nonshrink grout may also be used. Do not use combination of cement mortar and nonshrink grout within same repair.

5. Apply WELD-CRETE, or approved equal, concrete bonding agent to bare steel and interface of existing lining. After bonding agent is applied to steel and lining new mix must be applied within 10 minutes.

6. Apply cement mortar to repair area 1/2 inch thick then hand trowel to achieve smooth dense finish, making sure wire is not left exposed. To ensure proper thickness while placing new mortar, check thickness with 1/2 inch long wire gauge.

7. Curing: Place plastic sheeting over repair area, use tape to adhere plastic to area surrounding repair area. Let cure for 4 days then remove plastic sheeting.

END OF SECTION

Section 02520

FIRE HYDRANTS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Fire hydrants.

B. Adjustment of fire hydrants and gate valves.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment is on a unit price basis for each fire hydrant assembly, including 6-inch gate valve and box, installed regardless of barrel depth.

2. Payment for fire hydrant branches (leads) is on linear foot basis for each branch installed. Separate pay items are used for open-cut and augered branches.

3. Payment for salvaged fire hydrants is on unit price basis for each fire hydrant removed and returned to City's Maintenance Quadrant Stock yard.

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AWWA C 550 - Standard for Protective Epoxy Interior Coatings for Valves and Hydrants

B. SSPC SP2 - Hand Tool Cleaning

C. SSPC SP3 - Power Tool Cleaning

D. SSPC SP10 - Near-White Blast Cleaning

E. SSPC SP11 - Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal

F. SSPC Paint Spec No.21

G. SSPC-Paint 21 - White or Colored Silicone Alkyd Paint

H. SSPC-Paint 25 - Zinc Oxide, Alkyd, Linseed Oil Primer for Use Over Hand Cleaned Steel, Type I and Type II

I. SSPC-Paint 104 - White or Tinted Alkyd Paint

J. Federal Standard A-A-2962A - Enamel, Alkyd, Solvent Based Low VOC

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit name of hydrant manufacturer, type of bonnet paint, and engineering control drawing number for hydrant proposed for use.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 HYDRANTS

A. Provide approved fire hydrants.

B. The Project Manager may, at any time prior to or during installation of hydrants, randomly select furnished hydrant for disassembly and laboratory inspection, at City expense, to verify compliance with Specifications. When hydrant is found to be non-compliant, replace, at Contractor's expense, hydrants, with hydrants that comply with Specifications.

C. Provide lower hydrant barrel fabricated from Ductile Iron Pipe as single piece, connected to upper hydrant barrel by means of joint coupling that will provide three hundred sixty degree (360) rotation of upper barrel.

2.02 LEADS

A. Branches (Leads): Conform to requirements of Section 02501 - Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings, Section 02502 - Steel Pipe and Fittings, and Section 02506 - Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe.

2.03 HYDRANT PAINTING

A. New hydrants and refurbished hydrants shall be shop coated as specified herein.

B. Exterior Above Traffic Flange (Including Bolts & Nuts).

1. Surface preparation to be in accordance with SSPC-SP 10 (MACE 2) near white blast cleaned surface.

2. Coat with three coat alkyd/silicone alkyd system with total dry film thickness (DFT) of 6 - 9 mils as follows:

   a. Prime Coat - Oil modified alkyd primer, to be in general conformance with SSPC Paint Specification No. 25. Total dry film thickness (DFT) 2 - 3 mils.

   b. Intermediate Coat - Heavy Duty Industrial Alkyd Enamel to be in general conformance with SSPC Paint Specification No. 104, and Federal Standard A-A-2962A. Total dry film thickness (DFT) of 2 -3 mils.

   c. Finish Coat - Silicone Alkyd Resin Enamelto be in general conformance with SSPC Paint Specification No. 21. Total dry film thickness (DFT) to be 2 - 3 mils. Exception - hydrant bonnet shall not be finished shop coated, only intermediate coated. Install color coded finish coating of bonnet in field.

   d. Bonnet Paint - Field apply finish coat of Silicone Alkyd Resin Enamel to be in general conformance with SSPC Paint Specification No. 21. Dry film thickness of 2 - 3 mils. Bonnet colors are to be as specified in Paragraph 3.01 to designate the appropriate size of water supply line.

3. Colors - Primer: Manufacturers standard color. Finish coat of hydrant body : Blue . Connection caps: Finished coated white. Paint white band of finish coat two (2) inches in width on hydrant body approximately six inches (6") above and parallel to traffic flange. Intermediate coat : Contrasting color to blue finish, such as white.

C. Field Maintenance Painting (Exterior Above Traffic Flange)

1. Surface Preparation to be in accordance with SSPC - SP2, Hand Tool Cleaning, or SSPC - SP3, Power Tool Cleaning, depending on condition of existing paint and extent of corrosion. It is not necessary to remove tightly adhered mill scale, rust, and paint. Mill scale, rust and paint are considered tightly adherent when they cannot be removed with dull putty knife. In some severe cases where it is necessary to remove majority of existing paint, surface should be cleaned in accordance with SSPC -SP11, Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal.

2. When surface is cleaned to bare metal (SSPC - SP11), coat hydrant with three coat Alkyd/Silicone Alkyd system in accordance with Paragraph 2.03.B.2 as for new hydrants. When surface is cleaned to SSPC - SP2 or SSPC - SP3, coat hydrant with Silicone Alkyd Resin Enamelin general conformance with SSPC Paint Specification No. 21. Total dry film thickness of 3 - 6 mils.

D. Exterior Below Traffic Flange

1. Surface preparation in accordance with SSPC- SP10 (MACE 2) Near White Blast Cleaned Surface.

2. Primer and intermediate coat: coal tar epoxy in general conformance with SSPC Paint Specification No. 16. Apply two (2) coats with dry film thickness (DFT) of 8 - 10 mils each for total DFT of 16 -20 mils.

3. Finish coat: Water based vinyl acrylic mastic Apply one coat with dry film thickness of 6 - 8 mils. Color of finish coat to be same as finish coat for exterior above traffic flange, i.e., blue. (Acro 555 Crystal Blue, or equivalent.)

E. Interior Surfaces Above and Below Water Line Valve

1. Material used for internal coating of hydrant interior ferrous surfaces below water line valve must be NSF certified as suitable for contact with potable water as required by Chapter 290, Rules and Regulations for Public Water Systems, Texas Natural Resources Conservation Commission.

2. Coating shall be liquid or powder epoxy system in accordance with AWWA Standard C - 550 (latest revision). Coating may be applied in two or three coats, according to manufacturer's recommendations, for total dry film thickness of 12 -18 mils.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Set fire hydrant plumb and brace at locations and grades as shown on Drawings. When barrel of hydrant passes through concrete slab, place 1-inch-thick piece of standard sidewalk expansion joint material around section of barrel passing through concrete.

B. Locate nozzle center line minimum 18 inches above finish grade.

C. Place 12-inch by 12-inch yellow indicators (plastic, sheet metal, plywood, or other material approved by Project Manager) on pumper nozzles of new or relocated fire hydrants installed on new water lines not in service. Remove indicators after new water line is tested and approved by Project Manager.

D. Do not cover drain ports when placing concrete thrust block.

E. Obtain Project Manager's approval in writing prior to installation of hydrants which require changes in bury depth due to obstructions not shown on Drawings. Unit price adjustments will not be allowed for changes in water line flow line or fire hydrant barrel length caused by obstructions.

F. Plug branch lines to valves and fire hydrants shown on Drawings to be removed. Deliver fire hydrants designated for salvage to nearest Utility Maintenance Quadrant Facility.

G. Install branches (leads) in accordance with Section 02511 - Water Lines.

H. Coating Requirements:

1. Apply coatings in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. No requirements of this specification shall cancel or supersede written directions and recommendations of specific manufacturer so as to jeopardize integrity of applied system.

2. Furnish affidavit of compliance that coatings furnished complies with requirements of this specification and referenced standards, as applicable.

I. Use following color code for field coating of hydrant bonnet to indicate size of water line supplying hydrant:

Supply Water Line Diameter (inches)	**Bonnet Color**
6	Yellow
8	White
12-20	Green
24 and larger	Orange

J. Remove and dispose of unsuitable materials and debris in accordance with requirements of Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

END OF SECTION

Section 02521

GATE VALVES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Gate valves.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for gate valves 20 inches in diameter and smaller under this Section. Include payment in unit price for water lines.

2. Payment for gate valves 24 inches to 36 inches in diameter is on a unit price basis. Unit price includes cost of required box for gate valves.

3. Payment for 2-inch blow-off valve with box is on a unit price basis for each installation.

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM A 307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 psi Tensile.

B. ASTM B 62 - Standard Specification for Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Casting.

C. ASTM D 429 - Standard Test Methods for Rubber Property-Adhesion to Rigid Substrates.

D. ASTM B 763 - Standard Specification for Copper Alloy Sand Casting for Valve Application.

E. AWWA C 500 - Standard for Metal-Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service.

F. AWWA C 509 - Standard for Resilient-Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service.

G. AWWA C 515- Standard for Reduced Wall, Resilient- Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service.

H. AWWA C 550 - Standard for Protective Epoxy Interior Coatings for Valves and Hydrants.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturer's product data for proposed valves for approval.

D. Provide detailed drawings of gearing mechanism for 20-inch and larger gate valves.

1.05 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Submit manufacturer's affidavit that gate valves are manufactured in the United States and conform to stated requirements of AWWA C 500, AWWA C 509, AWWA C 515, and this Section, and that they have been satisfactorily tested in the United States in accordance with AWWA C 500, AWWA C 509, and AWWA C 515.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Gate Valves: AWWA C 500, AWWA C 509, AWWA C 515 and additional requirements of this Section. Direct bury valves and those in subsurface vaults open clockwise; aboveground and plant valves open counterclockwise.

B. If type of valve is not indicated on Drawings, use gate valves as line valves for sizes 20-inches and smaller. When type of valve is indicated, no substitute is allowed.

C. Gate Valves 1-1/2 inches in Diameter and Smaller: 125 psig; bronze; rising-stem; single-wedge; disc type; screwed ends

D. Coatings for Gate Valves 2 inches and larger: AWWA C 550 non-toxic, imparts no taste to water, functions as physical, chemical, and electrical barrier between base metal and surroundings, minimum 8-mil-thick, fusion-bonded epoxy. Prior to assembly of valve, apply protective coating to interior and exterior surfaces of body.

E. Gate Valves 2 inches in diameter: Iron body, double disc or resilient-seated, non-rising stem, 150-pound test, 2-inch square nut operating clockwise to open.

F. Gate Valves 3 inches to 12 inches in diameter: Non-directional, standard-wall resilient seated (AWWA C 509), parallel seat double disc (AWWA C 500), or reduced-wall resilient seated gate valves (AWWA C 515), 200 psig pressure rating, bronze mounting, push-on bell ends with rubber joint rings, and nut-operated unless otherwise specified. Provide approved standard-wall resilient seated valves. Provide approved reduced-wall resilient seated valves.

Provide approved double disc valves. Comply with following requirements unless otherwise specified in Drawings:

1. Design: Fully encapsulated rubber wedge or rubber seat ring mechanically attached with minimum 304 stainless-steel fasteners or screws; threaded connection isolated from water by compressed rubber around opening.

2. Body: Cast or ductile iron, flange bonnet and stuffing box together with ASTM A 307 Grade B bolts. Manufacturer's initials, pressure rating, and year manufactured shall be cast in body.

3. Bronze: Valve components in waterway to contain not more than 15 percent zinc and not more than 2 percent aluminum.

4. Stems: ASTM B 763 bronze, alloy number-995 minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi; minimum elongation in 2-inches of 12 percent, non-rising.

5. O-rings: For AWWA C 500, Section 3.12.2. For AWWA C 509, Sections 2.2.6 and 4.8.2. For AWWA C 515, Section 4.2.2.5.

6. Stem Seals Consist of three O-rings, two above and one below thrust collar with anti-friction washer located above thrust collar for operating torque.

G. Stem Nut: Independent or integrally cast of ASTM B 62 bronze.

H. Resilient Wedge: Molded, synthetic rubber, vulcanized and bonded to cast or ductile iron wedge or attached with 304 stainless steel screws tested to meet or exceed ASTM D 429 Method B; seat against epoxy-coated surface in valve body.

I. Bolts: AWWA C 500 Section 3.4, AWWA C 509 Section 4.4 or AWWA C 515 Section 4.4.4; stainless steel; cadmium plated, or zinc coated.

G. Gate valves 14 inch and larger in Diameter: AWWA C 500; parallel seat double disc gate valves; push-on bell ends with rubber rings and nut-operated unless otherwise specified. Provide approved double disc valves with 150 psig pressure rating. Comply with following requirements unless otherwise specified on Drawings:

1. Body: Cast iron or ductile iron; flange together bonnet and stuffing box with ASTM A 307 Grade B bolts. Cast following into valve body manufacturer's initials, pressure rating, and year manufactured. When horizontally mounted, equip valves greater in diameter than 12 inches with rollers, tracks, and scrapers.

2. O rings: For AWWA C 500, Section 3.12.2. For AWWA C 515, Section 4.2.2.5.

3. Stems: ASTM B 763 bronze, alloy number-995 minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi; minimum elongation in 2-inches of 12 percent, non-rising.

4. Stem Nut: Machined from ASTM B 62 bronze rod with integral forged thrust collar machined to size; non-rising.

5. Stem Seals: Consist of three O-rings, two above and one below thrust collar with anti-friction washer located above thrust collar for operating torque.

6. Bolts: AWWA C 500 Section 3.4 or AWWA C 515 Section 4.4.4; stainless steel; cadmium plated, or zinc coated.

7. Discs: Cast iron with bronze disc rings securely penned into machined dovetailed grooves.

8. Wedging Device: Solid bronze or cast-iron, bronze-mounted wedges. Thin plates or shapes integrally cast into cast-iron surfaces are acceptable. Other moving surfaces integral to wedging action shall be bronze monel or nickel alloy-to-iron.

9. Provide bypass for valves 24 inches and larger.

10. Bronze Mounting: Built as integral unit mounted over, or supported on, cast-iron base and of sufficient dimensions to be structurally sound and adequate for imposed forces.

11. Gear Cases: Cast iron; furnished on 18-inch and larger valves and of extended type with steel side plates, lubricated, gear case enclosed with oil seal or O-rings at shaft openings.

12. Stuffing Boxes: Located on top of bonnet and outside gear case.

H. Gate valves 14 inches to 24 inches: Provide AWWA C 515; reduced-wall, resilient seated gate valves with 250 psig pressure rating. Furnish with spur or bevel gearing.

1. Mount valves horizontally if proper ground clearance cannot be achieved by normal vertical installation. For horizontally mounted gate valves, provide bevel operation gear mounted vertically for above ground operation.

2. Use valve body, bonnet, wedge, and operator nut constructed of ductile iron. Fully encapsulate exterior of ductile iron wedge with rubber.

3. Ensure wedge is symmetrical and seals equally well with flow in either direction.

4. Provide ductile iron operator nut with four flats at stem connection to apply even input torque to the stem.

5. Bolts: AWWA C515, Section 4.4.4, Stainless Steel; cadmium plated or zinc coated.

6. Provide high strength bronze stem and nut.

7. O-rings: AWWA C515, Section 4.2.2.5, pressure O-rings as gaskets.

8. Provide stem sealed by three O-rings. Top two O-rings are to be replaceable with valve fully open at full rated working pressure.

9. Provide thrust washers to the thrust collar for easy valve operation.

K. Gate Valves Extension Stem: When shown on Drawings, provide non-rising, extension stem having coupling sufficient to attach securely to operating nut of valve. Upper end of extension stem shall terminate in square wrench nut no deeper than 4 feet from finished grade or as shown on Drawings. Support extension stem with an arm attached to wall of manhole or structure that loosely holds extension stem and allows rotation in the axial direction only.

L. Gate Valves in Factory Mutual (Fire Service) Type Meter Installations: Conform to provisions of this specification; outside screw and yoke valves; carry label of Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.; flanged, Class 125; clockwise to close.

M. Gate Valves for Tapping Steel Pipe: Provide double disc gate valve. Resilient wedge gate valve shall only be installed in a vertical position.

N. Provide flanged joints when valve is connected to steel or PCCP.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Earthwork. Conform to applicable provisions of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfilling for Utilities.

B. Operation. Do not use valves for throttling without prior approval of manufacturer.

3.02 SETTING VALVES AND VALVE BOXES

A. Remove foreign matter from within valves prior to installation. Inspect valves in open and closed positions to verify that parts are in satisfactory working condition.

B. Install valves and valve boxes where shown on Drawings. Set valves plumb and as detailed. Center valve boxes on valves. Carefully tamp earth around each valve box for minimum radius of 4 feet, or to undisturbed trench face when less than 4 feet. Install valves completely closed when placed in water line.

C. For pipe section of each riser, use only 6 inch, ductile iron Class 51, or DR18 PVC pipe cut to proper length. Riser must be installed to allow complete access for operation of valve. Assemble and brace box in vertical position as indicated on Drawings.

3.03 DISINFECTION AND TESTING

A. Assist Project Manager with disinfection of valves and appurtenances as required by Section 02514 - Disinfection of Water Lines and test as required by Section 02515 - Hydrostatic Testing of Pipelines.

B. Double-Disc Gate Valves: Apply hydrostatic test pressure equal to twice rated working pressure of valve between discs. Valve shall show no leakage through metal, flanged joints, or stem seals. Test at rated working pressure, applied between discs. Valve shall show no leakage through metal, flanged joints, or stem seals. Do not exceed leakage rate of 1 oz/hr/inch of nominal valve size.

C. Solid-Wedge Gate Valves: Apply hydrostatic pressure equal to twice rated working pressure of valve with both ends bulkheaded and gate open. Valve shall show no leakage through metal, flanged joints, or stem seals. Test at rated working pressure, applied through bulkheads alternately to each side of closed gate with opposite side open for inspection. Valve shall show no leakage through metal, flanged joints, or stem-seals. Do not exceed leakage rate of 1 oz/hr/inch of nominal valve size.

D. Repair or replace valves which exceed leakage rate.

3.04 PAINTING OF VALVES

A. Paint valves in vaults, stations, and above ground with approved paint.

END OF SECTION

Section 02522

BUTTERFLY VALVES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Butterfly valves.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for butterfly valves 20 inches in diameter and smaller will be on unit price basis for each.

2. Payment for butterfly valves 24 inches in diameter and greater is on a unit price basis. Unit price includes cost of required manhole for butterfly valves 30 inches in diameter and greater and box for butterfly valves 24 inches in diameter.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASME B 16.1 - Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings.

B. ASTM A 126 - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges, and Pipe Fittings.

C. AWWA C 504 - Standard for Rubber-Seated Butterfly Valves.

D. AWWA C 550 - Standard for Protective Interior Coatings for Valves and Hydrants.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturer's product data for proposed valves and actuators for approval.

C. Submit manufacturer's affidavit for proposed valves and actuators certifying compliance with specifications.

D. Submit manufacturer's affidavit that butterfly valves were manufactured in the United States, and conform to applicable requirements of AWWA C 504 and that they have been satisfactorily tested in the United States in accordance with AWWA C 504 using test pressure of 150 psi in both directions. Submit Proof-of-Design and hydrostatic testing procedure in accordance with AWWA C 504.

E. Submit manufacturer's affidavit that coating for interior surfaces of valves conform to applicable requirements of AWWA C 550. Submit results of holiday test and thickness measurements of coatings.

F. Furnish, at time of delivery, affidavit of compliance, as specified in Section 6.3 of AWWA C 504 certifying compliance with applicable portion of AWWA C 504 and modification or supplements herein. Furnish certified drawings and material test records by manufacturer covering items included in Section 4.3 of AWWA C 504, for review. Furnish certified copies of test reports covering items in Sections 4.5.8.5.5, 4.5.8.5.8 and 5.2.1 through 5.2.4.3 of AWWA C 504 for review.

G. Submit data indicating maximum torque required to open valve, maximum torsional strength of shaft and torque output of actuator.

H. Provide submittal information on CD-ROM in Adobe portable document format (*.PDF).

I. Include number of turns to operate valves to fully open/closed.

1.05 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform valve leakage tests in both directions at 150 psi in factory and field. Hydrostatic field tests of 150 psi shall be made against dished head plug or similar arrangement.

B. For purposes of interpreting referenced AWWA tests, the following shall apply: Shutoff pressure is 150 psi; cycle consists of rotating disc from fully opened to fully closed position, for valves larger than 72 inches, proof of design shall require 1000 cycles and shall be performed on valve greater than 72 inches of like design and construction. When proof of design tests are performed on valve delivered to job site, replace disc, bushing, shaft and seals with new and unused items, and test and certify as described above.

C. Hydrostatic Testing by Manufacturer:

1. Hydrostatic testing to be witnessed by Project Manager prior to shipment of valves. Provide minimum 4 weeks notice to Project Manager to schedule witness testing. When possible, maximize number of valves to be tested during a plant visit, no more than two visits will be allowed per project to witness test valves,

unless otherwise approved by Project Manager. City will pay expenses for each visit up to total of two visits incurred by Project Manager to witness testing of each grouping of valve(s) per project. Expenses for subsequent or extended visits by Project Manager for defective valves, improper scheduling or valve failures are to be paid by Contractor. Witness of hydrostatic testing by Project Manager will only be in regards to compliance with this specification and will not constitute approval by Project Manager nor relieve Contractor of obligations to comply with contract documents.

2. Document serial number on valve at time of testing and reflect in certified test records furnished to Project Manager. Identification plate must be permanently affixed to valve and actuator prior to hydrostatic testing.

3. Hydrostatic testing to conform to AWWA C504 except as modified below:

   a. Install actuator prior to hydrostatic testing. Test actuator to verify actual number of turns match manufacturer's published number of turns. Verify valve stops are in correct positions.

   b. Fully open and close valve prior to performing shell test and prior to each leakage test.

   c. Perform shell test first.

   d. When tested with water, adequately dry seat and disc.

   e. When tested with air, fill top of valve with water to aid in viewing possible leakage.

   f. Pressure Gauges: Calibrated within past 12 months; 0-500 psi range in increments of 5 psi, present calibration certificates prior to hydrostatic testing.

   g. If seat adjustment is required during hydrostatic testing, perform valve leakage test again in both directions. Once seat adjustment is made, fully open and fully close valve three (3) times, and repeat leakage test.

4. Field Testing

   a. When valve arrives at the job site, Contractor is to operate valve fully open and closed twice in presence of Project Manager. Document number of turns to open and close each time.

   b. Install operator nut plum.

c. After valve is installed, repeat the operation test and document number of turns in presence of Project Manager.

d. Manufacturer's representative must be present to witness the operation test again at the substantial walk thru. Verify valve operate fully open/closed twice at the appropriate number of turns.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 VALVES AND ACTUATORS

A. Butterfly Valves and Actuators: Provide approved butterfly valves and actuators. Conform to AWWA C 504, except as modified or supplemented herein. ,

B. If type of valve is not indicated on Drawings, use butterfly valves for line valve sizes 24-inch and larger. When type of valve is specified on Drawings, no substitute will be allowed, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

C. Butterfly valves shall be short-body, flanged design and installed at locations as shown on Drawings.

D. Direct-bury valves and valves in subsurface vaults shall open clockwise. Above-ground and plant valves shall open counterclockwise.

E. Provide flanged joints when valve is connected to steel or PCCP.

F. Butterfly Valves and Actuators (Additional Requirements for Large Diameter Water Lines):

1. Provide valves from approved manufacturer [(1)]. Provide all valves for single project, from same manufacturer.
   [(1)] as modified for seat replacement in field for City of Houston

2. Valves larger than 72-inches in diameter design: allowable stresses at rated pressure not to exceed one-third of yield strength or one-fifth of ultimate strength of material used.

3. Provide manual actuators for single project, from same manufacturer.

4. Shaft connecting actuator to valve body must be fully enclosed. Bonnet and extension to be fully enclosed and watertight.

2.02 VALVE CONSTRUCTION

A. Valves: AWWA C 504, Class 150B. Body: Cast iron, ASTM A 126, Class B. Flanges: ASME B 16.1, Class 125 lb.

B. Discs for Butterfly Valves: Either cast iron or ductile iron. Valves greater than 54" in diameter must utilize flow through disc.

C. Seats: Buna-N or neoprene, and may be applied to disc or body. Seats shall be mechanically secured and may not rely solely on adhesive properties of epoxy or similar bonding agent to attach seat to body. Seats on disc shall be mechanically retained by stainless steel (18-8) retaining ring held in place by stainless steel (18-8) cap screws that pass through rubber seat for added retention. When seat is on disc, seat shall be retained in position by shoulders located on both disc and stainless-steel retaining ring. Mating surfaces for seats: Type 304 or 316, stainless steel and secured to disc by mechanical means. Sprayed-on or plated mating surfaces will not be allowed. Seat must be replaceable in field for valves greater than 30 inches in diameter. Valves with segmented retaining rings will not be accepted.

D. Coat interior wetted ferrous surfaces of valve, including disc, with epoxy suitable for potable water conditions. Epoxy, surface preparation, and epoxy application: In accordance with AWWA C 550 and coating manufacturer's recommendations. Provide three coats of two-component, high-build epoxy with minimum dry film thickness of 12 mils. Provide approved epoxy coating. Coatings shall be holiday tested and measured for thickness.

E. Valve shaft and keys: 24 inches in diameter and greater valves require a minimum of two (2) taper pins used for attaching valve shaft to valve disc, use of torque plug for purposes of attaching valve shaft to valve disc is not permitted: Type 316 stainless steel. Shaft Bearings: Stainless steel, bronze, nylon, or Teflon (supported by fiberglass mat or backing material with proven record of preventing Teflon flow under load) in accordance with AWWA C 504. Sinter stainless steel bearing material. Design valve shaft to withstand 3 times amount of torque necessary to open valve.

F. Packing: Self adjusting and wear compensating, full or split ring V-type, and replaceable without removing actuator assembly.

G. Retaining Hardware for Seats: Type 304 or 316 stainless steel. Nuts and screws used with clamps and discs for rubber seats shall be held securely with locktight, or other approved method, to prevent loosening by vibration or cavitational effects.

H. Valve disc shall seat in position at 90 degrees to pipe axis and shall rotate 90 degrees between full-open and tight-closed position. Install valves with valve shafts horizontal and convex side of disc facing anticipated direction of flow, except where shown otherwise on Drawings.

I. For valves utilizing retaining rings, tighten bolts to a uniform torque. Measure torque prior to testing valve.

2.03 VALVE ACTUATOR CONSTRUCTION

A. Provide actuators for valves with size based on line velocity of 12 feet per second and uni-directional service, and, unless otherwise shown on Drawings, equip with geared manual actuators. Provide fully enclosed and traveling-nut type, rack-and-pinion type, or worm-gear type for valves 20 inches and smaller. Provide worm-gear type for valves 24 inches and larger.

B. Provide actuator designed for installation with valve shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

C. Provide bonnet extensions, as required, between valve body and actuator. Space between actuator housing and valve body shall be completely enclosed so that no moving parts are exposed to soil or elements.

D. Provide oil-tight and watertight actuator housings for valves, specifically designed for buried service or submerged service when located in valve vaults, and factory packed with suitable grease.

E. Install valve position indicator on each actuator housing located above ground or in valve vaults. Valves shall be equipped with 2-inch actuator nut only.

F. Indicate direction of opening of valve on exposed visible part of assembly and cast direction of open on 2 inch nut on top of valve operator extension. Paint 2 inch actuator nut and extension shaft black when counter clockwise open and red when clockwise to open.

G. Design worm-gear or traveling-nut actuators to be self-locking and designed to transmit twice the required actuator torque without damage to faces of gear teeth or contact faces of screw or nut.

2.04 VALVE BOXES

A. Provide Standard Type "A" valve boxes conforming to requirements of Section 02085 - Valve Boxes, Meter Boxes, and Meter Vaults.

2.05 VALVE SERVICE MANHOLES

A. For large diameter water lines, provide manholes to dimensions shown on Drawings conforming to requirements of Section 02082 - Precast Concrete Manholes.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EARTHWORK

A. Conform to applicable provisions of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

3.02 SETTING VALVES AND VALVE BOXES

A. Prior to Hydrostatic testing of water line and valve:

1. Test valve by opening and closing valve at a minimum of two times to verify valve seats properly.

2. Verify number of turns from fully open to fully closed position is same as identified in manufacturer's submittal.

3. Adjust valve as required if number of turns do not match.

4. Remove foreign matter from within valves.

B. Install valves where shown on Drawings or as located by Project Manager. Use valve boxes for 16 inch and 24 inch valves. Set valves plumb and as detailed. Center valve boxes on valves. Carefully tamp earth around each valve box for minimum radius of 4 feet, or to undisturbed trench face when less than 4 feet.

C. Avoid disturbing or overstressing valve body when installing valves. Perform field adjustment of valves under pressure to ensure shutoff occurs in number of rotations as described in valves operation and maintenance manual.

D. Attach two four (4) foot lengths of pipe to each side of valve prior to installation in line.

E. Submit certification that large diameter valve was installed, adjusted, and exercised in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Manufacturer's certification shall state that all performance characteristics of large diameter valves, as installed, have been met. Adjustments made to valve, for any reason, must be made by manufacturer's representative.

3.03 DISINFECTION AND TESTING

A. Assist City with disinfection of valves and appurtenances as required by Section 02514 - Disinfection of Water Lines and test as required by Section 02515 - Hydrostatic Testing of Pipelines. Do not use valves for throttling without prior approval of manufacturer.

3.04 COATING OF PIPING

A. Coat valves located in vaults, stations, and above ground using approved paint. Minimum of two (2) coats shall be applied with minimum of three (3) mil thickness. Apply coating in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION

Section 02523

PRESSURE REDUCING VALVES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Pressure reducing valves (PRV).

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for pressure reducing valves is on unit price basis for each valve installed.

2. Payment includes vault, piping, manhole, fittings, and appurtenances necessary for complete installation of valve.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is a Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASME B 16.1 - Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings.

B. ASTM A 48 - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturer's product data for proposed valves for approval.

C. Submit design calculations and shop drawings for valve vaults and manholes, sealed by Engineer registered in the State of Texas.

1.05 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Submit manufacturer's affidavit that pressure reducing valves purchased for Work, were manufactured and tested in the United States, and conform to requirements of this Section.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Provide approved PRV with basket strainer in location and arrangement as shown on Drawings.

1. Valve body: Ductile iron with ASME B16.1, Class 125, flanges.

2. Valve cover: ASTM A 48 cast iron.

3. Valve internals:

a. Provide top and bottom single moving disc and diaphragm assembly.

b. Use flexible nylon fabric reinforced elastomer diaphragm integral with assembly.

c. Provide valve internal trim (seat ring, disc guide, and cover bearing) made of stainless steel.

d. Provide heat fusion bonded epoxy coating to internal and external surfaces of valve body including disc retainer and diaphragm washer. Holiday test coating applied to valve body.

e. Treat stem and seat with penetrative salt nitride process.

f. Use Xylan coated seat.

g. Do not use leather parts.

B. Control Tubing: Contain shutoff cocks with Y-strainer.

C. PRV: Equip with visual valve position indicator. Fit valve position indicator with air-bleed petcock. Initially set in field by authorized manufacturer's representative with 60 psi downstream pressure.

D. Provide basket strainer upstream of PRV as shown on Drawings.

1. Strainer body: Quick-opening type, fabricated-steel construction with ANSI B 16.1, Class 150, flanges.

2. Basket: Type 304, stainless steel.

3. Model: Provide basket compatible with the manufacturer of the pressure reducing valve. Hayward Model 90, or approved equal, for PRV 4 inches through 24 inches. Provide Hayward Model 510, or approved equal, for PRV 14 inches or greater when space limitations dictate use of smaller strainer housing.

E. Provide pressure reducing pilot that has adjustable range of 20 - 175 psi. Provide and install pilot system components according to manufacturer's recommendations unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

F. Valve Vaults: Provide as shown on Drawings and conforming to requirements of Section 02085 - Valve Boxes, Meter Boxes, and Meter Vaults.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EARTHWORK

A. Conform to applicable provisions of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

3.02 SETTING VALVES

A. Provide services of technical representative of valve manufacturer on site during installation of valves and to serve as adviser on aspects of installation. Take necessary precautions to protect pilot system during PRV installation.

B. Prior to installing valves, remove foreign matter from within valves. Inspect valves in open and closed position to verify that parts are in satisfactory working condition.

3.03 DISINFECTION AND TESTING

A. Disinfect valves and appurtenances as required by Section 02514 - Disinfection of Water Lines and test as required by Section 02515 - Hydrostatic Testing of Pipelines.

3.04 PAINTING OF PIPING AND VALVES

A. Paint piping and valves located in vaults, stations, and above ground using ACRO Paint No. 2215, or approved equal.

END OF SECTION

Section 02524

AIR RELEASE AND VACUUM RELIEF VALVES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Air release and vacuum relief valves.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for air release and vacuum relief valves is on unit price basis for each valve installed.

2. Payment includes manhole or vault (when required), fittings, vent piping and bollard(s) and appurtenances necessary for complete installation of valve.

3. Payment for valve assembly on aerial crossing includes fittings, anti-vandalism protection, freeze protection, vent piping and appurtenances necessary for complete installation of valve.

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM A 48 - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings.

B. ASTM A 126 - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges, and Pipe Fittings.

C. ASTM A 240 - Standard Specification for Heat-Resisting Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip for Pressure Vessels.

D. ASTM A 276 - Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes.

E. ASTM A 313 - Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Spring Wire.

F. ASTM B 584 - Standard Specification for Copper Alloy Sand Castings for General Applications.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturer's product data for proposed valves for approval.

1.05 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Provide manufacturer's affidavit that air release and vacuum relief valves purchased for Work, were manufactured and tested in United States, and conform to requirements of this Section.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 DESCRIPTION

A. Provide combination air valves designed to fulfill functions of air release (permit escape of air accumulated in line at high point of elevation while line is under pressure) and vacuum relief.

B. Provide inlet and outlet connections, and orifice as shown on Drawings.

C. Valve exterior: Painted with shop-applied primer suitable for contact with potable water.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Air Release Valves: Provide approved air release valves ASTM A 48, Class 30, cast iron; float and leverage mechanism with body and cover, ASTM A 240 or ASTM A 276 stainless steel; orifice and seat, stainless steel against Buna-N or Viton mechanically retained with hex head nut and bolt. Other valve internals shall be stainless steel or bronze.

B. Air Release and Vacuum Relief Valves: Provide single-body, standard combination valves or duplex-body custom combination valves as indicated on Drawings.

1. For 2 inch and 3 inch, single-body valves, provide inlet and outlet size as shown on Drawings and orifice sized for 100 psi working pressure.

a. Valve materials: body, cover, and baffle, ASTM A 48, Class 35, or ASTM A 126, Grade B cast iron; plug or poppet, ASTM A 276 stainless steel; float, ASTM A 240 stainless steel; seat, Buna-N; other valve internals, stainless steel.

2. For 3 inch and larger duplex body valves as shown on Drawings, provide approved air release valve.

   a. Air and vacuum valve materials: body and cover, ASTM A 48, Class 35, cast iron; float, ASTM A 240 stainless steel; seat, Type 304, stainless steel and Buna-N; other valve internals, stainless steel or bronze.

   b. Air release valve: Constructed as specified in paragraph above on Air Release Valves.

C. Vacuum Relief Valves: Provide approved air inlet vacuum relief valves with flanged inlet and outlet connections as shown on Drawings. Provide air release valves in combination with inlet and outlet, and orifice as shown on Drawings. Valve shall open under pressure differential not to exceed 0.25 psi.

1. Materials for vacuum relief valves: valve body, ASTM A 48, Class 35, cast iron; seat and plug, ASTM B 584 bronze, copper alloy 836; spring, ASTM A 313, Type 304, stainless steel; bushing, ASTM B 584 bronze, copper alloy 932; retaining screws, ASTM A 276, Type 304, stainless steel.

D. Manholes: As shown on Drawings conforming to requirements of Section 02082 - Precast Concrete Manholes.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EARTHWORK

A. Conform to applicable provisions of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

3.02 SETTING VALVES IN MANHOLES AND VAULTS

A. If required by Project Manager, provide services of technical representative of valve manufacturer available on site during installation of valves.

B. Prior to installing valves, remove foreign matter from within valves. Inspect valves in open and closed position to verify that parts are in satisfactory working condition.

C. Install valves and valve manholes and vaults where indicated on Drawings or as located by Project Manager. Set manholes and vaults plumb and as detailed. Center manholes on valves. Compact cement-stabilized sand around each manhole and vault for minimum radius of 4 feet, or to undisturbed trench face when less than 4 feet. Provide above-ground vents for manholes and vaults as indicated on Drawings.

3.03 DISINFECTION AND TESTING

A. Assist City with disinfection of valves and appurtenances as required by Section 02514 - Disinfection of Waterlines and test as required by Section 02515 - Hydrostatic Testing of Pipelines.

3.04 PAINTING OF PIPING AND VALVES

A. Paint piping and valves located in manholes, stations, and above ground using approved paint.

END OF SECTION

Section 02525

TAPPING SLEEVES AND VALVES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Tapping sleeves and valves for connections to existing water system.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment is on unit price basis for each tap installed.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

3. For water lines 4-inches and greater, no payment will be made until coupon (cut out portion of pipe tapped) is delivered to City.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM A240 - Standard Specification for Heat-Resisting Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels

B. ASTM A193 Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for High-Temperature Service.

C. ASTM A194 Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts for Bolts for High-Pressure or High-Temperature Service

D. AWWA C 110 - Standard for Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings, 3 in. through 48 in., for Water and other Liquids.

E. AWWA C 200 - Standard for Steel Water Pipe - 6 in. and Larger.

F. AWWA C 207 - Standard for Steel Pipe Flanges for Waterworks Service - Sizes 4 in. Through 144 in.

G. AWWA C 500 - Standard for Metal Seated Gate Valves, for Water Supply Service.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit results of tapping sleeves NPT test opening.

C. Submit manufacturer's affidavit as required in Section 02521 - Gate Valves.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Ship steel sleeves in wooden crates that provide protection from damage to epoxy coating during transport and storage.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Tapping Sleeves:

1. Tapping Sleeve Bodies: AWWA C 110 cast or ductile iron or AWWA C 200 carbon steel in two sections to be bolted together with high-strength, corrosion-resistant, low-alloy steel bolts with mechanical joint ends.

2. Branch Outlet of Tapping Sleeve:

a. Flanged, machined recess, AWWA C 207, Class D, ANSI 150 pound drilling.

b. Gasket: Affixed around recess of tap opening to prevent rolling or binding during installation.

3. Use cast iron split sleeve where fire service from 6-inch water line is approved.

B. Welded-steel tapping-sleeve bodies may be used in lieu of cast or ductile iron bodies for following sizes and with following restrictions:

1. Flange: AWWA C 207, Class D, ANSI 150 pound drilling.

2. Gasket: Affixed around recess of tap opening to prevent rolling or binding during installation.

3. Steel sleeves are restricted to use on pipe sizes 6 inches and larger.

4. Body: Heavy, welded-steel construction; top half grooved to retain neoprene O-ring seal permanently against outside diameter of pipe.

5. Bolts: AWWA C 500 Section 3.5; coated with 100 percent vinyl resin or corrosive resistant material.

6. Steel Sleeves Finish: Fusion-bonded epoxy coated to minimum 12 mil thickness.

7. Finished Epoxy Coat: Free of laminations and blisters; and remain pliant and resistant to impact with non-peel finish.

8. Provide approved steel tapping sleeves

9. Tapping Sleeves: Provide with 3/4-inch NPT test opening for testing prior to tapping. Provide 3/4-inch bronze plug for opening.

10. Do not use steel sleeves for taps greater than 75 percent of pipe diameter.

C. Stainless Steel tapping-sleeve bodies and flange may be used in lieu of cast or ductile iron bodies for following sizes and with following restrictions:

1. Flange: ASTM A240 Stainless Steel, Type 304, ANSI 150 pound drilling.

2. Gasket: Full circumferential, affixed around recess of tap opening to prevent rolling or binding during installation, compounded for water and sewer service.

3. Stainless Steel sleeves are restricted to use on pipe sizes 4 inches and larger.

4. Body: ASTM A240 Stainless Steel, Type 304.

5. Bolts: ASTM A193 Stainless Steel, Type 304.

6. Nuts: ASTM A194 Stainless Steel, Type 304

.

7. Branch Outlet: Heavy Stainless Steel Pipe

8. Provide approved stainless steel tapping sleeves.

9. Do not use stainless steel sleeves for taps greater than 75 percent of pipe diameter.

C. Tapping Valves: Meet requirements of Section 02521 - Gate Valves with following exceptions:

1. Inlet Flanges:

a. AWWA C 110; Class 125.

b. AWWA C 110; Class 150 and higher: Minimum 8-hole flange.

2. Outlet: Standard mechanical or push-on joint to fit any standard tapping machine.

3. Valve Seat Opening: Accommodate full-size shell cutter for nominal size tap without contact with valve body; double disc.

D. Valve Boxes: Standard Type "A" valve boxes conforming to requirements of Section 02085 - Valve Boxes, Meter Boxes, and Meter Vaults.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 APPLICATION

A. Install tapping sleeves and valves at locations and of sizes shown on Drawings. Install sleeve so valve is in horizontally level position unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

B. Clean tapping sleeve, tapping valve, and pipe prior to installation and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Hydrostatically test installed tapping sleeve to 150 psig for minimum of 15 minutes. Inspect sleeve for leaks, and remedy leaks prior to tapping operation.

D. When tapping concrete pressure pipe, size on size, use shell cutter one standard size smaller than water line being tapped.

E. Do not use Large End Bell (LEB) increasers with next size tap unless existing pipe is asbestos-cement.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Verify outside diameter of pipe to be tapped prior to ordering sleeve.

B. Tighten bolts in proper sequence so that undue stress is not placed on pipe.

C. Align tapping valve properly and attach to tapping sleeve. Insert insulation sleeves into flange holes of tapping valve and pipe. Make insertions of sleeves on pipe side of tapping valve. Do not damage insulation sleeves during bolt tightening process.

D. Make tap with sharp, shell cutter:

1. For 12-inch and smaller tap, use minimum cutter diameter one-half inch less than nominal tap size.

2. For 16-inch and larger tap, use manufacturer's recommended cutter diameter.

E. Withdraw coupon and flush cuttings from newly-made tap.

F. Wrap:

1. For 12-inch and smaller tap, wrap completed tapping sleeve and valve in accordance with Section 02528 - Polyethylene Wrap.

2. For 16-inch and larger tap, apply coal tar epoxy around completed tapping sleeve and valve. The coal tar epoxy shall be applied with minimum of two (2) coats. Each coat of coal tar epoxy shall have minimum dry film thickness of 16 mils.

G. Place concrete thrust block behind tapping sleeve (not over tapping sleeve and valve).

H. Request inspection of installation prior to backfilling.

I. Backfill in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

END OF SECTION

Section 02526

WATER METERS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Water meters, submeters, and fire service meters.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices

1. Measurement for water meters is on unit price basis for installation of each meter type and size.

2. Payment includes vault, piping and appurtenances necessary for complete installation of meter.

3. Measurement for relocating and reinstalling meter with new box is on unit price basis for each meter relocated and reinstalled.

4. No separate payment for adjustment of meter or meter box unless otherwise shown in Drawings.

5. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work is in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASME B 16.1 - Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings.

B. AWWA C 510 - Standard for Double Check Valve Backflow - Prevention Assembly.

C. AWWA C 700 - Standard for Cold-Water Meters - Displacement Type.

D. AWWA C 701 - Standard for Cold-Water Meters - Turbine Type for Customer Service.

E. AWWA C 702 - Standard for Cold-Water Meters - Compound Type.

F. AWWA C 703 - Standard for Cold-Water Meters - Fire Service Type.

G. AWWA Manual M6 - Water Meters - Selection, Installation, Testing, and Maintenance.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit written certification of calibration and test results.

C. Submit manufacturer's certification that meters meet applicable requirements of this Specification Section.

D. Submit accuracy registration test certification from manufacturer for each 3-inch through 10-inch diameter meter.

1.05 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Submit manufacturer's warranty against defects in materials and workmanship for one year from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Provide vendor's unconditional guarantee that performance of each meter meets applicable AWWA standards and AWWA Manual M6 as follows:

1. Displacement type: 10 years from installation or register registration shown below, whichever comes first.

Size (inch)	Registration (million gallons)
5/8, 3/4	1.5
1	2.5
1-1/2	5.0
2	10.5

2. Turbine type: 1 year from date of installation.

3. Compound type: 1 year from date of installation.

4. Fire service type: 1 year from date of installation.

Operations of hermetically sealed register, 5/8-inch to 2-inch diameter, shall be unconditionally guaranteed for 15 years.

C. Provide manufacturer's unconditional guarantee for each sealed register against leakage, fogging, discoloration and stoppage for 15 years from date of installation.

D. Vendor may replace meters that become defective within guarantee period with meters that comply with this Specification. City will return defective meters to vendor at expense. Meters repaired or replaced under this guarantee must meet accuracy limits for new meters upon receipt and accuracy limits for remaining period of initial guarantee.

1.06 EASEMENT REQUIREMENTS

A. Install 2-inch and smaller water meters and shut-off valves (stop boxes) at right-of-way line when possible. Otherwise, install within 5 foot by 5 foot water meter easement.

B. Except for 10-inch fire service compound water meters, install 3-inch and larger water meters within minimum of 10 foot by 20 foot water meter easement.

C. Install 10-inch fire service proportional or compound water meters within minimum of 10-foot by 25-foot water meter easement.

D. Locate water meter easements contiguous with public right-of-way unless approved by Project Manager. Provide minimum fifteen foot wide access easement when not contiguous with public right-of-way.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 GENERAL

A. Provide meters of type and size as indicated on Drawings, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Provide bolted split casings. Main casings of meters and external fasteners: Copper alloy with minimum 75 percent copper for 5/8 inch to 2 inches, bronze or cast iron, hot-dipped galvanized or epoxy coating for 3 inches and larger.

C. Straightening Vanes: Non-corrosive material compatible with case material.

D. Intermediate gear train shall not come into contact with water and shall operate in suitable lubricant.

E. Registers: Automatic Meter Reading (AMR) type that provides pulse, contact closure, piezo switch or encoder generated output signal, compatible with City's radio and telephone AMR systems. Provide minimum 12-foot wire when permanently connected to register. Lens: impact resistant. Register box: tamper resistant by means of tamper screw or plug: Register: permanently sealed, straight-reading, center-sweep test hand, magnetic driven, U.S. gallons. Digits: 6, black in color, with lowest registering 3 digits (below 1,000-gallon registration) having contrasting digit and background color. Register capacity of meters: 9.99 million gallons for 5/8 inch to 2 inches and 999.999 million gallons for 3 inches and larger.

F. Connections: 5/8 inch to 1 inch: threads at each end; 1-1/2 to 2 inches: 2-bolt oval flanges each end; 3 inches and larger: flange at each end.

G. Stamp manufacturer's meter serial number on outer case. Stamp manufacturer's meter serial number on outside of register lid when provided. Manufacturer's serial numbers shall be individual and not duplicated.

H. Meters: Provide approved meters equip with AMR type register to connect to City of Houston's AMR system.

I. Manufacturing Quality Control shall permit successful interchangeability from one meter to another of same size including registers, measuring chambers and units, discs or pistons as units, change gears, bolts, nuts, and washers without affecting accuracy of new meter.

J. For water meter vaults provide:

1. 1/4-inch steel or aluminum with stainless steel hinge pins. Door shall open to 90 degrees and automatically lock in that position.
2. Provide approved meter vault covers.

2.02 METER APPLICATIONS

A. Sizes 5/8-inch to 2-inch Meters: Displacement type (except for constant flow where 2-inch turbine may apply).

B. Sizes 3-inch and above Meters:

1. Turbines:

Processing plants
Manufacturing facilities
Lawn sprinkler systems
Effluent water in treatment plants
Booster (pump) stations
Level controlled tank filling operations
Fire hydrants (transients)
Inter-systems sale or transfer
Sewer credit/sub-meter

2. Compounds:

Multi-family dwellings
Motels and hotels
Hospitals
Schools

Restaurants
Office buildings
Dormitories, nursing homes, department stores, shopping malls, and other commercial establishments

Note: Provide fire service type for sizes larger than 6 inches.

3. Fire Service Type: For designated fire protection lines. Provide proportional or compound type fire service meter assembly (AWWA C 703) when customer elects to use combination of potable and fire protection services in lieu of separate domestic meters and fire services.

2.03 MATERIALS

A. Cold-Water Meters:

1. Displacement Type: AWWA C 700; sizes 5/8 inch up to and including 2 inches; oscillating disc or piston of magnetic drive type; bolted split-case design, with either being removable.

2. Turbine Type: AWWA C 701; Class II; sizes 3 inches through 10 inches; flanged; straight-through measuring chamber; rotor construction: polypropylene or similar non-rubber material with specific gravity of approximately 1.0, equipped with near frictionless replaceable bearings in turbine working against rotor shaft positioned thrust bearing. Transient/Fire Hydrant Meter Inlet: Female fitting for attachment to hose nozzle with National Standard Fire hose thread. Outlet: 2-inch nipple with National Pipe Thread. Include restriction plate to limit flow through meter to 400 gpm at 65 psi.

3. Compound Type: AWWA C 702; sizes 2 inches through 6 inches. Measuring chambers: For use in continuous operation; separate units of copper alloy (minimum 84 percent copper) or approved polymer material, inert in corrosive potable water; with centering device for proper positioning. Measuring pistons: Non-pilot type with division plates of rubber covering vulcanized to stainless steel or other approved material of sufficient thickness to provide minimum piston oscillation noise. Measuring discs: Flat or conical type, one piece, mounted on monel or 316 stainless steel spindle. Measuring chamber strainer screen area: Twice area of main case inlet.

4. Fire-Service Type: sizes 4 inches through 10 inches; turbine-type, compound type, proportional type; AWWA C 703, with separate check valve conforming to AWWA C 510. Determine size of fire meter by adding fire flow and domestic flow.

2.04 STRAINERS

A. Displacement Potable Water Meters 5/8 inch through 2 inches: Self-straining by means of annular space between measuring chamber and external case or with strainer screens installed

in meter. Provide rigid screens which fit snugly, are easy to remove, with effective straining area at least double that of main case inlet.

B. Potable Water Meters 2-inch diameter and larger: Equip with separate external strainer with bronze body for diameters less than 8 inches. 8-inch diameter and larger may be cast iron, hot-dipped galvanized or epoxy coating. Strainers: Bolted to inlet side of meter, detachable from meter, easily removable lid. Strainer screen: Made of rounded cast bronze, stainless steel wire, having nominal screen size of 3-1/2 mesh-per-inch (U.S. Series) not less than 45 percent clear area.

C. Provide separate approved external strainers (when required by meter manufacturer) approved for use in fire service metered connections by Underwriters Laboratories. Bodies: Cast iron or copper alloy. Ends: Flanged in accordance with ASME B 16.1, Class 125. Provide stainless steel basket. Strainers shall be detachable from meter.

2.05 CONNECTIONS AND FITTINGS

A. Provide pipe for connections in accordance with Section 02501 - Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings and Section 02506 - Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe. Use restrained joints and flanged joints only.

B. Fittings:

1. For meters 2 inches and smaller: Same type of fittings as Outlet End fittings for Curb Stop in accordance with Section 02512 - Water Tap and Service Line Installation.

2. For meters 3 inches and larger: Restrained ductile iron; push-on bell joints or mechanical joint fittings between water line and meter vault; Class 125 flanged inside meter vaults; cement mortar lined and sealed.

2.06 LAYING LENGTHS

A. Minimum laying lengths for meter and standard strainer shall be as shown on Drawings.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 TAPPING AND METER SERVICE INSTALLATION

A. Refer to Section 02525 - Tapping Sleeves and Valves for tapping requirements.

B. Meter Service Line:

1. Use pipe and fittings conforming to requirements of Section 02501 - Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings, or Section 02506 - Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe.

2. Limit pulling and deflecting of joints to limits recommended by manufacturer.

3. Make vertical adjustments with offset bends where room will permit. Minimize number of bends.

4. Provide minimum of ten pipe diameters of straight pipe length upstream and downstream of meter vault.

3.02 METER FITTING HOOKUP

A. Support meter piping and meter, level and plumb, during installation. Support meters 3 inches and larger with concrete at minimum of two locations.

B. Use round flanged fittings inside meter box or vault except for mechanical joint to flange adapter. Provide full-face 1/8-inch black neoprene or red rubber gasket material on flanged joints. Provide bolts and nuts made from approved corrosion-resistant material.

C. Tighten bolts in proper sequence and to correct torque.

D. Visually check for leaks under normal operating pressure following installation. Repair or replace leaking components.

3.03 METER BOX AND VAULT INSTALLATION

A. Conform to requirements of Section 02085 - Valve Boxes, Meter Boxes, and Meter Vaults.

B. Perform adjustment to existing meter in accordance with Section 02085 - Valve Boxes, Meter Boxes, and Meter Vaults.

3.04 TESTING

A. Accuracy registration tests will be conducted in accordance with latest revision of AWWA standard for type and size of meter.

1. Tests will be run by City of Houston on meters prior to installation at City's meter repair shop. Meters 2 inches and smaller will be tested at random at City's discretion. All 3 inches and larger meters will be tested.

2. Accuracy of displacement meters during guarantee period shall be as follows:

a. Initial period: of 18 months from date of shipment or 12 months from date of installation: 98.5% to 101.5% at standard and minimum flow rates; 98% to 101% at low flow rates.

b. Second period: AWWA new meter accuracy as tested below.

Meter Size (inches)	GUARANTEE PERIOD Age of Meter Years	Or	Million* Gallons	TEST FLOW RATE Minimum Rate (gpm)
5/8	>1 to <5		0.5	1/4
1	>1 to <5		1.0	3/4
1-1/2	>1 to <5		2.5	1-1/2
2	>1 to <5		5.5	2

* Total registration.

c. Third period: AWWA new meter accuracy for standard flow rates and AWWA repair meter accuracy for minimum flow rate as tested below.

Meter Size (inches)	GUARANTEE PERIOD Age of Meter Years	or	Million* Gallons	TEST FLOW RATE Standard Flow Rates (gpm)	and	Minimum Rate (gpm)
5/8	>5 to <10		1.5	2-15		1/4
1	>5 to <10		2.5	4-40		3/4
1-1/2	>5 to <10		5.0	8-50		1-1/2
2	>5 to <10		10.0	15-100		2

* Total registration.

3. Minimal acceptable accuracy in percent of low flow registration for turbine meters:

Meter Size (inches)	Minimum Flow (gpm)	% Accuracy Required
2	3	95
3	5	95
4	15	95
6	20	95
8	20	95
10	30	95

END OF SECTION

Section 02527

POLYURETHANE COATINGS ON STEEL OR DUCTILE IRON PIPE

PART 1 G E N E R AN L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Two-component polyurethane coating system for use as external coating for steel or ductile iron pipe.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for work performed under this Section. Include cost of polyurethane coatings in contract unit prices for steel pipe or ductile iron pipe.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AWWA C 210 - Standard for Liquid Epoxy Coating Systems for the Interior and Exterior of Steel Water Pipelines.

B. ASTM D 522 - Standard Test Method for Mandrel Bend Test of Attached Organic Coatings.

C. SSPC-PA 2 - Measurement of Dry Paint Thickness with Magnetic Gauges.

D. SSPC-PA Guide 3 - A Guide to Safety in Paint Application.

E. SSPC-PS Guide 17.00 - Guide for Selecting Urethane Painting Systems.

F. SSPC-PS10 - Near-White Blast Cleaning.

1.04 SAFETY

A. Secure, from manufacturer, Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) for polyurethane coatings and repair materials listed in this Section.

B. Safety requirements stated in this specification and in related sections apply in addition to applicable federal, state and local rules and regulations. Comply with instructions of coating manufacturer and requirements of insurance underwriters.

C. Follow handling and application practices of SSPC-PA Guide 3; SSPC-PS Guide 17.00; Coating Manufacturer's Material Safety Data Sheet.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit coating manufacturer's catalog sheets and technical information for approval, prior to delivery of pipe.

C. Obtain from coating manufacturer and submit coating "affidavit of compliance" to requirements of this Section stating that coatings were applied in factory and in accordance with manufacturer's minimum requirements.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Use standard containers to prevent gelling, thickening deleteriously or forming of gas in closed containers within period of one year from date of manufacture.

B. Label each container of separately packaged component clearly and durably to indicate date of manufacture, manufacturer's batch number, quantity, color, component identification and designated name or formula specification, number of coatings together with special instructions. Do not use coating components older than one year.

C. Deliver coating materials to pipe manufacturer in sealed containers showing designated name, batch number, color, date of manufacture and name of coating manufacturer.

D. Store material onsite in enclosures, out of direct sunlight in warm, ventilated and dry area.

E. Prevent puncture, inappropriate opening or other action which may lead to product contamination.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 COATING MATERIAL

A. CORROPIPE II PW - TOUCHUP (two-component) or approved equal; mix in accordance with coating manufacturer's recommendations.

1. For areas less than or equal to 6 inches in diameter, brush apply.

2. For areas greater than 6 inches in diameter, spray apply.

B. Coating System: Use Type V system which is 2-package polyisocyanate, polyol-cured urethane coating, mixed in 1:1 ratio at time of application. Components shall be balanced viscosities in their liquid state and not require agitation during use.

C. Exterior Coating Material: CORROPIPE II-TX and Joint Coating Material CORROPIPE II-PW, manufactured by Madison Chemical Industries, Inc.

D. Internal Coating Material: Joint Coating Material CORROPIPE II-PW, manufactured by Madison Chemical Industries, Inc

E. Cured Coating Properties:

1. Conversion to Solids by Volume: 97 percent plus or minus 3 percent.

2. Temperature Resistance: Minus 40 degrees F and plus 130 degrees F.

3. Minimum Adhesion: 500 psi, when applied without primer to ductile iron pipe which has been blasted to comply with SSPC-SP 10.

4. Cure Time: For handling in 1 minute at 120 degrees F, and full cure within 7 days at 70 degrees F.

5. Maximum Specific Gravities: Polyisocyanate resin, 1.20. Polyol resin, 1.15.

6. Minimum Impact Resistance: 80 inch-pounds using 1-inch diameter steel ball where coating is applied at 30 mils to ductile iron pipe surface which has been blasted to SSPC No. 10 finish.

7. Minimum Tensile Strength: 2,000 psi.

8. Hardness: 55 plus or minus 5 Shore D at 70 degrees F.

9. Flexibility Resistance: ASTM D 522 using 1-inch mandrel. Allow coating to cure for 7 days. Perform testing on test coupons held for 15 minutes at temperature extremes specified in this Paragraph.

2.02 REPAIR AND TOUCHUP MATERIAL

A. CORROPIPE II PW (Two-component, brush applied, or approved equal). Mix in accordance with coating manufacturer's recommendations.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. Remove deposits of oil, grease or other organic contaminates before blast cleaning by using solvent wash as specified in SSPC-PA Guide 3. Clean and dry surfaces making them completely dry, free of moisture, dust, grit, oil, grease or other deleterious substances prior to application of coating.

B. Exterior and Interior Surfaces: SSPC-SP10, near-white metal blast cleaning. Blast with clean, hard, sharp cutting abrasives with no steel or cast iron shot in mix.

C. Ductile Iron Pipe: Prior to start of production blasting, prepare specimens for white metal blast and near-white metal blast using equipment and abrasives proposed for work. During preparation of specimens, Change blasting intensity and abrasive as necessary to provide degree of cleaning required by SSPC-SP10, except that color of blasted substrate is not expected to match color of blasted steel. After examination and concurrence by Project Manager, production blasting may begin. Monitor and control production blasting so that production pipe surfaces match surface of approved blasting specimens.

3.02 THICKNESS

A. External Coatings: Minimum DFT of 25 mils (0.025 inch).

B. Internal Coatings: Minimum DFT of 35 mils.

C. Thickness Determinations: Use Type 1 magnetic thickness gauge as described in SSPC-PA2 specification. Individual readings below 90 percent of specified minimum are not acceptable. Average individual spot readings (consisting of three point measurements within 3 inches of each other) less than 95 percent of minimum are not acceptable. Average of all spot readings less than minimum thickness specified are not acceptable.

3.03 FACTORY APPLICATION OF POLYURETHANE COATING

A. Equipment: Two-component, 1:1 mix ratio, heated airless spray unit.

B. Temperature: Minimum 5 degrees F above dew point temperature. Temperature of surface shall not be less than 60 degrees F during application.

C. Humidity: Heating of pipe surfaces may be required to meet requirements of Paragraph 2.01E, Cured Coating Properties, when relative humidity exceeds 80 percent.

D. Do not thin or mix resins; use as received. Store resins at temperature above 55 degrees F at all times.

E. Application: Conform to coating manufacturer's recommendations. Apply directly to substrate to achieve specified thickness. Multiple-pass, one-coat application process is permitted provided maximum allowable recoat time specified by coating manufacturer is not exceeded.

F. Recoat only when coating has cured less than maximum time specified by coating manufacturer. When coating has cured for more than recoat time, brush-blast or thoroughly sand coating surface. Blow-off cleaning using clean, dry, high pressure compressed air.

G. Cure at ambient temperature above 0 degrees F. Do not handle pipe until coating has been allowed to cure as follows:

Ambient Temperature	Minimum Full Cure Time
Over 70 degrees F	7 days
50 to 70 degrees F	9 days
0 to 50 degrees F	12 days

3.04 JOINTS

A. Apply coating to unlined pipe surfaces including inside of bell socket and outside of spigot.

B. Coating thickness on sealing areas of spigot end of pipe exterior: Minimum 8 mils (0.008 inch), maximum of 10 mils (0.010 inch). Maximum 10 mils may be exceeded in spigot end provided maximum spigot diameter as specified by pipe manufacturer is not exceeded.

3.05 INSPECTION

A. Project Manager may inspect coatings at coating applicator's facilities.

B. Secure approval of surface preparation by coating manufacturer's representative prior to coating application.

C. Holiday Inspection: Conform to AWWA C 210, Section 5.3.3.1. Follow coating manufacturer's recommendation. Conduct inspection any time after coating has reached initial cure. Repair in accordance with Paragraph 3.07, Repair and Field Touchup.

3.06 PIPE INSTALLATION

A. When required by Project Manager, provide services of manufacturer's representative for period of not less than 2 weeks at beginning of actual pipe laying operations to advise Contractor regarding installation including but not limited to handling and storing, cleaning and inspecting, coatings repairs, and general construction methods as to how they may affect pipe coatings.

B. Use nylon straps, padded lifts and padded storage skids. Field cuts should be kept to minimum. Repair damage to coating due to handling or construction practices. See Section 02501 - Ductile - Iron Pipe and Fittings and Section 02502 - Steel Pipe and Fittings for additional requirements.

C. Just before each section of pipe is to be placed into trench, conduct visual and holiday inspection. Repair defects in coating system before pipe is installed.

3.07 REPAIR AND FIELD TOUCHUP

A. Apply repair and touchup materials in conformance with factory application of polyurethane coating requirements specified in this Section, excluding equipment requirements.

B. Repair Procedure - Holidays:

1. Remove traces of oil, grease, dust, dirt, and other deleterious materials

2. Roughen area to be patched by sanding with rough grade sandpaper (40 grit).

3. Apply one coat of repair material described above. Work repair material into scratched surface by brushing.

C. Repair Procedure - Field Cuts or Large Damage:

1. Remove burrs from field cut ends or handling damage and smooth out edge of polyurethane coating.

2. Remove traces of oil, grease, dust, dirt, and other deleterious materials

3. Roughen area to be patched with rough grade sandpaper (40 grit). Feather edges and include overlap of 1 inch to 2 inches of roughened polyurethane in area to be patched.

4. Apply thick coat of repair material described above. Work repair material into scratched surface by brushing. Feather edges of repair material into prepared surface. Cover at least 1 inch of roughened area surrounding damage, or adjacent to field cut.

D. Repair Procedure - Thermite Brazed Connection Bonds:

1. Remove polyurethane coating with power wire brush from area on metal surface which is to receive thermite brazed connection.

2. Grind metal surface to shiny metal with power grinder and coarse grit grinding wheel.

3. Apply thermite-brazed connection using equipment, charge and procedure recommended by manufacturer of thermite equipment.

4. After welded surface has cooled to temperature below 130 degrees F, apply protective coating repair material to weld, exposed pipe surface and damaged areas of polyurethane coating.

5. Do not cover or backfill freshly repaired areas of coating at thermite-brazed connection until repair material has completely cured. Allow material to cure in conformance with manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION

Section 02528

POLYETHYLENE WRAP

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Polyethylene wrap to be used in open-cut construction for cast iron and ductile iron pipe when cathodic protection system is not required by Drawings.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for polyethylene wrap. Include cost of polyethylene wrap in unit price for pipes and fittings to be wrapped.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCE

A. ASTM D 1248 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Molding and Extrusion Materials For a Wire and Cable.

B. AWWA C 105 - Standard for Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe System.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit product data for proposed film and tape for approval.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Polyethylene Film: Tubular or sheet form without tears, breaks, holidays, or defects; conforming with requirements of AWWA C 105, 2.5 to 3 percent carbon black content, either low- or high-density:

1. Low-density polyethylene film. Low-density polyethylene film shall be manufactured of virgin polyethylene material conforming to following requirements of ASTM D 1248.

   a. Raw material.
      1. Type : I.

      2. Class: C (black).

      3. Grade: E-5.

      4. Flow rate (formerly melt index): 0.4 g/10 minute, maximum.

      5. Dielectric strength: Volume resistivity, 10^{15} ohm-cm, minimum.

   b. Physical properties.

      1. Tensile strength: 1,200 psi, minimum.

      2. Elongation: 300 percent, minimum.

      3. Dielectric strength: 800 V/mil thickness, minimum.

   c. Thickness: Low-density polyethylene film shall have normal thickness of 0.008 inch. Minus tolerance on thickness is 10 percent of nominal thickness.

2. High-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film. High-density, cross laminated polyethylene film shall be manufactured of virgin polyethylene material conforming to following requirements of ASTM D 1248

   a. Raw material.

      1. Type: III.

      2. Class: C (black).

      3. Grade: P33.

4. Flow rate (formerly melt index): 0.4 to 0.5g/10 minute, maximum.

5. Dielectric strength: Volume resistivity, 10^{15} ohm-cm, minimum.

b. Physical properties.

1. Tensile strength: 5000 psi, minimum.

2. Elongation: 100 percent, minimum.

3. Dielectric strength: 800 V/mil thickness, minimum.

c. Thickness: Film shall have nominal thickness of 0.004 inch. Minus tolerance of thickness is 10 percent of nominal thickness.

B. Polyethylene Tape: Provide 3-inch-wide, plastic-backed, adhesive tape; Paleocene No. 900, Scotchwrap No. 50, or approved equal.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Remove lumps of clay, mud, and cinders from pipe surface prior to installation of polyethylene encasement. Prevent soil or embedment material from becoming trapped between pipe and polyethylene.

B. Fit polyethylene film to contour of pipe to affect snug, but not tight fit; encase with minimum space between polyethylene and pipe. Allow sufficient slack in contouring to prevent stretching polyethylene where it bridges irregular surfaces, such as bell-spigot interfaces, bolted joints, or fittings, and to prevent damage to polyethylene due to backfilling operations. Secure overlaps and ends with adhesive tape to hold polyethylene encasement in place until backfilling operations are complete.

C. For installations below water table or in areas subject to tidal actions, seal both ends of polyethylene tube with adhesive tape at joint overlap.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Tubular Type (Method A):

1. Cut polyethylene tube to length approximately 2 feet longer than pipe section. Slip tube around pipe, centering tube to provide 1-foot overlap on each adjacent pipe section, and bunching it accordion-fashion lengthwise until it clears pipe ends.

2. Lower pipe into trench and make up pipe joint with preceding section of pipe. Make shallow bell hole at joints to facilitate installation of polyethylene tube.

3. After assembling pipe joint, make overlap of polyethylene tube. Pull bunched polyethylene from preceding length of pipe, slip it over end of adjoining length of pipe, and secure in place. Then slip end of polyethylene from adjoining pipe section over end of first wrap until it overlaps joint at end of preceding length of pipe. Secure overlap in place. Take up slack width at top of pipe to make snug, but not tight, fit along barrel of pipe, securing fold at quarter points.

4. Repair cuts, tears, punctures, or other damage to polyethylene. Proceed with installation of next section of pipe in same manner.

B. Tubular Type (Method B):

1. Cut polyethylene tube to length approximately 1 foot shorter than pipe section. Slip tube around pipe, centering it to provide 6 inches of bare pipe at each end. Take up slack width at top of pipe to make snug, but not tight, fit along barrel of pipe, securing fold at quarter points; secure ends.

2. Before making up joint, slip 3-foot length of polyethylene tube over end of preceding pipe section, bunching in accordion-fashion lengthwise. After completing joint, pull 3-foot length of polyethylene over joint, overlapping polyethylene previously placed on each adjacent section of pipe by at least 1 foot; make each end snug and secure.

3. Repair cuts, tears, punctures, or other damage to polyethylene. Proceed with installation of next section of pipe in same manner.

C. Sheet Type:

1. Cut polyethylene sheet to length approximately 2 feet longer than pipe section. Center length to provide 1-foot overlap on each adjacent pipe section, bunching sheet until it clears pipe ends. Wrap polyethylene around pipe so that sheet circumferentially overlaps top quadrant of pipe. Secure cut edge of polyethylene sheet at intervals of approximately 3 feet.

2. Lower wrapped pipe into trench and make up pipe joint with preceding section of pipe. Make shallow bell hole at joints to facilitate installation of polyethylene. After completing joint, make overlap and secure ends.

3. Repair cuts, tears, punctures, or other damage to polyethylene. Proceed with installation of next section of pipe in same manner.

D. Pipe-shaped Appurtenances: Cover bends, reducers, offsets, and other pipe-shaped appurtenances with polyethylene in same manner as pipe.

E. Odd-shaped Appurtenances: When it is not practical to wrap valves, tees, crosses, and other odd-shaped pieces in tube, wrap with flat sheet or split length of polyethylene tube by passing sheet around appurtenance and encasing it. Make seams by bringing edges together, folding over twice, and taping down. Tape polyethylene securely in place at valve stem and other penetrations.

F. Openings in Encasement: Create openings for branches, service taps, blow-offs, air valves, and similar appurtenances by making X-shaped cut in polyethylene and temporarily folding back film. After appurtenance is installed, tape slack securely to appurtenance and repair cut, as well as other damaged area in polyethylene, with tape. Service taps may also be made directly through polyethylene, with resulting damaged areas being repaired as specified.

G. Junctions between Wrapped and Unwrapped Pipe: Where polyethylene-wrapped pipe joins adjacent pipe that is not wrapped, extend polyethylene wrap to cover adjacent pipe for distance of at least 3 feet. Secure end with circumferential turns of tape. Wrap service lines of dissimilar metals with polyethylene or suitable dielectric tape for minimum clear distance of 3 feet away from cast or ductile iron pipe.

3.03 REPAIRS

A. Repair cuts, tears, punctures, or damage to polyethylene with adhesive tape or with short length of polyethylene sheet or cut open tube, wrapped around pipe to cover damaged area, and secured in place.

END OF SECTION

Section 02531

GRAVITY SANITARY SEWERS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Gravity sanitary sewers and appurtenances, including stacks and service connections.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for gravity sanitary sewers by open-cut or within Potentially Petroleum Contaminated Area (PPCA)is on linear foot basis, complete in place, including sewer pipe, connections to existing manholes, post installation television inspection and testing. Measurement will be taken along centerline of pipe from centerline to centerline of manholes.

2. Payment for television inspection of existing gravity sanitary sewer will be on a linear foot basis. Measurement will be taken along centerline of pipe from centerline to centerline of manholes. See Section 02558 - Cleaning and Television Inspection.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit proposed methods, equipment, materials and sequence of operations for sewer construction. Plan operations to minimize disruption of utilities to occupied facilities or adjacent property.

C. Test Reports: Submit test reports and inspection videos as specified in Part 3 of this Section. Video tapes become property of City.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications. Install sanitary sewer that is watertight both in pipe-to-pipe joints and in pipe-to-manhole connections. Perform testing in accordance with Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers.

B. Regulatory Requirements.

1. Install sewer lines to meet minimum separation distance from potable water line, as scheduled below. Separation distance is defined as distance between outside of water pipe and outside of sewer pipe. When possible, install new sanitary sewers no closer to water lines than 9 feet in all directions. Where this separation distance cannot be achieved, new sanitary sewers shall be installed as specified in this section.

2. Make notification to Project Manager when water lines are uncovered during sanitary sewer installation where minimum separation distance cannot be maintained.

3. Lay gravity sewer lines in straight alignment and grade.

1.05 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inspect pipe and fittings upon arrival of materials at job site.

B. Handle and store pipe materials and fittings to protect them from damage due to impact, shock, shear or free fall. Do not drag pipe and fittings along ground. Do not roll pipe unrestrained from delivery trucks.

C. Use mechanical means to move or handle pipe. Employ acceptable clamps, rope or slings around outside barrel of pipe and fittings. Do not use hooks, bars, or other devices in contact with interior surface of pipe to lift or move lined pipe.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 PIPE

A. Provide piping materials for gravity sanitary sewers of sizes and types indicated on Drawings or as specified.

B. Unlined reinforced concrete pipe is not acceptable.

2.02 PIPE MATERIAL SCHEDULE

A. Unless otherwise shown on Drawings, use pipe materials that conform to requirements specified in one or more of following Sections:

1. Section 02427 - Plastic Liner for Large-Diameter Concrete Sewers and Structures.

2. Section 02501 - Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings.

3. Section 02504 - Centrifugally Cast Fiberglass Pipe.

4. Section 02505 - High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Solid and Profile Wall Pipe.

5. Section 02506 - Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe.

6. Section 02508 - Extra Strength Clay Pipe.

7. Section 02611 - Reinforced Concrete Pipe.

B. Where shown on Drawings, provide pipe meeting minimum class, dimension ratio, or other criteria indicated.

C. Pipe materials other than those listed above shall not be used for gravity sanitary sewers.

2.03 APPURTENANCES

A. Stacks. Conform to requirements of Section 02534 - Sanitary Sewer Service Stubs or Reconnections.

B. Service Connections. Conform to requirements of Section 02534 - Sanitary Sewer Service Stubs or Reconnections.

C. Roof, street or other type of surface water drains shall not be connected or reconnected into sanitary sewer lines.

2.04 BEDDING, BACKFILL, AND TOPSOIL MATERIAL

A. Bedding and Backfill: Conform to requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities, Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials, and Section 02321 - Cement Stabilized Sand.

B. Topsoil: Conform to requirements of Section 02911 - Topsoil.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Prepare traffic control plans and set up street detours and barricades in preparation for excavation when construction will affect traffic. Conform to requirements of Section 01555 - Traffic Control and Regulation.

B. Provide barricades, flashing warning lights, and warning signs for excavations. Conform to requirements of Section 01555 - Traffic Control and Regulation. Maintain barricades and warning lights where work is in progress or where traffic is affected by work.

C. Perform work in accordance with OSHA standards. Employ trench safety system as specified in Section 02260 - Trench Safety System for excavations over 5 feet deep.

D. Immediately notify agency or company owning utility line which is damaged, broken or disturbed. Obtain approval from Project Manager and agency or utility company for repairs or relocations, either temporary or permanent.

E. Remove old pavements and structures including sidewalks and driveways in accordance with requirements of Section 02221 - Removing Existing Pavements and Structures.

F. Install and operate dewatering and surface water control measures in accordance with Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

G. Do not allow sand, debris or runoff to enter sewer system.

3.02 DIVERSION PUMPING

A. Install and operate required bulkheads, plugs, piping, and diversion pumping equipment to maintain sewage flow and to prevent backup or overflow. Obtain approval for diversion pumping equipment and procedures from Project Manager.

B. Design piping, joints and accessories to withstand twice maximum system pressure or 50 psi, whichever is greater.

C. No sewage shall be diverted into area outside of sanitary sewer.

D. In event of accidental spill or overflow, immediately stop overflow and take action to clean up and disinfect spillage. Promptly notify Project Manager so that required reporting can be made to Texas Natural Resources Conservation Commission and Environmental Protection Agency by Project Manager.

3.03 EXCAVATION

A. Earthwork. Conform to requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. Use bedding as indicated on Drawings.

B. Line and Grade. Establish required uniform line and grade in trench from benchmarks identified by Project Manager. Maintain this control for minimum of 100 feet behind and ahead of pipe-laying operation. Use laser beam equipment to establish and maintain proper line and grade of work. Use of appropriately sized grade boards which are substantially supported is also acceptable. Protect boards and location stakes from damage or dislocation.

C. Trench Excavation. Excavate pipe trenches to depths shown on Drawings and as specified in Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

3.04 PIPE INSTALLATION BY OPEN CUT

A. Install pipe in accordance with pipe manufacturer's recommendations and as specified in following paragraphs.

B. Install pipe only after excavation is completed, bottom of trench fine graded, bedding material is installed, and trench has been approved by Project Manager.

C. Install pipe to line and grade indicated. Place pipe so that it has continuous bearing of barrel on bedding material and is laid in trench so interior surfaces of pipe follow grades and alignment indicated. Provide bell holes where necessary.

D. Install pipe with spigot ends toward downstream end of flow such that water flows into bell and out the spigot.

E. Form concentric joint with each section of adjoining pipe so as to prevent offsets.

F. Keep interior of pipe clean as installation progresses. Remove foreign material and debris from pipe

G. Provide lubricant, place and drive home newly laid sections with come-a-long winches so as to eliminate damage to sections. Install pipe to "home" mark where provided. Use of back hoes or similar powered equipment will not be allowed unless protective measures are provided and approved in advance by Project Manager.

H. Keep excavations free of water during construction and until final inspection.

I. When work is not in progress, cover exposed ends of pipes with approved plug to prevent foreign material from entering pipe.

J. Where gravity sanitary sewer is to be installed under existing water line with separation distance of at least 2 feet and less than 9 feet, install new sewer pipe so that one full18 foot long pipe is centered on water line crossing. Embed sewer pipe in cement stabilized sand for minimum distance of 9 feet on each side of crossing.

K. Where gravity sanitary sewer is to be installed under existing water line with separation distance of less than 2 feet, install new sewer using pressure-rated pipe as shown on Drawings. Maintain minimum 6-inch separation distance.

L. Where the length of the stub is not indicated, install the stub to the right-of-way line and seal the free end with an approved plug.

3.05 PIPE INSTALLATION OTHER THAN OPEN CUT

A. For installation of pipe by augering, jacking, or tunneling, conform to requirements of specification sections on tunneling augering, jacking and microtunneling work as appropriate.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF APPURTENANCES

A. Service Connections. Install service connections to conform to requirements of Section 2534 - Sanitary Sewer Service Stubs or Reconnections.

B. Stacks. Construct stacks to conform to requirements of 02534 - Sanitary Sewer Service Stubs or Reconnections.

C. Construct manholes to conform to requirements of Section 02081 - Cast-in-Place Concrete Manholes, Section 02082 - Precast Concrete Manholes, and Section 02083 - Fiberglass Manholes, as applicable. Install frames, rings, and covers to conform to requirements of Section 02084 - Frames, Grates, Rings, and Covers.

3.07 INSPECTION AND TESTING

A. Visual Inspection: Check pipe alignment in accordance with Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers.

B. Mandrel Testing. Use Mandrel Test to test flexible pipe for deflection. Refer to Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers.

C. Pipe Leakage Test. After backfilling line segment and prior to tie-in of service connections, visually inspect gravity sanitary sewers where feasible, and test for leakage in accordance with Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers. Maintain piezometer installed to conform with Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water, until acceptance testing is completed.

3.08 BACKFILL AND SITE CLEANUP

A. Backfill and compact soil in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

B. Backfill trench in specified lifts only after pipe installation is approved by Project Manager.

C. Repair and replace removed or damaged pavement, curbs, gutters, and sidewalks as specified in Section 02951 - Pavement Repair and Resurfacing.

D. Provide hydromulch seeding in areas of commercial, industrial or undeveloped land use over surface of ground disturbed during construction and not paved or not designated to be paved. Grade surface at uniform slope to natural grade as indicated on Drawings. Provide minimum of 4 inches of topsoil as specified in Section 02911 - Topsoil and apply hydromulch according to requirements of Section 02921 - Hydromulch Seeding.

E. Provide sodding in areas of residential land use over surface of ground disturbed during construction and not paved or not designated to be paved. Grade surface at uniform slope to natural grade as indicated on Drawings. Provide minimum of 4 inches of topsoil per Section 02911 - Topsoil. Sod disturbed areas in accordance with Section 02922 - Sodding.

3.09 POST-INSTALLATION TELEVISION INSPECTION

A. Prior to final acceptance of newly constructed gravity sanitary sewers, perform cleaning and closed circuit television inspection. Cleaning shall include utilizing variable pressure water nozzles (3000 psi) and collection, removal, transportation and disposal of sand, debris, and liquid wastes to legal disposal sites.

B. Select and use closed-circuit television equipment that will produce color video tape. Produce video tape using pan-and-tilt, radial viewing, pipe inspection camera that pans plus and minus 275 degrees and rotates 360 degrees. Use camera with accurate footage counter which displays on monitor exact distance of camera from starting manhole. Use camera with camera height adjustment so that camera lens is always centered at one-half inside diameter, or higher, in pipe being televised. Provide lighting system that allows features and condition of pipe to be clearly seen. Reflector in front of camera may be necessary to enhance lighting in dark or large diameter pipe.

C. Perform television inspection of gravity sanitary sewers as follows:

1. Videos shall pan beginning and ending manholes to demonstrate that debris has been removed. Camera operator shall slowly pan each service connection and where sewer transitions from one pipe material to another.

2. Video tapes shall be continuous for pipe segments between manholes. Do not leave gaps in video taping of segment between manholes and do not show single segment on more than one video tape.

3. No flow is allowed in gravity sanitary sewer while performing post-installation television inspection.

D. Provide video tapes in VHS format, recorded at Standard Play (SP). Two labels are required. Place one label on spine and other on face of each video tape. Permanently label each video tape with following information.

Spine of Tape

Wastewater File No.: _____ Contractor's Name:
Inspection Type: [ ] Survey [ ] Pre-Installation [ ] Post-Installation
Tape No.: _____ Date Televised: _____ Date Submitted:
Basin No:

Face of Tape

Manhole No. From	Manhole No. To	Pipe Diameter	Pipe Length	Street
_____	_____	_____	_____	
_____	_____	_____	_____	
_____	_____	_____	_____	
_____	_____	_____	_____	
_____	_____	_____	_____	

E. For each video tape provide completed TV Inspection Report, as attached at end of this section. TV Inspection Report is written/narrated log of pipe conditions and service connections, indexed to footage counter.

F. Upon completion of video tape reviews by Project Manager, Contractor will be notified regarding final acceptance of sewer segment.

END OF SECTION

TELEVISION INSPECTION CODES

HEADER INFORMATION

LOCATION

A	STREET ROW, HEAVY TRAFFIC
B	STREET ROW, LIGHT TRAFFIC
C	EASEMENT, POOR ACCESS
D	EASEMENT, GOOD ACCESS
E	PARKING LOT, POOR ACCESS
F	PARKING LOT, GOOD ACCESS
G	ALLEY, POOR ACCESS
H	ALLEY, GOOD ACCESS
I	OPEN AREA, POOR ACCESS
J	OPEN AREA, GOOD ACCESS

SURFACE COVER

A	ASPHALT STREET
B	CONCRETE STREET
C	SHELL STREET
D	SIDEWALK
E	TREES/SHRUBS
F	CLOSE TO FENCE
G	OPEN AREA
H	MOVABLE BUILDING
I	UNMOVABLE BUILDING
J	OVERHEAD UTILITIES
K	WATERWAY OR RAILWAY
L	HIGHWAY OR RUNWAY
M	PIPE ABOVE GROUND

PIPE TYPE

ABS	ACRYLONITRILE BUTADIENE STYRENE
BRK	BRICK
CIP	CAST IRON PIPE
CMP	CORRUGATED METAL PIPE
CON	POURED IN PLACE CONCRETE
CPP	CURED IN PLACE PIPE
DIP	DUCTILE IRON PIPE
FRP	FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PIPE
PLP	PLASTIC LINED CONCRETE PIPE
PEP	POLYETHYLENE PIPE
PVC	POLYVINYLCHLORIDE PIPE
RCP	REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE
RPM	REINFORCED PLASTIC MORTAR PIPE
URC	UNREINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE
VCP	VITRIFIED CLAY PIPE

WEATHER
DRY - WET

CODE DESCRIPTIONS

CRACKS

RC-RADIAL LC-LONGITUDINAL

CODES	DESCRIPTION	USE IN
A (1)	< 1/2" W, < 1' L	CRK
B (2)	< 1/2" W, 1' - 2' L	CRK
C (3)	< 1/2" W, > 2' L	CRK
D (4)	> 1/2" W, < 1' L	CRK
E (5)	> 1/2" W, 1' - 2' L	CRK
F (6)	> 1/2" W, > 2' L	CRK
G (7)	HOLE IN PIPE - SMALL	
H (8)	PIPE MISSING - < 60°	
I (9)	PIPE MISSING - > 60°	

JOINTS

MJ - MISALIGNED JOINT BJ - BROKEN JOINT

CODES	DESCRIPTION	USE IN
A (3)	DRP JT > 90% CLEAR	MJ
B (6)	DRP JT 80 - 90% CLEAR	MJ
C (9)	DRP JT < 80% CLEAR	MJ
D (3)	SHF JT > 90% CLEAR	MJ
E (6)	SHF JT 80 - 90% CLEAR	MJ
F (9)	SHF JT < 80% CLEAR	MJ
G (1)	WD JT 2" - 3"	MJ
H (2)	WD JT 3" - 4"	MJ
I (3)	WD JT > 4"	MJ
J (2)	BRK JT - LIGHT	BJ
K (4)	BRK JT - MEDIUM	BJ
L (6)	BRK JT - HEAVY	BJ
N (0)	VISIBLE GASKET	MJ
O (0)	LEAKING AT JOINT	MJ

LATERALS (L)

CODES	DESCRIPTION
A (1)	PRT SER 0" - 1"
B (2)	PRT SER 1" - 2"
C (3)	PRT SER 2" - 3"
D (4)	PRT SER 3" +
E (5)	DEFECTIVE - SERVICE CONN.
F (6)	DEAD/UNUSED SERVICE
G (7)	FACTORY SERVICE
H (0)	PLUMBER SERVICE

ROOTS (R)

CODES	DESCRIPTION
A (1)	ROOTS - LIGHT
B (2)	ROOTS - MEDIUM
C (3)	ROOTS - HEAVY

DEBRIS (D)

CODES	DESCRIPTION
A	DEBRIS - LIGHT
B	DEBRIS - MEDIUM
C	DEBRIS - HEAVY
D	GREASE - LIGHT
E	GREASE - MEDIUM
F	GREASE - HEAVY

INFLOW/INFILTRATION (I)

CODES	DESCRIPTION
A (3)	I/I - LIGHT (0-1 GPM)
B (6)	I/I - MEDIUM (1-5 GPM)
C (9)	I/I - HEAVY (> 5 GPM)
D (2)	I/I - SOME EVIDENCE
E (4)	I/I - CONSIDERABLE EVIDENCE
F (6)	I/I - GREAT EVIDENCE
G (0)	I/I - NO EVIDENCE

ALIGNMENT (A)

CODES	DESCRIPTION
A	BEGIN 1/4 PIPE WATER
B	BEGIN 1/2 PIPE WATER
C	CAMERA UNDERWATER
D	END CAMERA UNDERWATER
E	END 1/2 PIPE WATER
F	END 1/4 PIPE WATER

STRUCTURAL

DS - DETERIORATED; OS - OVALITY; CS - COLLAPSED

CODES	DESCRIPTION	USE IN
A (3)	LINE DET - LIGHT	DS
B (6)	LINE DET - MEDIUM	DS
C (9)	LINE DET - HEAVY	DS
D (3)	OVAL < 5%	OS
E (6)	OVAL > 5% & < 10%	OS
F (9)	OVAL > 10%	OS
G (9)	COLLAPSED	CS
H (0)	PIPE DET - HEAVY	DS
L (0)	PIPE DET - LIGHT	DS
M (0)	PIPE DET - MEDIUM	DS
N (0)	PIPE DET - NONE	DS
O	LINE DET - NONE	DS
Z (0)	AT MANHOLE NUMBER	CS

Section 02532

SANITARY SEWER FORCE MAINS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Sanitary sewer force mains.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for installation of force main pipe by open-cut, augered with or without casing, or within limits of Potentially Petroleum Contaminated Area (PPCA) is on linear foot basis. Measurement will be taken along center line of pipe from end to end. Payment will be made for each foot of force main installed, complete in place including pipe, excavation, bedding, backfill and special backfill, shoring, earthwork, connections to existing manholes, acceptance testing, and pipe and accessories.

2. Payment for installation of force main pipe at a bayou crossing is on a lump sum basis.

3. The Unit Price item identifies line segments between stations as shown on Drawings.

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ACI 318 - ACI Building Code and Commentary.

B. ASTM D 696 - Standard Test Method for Coefficient of Linear Thermal Expansion of Plastics Between -30 C and 30 C with a Vitreous Silica Dilatometer.

C. ASTM D 2310 - Standard Classification for Machine-Made “Fiberglass” (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced- Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe.

D. ASTM D 2992 - Standard Practice for Obtaining Hydrostatic or Pressure Design Basis for “Fiberglass” (Glass-Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe and Fittings.

E. ASTM D 2996 - Standard Specification for Filament-Wound "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting-Resin) Pipe.

F. Uni-Bell UNI-B-3 Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe (complying with AWWA C 900).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit proposed methods, equipment, materials, and sequence of operations for force main construction. Plan operations to minimize disruption of utilities to occupied facilities or adjacent property.

C. Force mains 24 inches in diameter and larger: Submit shop drawings and design calculations for joint restraint systems using reinforced concrete encasement of pressure pipe and fittings.

D. Submit qualifications, proposed methods, equipment, materials, and sequence for acceptance testing of pipeline. Submit evidence of experience with pipeline proving by pigging for at least three projects of equal or greater scope; project list shall include dates, size and length of pipe, location, owner name, contact person, and telephone number. Provide certificate of training by manufacturer of pigging equipment being used.

E. Submit test reports as specified in Part 3 of this Section.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 PIPE FITTING MATERIAL SCHEDULE

A. Unless otherwise shown on Drawings, use pipe materials that conform to requirements specified in one or more of the following Sections:

1. Section 02501 - Ductile-Iron Pipe and Fittings.

2. Section 02504 - Cast Fiberglass Pipe.

3. Section 02505 - High Density Polyethylene Solid and Profile Wall Pipe (HDPE).

4. Section 02506 - Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe. Provide Lined Ductile-Iron Fittings in Accordance with Section 02501 - Ductile-Iron Pipe and Fittings.

5. Filament-wound Fiberglass Pipe

a. Provide dual-angle, filament-wound fiberglass reinforced epoxy pipe with integral epoxy liner and exterior coating in sizes from 4-inch to 16-inch diameter. Conform to requirements of ASTM D 2310 or ASTM D 2996, depending on size and class of pipe required.

b. Fiberglass pipe shall have resin rich liner of following thickness:

(1) For nominal sizes 4 inches through 6 inches, conform to ASTM D 2310 RTRP 11CX and ASTM D 2996 RTRP 11CX 5430, with minimum liner thickness of 0.020 inch.

(2) For nominal sizes 8 inches through 16 inches, conform to ASTM D 2310 RTRP 11FX and ASTM D 2996 RTRP 11FX 3210, with minimum liner thickness of 0.025 inch.

(3) The coefficient of linear thermal expansion shall be 8.5×10^{-6} inch/inch/degrees F for 4-inch through 6-inch pipe and 12.0×16^{-6} inch/inch/degrees F for 8-inch through 16-inch pipe in accordance with ASTM D 696.

c. Hydrostatic design value shall be not less than 21,000 psi when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2992(B) and not less than 8000 psi when tested according to ASTM D 2992(A).

d. Burial depths for pipes with standard wall thickness shall be between 3 feet and 25 feet.

e. Joints: Heavy duty threaded coupling system with positive o-ring seals. For 4-inch through 6-inch diameters, provide mechanical joints with fast advance, acme-type threads. Male threaded portion of couplings shall lock mechanical joints for couplings for pipe diameters of 8 inches through 16 inches. Axial movement of couplings shall allow up to 2 degrees of angular deflection without affecting o-ring seal integrity.

f. Fittings may be contact molded, compression molded, filament wound, or mitered. Fitting must also be capable of withstanding test pressures.

g. Pipes, fittings, and other components in this system shall be rated for service to 150 psig at 120 degrees F. Components shall be rated at or above design pressure of system.

2.02 THRUST RESTRAINT

A. Unless otherwise shown on Drawings, provide concrete thrust blocking for force mains up to 12-inches in diameter, to prevent movement of buried lines under pressure at bends, tees, caps, valves and hydrants. Blocking shall be Portland cement concrete, as specified in Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction. Place concrete in accordance with details on Drawings. Place thrust blocks between undisturbed ground and fittings. Anchor fittings to thrust blocks so that pipe and fitting joints are accessible for repairs. Concrete shall extend from 6 inches below pipe or fitting to 12 inches above.

B. For force mains larger than 12 inches in diameter, and where indicated on Drawings, provide restrained joints conforming to requirements of force main pipe material specifications. Install restrained joints for length of pipe on both sides of each bend or fitting for full length shown on Drawings.

C. Horizontal and vertical bends between zero and 10 degrees deflection angle will not require thrust blocks or harnessed or restrained joints.

D. Horizontal and vertical bends between 10 degrees and 90 degrees deflection angle shall have thrust restraint as shown on Drawings.

E. Provide thrust restraint at tees, plugs, blowoff drains, valves, and caps, as indicated.

F. Reinforced concrete encasement of force main pipe and fittings may be used in lieu of manufactured joint restraint systems. Alternate joint restraint systems using reinforced concrete encasement shall conform to following design requirements.

1. Design calculations shall be performed and sealed by Professional Engineer licensed in State of Texas.

2. Base design calculations upon soil parameters quantified in geotechnical report for site where alternative thrust restraint system is to be installed. When data is not available for site, use parameters recommended by geotechnical engineer.

3. The design system pressure shall be specified test pressure.

4. The following safety factors shall be used in sizing restraint system:

   a. Apply factor of safety equal to 1.5 for passive soil resistance.

   b. Apply factor of safety equal to 2.0 for soil friction.

5. Contain encasement entirely within standard trench width and terminate on both ends at pipe bell or coupling.

6. Concrete encasement reinforcement steel shall be designed for all loads, including internal pressure and longitudinal forces. Concrete design shall be in accordance with ACI 318.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PIPE INSTALLATION BY OPEN-CUT

A. Perform excavation, bedding, and backfill in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

B. Wrap ductile-iron pipe and fittings with polyethylene wrap in accordance with requirements of Section 02528 - Polyethylene Wrap. Do not install polyethylene wrap on ductile iron pipe protected by cathodic protection system or fusion bonded or polyurethane coated fittings.

C. Install pipe in accordance with pipe manufacturer's recommendations and as specified in following paragraphs.

D. Install pipe only after excavation is completed, bottom of trench is fine graded, bedding material is installed, and trench has been approved by Project Manager.

E. Install pipe to line and grade indicated. Place pipe so that it has continuous bearing of barrel on bedding material and is laid in trench so interior surfaces of pipe follow grades and alignment indicated. Provide bell holes where necessary.

F. Install pipe with spigot ends toward direction of flow. Form concentric joint with each section of adjoining pipe so as to prevent offsets.

G. Keep interior of pipe clean as installation progresses. Where cleaning after laying pipe is difficult because of small pipe size, use suitable swab or drag in pipe and pull it forward past each joint immediately after joint has been completed. Remove foreign material and debris from pipe.

H. Provide lubricant, place and drive home newly-laid sections with come-a-long winches so as to eliminate damage to sections. Install pipe to “home” mark where provided. Use of back hoes or similar powered equipment will not be allowed unless protective measures are provided and approved in advance by Project Manager.

I. Keep excavations free of water during construction and until final inspection.

J. When work is not in progress, cover exposed ends of pipes with approved plug to prevent foreign material from entering pipe.

K. Where sanitary sewer force main is to be installed under existing water line with separation distance of less than 2 feet, install one full joint length of pipe, minimum 18 foot length, centered on water line and maintain minimum 6-inch separation distance.

3.02 PIPE INSTALLATION OTHER THAN OPEN-CUT

A. For installation of pipe by augering, jacking, or tunneling, conform to requirements of specification section of augering or tunneling work.

3.03 HYDROSTATIC TESTING

A. After pipe and appurtenance have been installed, test line and drain. Prevent damage to Work or adjacent areas. Use clean water to perform tests.

B. Project Manager may direct tests of relatively short sections of completed lines to minimize traffic problems or potential public hazards.

C. Test pipe in presence of Project Manager.

D. Test pipe at 150 psig or 1.5 times design pressure of pipe, whichever is greater. Design pressure of force main shall be rated total dynamic head of lift station pump.

E. Test pipe at required pressure for minimum of 2 hours according to requirements of UNI-B-3.

F. Maximum allowable leakage shall be as calculated by following formula:

$$L = (S)\,(D)\,(P^{0.5}) / 133{,}200$$

Where:	L	=	Leakage in gallons per hour.
	S	=	Length of pipe in feet.
	D	=	Inside diameter of pipe in inches.
	P	=	Pressure in pounds per square inch.

G. Correct defects, cracks, or leakage by replacement of defective items or by repairs as approved by Project Manager.

H. Plug openings in force main after testing and flushing. Use cast iron plugs or blind flanges to prevent debris from entering tested pipeline.

3.04 PIGGING TEST

A. After completion of hydrostatic testing and prior to final acceptance, test force mains longer than 200 feet by pigging to ensure piping is free of obstructions.

B. Pigs: Provide proving pigs manufactured of open-cell polyurethane foam body, without coating or abrasives which would scratch or otherwise damage interior pipe wall surface or lining. Pigs shall be able to pass through reductions of up to 65 percent of nominal cross-sectional area of pipe. Pigs shall be able to pass through standard fittings such as 45-degree and 90-degree elbows, crosses, tees, wyes, gate valves, or plug valves, as applicable to force main being tested.

C. Test Execution: Conduct pigging test in presence of Project Manager. Provide at least 48-hours notice of scheduled pigging of force main prior to commencing test.

END OF SECTION

Section 02533

ACCEPTANCE TESTING FOR SANITARY SEWERS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Acceptance testing of sanitary sewers including:

1. Visual inspection of sewer pipes
2. Mandrel testing for flexible sewer pipes.
3. Leakage testing of sewer pipes.
4. Leakage testing of manholes.
5. Smoke testing of point repairs.

B. All tests listed in this Section are not necessarily required on this Project. Required tests are named in other Sections which refer to this Section for testing criteria and procedures.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No payment will be made for acceptance testing under this Section. Include payment in unit price for work requiring acceptance testing.
2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 828 - Standard Test Method for Low Pressure Air Test of Vitrified Clay Pipe Lines.

B. ASTM C 924 - Standard Practice for Testing Concrete Pipe Sewer Lines by Low-Pressure Air Test Method.

C. ASTM D 3034 - Standard Specification for Type PSM Polyethylene (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings.

D. ASTM F 794 - Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings Based on Controlled Inside Diameter.

E. ASTM F 1417 - Standard Test Method for Installation Acceptance of Plastic Gravity Sewer Lines Using Low Pressure Air.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Gravity flow sanitary sewers are required to have straight alignment and uniform grade between manholes.

B. Flexible pipe, including "semi-rigid" pipe, is required to show no more than 5 percent deflection. Test pipe no sooner than 30 days after backfilling of line segment but prior to final acceptance using standard mandrel to verify that installed pipe is within specified deflection tolerances.

C. Maximum allowable leakage for Infiltration or Exfiltration

1. The total exfiltration, as determined by hydrostatic head test, shall not exceed 50 gallons per inch diameter per mile of pipe per 24 hours at minimum test head of 2 feet above crown of pipe at upstream manhole or 2 feet above groundwater elevation, whichever is greater.

2. When pipes are installed more than 2 feet below groundwater level, use infiltration test in lieu of exfiltration test. Total infiltration shall not exceed 50 gallons per inch diameter per mile of pipe per 24 hours. Groundwater elevation must be at least 2 feet above crown of pipe at upstream manhole.

3. Refer to Table 02533-1, Water Test Allowable Leakage, at end of Section, for measuring leakage in sewers. Perform leakage testing to verify that leakage criteria are met.

D. Perform air testing in accordance with requirements of this Section and Texas Natural Resources Conservation Commission requirements. Refer to Table 02533-2, Time Allowed for Pressure Loss from 3.5 psig to 2.5 psig, Table 02533-3, Minimum Testing Times for Low Pressure Air Test, and Table 02533-4, Vacuum Test Time Table, at end of this Section.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Test Plan: Before testing begins and in adequate time to obtain approval through submittal process, prepare and submit test plan for approval by Project Manager. Include testing procedures, methods, equipment, and tentative schedule. Obtain advance written approval for deviations from Drawings and Specifications.

C. Test Reports: Submit test reports for each test on each segment of sanitary sewer.

1.06 GRAVITY SANITARY SEWER QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Repair, correct, and retest manholes or sections of pipe which fail to meet specified requirements when tested.

B. Provide testing reports and video tape of television inspection as directed by Project Manager.

C. Upon completion of tape reviews by Project Manager, Contractor will be notified regarding final acceptance of sewer segment.

1.07 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Perform testing as work progresses. Schedule testing so that no more than 1000 linear feet of installed sewer remains untested at one time.

B. Coordinate testing schedules with Project Manager. Perform testing under observation of Project Manager.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 DEFLECTION MANDREL

A. Mandrel Sizing. Rigid mandrel shall have outside diameter (O.D.) equal to 95 percent of inside diameter (I.D.) of pipe. Inside diameter of pipe, for purpose of determining outside diameter of mandrel, shall be average outside diameter minus two minimum wall thicknesses for O.D. controlled pipe and average inside diameter for I.D. controlled pipe, dimensions shall be per appropriate standard. Statistical or other "tolerance packages" shall not be considered in mandrel sizing.

B. Mandrel Design. Rigid mandrel shall be constructed of metal or rigid plastic material that can withstand 200 psi without being deformed. Mandrel shall have nine or more "runners" or "legs" as long as total number of legs is odd number. Barrel section of mandrel shall have length of at least 75 percent of inside diameter of pipe. Rigid mandrel shall not have adjustable or collapsible legs which would allow reduction in mandrel diameter during testing. Provide and use proving ring for modifying each size mandrel.

C. Proving Ring. Furnish "proving ring" with each mandrel. Fabricate ring of 1/2-inch-thick, 3-inch-wide bar steel to diameter 0.02 inches larger than approved mandrel diameter.

D. Mandrel Dimensions (5 percent allowance). Average inside diameter and minimum mandrel diameter are specified in Table 02533-5, Pipe vs. Mandrel Diameter, at end of this Section. Mandrels for higher strength, thicker wall pipe or other pipe not listed in table may be used when approved by Project Manager.

2.02 EXFILTRATION TEST

A. Water Meter: Obtain transient water meter from City for use when water for testing will be taken from City system. Conform to City requirements for water meter use.

B. Test Equipment:

1. Pipe plugs.

2. Pipe risers where manhole cone is less than 2 feet above highest point in pipe or service lead.

2.03 INFILTRATION TEST

A. Test Equipment:

1. Calibrated 90 degree V-notch weir.

2. Pipe plugs.

2.04 LOW PRESSURE AIR TEST

A. Minimum Requirement for Equipment:

1. Control panel

2. Low-pressure air supply connected to control panel.

3. Pneumatic plugs: Acceptable size for diameter of pipe to be tested; capable of withstanding internal test pressure without leaking or requiring external bracing.

4. Air hoses from control panel to:

a. Air supply.

b. Pneumatic plugs.
c. Sealed line for pressuring.

d. Sealed line for monitoring internal pressure.

B. Testing Pneumatic Plugs: Place pneumatic plug in each end of length of pipe on ground. Pressurize plugs to 25 psig; then pressurize sealed pipe to 5 psig. Plugs are acceptable when they remain in place against test pressure without external aids.

2.05 GROUND WATER DETERMINATION

A. Equipment: Pipe probe or small diameter casing for ground water elevation determination.

2.06 SMOKE TESTING

A. Equipment:

1. Pneumatic plugs.

2. Smoke generator as supplied by Superior Signal Company, or approved equal.

3. Blowers producing 2500 scfm minimum.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Provide labor, equipment, tools, test plugs, risers, air compressor, air hose, pressure meters, pipe probe, calibrated weirs, or any other device necessary for proper testing and inspection.

B. Determine selection of test methods and pressures for gravity sanitary sewers based on ground water elevation. Determine ground water elevation using equipment and procedures conforming to Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

3.02 VISUAL INSPECTION OF GRAVITY SANITARY SEWERS

A. Check pipe alignment visually by flashing light between structures. Verify if alignment is true and no pipes are misplaced. In case of misalignment or damaged pipe, remove and re-lay or replace pipe segment.

3.03 MANDREL TESTING FOR GRAVITY SANITARY SEWERS

A. Perform deflection testing on flexible and semi-rigid pipe to confirm pipe has no more than 5 percent deflection. Mandrel testing shall conform to ASTM D 3034. Perform testing no sooner than 30 days after backfilling of line segment, but prior to final acceptance testing of line segment.

B. Pull approved mandrel by hand through sewer sections. Replace any section of sewer not passing mandrel. Mandrel testing is not required for stubs.

C. Retest repaired or replaced sewer sections.

3.04 LEAKAGE TESTING FOR GRAVITY SANITARY SEWERS

A. Test Options:

1. Test gravity sanitary sewer pipes for leakage by either exfiltration or infiltration methods, as appropriate, or with low pressure air testing.

2. Test new or rehabilitated sanitary sewer manholes with water or low pressure air. Manholes tested with low pressure air shall undergo physical inspection prior to testing.

3. Perform leakage testing after backfilling of line segment, and prior to tie-in of service connections.

4. If no installed piezometer is within 500 feet of sewer segment, provide temporary piezometer for this purpose.

B. Compensating for Ground Water Pressure:

1. Where ground water exists, install pipe nipple at same time sewer line is placed. Use 1/2-inch capped pipe nipple approximately 10 inches long. Make installation through manhole wall on top of sewer line where line enters manhole.

2. Immediately before performing line acceptance test, remove cap, clear pipe nipple with air pressure, and connect clear plastic tube to nipple. Support tube vertically and allow water to rise in tube. After water stops rising, measure height in feet of water over invert of pipe. Divide this height by 2.3 feet/psi to determine ground water pressure to be used in line testing.

C. Exfiltration test:

1. Determine ground water elevation.

2. Plug sewer in downstream manhole.
3. Plug incoming pipes in upstream manhole.

4. Install riser pipe in outgoing pipe of upstream manhole when highest point in service lead (house service) is less than 2 feet below bottom of manhole cone.

5. Fill sewer pipe and manhole or pipe riser, when used, with water to point 2-1/2 feet above highest point in sewer pipe, house lead, or ground water table, whichever is highest.

6. Allow water to stabilize for one to two hours. Take water level reading to determine drop of water surface, in inches, over one-hour period, and calculate water loss (1 inch of water in 4 feet diameter manhole equals 8.22 gallons) or measure quantity of water required to keep water at same level. Loss shall not exceed that calculated from allowable leakage according to Table 02533-1 at end of this Section.

D. Infiltration test: Ground water elevation must be not less than 2.0 feet above highest point of sewer pipe or service lead (house service).

1. Determine ground water elevation.

2. Plug incoming pipes in upstream manhole.

3. Insert calibrated 90 degree V-notch weir in pipe on downstream manhole.

4. Allow water to rise and flow over weir until it stabilizes.

5. Take five readings of accumulated volume over period of 2 hours and use average for infiltration. Average must not exceed that calculated for 2 hours from allowable leakage according to Table 02533-1 at end of this Section.

E. Low Air Pressure Test: When using this test conform to ASTM C 828, ASTM C 924, or ASTM F 1417, as applicable, with holding time not less than that listed in Table 02533-2.

1. Air testing for sections of pipe shall be limited to lines less than 36-inch average inside diameter.

2. Lines 36-inch average inside diameter and larger shall be tested at each joint. Minimum time allowable for pressure to drop from 3.5 pounds per square inch gauge to 2.5 pounds per square inch during joint test shall be 10 seconds, regardless of pipe size.

3. For pipe sections less than 36-inch average inside diameter:

   a. Determine ground water level.

b. Plug both ends of pipe. For concrete pipe, flood pipe and allow 2 hours to saturate concrete. Then drain and plug concrete pipe.

c. After manhole-to-manhole section of sanitary sewer main has been sliplined and prior to any service lines being connected to new liner, plug liner at each manhole with pneumatic plugs.

d. Pressurize pipe to 4.0 psig. Increase pressure 1.0 psi for each 2.3 feet of ground water over highest point in system. Allow pressure to stabilize for 2 to 4 minutes. Adjust pressure to start at 3.5 psig (plus adjustment for ground water table). See Table 02533-2 at end of this Section.

e. To determine air loss, measure time interval for pressure to drop to 2.5 psig. Time must exceed that listed in Table 02533-2 at end of this Section for pipe diameter and length. For sliplining, use diameter of carrier pipe.

F. Retest: Repair and retest any section of pipe which fails to meet requirements.

3.05 TEST CRITERIA TABLES

A. Exfiltration and Infiltration Water Tests: Refer to Table 02533-1, Water Test Allowable Leakage, at end of this Section.

B. Low Pressure Air Test:

1. Times in Table 02533-2, Time Allowed For Pressure Loss From 3.5 psig to 2.5 psig, at end of this Section, are based on equation from Texas Natural Resources and Conservation Commission (TNRCC) Design Criteria 317.2(a)(4)(B).

			$T = 0.0850(D)(K)/(Q)$
where:	T	=	time for pressure to drop 1.0 pounds per square inch gauge in seconds
	K	=	0.000419 DL, but not less than 1.0
	D	=	average inside diameter in inches
	L	=	length of line of same pipe size in feet
	Q	=	rate of loss, 0.0015 ft^3/min./sq. ft. internal surface

2. Since K value of less than 1.0 shall not be used, there are minimum testing times for each pipe diameter as given in Table 02533-3, Minimum Testing Times for Low Pressure Air Test.

Notes:

1. When two sizes of pipe are involved, compute time by ratio of lengths involved.

2. Lines with 27-inch average inside diameter and larger may be air tested at each joint.

3. Lines with average inside diameter greater than 36 inches must be air tested for leakage at each joint.

4. If joint test is used, perform visual inspection of joint immediately after testing.

5. For joint test, pipe is to be pressurized to 3.5 psi greater than pressure exerted by groundwater above pipe. Once pressure has stabilized, minimum times allowable for pressure to drop from 3.5 pounds per square inch gauge to 2.5 pounds per square inch gauge shall be 10 seconds.

3.06 LEAKAGE TESTING FOR MANHOLES

A. After completion of manhole construction, wall sealing, or rehabilitation, but prior to backfilling, test manholes for water tightness using hydrostatic or vacuum testing procedures.

B. Plug influent and effluent lines, including service lines, with suitably-sized pneumatic or mechanical plugs. Ensure plugs are properly rated for pressures required for test; follow manufacturer's safety and installation recommendations. Place plugs minimum of 6 inches outside of manhole walls. Brace inverts to prevent lines from being dislodged when lines entering manhole have not been backfilled.

C. Vacuum testing:

1. Install vacuum tester head assembly at top access point of manhole and adjust for proper seal on straight top section of manhole structure. Following manufacturer's instructions and safety precautions, inflate sealing element to recommended maximum inflation pressure; do not over-inflate.

2. Evacuate manhole with vacuum pump to 10 inches mercury (Hg), disconnect pump, and monitor vacuum for time period specified in Table 02533-4, Vacuum Test Time Table.

3. If drop in vacuum exceeds 1 inch Hg over specified time period tabulated above, locate leaks, complete repairs necessary to seal manhole and repeat test procedure until satisfactory results are obtained.

D. Perform hydrostatic exfiltration testing as follows:

1. Seal wastewater lines coming into manhole with internal pipe plug. Then fill manhole with water and maintain it full for at least one hour.

2. The maximum leakage for hydrostatic testing shall be 0.025 gallons per foot diameter per foot of manhole depth per hour.

3. If water loss exceeds amount tabulated above, locate leaks, complete repairs necessary to seal manhole and repeat test procedure until satisfactory results are obtained.

3.07 SMOKE TEST PROCEDURE FOR POINT REPAIRS

A. Application: Perform smoke test to:

1. Locate points of line failure for point repair.

2. Determine when point repairs are properly made.

3. Determine when service connections have been reconnected to rehabilitated sewer.

4. Check integrity of connections to newly replaced service taps to liners and to existing private service connections.

B. Limitations: Do not backfill service taps until completion of this test. Test only those taps in single manhole section at one time. Keep number of open excavations to minimum.

C. Preparation: Prior to smoke testing, give written notices to area residents no fewer than 2 days, nor more than 7 days, prior to proposed testing. Also give notice to City of Houston Police and Fire Departments 24 hours prior to actual smoke testing.

D. Isolate Section: Isolate manhole section to be tested from adjacent manhole sections to keep smoke localized. Temporarily seal annular space at manhole for sliplined sections.

E. Smoke Introduction:

1. Operate equipment according to manufacturer's recommendation and as approved by Project Manager.

2. Conduct test by forcing smoke from smoke generators through sanitary sewer main and service connections. Operate smoke generators for minimum of 5 minutes.

3. Introduce smoke into upstream and downstream manhole as appropriate. Monitor tap/connection for smoke leaks. Note sources of leaks.

F. Repair and Retest: Repair and replace taps or connections noted as leaking and then retest. Taps and connections may be left exposed in only one manhole section at time. When repair or replacement, testing or retesting, and backfilling of excavation is not completed within one work day, properly barricade and cover each excavation as approved by Project Manager.

G. Service Connections: On houses where smoke does not issue from plumbing vent stacks to confirm reconnection of sewer service to newly installed liner pipe, perform dye test to confirm reconnection. Introduce dye into service line through plumbing fixture inside structure or sewer cleanout immediately outside structure and flush with water. Observe flow at service reconnection or downstream manhole. Detection of dye confirms reconnection.

Table 02533-1
WATER TEST ALLOWABLE LEAKAGE

DIAMETER OF RISER OR STACK IN INCHES	VOLUME PER INCH OF DEPTH		ALLOWANCE LEAKAGE*	
	INCH	GALLONS	PIPE SIZE IN INCHES	GALLONS/MINUTE PER 100 FT.
1	0.7854	.0034	6	0.0039
2	3.1416	.0136	8	0.0053
2.5	4.9087	.0212	13	0.0066
3	7.0686	.0306	12	0.0079
4	12.5664	.0306	15	0.0099
5	19.6350	.0544	18	0.0118
6	28.2743	.1224	21	0.0138
8	50.2655	.2176	24	0.0158
			27	0.0177
			30	0.0197
			36	0.0237
			42	0.0276
For other diameters, multiply square of diameters by value for 1" diameter.			Equivalent to 50 gallons per inch of inside diameter per mile per 24 hours.	

* Allowable leakage rate shall be reduced to 10 gallons per inch of inside diameter per mile per 24 hours, when sewer is identified as located within 25-year flood plain.

Table 02533-2
ACCEPTANCE TESTING FOR SANITARY SEWERS

TIME ALLOWED FOR PRESSURE LOSS FROM 3.5 PSIG TO 2.5 PSIG														
Pipe Diam. (in)	**Min. Time (min:sec)**	**Length for Min. Time (ft)**	**Time for Longer Length (sec)**	**Specification Time for Length (L) Shown (min:sec)**										
				100 ft	**150 ft**	**200 ft**	**250 ft**	**300 ft**	**350 ft**	**400 ft**	**450 ft**	**500 ft**	**550 ft**	**600 ft**
6	**5:40**	**398**	**0.8548**	**5:40**	**5:40**	**5:40**	**5:40**	**5:40**	**5:40**	**5:42**	**6:25**	**7:07**	**7:50**	**8:33**
8	**7:33**	**298**	**1.5196**	**7:33**	**7:33**	**7:33**	**7:33**	**7:36**	**8:52**	**10:08**	**11:24**	**12:40**	**13:56**	**15:12**
10	**9:27**	**239**	**2.3743**	**9:27**	**9:27**	**9:27**	**9:54**	**11:52**	**13:51**	**15:50**	**17:48**	**19:47**	**21:46**	**23:45**
12	**11:20**	**199**	**3.4190**	**11:20**	**11:20**	**11:20**	**14:15**	**17:06**	**19:57**	**22:48**	**25:39**	**28:30**	**31:20**	**34:11**
15	**14:10**	**159**	**5.3423**	**14:10**	**14:10**	**17:48**	**22:16**	**26:43**	**31:10**	**35:37**	**40:04**	**44:31**	**48:58**	**53:25**
18	**17:00**	**133**	**7.6928**	**17:00**	**19:14**	**25:39**	**32:03**	**38:28**	**44:52**	**51:17**	**57:42**	**64:06**	**70:31**	**76:56**
21	**19:50**	**114**	**10.4708**	**19:50**	**26:11**	**34:54**	**43:38**	**52:21**	**61:05**	**69:48**	**78:32**	**87:15**	**95:59**	**104:42**
24	**22:40**	**99**	**13.6762**	**22:48**	**34:11**	**45:35**	**56:59**	**68:23**	**79:47**	**91;10**	**102:34**	**113:58**	**125:22**	**136:46**
27	**25:30**	**88**	**17.3089**	**28:51**	**43:16**	**57:42**	**72:07**	**86:33**	**100:58**	**115:24**	**129:49**	**144:14**	**158:40**	**173:05**
30	**28:20**	**80**	**21.3690**	**35:37**	**53:25**	**71:14**	**89:02**	**106:51**	**124:39**	**142:28**	**160:16**	**178:05**	**195:53**	**213:41**
33	**31:10**	**72**	**25.8565**	**43:06**	**64:38**	**86:11**	**107:44**	**129:17**	**150:50**	**172:23**	**193:55**	**215:28**	**237:01**	**258:34**

Table 02533-3
MINIMUM TESTING TIMES FOR LOW PRESSURE AIR TEST

PIPE DIAMETER *(INCHES)*	**MINIMUM TIME** *(SECONDS)*	**LENGTH FOR MINIMUM TIME** *(FEET)*	**TIME FOR LONGER LENGTH** *(SECONDS)*
			0.855 (L)
6	340	398	1.520 (L)
8	454	298	2.374 (L)
10	567	239	3.419 (L)
12	680	199	5.342 (L)
15	850	159	7.693 (L)
18	1020	133	10.471 (L)
21	1190	114	13.676 (L)
24	1360	100	17.309 (L)
27	1530	88	21.369 (L)
30	1700	80	25.856 (L)
33	1870	72	

Table 02533-4
VACUUM TEST TIME TABLE

DEPTH IN FEET	TIME IN SECONDS BY PIPE DIAMETER		
	48"	60"	72"
4	10	13	16
8	20	26	32
12	30	39	48
16	40	52	64
20	50	65	80
24	60	78	96
*	5.0	6.5	8.0

*Add T times for each additional 2-foot depth.
(The values listed above have been extrapolated from ASTM C 924-85)

Table 02533-5
PIPE VS. MANDREL DIAMETER

Material and Wall Construction	Nominal Size (Inches)	Average I.D. (Inches)	Minimum Mandrel Diameter (Inches)
PVC-Solid (SDR 26)6	6	5.764	5.476
	8	7.715	7.329
	10	9.646	9.162
PVC-Solid (SDR 35)12	12	11.737	11.150
	15	14.374	13.655
	18	17.629	16.748
	21	20.783	19.744
	24	23.381	22.120
	27	26.351	25.033
PVC-Truss	8	7.750	7.363
	10	9.750	9.263
	12	11.790	11.201
	15	14.770	14.032
PVC-Profile (ASTM F 794)	12	11.740	11.153
	15	14.370	13.652
	18	17.650	16.768
	21	20.750	19.713
	24	23.500	22.325
	27	26.500	25.175
	30	29.500	28.025
	36	35.500	33.725
	42	41.500	39.425
	48	47.500	45.125
HDPE-Profile	18	18.000	17.100
	21	21.000	19.950
	24	24.000	22.800
	27	27.000	25.650
	30	30.000	28.500
	36	36.000	34.200
	42	42.000	39.900
	48	48.000	45.600
	54	54.000	51.300
	60	60.000	57.000
Fiberglass (Class SN 46)	12	12.85	11.822
	18	18.66	17.727
	20	20.68	19.646
	24	24.72	23.484
	30	30.68	29.146
	36	36.74	34.903
	42	42.70	40.565
	48	48.76	46.322
	54	54.82	52.079
	60	60.38	57.361

END OF SECTION

Section 02534

SANITARY SEWER SERVICE STUBS OR RECONNECTIONS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Installation of service stubs in sanitary sewers serving areas where sanitary sewer service did not previously exist.

B. Reconnection of existing service connections along parallel, replacement, or rehabilitated sanitary sewers.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for sanitary sewer service stubs or service reconnections with stacks located within 5 feet of sanitary sewer main centerline is on unit price basis for each stub or reconnection. Payment will be made for each service stub or reconnection installed complete in place, including service connections, couplings, and adapters disconnecting existing services, reconnecting new service, fittings, excavation, and backfill.

2. Payment for sanitary sewer service stubs or service reconnections without stacks located within 5 feet of sanitary sewer main is on unit price basis for each stub or reconnection. Payment will be made for each service stub or reconnection installed complete in place, including service connections, couplings, and adapters disconnecting existing services, reconnecting new service, fittings, excavation, backfill and testing.

3. Payment for sanitary sewer service lines more than 5 feet laterally from sewer main is on linear foot basis. Measurement will be taken along centerline of pipe from centerline of lateral connection or stack to end of service for service stubs laid in open-cut excavation. Payment will be made for each linear foot of pipe installed, complete in place, including sewer pipe, excavation, shoring, bedding, backfill, and accessories in addition to payment for sewer stubs or service connections with or without stacks. Augered pipe for service stubs will be paid as provided in Section 02448 - Pipe and Casing Augering.

4. Pay estimates for progress payments will be made as measured above according to following schedule:

   a. An estimate for 95 percent payment will be authorized when reconnection is completely installed and backfilled.

b. An estimate for 100 percent payment will be authorized when reconnection has been tested as specified in Section 02732 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers.

5. One or more connections discharging into common point are considered one service connection. Contractor shall not add service reconnections without approval of Project Manager. Project Manager may require connections to be relocated to avoid having more than two service connections per reconnection.

6. Protruding service connections which must be removed to allow liner insertion are paid as service reconnection when connected. If abandoned, they will be paid as abandoned connection.

7. Payment for abandonment of service connection is on unit price basis for each abandoned connection. No separate payment will be made for abandonment of service connection unless excavation is required. No separate payment will be made for excavation of sanitary sewer services within new or replacement sewer trench.

8. No separate payment will be made for removal of existing sanitary sewer service stubs. Include payment in unit price for Section 02534 - Sanitary Sewer Service Stubs or Reconnections.

9. No separate payment will be made for abandoned service connection when service to be abandoned is within 4 feet of active connection. Payment for only one abandoned service connection will be allowed when second abandoned connection is within 4 feet of first.

10. If faulty remote cut is later corrected using procedures specified for reconnection by excavation, only one reconnection will be allowed for payment.

11. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 1784 - Standard Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds.

B. ASTM D 3034 - Standard Specification for Type PSM Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings.

C. ASTM D 3212 - Standard Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Accurately locate in field all proposed service stubs along new sanitary sewer main.

B. Accurately locate in field existing service connections and proposed service stubs along alignment of new parallel or replacement sewer main.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit product data for each pipe product, fitting, coupling and adapter.

C. Show reconnected services on record drawings. Give exact distance from each service connection to nearest downstream manhole.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 PVC SERVICE CONNECTION

A. As stub outs, use PVC sewer pipe of 4-inch through 10-inch diameter, conforming to ASTM D 1784 and ASTM D 3034, with cell classification of 12454-B. SDR (ratio of diameter to wall thickness) shall be 26 for pipe 10 inches in diameter or less.

B. PVC pipe shall be gasket jointed with gasket conforming to ASTM D 3212.

C. Provide service connection pipe in sizes shown on Drawings. For reconnection of existing services, select service connection pipe diameter to match existing service diameter. Reconnections to rehabilitated sanitary sewer mains shall be limited to following maximum service connection diameter:

Sewer Diameter	Maximum Service Connection Diameter
8" or less	4"
10" or greater	6"

D. Subject to above limits, provide 6-inch service connection when more than one service discharges into single pipe.

E. Connect service pipes to parallel or replacement sewer mains with prefabricated, full-bodied tee or wye fittings conforming to specifications for sewer main pipe material as specified in other Sections for sewers up to 18 inches in diameter.

F. Where sewers are installed using pipe augering or tunneling, or where sewer is greater than 18 inches in diameter, use Fowler "Inserta-Tee" to connect service to sewer main.

2.02 PIPE SADDLES

A. Use pipe saddles only on rehabilitated sanitary sewer mains. Comply with Paragraph 2.01E for new parallel and replacement sanitary sewer mains.

B. Supply one-piece prefabricated saddle, either polyethylene or PVC, with neoprene gasket to accomplish complete seal. Use saddle fabricated to fit outside diameter of connecting pipe. Protruding lip of saddle must be at least 5/8-inch long with grooves or ridges to retain stainless steel band clamps.

C. Use 1/2-inch stainless steel band clamps for securing saddles to liner pipe.

2.03 COUPLINGS AND ADAPTERS

A. For connections between new PVC pipe stubouts and existing service, 4-, 6-, or 8-inch diameter, use flexible adapter coupling consisting of neoprene gasket and stainless steel shear rings with 1/2-inch stainless steel band clamps:

1. Fernco Pipe Connectors, Inc. Series 1055 with shear ring SR-8

2. Band Seal by Mission Rubber Co., Inc.

3. Approved equal.

B. For connections between new PVC pipe stubout and new service, use rubber-gasket adapter coupling:

1. GPK Products, Inc.

2. IPS & Sewer Adapter

3. Approved equal.

2.04 STACKS

A. Provide stacks for service connections wherever crown of sewer is 8 feet or more below finished grade.

B. Construct stacks of same material as sanitary sewer and as shown on Drawings.

C. Provide stacks of same nominal diameter at sanitary service line.

2.05 PLUGS AND CAPS

A. Seal upstream end of unconnected sewer service stubs with rubber gasket plugs or caps of same pipe type and size. Provide plugs or caps by GPK Products, Inc., or approved equal.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide minimum of 72 hours notice to customers whose sanitary sewer service will potentially be interrupted.

B. Accurately field locate service connections, whether in service or not, along rehabilitated sanitary sewer main. For parallel and replacement sewers, service connections may be located as pipe laying progresses from downstream to upstream.

C. Properly disconnect existing connections from sewer and reconnect to rehabilitated liner, as described in this Section.

D. Reconnect service connections, including those that go to unoccupied or abandoned buildings or to vacant lots, unless directed otherwise by Project Manager.

E. Complete reconnection of service lines within 24 hours after cured-in-place liner installation and within 72 hours after disconnection for sliplining, parallel, or replacement sanitary sewer mains.

F. Reconnect services on cured-in-place liner at 12 feet depth or less by excavation method. Project Manager reserves right to require service connections by excavation when remote cut service connection damages lines.

G. Reconnection by excavation method shall include stack and fittings and required pipe length to reconnect service line.

H. Connect services 8 inches in diameter and larger to sewer by construction of manhole. Refer to appropriate Section on manholes for construction and payment.

3.02 PROTECTION

A. Provide barricades, warning lights, and signs for excavations created for service connections. Conform to requirements of Section 01504 - Temporary Facilities and Controls.

B. Do not allow sand, debris, or runoff to enter sewer system.

3.03 PREPARATION

A. Determine existing sewer locations and number of existing service connections from closed-circuit television (CCTV) inspection tapes or from field survey. Accurately field locate existing service connections, whether in service or not. Use existing service locations to connect or reconnect service lines or liner.

B. For rehabilitated sanitary sewer mains, allow liner to normalize to ambient temperature and recover from imposed stretch. For cured-in-place liners, verify that liner is completely cured.

C. For new parallel and replacement sanitary sewer mains, complete testing and acceptance of downstream sewers as applicable. Provide for compliance with requirements of Paragraph 3.01E.

3.04 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL

A. Excavate in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

B. Perform work in accordance with OSHA standards. Employ Trench Safety System as specified in Section 02260 - Trench Safety System for excavations requiring trench safety.

C. Install and operate necessary ground water and surface water control measures in accordance with requirements of Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

D. Determine locations where limited access, buildings or structure preclude use of mechanical excavation equipment. Obtain approval from Project Manager for hand excavation.

3.05 RECONNECTION BY EXCAVATION METHOD

A. Remove portion of existing sanitary sewer main or carrier pipe to expose liner pipe. Provide sufficient working space for installing prefabricated pipe saddle.

B. Carefully cut liner pipe making hole to accept stubout protruding from underside of saddle.

C. Strap on saddle using stainless steel band on each side of saddle. Tighten bands to produce watertight seal of saddle gasket to liner pipe.

D. Remove and replace cracked, offset, or leaking service line for up to 5 feet, measured horizontally, from center of new liner.

E. Make up connection between liner and service line using PVC sewer pipe and approved fittings and couplings.

F. Encase entire service connection in cement stabilized sand as shown on Drawings.

G. Test service connections before backfilling.

3.06 RECONNECTION BY REMOTE METHOD

A. Make service reconnections using remote-operated cutting tools on cured-in-place liners at depth greater than 12 feet.

B. Employ method and equipment that restore service connection capacity to not less than 90 percent of original capacity.

C. Immediately open missed connections and repair holes drilled in error using method approved by Project Manager.

3.07 RECONNECTION ON PARALLEL OR REPLACEMENT SEGMENTS

A. Install service connections on sewer main.

B. Remove and replace cracked, offset or leaking service line for up to 5 feet, measured horizontally, from centerline of sanitary sewer main.

C. Make up connection between main and existing service line using PVC sewer pipe and approved couplings, as shown on Drawings.

D. Test service connections before backfilling.

E. Embed service connection and service line as specified for sanitary sewer main as shown on Drawings. Place and compact trench zone backfill in compliance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

3.08 INSTALLATION OF NEW SERVICE STUBS

A. Install service connections on sanitary sewer main for each service connection. Provide length of stub indicated on Drawings. Install plug or cap on upstream end of service stub as needed.

B. Test service connections before backfilling.

C. Embed service connection and service line as specified for sanitary sewer main, and as shown on Drawings. Place and compact trench zone backfill in compliance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. Install minimum 2-foot length of magnetic locating tape along axis of service stub and 9 inches to 12 inches above crown of pipe, at end of stub.

3.09 TESTING

A. Test service reconnections and service stubs. Follow applicable procedures given in Section 02533 - Acceptance Testing for Sanitary Sewers to perform smoke testing to confirm reconnection.

B. Perform post installation CCTV inspection as specified in Section 02558 - Cleaning and Television Inspection to show locations of service connection.

3.10 CLEANUP

A. Backfill excavation as specified in Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

B. Replace pavement or sidewalks removed or damaged by excavation in accordance with Section 02951 - Pavement Repair and Resurfacing. In unpaved areas, bring surface to grade and slope surrounding excavation. Replace minimum of 4 inches of topsoil and seed according to requirements of Section 02921 - Hydro-mulch Seeding.

END OF SECTION

Section 02581

STREET LIGHTING CONDUIT

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Pull box and conduit installation for electrical service to thoroughfare street lights.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for conduit is on linear foot basis measured horizontally between pull holes, pull boxes and terminal poles.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for Unit Price Procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. Houston Lighting and Power (HL&P) Specification Number 007-371-08. Specification for Installation of Conduit System for Thoroughfare Street Lighting.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. HL&P furnished material:

1. Materials Specifications in Paragraph 3.0 of HL&P Specifications Number 007-371-08.

B. Provide following material:

1. Materials specified in Paragraphs 7, 8, and 9 of HL&P Specifications number 007-371-08.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify lines and grades are correct. Determine if existing underground utilities or other obstructions may conflict with conduit installation shown on Drawings. Notify Project Manager of potential conflicts.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Order pull boxes and warning tape from HL&P Customer Relations Representative three working days in advance of need. Verify requirements for "driveway" pull boxes for concrete areas subject to vehicular traffic and confirm total number of pull boxes required with HL&P Customer Relations Representative.

B. Obtain HL&P furnished materials Tuesday through Friday, excluding holidays, from Street Light Office at Magnolia Park Service Center, 104 North Greenwood, Houston.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Notify HL&P street lighting Engineer at least 2 working days in advance of scheduled conduit installation.

B. Install conduit in accordance with Paragraphs 7 through 9 and drawings pages 9 through 12 of HL&P Specification Number 700-371-08.

3.04 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Correct nonconforming conduit and pull box installations and obtain written notification from inspector that installation meets HL&P requirements.

B. Forward one copy of notification to HL&P Customer Relations Representative.

3.05 PROTECTION

A. Protect conduits and pull holes from damage or blockage until street light and circuit installation by HL&P.

B. Clear blockage in conduits prior to HL&P circuit installation.

END OF SECTION

Section 02611

REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Reinforced concrete pipe for sanitary sewers and storm sewers.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for reinforced concrete pipe under this Section. Include cost in unit price Work as specified in following Sections:

   a. Section 02426 - Sewer Line in Tunnels.

   b. Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers.

   c. Section 02631 - Storm Sewers.

2. Refer to Section 01270- Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 76 - Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe.

B. ASTM C 443 - Standard Specification for Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe Using Rubber Gaskets.

C. ASTM C 497 - Standard Test Method for Concrete Pipe, Manhole Sections, or Tile.

D. ASTM C 506 - Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Arch Culvert, Storm Drain and Sewer Pipe

E. ASTM C 655 - Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete D-load Culvert, Storm Drain and Sewer Pipe.

F. ASTM C 877 - Standard Specification for External Sealing Bands for Noncircular Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit complete product data for pipe, fittings and gaskets for approval. Indicate conformance to appropriate reference standards.

C. Submit manufacturer's certificate that concrete pipes meet applicable standards.

D. For jacking pipe, submit drawings and data describing grouting port design and closure procedures when required by Section 02431 - Tunnel Grout, including liner repair, as applicable.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE

A. Conform circular reinforced concrete pipe to requirements of ASTM C 76, for Class III wall "B" thickness. Conform to rubber gasket joints for sanitary sewers and storm sewers and tongue and groove for roadside ditch culverts to ASTM C 443.

B. Conform reinforced concrete arch pipe to requirements of ASTM C 506 for Class A-III. Joints shall conform to ASTM C 877.

C. Reinforced concrete elliptical pipe, either vertical or horizontal, shall conform to requirements of ASTM C 507 for Class VE-III for vertical or Class HE-III for horizontal. Use rubber gasket joints conforming to ASTM C 877.

D. Conform reinforced concrete D-load pipe requirements of ASTM C 655.

2.02 GASKETS

A. When no contaminant is identified, furnish rubber gasket conforming to ASTM C 443 for circular reinforced concrete pipe and rubber gasket conforming to ASTM C 877 for reinforced concrete elliptical pipe.

B. Use the following gasket materials for pipes to be installed in potentially contaminated areas, especially where free product is found near elevation of proposed sewer:

CONTAMINANT	GASKET MATERIAL REQUIRED
Petroleum (diesel, gasoline)	Nitrile Rubber
Other Contaminants	As recommended by pipe manufacturer

2.03 LINERS FOR SANITARY SEWER PIPE

A. Reinforced concrete pipe for sanitary sewers shall be PVC lined and conform to Section 02427 - Plastic Liner for Large Diameter Concrete Sewers and Structures.

B. Reinforced concrete pipes to be installed in potentially contaminated areas shall have liners recommended by manufacturer as resistant to contaminants identified in Phase II Environmental Site Assessment Report.

2.04 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Representatives of City Engineer will inspect manufacturer's plant and casting operations as deemed necessary.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Conform to requirements of following Sections, as applicable:

1. Section 02448 - Pipe and Casing Augering for Sewers.

2. Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers.

3. Section 02631 - Storm Sewers.

4. Section 02441 - Micro-tunneling and Pipe-Jacked Tunnels.

B. Install reinforced concrete pipe in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION

Section 02612

PRECAST REINFORCED CONCRETE BOX SEWERS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Precast reinforced concrete box sewers.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No payment will be made for precast reinforced concrete box sewer under this Section. Include payment in unit price for Sections 02631 - Storm Sewers.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 1433 – Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Box Sections for Culverts, Storm Drains, and Sewers.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit shop drawings and data on box sections, fittings, gaskets, and appurtenances for approval. Indicate conformance to reference standards.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 PRECAST REINFORCED CONCRETE BOX SEWERS

A. Conform to ASTM C 1433, as indicated on Drawings.

B. Pipe and boxes shall be machine-made or cast by process which will provide for uniform placement of concrete in forms and compaction by mechanical devices to produce dense, structurally sound concrete.

2.02 CONCRETE

A. Conform to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

B. Use concrete mixed in central batch plant or other batching facility from which quality and uniformity of concrete can be assured. Transit-mixed concrete is not acceptable.

2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Representatives of City Engineer will inspect manufacturer's plant and casting operations as deemed necessary.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 BEDDING

A. Bed box sections on foundation of firm and stable material accurately shaped to conform to their bases. Install bedding as specified in Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. When required by Drawings, use special bedding material. When single-cell box sections are placed in parallel for multi-cell installation, place in conformance with details shown on Drawings.

3.02 PLACEMENT

A. Carefully lower box sections to bottom of trench and lay accurately in line and grade, with spigot or tongue end downstream entering bell or groove end to full depth and in such manner as not to drag foreign material into annular space.

3.03 JOINTING

A. Join box sections together and match so that they will form continuous smooth and uniform invert.

3.04 BACKFILLING

A. After box has been properly jointed and bedded, commence backfilling.

B. Backfill in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

END OF SECTION

Section 02613

BAR WRAPPED STEEL CYLINDER PIPE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Furnishing and installing new bar wrapped steel cylinder pipe and fittings for buried water lines for sizes 20 inches to 60 inches.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for bar wrapped steel cylinder pipe under this Section. Include cost in price for water lines.

2. Maintain, on site, minimum of two 3-degree and two 5-degree grade angle adapters. Adapters are considered "extra unit price." When used during construction, adapter will be paid at unit price.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AASHTO - Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges.

B. AREMA - Manual of Railway Engineering, Volume II, Chapter 15.

C. ASTM A 615 - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.

D. ASTM C 33 - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates.

E. ASTM C 35 - Standard Specification for Inorganic Aggregates for Use in Gypsum Plaster.

F. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.

G. ASTM C 497 - Standard Test Method for Concrete Pipe, Manhole Sections, or Tile, Testing.

H. ASTM D 512 - Standard Test Methods for Chloride Ion in Water.

I. ASTM C 1107 (CRD C-621) - Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink).

J. ASTM D 1293 - Standard Test Methods for pH of Water.

K. ASTM E 165 - Standard Test Methods for Dye Penetration.

L. ASTM E 340 - Standard Test Method for Macroetching Metals and Alloys.

M. ASTM E 709 - Standard Test Methods for Magnetic Particle Testing.

N. ASTM E 1032 - Standard Test Methods for Radiographic Examination of Weldments.

O. ANSI/AWS A3.0 - Standard Welding Terms and Definitions.

P. AWWA C 206 - Standard for Field Welding of Steel Water Pipe.

Q. AWWA C 207 - Standard for Steel Pipe Flanges for Waterworks Service - Sizes 4 in. through 144 in.

R. AWWA C 301 - Standard for Prestressed Concrete Pressure Pipe, Steel-Cylinder Type, for Water and Other Liquids.

S. AWWA C 303 - Standard for Concrete Pressure Pipe, Bar-Wrapped, Steel-Cylinder Type.

T. AWWA C 304 - Standard for Design of Prestressed Concrete Cylinder Pipe.

U. AWWA M 9 - Concrete Pressure Pipe.

V. NSF 61 - Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects.

W. SSPC SP 7 - Surface Preparation Specification No. 7 Brush Off Blast Cleaning.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit shop drawings and certification signed and sealed by Professional Engineer registered in State of Texas showing following:

1. Manufacturer's pipe design calculations.

2. Provide lay schedule of pictorial nature indicating alignment and grade, laying dimensions, welding procedures, fabrication, fitting, flange, and special details, with plan view of each pipe segment sketched, detailing pipe invert elevations, horizontal bends, welded joints, and other critical features. Indicate station numbers for pipe and fittings corresponding to Drawings. Do not start production of pipe and fittings prior to review and approval by Project Manager. Provide final approved lay schedule on CD-ROM in Adobe portable document format (*PDF).

3. Include hot tapping procedure.

4. Submit certification from manufacturer that design was performed for project in accordance with requirements of this section.

C. Submit inspection procedures to be used by manufacturer and for quality control and assurance for materials and welding. Submit standard repair procedures that describe in detail shop and field work to be performed. Repair defects such as substandard welds, excessive radial offsets (misalignment), pitting, gouges, cracks, etc.

D. Submit following within 45 days after manufacturing of pipe and fittings:

1. Steel:

   a. Steel reports as required in AWWA C303, Section 5.2.5.

   b. Results of other tests of steel reinforcement required in AWWA C303, Section 5.2.

2. Test Results.

   a. Hydrostatic testing, acid etching, magnetic particle and x-ray weld test reports as required.

   b. Compressive strength (7 and 28 day) test results for each type of coating and lining mix design.

3. Submit pipe manufacturer's certification that Bar Wrapped Steel Cylinder Pipe:

   a. Cylinder assembly has been hydrostatically tested at factory.

   b. Mortar coatings and linings were applied or allowed to cure at temperature above 32 degrees Fahrenheit.

E. Submit following for nonshrink grout for special applications:

1. Manufacturer's technical literature including specifications for mixing, placing, and curing grout.

2. Results of tests performed by certified independent testing laboratory showing conformance to ASTM C 1107, Nonshrink Grout and requirements of this specification.

3. Certification product is suitable for use in contact with potable water.

F. Submit certification for welder and welding operator demonstrating their certification within past 6 months in accordance with AWWA C 206. Indicate certified procedures and position each welder is qualified to perform.

G. Calibrate within last 12 months for equipment such as scales, measuring devices, and calibration tools used in manufacture of pipe. Each device used in manufacture of pipe is required to have tag recording date of last calibration. Devices are subject to inspection by Project Manager.

1.05 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer to have permanent quality control department and laboratory facility capable of performing inspection and testing required. Inspection procedures and manufacturing process are subject to inspection by Project Manager. Perform manufacturer tests and inspections required by AWWA C 303 as modified by these Specifications. Correct nonconforming conditions.

1. Cylinder and Joint Ring Assembly:

a. Review mill certifications for conformance to requirements of Specifications.

b. Perform physical testing of each heat of steel for conformance to applicable ASTM standards.

c. Inspect physical dimensions and overall condition of joint rings and cylinder/joint ring assembly to verify compliance with requirements of AWWA C 303. Maximum allowable thickness variation of cylinder shall not be less than determined thickness.

d. Test cylinder/joint ring weld for tensile strength. Test one specimen for each 500 cylinder/joint ring assemblies in addition to those tests required by AWWA C 301.

e. Reject pipe with dented steel cylinders.

2. Bar Rod

a. Review mill certifications for conformance to requirements of Specifications.

b. Inspect rod spacing during placement on cylinder.

c. Test rod splices for each production run or minimum of once a week, whichever is less, for conformance with minimum strength criteria.

3. Pipe Lining Coating:

a. Review mill certificates for each load of cement for conformance to ASTM C 150.

b. Perform sieve analyses weekly for each source of coarse and fine aggregate for conformance to ASTM C 33.

c. Inspect kiln recorder charts daily to confirm proper curing environment.

d. Verify mortar thickness on each size of pipe to a tolerance of 1/16th of an inch of required thickness.

e. Perform absorption tests in accordance with ASTM C 497, Method A, on cured mortar samples taken from pipes.

f. Check mortar batch proportions, moisture content and slurry application rate. Check coating thickness over wire on each pipe.

g. Check physical integrity of cured mortar coating. Check cured mortar coating for soundness on every pipe in field in addition to manufacturing plant.

h. Reject pipe with cracks in mortar coating exceeding 0.01 inches wide.

4. Protective Coatings: Check daily application rate and resulting dry film thickness.

B. Gaskets:

1. Randomly test rubber cord for diameter, tensile strength, elongation, compression set, hardness, and specific gravity after oven aging on one out of 100 gaskets.

2. Stretch test each gasket splice to twice its unstretched length and inspect for defects.

C. Weld Testing

1. Perform macroetching tests for complete penetration production welds on normal production weld tests. Complete joint penetration welds are defined in ANSI/AWS A3.0. Verify complete joint penetration by means of macroetch of joint weld cross section. Macroetch technique in accordance with ASTM E 340.

2. Perform ultrasonic or x-ray testing of manual welds for fittings and special pipes. Perform dye penetration testing of manual lap welds for fittings and special pipes and for joint ring weld onto cylinder.

3. Perform minimum of one set of weld test specimens in accordance with ANSI/AWS A3.0 on each size, grade and wall thickness at minimum of every 3,000 feet of pipe manufactured; but perform no less than one test per project by each welding machine and each operator.

D. Cast four standard test cylinders each day for each 50 cubic yards of concrete mortar coating or portion thereof for each coating and lining mix design placed in day. Perform compressive strength test at 28 days. No cylinder test result shall be less than 80 percent of specified strength. Reject pipe that does not meet minimum strength requirements.

E. Make available copy of Physical and Chemical testing reports for steel cylinders and provide reports at request of Project Manager.

F. Check physical dimensions of pipe and fittings: Physical dimensions to include at least pipe lengths, pipe I.D., pipe O.D. and bend angles.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Furnish pipe by same manufacturer.

B. Provide bar wrapped steel cylinder pipe in conformance with AWWA C 303 and AWWA M 9, except as modified herein. Produce pipe cylinder to conform to AWWA C 303 except modify Section 4.5 to require that total cross-sectional area of bell ring plus cross-sectional area of bar reinforcement over bell ring exceed circumferential steel area in like length of barrel area by one-third.

C. Use of pipe from inventory is permitted only if specifications and certifications are met. Provide testing records for such pipe.

D. Do not use bar wrapped steel cylinder pipe in aerial crossings, exposed or other unburied areas.

E. Pipe Manufacturer.

1. Must have minimum of 5 years of manufacturer's pipe installations that have been in successful and continuous service.

2. Must maintain on site or in plant minimum of four 22.5 bends per 10,000 linear feet of water line. Any combination of bends may be substituted at manufacturer's option (i.e. two 11.25 bends are equivalent to one 22.5 bend and shall be counted as one fitting). Must be capable of delivering bends to job site within 12 hours of notification. These fittings are in addition to any fittings called out on Drawing and must be available at all times.

F. Pipe Design Conditions:

1. Working pressure: 100 psi.

2. Hydrostatic field test pressure: 150 psi.

3. Maximum pressure due to surge: 150 psi.

4. Minimum pressure due to surge: -5 psi.

5. Unit weight of soil: 120 pcf minimum, unless otherwise specified.

6. Minimum trench width: O.D. of pipe + 4 feet.

7. Pipe and Fittings: Designed to withstand most critical simultaneous application of external loads including construction loads and internal pressures.

8. Design: Design pipe and fittings to withstand most critical simultaneous application of external loads and internal pressures. Base design on minimum of AASHTO HS-20 loading, AREA E-80 loads and depths of bury as indicated on Drawings. Design pipes with Marston's earth loads for transition width trench for all heights of cover.

   a. Calculate moments and thrusts in wall based on earth load.

9. Increase longitudinal steel area (cylinder thickness) to prevent cylinder stress from exceeding 40 percent of minimum yield point at rated working pressure and 67 percent of minimum yield point at rated maximum surge pressure where pipe and

fittings are subjected to longitudinal stresses induced by restrained joints or thrust blocks.

10. Groundwater Level: Design for most critical ground water level condition.

11. Modulus of elasticity (E) = 30,000,000 psi.

12. Design stress due to working pressure to be no greater than 50 percent of minimum yield, and stress not to exceed 16,500 psi for mortar coated pipe.

13. Design stress due to maximum hydraulic surge pressure to be no greater than 75 percent of minimum yield, and stress not to exceed 24,750 psi for mortar coated pipe.

14. Modulus of soil reaction (E) < 1500 psi. If E > 1000 psi, do not use silty sand (SM) for embedment.

15. Deflection lag factor (Dl) = 1.2.

16. Bedding constant (K) = 0.1.

17. Fully saturated soil conditions: hw = h = depth of cover above top of pipe.

18. Provide minimum inside clear diameter for tunnel liners or casing in accordance with Section 02425LD - Tunnel Excavation and Primary Liner.

19. Exclude structural benefits associated with primary liner in design of pipe in tunnel installations.

    a. Design pipe and joints to carry loads including overburden and lateral earth pressures, subsurface soil and water loads, grouting, other conditions of service, thrust of jacks, and stresses anticipated during handling and construction loads during installation of pipe.

    b. Do not use internal removable stiffeners for pipe in tunnel, unless approved by Project Manager.

    c. External welded stiffeners shall be permitted in design calculations for pipe, provided wall thickness is minimum of 1/2 inch. Minimum clearances specified between exterior pipe wall and tunnel liner applies to distance between outside diameter of external welded stiffener and tunnel liner.

20. Design pipe for transmitting potable water, unless otherwise shown on Drawings.

21. Tunnel and Augered Sections: Provide constant outside diameter from bell to spigot end for pipe. Exclude structural benefits associated with primary liner. Design pipe and pipe joints to carry loads including but not limited to: overburden and lateral earth pressures, subsurface soil, grouting, other conditions of service, thrust of jacks, and any stress anticipated during handling and installation.

G. Coatings and Linings:

1. Provide Portland cement; ASTM C 150, Type I or II. Provide one type of cement for entire project.

2. Water Absorption Test: ASTM C 497, Method A; perform on samples of cured mortar coating taken from each working shift. Cure mortar coating samples in same manner as pipe.

   a. Test Value: Average minimum of 3 samples taken from same working shift, no greater than 9 percent for average value, and 11 percent for individual value.

   b. Test Frequency: Perform tests each working shift until conformance to absorption requirements has been established by 10 consecutive passing test results, at which time testing may be performed weekly. Resume testing for each working shift if absorption test results fail until conformance to absorption requirements is reestablished by 10 consecutive passing test results.

3. Apply one coat of primer to exposed steel parts of steel bell and spigot rings. Prior to coating, blast clean in accordance with SSPC-SP7 (Brush Off Blast Cleaning). Apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

4. Coat and line access inlets, service outlets, test inlets and air release/vacuum relief riser pipe with same coating and lining of water line pipe in accordance with AWWA C 303, Section 4, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

5. Do not defer placing of coating of any portion of pipe length. Verify cement mortar coating thickness on each size of pipe by nondestructive method before removing pipe from coating machine.

6. Remove and replace disbonded lining or coating. Reject pipe requiring patches larger than 100 square inches or 12 inches in greatest dimension. Allow no more than one patch on either lining or coating of pipe. Provide WELD-CRETE Probond Epoxy Bonding Agent ET-150, parts A and B; Sikadur 32 Hi-Mod, or approved equal bonding agent for pipe patching.

H. Fittings and Specials:

1. Design fittings to same internal and external loads as straight pipe.

2. Manufacture in accordance with Section 02518 - Steel Pipe and Fittings for Large Diameter Water Lines.

3. Provide fabricated bends or fittings with minimum radius of 2-1/2 times pipe diameter.

4. Design test plugs to withstand forces generated by hydrostatic test and test pressure from either side. Do not exceed 50% of minimum yield for design stresses due to hydrostatic pressure. Assume opposite side of plug does not contain water.

5. Provide no specials less than 4 feet in length unless indicated on Drawings or approved by Project Manager.

6. Butt Straps for Closure Piece: Provide at locations indicated on Drawings or authorized by Project Manager. Minimum 12-inch-wide split butt strap; minimum plate thickness equal to thinnest member being joined; fabricated from material equal in chemical and physical properties to thinnest member being joined. Permit no angular deflection at butt-strap joints.

7. Provide minimum 6-inch welded outlet for inspecting each closure section, unless access manway is within 40 feet of closure section.

8. Provide Densco petroleum based tape or approved equal for exposed portions of nuts and bolts.

I. Joints:

1. AWWA C 303 rubber-gasketed or welded bell-and-spigot type except where flanged joints are required for valves and fittings as shown on Drawings. Refer to Section 02511 - Water Lines for details on joints and jointing.

2. Rubber-Gasketed Joints: Single weld bell and spigot ring onto steel cylinder. In thrust areas, double weld bell and spigot onto steel cylinder.

3. Restrained Joints: Restrain joints by welding or harnessing joints.

   a. Design Pressure: 1.5 times working pressure.

   b. Harnessed Joints: AWWA M 9, clamp or snap ring type, except where prohibited.

c. Groundwater Level: Assumed to be equal to natural ground surface.

d. Provide restrained joint pipe with adequate cylinder thickness to transmit full thrust generated by internal pressure across joints.

1) Calculate distance of restrained joints based on resistance along each leg of bend with thrust based on bend angle.

2) Cylinder thickness not to be less than that defined in AWWA C303, Table 2, and minimum nominal cylinder thickness.

3) Allow cylinder thickness to reduce linearly from maximum calculated thickness to minimum thickness required by design over required length (as determined in Paragraph 2.01 J.3.d.1) of restrained joints.

4) Provide full circumferential welds at joints required to be welded.

J. Use only fully circumferentially welded joints in areas considered potentially petroleum contaminated, within tunnels and under foreign pipelines. Perform welding in accordance with Section 02502 - Steel Pipe and Fittings and Section 02518 - Steel Pipe and Fittings for Large Diameter Water Lines.

K. Pipe Flanges: AWWA C 207 for standard steel flanges of pressure class corresponding to pipe class.

L. Pipe lengths: Provide pipe sections in standard lengths with minimum length of 16 feet and maximum length of 25 feet, and as indicated on approved shop Drawings or approved by Project Manager. Gasketed joints are allowed on standard lengths of pipe. Non-standard pipe lengths must be approved by Project Manager and joints must be welded as specified herein to achieve equal to or greater than standard pipe length before gasketed joints can be used. Internally and externally mark pipe section with durable marking to show location and pipe pressure.

M. Hydrostatic Test of Cylinder: In accordance with AWWA C 303, at point of manufacture. Hold test for minimum 2 minutes for thorough inspection of cylinder. Repair or reject cylinders revealing leaks or cracks.

N. Transport fittings with end caps. Remove end caps just prior to installation.

O. Transport fittings 36 inches in diameter and larger with stulls. Remove stulls after completion of backfill.

P. Provide radius of curve as indicated on Drawings unless approved by Project Manager. Make curves and bends by deflecting joints, by use of beveled joints, or by combination of

two methods, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Do not exceed deflection angle recommended by pipe manufacturer. Provide beveled pipe sections of standard length used in curved alignment, except when shorter sections are required to limit radius of curvature. In such case, provide sections throughout curve of substantially equal length.

Q. When manufacturing straight pipe sections, manual welding is allowed for following:

1. Tack welding of coils and plates during continuous pipe making process.

2. Rewelding and repairing structural defects in plate and automatic machine welds.

3. Attaching new coil of steel to previous coil.

2.02 BAR ROD

A. Conform to requirements of ASTM A 615, AWWA C 303 and this specification.

B. Test foreign manufactured rod by local independent laboratory.

C. Rod manufacturer is responsible for performing mechanical tests required in ASTM A 615.

D. Pipe manufacturer is responsible for requiring rod manufacturer to submit certified results of chemical and mechanical tests, performed by rod manufacturer. Pipe manufacturer is responsible for performing mechanical tests, and is required to attest to such in affidavit of compliance.

E. Do not use rod with visible pitting.

2.03 GROUT FOR JOINTS AND SPECIAL APPLICATION

A. Joint Grout:

1. Cement Grout Mixture: One part cement to two parts of fine, sharp clean sand. Mix interior joint mortar with as little water as possible until very stiff but workable. Mix exterior joint mortar with water until it has consistency of thick cream.

2. Water: Potable water with total dissolved solids less than 1000 mg/l; ASTM D 512 chloride ions less than 100 mg/1 for slurry and mortar cure; ASTM D 1293 pH greater than 6.5. Use potable water with 250ppm limit on chlorides and sulfates.

3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II. Provide one type of cement for entire project.

4. Sand:

   a. Interior joints: ASTM C 35 fine graded plaster sand.

   b. Exterior joints: ASTM C 33 natural sand with 100 percent passing No. 16 sieve.

5. Mix cement grout to specific gravity of 19 lb/gallon or greater as measured by grout/slurry balance. Use balance manufactured grout/slurry balance manufactured by Baroid or approved equal. Perform test in presence of and as requested by Project Manager. Add additional cement grout or water to mixed cement grout to bring mix to proper moisture content or specific gravity. Discard cement grout mixed more than 20 minutes that is not at proper moisture content or specific gravity.

B. Nonshrink Grout for Special Applications, Patches and Repairs.

1. Conform to requirements of ASTM C 1107, Nonshrink Grout.

2. Pre-blended factory-packaged material manufactured under rigid quality control.

3. Contain non-metallic natural aggregate, be nonstaining and noncorrosive.

4. Meeting NSF 61 Standard suitable for use in contact with potable water supply.

5. Exterior: Highly flowable to fill joint wrapper without leaving voids or trapped air. Interior capable of being placed with plastic consistency.

6. Non-bleeding and non-segregating at fluid consistency.

7. Contain no chlorides or additives which may contribute to corrosion of bar wrapped steel cylinder pipe.

8. Free of gas-producing, gas-releasing agents.

9. Resist attack by oil or water.

10. Mix, place, and cure in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Upon 72 hours' notice, provide services of qualified representative of nonshrink grout manufacturer to aid in use of product under job conditions.

11. Mix nonshrink grout to specific gravity of 17.7 lb/gallon or greater as measured by grout/slurry balance. Use grout/slurry balance manufactured by Baroid or approved

equal. Perform test in presence of and as requested by Project Manager. Add additional non-shrink grout to mixed non-shrink grout to bring to proper moisture content or specific gravity. Discard grout mixed more than 20 minutes that is not at proper moisture content or specific gravity.

12. Compressive strength: ASTM C 1107 2500 psi minimum 7-day unconfined; 5000 psi minimum 28-day unconfined.

C. Finished surface of lining and interior joint to be comparable to surface rubbed with No. 16 Carborundum stone. Rub joint mortar sufficiently to bring paste to surface, to remove depressions and projections, and to produce smooth, dense surface. Add cement to form surface paste as necessary. Leave interior with clean, neat and uniform-appearing finish.

D. Joint Wrapper: Minimum width of 9 inches for 33-inch diameter and smaller; minimum width of 12 inches for diameters greater than 33-inch hemmed at edge to allow threading with minimum 5/8-inch wide steel strap. Provide minimum 6-inch wide Ethafoam strip sized, positioned, and sewn such that two circumferential edges of Ethafoam are 1-1/2-inches from outer edge of wrapper.

2.04 CATHODIC PROTECTION

A. Connect each joint of pipe with bonding straps or approved devices to maintain continuity of current. Provide bonding straps free of foreign material.

B. Electrically isolate water line from other connections. Use insulating type joints or non-metallic pipe unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

C. Provide flange adapter with insulating kit as required when connecting new piping to existing piping.

2.05 INSPECTION AND SHIPPING

A. Permit Project Manager to inspect pipes or witness pipe manufacturing. Inspection shall not relieve manufacturer of responsibilities to provide products that comply with applicable standards and these Specifications. Should Project Manager elect not to inspect manufacturing, testing, or finished pipes, it in no way implies approval of products or tests.

B. Manufacturer's Notification to Customer: Should Project Manager wish to see specific pipes during manufacturing process, manufacturer shall provide Project Manager with minimum of three (3) weeks advance notice of when and where production of those pipes will take place.

C. Repair damage to pipe or protective lining per manufacture specifications before final acceptance.

D. Shipping: Where required, provide pipe and fittings with sufficient interior strutting or cross bracing to prevent deflection under their own weight.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Conform to requirements of Section 02511 - Water Lines. Do not install pipe without approved lay schedule.

B. Install pipe within six months of pipe being manufactured.

C. Manufacturer shall make available services of representative, throughout project duration when deemed necessary by Project Manager, to advise aspects of installation including but not limited to handling, storing, cleaning and inspecting, coatings and linings repairs, and general construction methods affecting pipe.

D. Bedding and Backfilling

1. Conform to requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

2. Take necessary precautions during bedding and backfilling operations to prevent deformation or deflection of cylindrical shape of pipe by more than allowable pipe deflection.

3. Do not move trench support system (trench safety system) once bedding material is compacted.

4. Align pipe at proper grade prior to joint connection and do not shift after jointing operation has been completed.

5. Excavate outside specified trench section for bell holes, and for spaces sufficient to permit removal of slings. Provide bell holes at proper locations for unrestricted access to joint. Form bell holes large enough to facilitate joint wrapping and to permit visual examination of process. Enlargement of bell holes as required or directed by Project Manager. Subsequent backfilling thereof shall not be considered as authorized additional excavation and backfill. Backfill bell holes and spaces to satisfaction of Project Manager.

6. Remove blocking after placing sufficient backfill to hold pipe in position.

E. Follow nonshrink grout manufacturer's specifications for nonshrink grouting.

F. Store pipe at job-site with securely-fastened plastic end caps to maintain moist pipe interior. Promptly replace damaged end caps to avoid shrinkage or cracking of cement-mortar lining. Immediately replace damaged plastic end caps. Do not leave uncapped for more than 4 hours.

G. Deviation of installed pipe in any one pipe section from line and grade shown on approved shop drawing layout shall not exceed 2 inches from grade and 3 inches from line. No deviation from line and grade at contact interfaces are allowed.

H. Use adequate surveying methods, procedures and employ competent surveying personnel to ensure pipe sections are laid to line and grade and within stipulated tolerances. Measure and record, in form approved by Project Manager, in-place survey data for pipe laid each day and submit copy of data to Project Manager at end of that day. Survey data to include unique pipe number, deflection angle at pipe joint and whether beveled ends were used, invert elevation at pipe joint, deviation of joint from project line, deviation of joint from project grade, inside pipe joint lap measured at top, bottom, and at springline (each side).

I. Static Electricity:

1. Properly ground steel pipeline during construction as necessary to prevent build-up of static electricity.

2. Electrically test where required after installation of pipeline is complete.

3.02 DEFLECTION

A. Allowable deflection from specified diameter determined as follows:
Allowable Deflection = $(D)^2/4000$, (D= Nominal inside pipe diameter in inches).

B. Deflection may be measured by Project Manager at location along pipe. Arithmetical averages of deflection are not acceptable.

C. If deflection exceeds that specified, remove entire portion of deflected pipe section and install new pipe as directed by Project Manager at no cost to City.

3.03 CLOSURES AND APPROVED PIPE MODIFICATIONS.

A. No modifications of standard pipe for closures shall be permitted in field. No field cutting of pipe or exposure of bar wire is permitted without written approval from Project Manager.

B. Pipe manufacturer's representative and Project Manager to entirely witness closures and approved pipe modification efforts.

C. Provide minimum lap of 4 inches between member being joined and edge of butt strap. Weld on both interior and exterior, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

D. Provide full circumferential welds on joints required to be welded. Employ independent certified testing laboratory, approved by Project Manager, to perform weld tests on field welds. Include cost of such testing in contract unit price for water line. Use magnetic particle test method for lap welds or X-ray methods for butt welds, for 100 percent of joint welds. Maintain records of tests. If defective weld is revealed, repair defective weld, and retest. Use wire and flux from same manufacturer throughout entire project.

E. Fill wrapper in field and allowing excess grout water to seep out. Refill wrapper as necessary. When joint mortar level has stabilized and begun to mechanically stiffen, lap Ethafoam wrapper over top of joint, and secure in place.

F. Stretch test each gasket splice to twice its unstretched length and inspect for defects.

3.04 VISIBLE CRACKS

A. No visible cracks longer than 6 inches, measured to be within 15 degrees of line parallel to pipe longitudinal axis, are permitted except:

1. In surface laitance of centrifugally cast concrete,

2. In sections of pipe with steel reinforcing collars or wrappers, or

3. Within 12 inches of pipe ends.

B. Repair interior lining cracks that exceed 1/16-inch (0.0625 inches) wide.

C. Reject pipe with exterior coating cracks that exceed 0.01 inches wide.

D. Immediately remove pipe from site if pipe has cracks exceeding limitations and cracks are not repairable.

3.05 FIELD REPAIR PROCEDURES FOR COATING/LINING

A. Areas less than or equal to 6 inches in diameter: Patch honeycomb and minor defects in concrete surfaces with nonshrink grout conforming to section 2.03 B. Use only manual or small (low pressure) air chisels to chip away mortar coating or lining. Cut out unsatisfactory material and replace with nonshrink grout, securely bonded to existing coating or lining. Finish junctures between patches and existing concrete as inconspicuous as possible. Strike off nonshrink grout flush with surrounding surface after patch has stiffened sufficiently to allow for greatest portion of shrinkage. Finish surface in accordance with lining requirements.

B. Pipe with defective coating areas greater than 6 inches in diameter cannot be used. Immediately remove pipe from project.

C. Reject pipe if steel cylinder is dented while making field repair. Immediately remove pipe from project.

END OF SECTION

Section 02621

GEOTEXTILE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Geotextile, also called filter fabric, in applications including pipe embedment wrap, around exterior of tunnel liner, around foundations of pipeline structures, and slope stabilization.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for Work performed under this Section. Include cost of Work in unit prices for Work requiring geotextile.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AASHTO M 288 - Standard Specification for Geotextile Specification for Highway Applications.

B. ASTM D 4491 - Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity.

C. ASTM D 4533 - Standard Test Method for Trapezoid Tearing Strength of Geotextiles.

D. ASTM D 4632 - Standard Test Method for Grab Breaking Load and Elongation of Geotextiles (Grab Method).

E. ASTM D 4751 - Standard Test Method for Determining Apparent Opening Size of Geotextiles.

F. ASTM D 4833 - Standard Test Method for Index Puncture Resistance of Geotextiles, Geomembranes, and Related Products.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit standard manufacturer's catalog sheets and other pertinent information, for approval, prior to installation.

C. Submit installation methods, as part of Work plan for tunneling or for excavation and backfill for utilities. Obtain approval from Project Manager for filter fabric material and proposed installation method prior to use of filter fabric.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 GEOTEXTILE

A. Provide geotextile (filter fabric) designed for use in geotechnical applications. Filter fabric shall provide permeable layer or media while retaining soil matrix.

B. Use fabric which meets physical requirements for Class A subsurface drainage installation conditions as defined in AASHTO M 288 and as specified in Paragraph 2.02, Properties.

2.02 PROPERTIES

A. Material: Nonwoven, nonbiodegradable, fabric consisting of continuous chain polymer filaments or yarns, at least 85 percent by weight polyolefins, polyesters or polyamide, formed into dimensionally stable network.

B. Chemical Resistance: Inert to commonly encountered chemicals and hydrocarbons over pH range of 3 to 12.

C. Physical Resistance: Resistant to mildew and rot, ultraviolet light exposure, insects and rodents.

D. Minimum Test Values:

Property	Value (Min.)	Test Method
Grab Strength	180 lbs.	ASTM D 4632
Trapezoidal Tear Strength	50 lbs.	ASTM D 4533
Puncture Strength	80 lbs.	ASTM D 4833
Mullen Burst Strength	290 psi.	ASTM D 3786
Apparent Opening Size(1)	0.25 mm	ASTM D 4751
Permittivity (sec^{-1})	0.2	ASTM D 4491
(1) Maximum average roll value.		

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 LINE WORK

A. Conform use of geotextile to backfill for utilities to Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

3.02 TUNNEL WORK

A. Use geotextile outside of tunnel primary liner to prevent migration of soil fines into excavated tunnel resulting in voids or settlement. Select geotextile, subject to minimum requirements of Paragraph 2.02, meeting tunnel liner design requirements and installation conditions.

1. Sewers: Conform to Section 02426 - Sanitary Sewer Line in Tunnel.

2. Waterlines: Conform to Section 02517 - Waterline in Tunnels.

END OF SECTION

Section 02631

STORM SEWERS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. New storm sewers and appurtenances, modifications to existing storm sewer system and installation of roadside ditch culverts.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for storm sewers, including elliptical or box, installed by open-cut, augered with or without casing, or tunneling is on linear foot basis. Measurement for storm sewers and roadside ditch culverts will be taken along center line of pipe from center line to center line of manholes or from end to end of culverts. Payment will be made for each linear foot installed complete in place, including connections to existing manholes and inlets.

2. Payment for storm sewer leads, including elliptical leads, is on a linear foot basis.

3. Payment for corrugated metal pipe storm sewer outfall, including timber bents, is on a linear foot basis.

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturer's literature for product specifications and installation instructions.

C. Submit proposed methods, equipment, materials, and sequence of operations for sewer construction. Plan operations to minimize disruption of utilities to occupied facilities or adjacent property.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The Condition for acceptance shall be watertight storm sewer that is watertight both in pipe-to-pipe joints and in pipe-to-manhole connections.

B. Provide manufacturer's certification to Specifications.

1.05 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Handle pipe, fittings, and accessories carefully with approved handling devices. Do not drop or roll pipe off trucks or trailers. Do not use Materials cracked, gouged, chipped, dented, or otherwise damaged shall not be use materials for installation.

C. Store pipe and fittings on heavy timbers or platforms to avoid contact with ground.

D. Unload pipe, fittings, and appurtenances as close as practical to location of installation to avoid unnecessary handling.

E. Keep interiors of pipe and fittings free of dirt and foreign matter.

F. Store PVC pipe out of direct sunlight.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 PIPE

A. Provide piping materials for storm sewers shall be of sizes and types specified unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

B. In diameters where material alternatives are available, provide pipe from single manufacturer for each pipe diameter, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager or otherwise shown on Drawings.

C. Existing pipe that has been removed during construction cannot be reused.

2.02 PIPE MATERIAL SCHEDULE

A. Storm Sewer Pipe: Use pipe materials that conforming to requirements specified in one or more of the following Sections as shown on the Drawings.

1. Section 02506 - Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe. Not allowed in the following applications:

a. Potentially Petroleum Contaminated Areas (PPCA).

b. Augering/ jacking

3. Section 02611 - Reinforced Concrete Pipe.

4. Section 02641 - Monolithic Reinforced Concrete Sewers.

5. Section 02612 - Precast Reinforced Concrete Box Sewers.

6. Section 02642 - Corrugated Metal Pipe use only where Corrugated Metal Pipe is shown on Drawings.

B. Driveway Culvert Pipe for Streets with Open Ditches: Use pipe materials that conforming to requirements specified in one or more of the following Sections as shown on the Drawings.

1. Section 02505 – Polyethylene Pipe. Use for Residential Culverts only. Use Concrete Pipe for long run culverts.

2. Section 02611 - Reinforced Concrete Pipe.

3. Section 02641 - Monolithic Reinforced Concrete Sewers.

4. Section 02612 - Precast Reinforced Concrete Box Sewers.

C. Provide pipe meeting minimum class, dimension ratio, or other criteria indicated.

D. Pipe materials other than those listed above shall not be used for storm sewers.

2.03 BEDDING, BACKFILL, AND TOPSOIL MATERIAL

A. Bedding and Backfill Material: Conform to requirements of Sections 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities, Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Material, and Section 2321 - Cement Stabilized Sand.

B. Topsoil: Conform to requirements of Section 02911 - Topsoil.

C. Use cement stabilized sand material for bedding and backfill in the pipe zone for all storm sewers.

D. For storm sewer pipes 42 inches in diameter and larger, use suitable on-site material or select backfill from 12 inches above the pipe to 12 inches below the pavement for backfill.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Prepare traffic control plans and set up street detours and barricades in preparation for excavation when construction will affects traffic. Conform to requirements of Section 01555 - Traffic Control and Regulation.

B. Provide barricades, flashing warning lights, and signs for excavations. Conform to requirements of Section 01555 - Traffic Control and Regulation. Maintain barricades and warning lights for streets and intersections while Work is in progress or where traffic is affected by Work.

C. Immediately notify agency or company owning utility lines which are damaged, broken, or disturbed. Obtain approval from Project Manager and agency for repairs or relocations, either temporary or permanent.

D. Remove old pavements and structures, including sidewalks and driveways in accordance with requirements of Section 02221 - Removing Existing Pavements and Structures.

E. Install and operate dewatering and surface water control measures in accordance with Section 01578 - Control of Ground Water and Surface Water.

3.02 EXCAVATION

A. Earthwork. Conform to requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. Use bedding as indicated on Drawings.

B. Line and Grade. Establish required uniform line and grade trench from benchmarks identified by Project Manager. Maintain this control for minimum of 100 feet behind and ahead of pipe-laying operation. Use laser beam equipment to establish and maintain proper line and grade of Work. Or use of appropriately sized grade boards which are substantially supported.

C. Trench Excavation. Excavate pipe trenches to level as indicated on Standard Details. Backfill excavation with specified bedding material to level of lower one-third of pipe barrel. Tamp and compact backfill to provide bedding at indicated grade. Form bedding foundation to minimum depth of one-eighth of pipe diameter, but not less than 6 inches.

3.03 PIPE INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with pipe manufacturer's recommendations and as specified in this section.

B. Install pipe only after excavation is completed, bottom of trench is shaped, bedding material is installed, and trench has been approved by Project Manager.

C. Install pipe to line and grade indicated on Drawings. Place pipe so that it has continuous bearing of barrel on bedding material with no voids, and is laid in trench so interior surfaces of pipe follows grades and alignments indicated.

D. Install pipe with bells of pipe facing upstream of anticipated flow.

E. Form concentric joint with each section of adjoining pipe to prevent offsets.

F. Place and drive home newly laid sections with a sling or come-a-long winches to eliminate damage to sections. Unless otherwise approved by Project Manager, provide end protection to prevent damage while using back hoes or similar powered equipment to drive home newly laid sections.

G. Keep interior of pipe clean as installation progresses.

H. Keep excavations free of water during construction and until final inspection.

I. When work is not in progress, cover exposed ends of pipes with pipe plug specifically designed to prevent foreign material from entering pipe.

J. For PVC Pipe:

1. Provide a minimum cover as per City Standard detail from top of pavement to top of pipe, but no less than 2 feet.

2. Accomplish transitions to different material of pipe in a manhole or inlet box. No adapter, coupling for dissimilar pipe, or saddle connections allowed.

3. Provide pipe sections in standard lengths with minimum length of 13 feet. Pipe may be field modified to shorten length no less than 4 feet, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager. Field modify pipe per manufacturer's recommendations.

4. No beveling at joint allowed. Cut to be perpendicular to longitudinal axis.

5. Provide gasketed bell and spigot joints installed per manufacturer's recommendations. Gasketed pipe joints; clean and free of debris, show no leakage after installation.

3.04 PIPE INSTALLATION OTHER THAN OPEN CUT

A. Conform to requirements of Section 02448 - Pipe and Casing Augering for Sewers where required.

B. Conform to requirements of Section 02441 - Microtunneling and Pipe-Jacking Tunnels where required.

C. Not allowed for plastic sewer pipe.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF APPURTENANCES

A. Construct manholes to conform to requirements of Sections 02081 - Cast-in-place Concrete Manholes, Section 02082 - Precast Concrete Manholes, and Section 2087 - Brick Manholes for Storm Sewers. Install frames, grate rings, and covers to conform to requirements of Section 02084 - Frames, Grates, Rings, and Covers.

B. Install PVC pipe culverts with approved end treatments. Approved end treatments include concrete headwalls, wingwalls and collars. Refer to City Standards detail for end treatment requirements.

C. Install inlets, headwalls, and wingwalls to conform to requirements of Section 02632 - Cast-in-place Inlets, Headwalls, and Wingwalls and Section 02633 - Precast Concrete Inlets, Headwalls, and Wingwalls.

D. Rehabilitate existing manholes to conform to requirements of Section 02555 - Manhole Rehabilitation. Adjust manhole covers and inlets to grade conforming to requirements of Section 02086 - Adjusting Manholes, Inlets, and Valve Boxes to Grade.

E. Dimension for Type C and Type E manholes shall be as shown on Drawings.

3.06 INSPECTION AND TESTING

A. Perform post installation television inspection in accordance with Section 02531 - Gravity Sanitary Sewers. Hand held cameras may be used in storm sewers in lieu of requirements of Paragraph 3.09 of Section 02531 – Gravity Sanitary Sewers. Clearly stencil distance markings on each joint of pipe to indicate distance from starting manhole when using hand held cameras.

3.07 BACKFILL AND SITE CLEANUP

A. Backfill trench after pipe installation is inspected and approved by Project Manager.

B. Backfill and compact soil in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

C. Repair and replace removed or damaged pavement and sidewalks as specified in Section 02951 - Pavement Repair and Resurfacing.

D. In unpaved areas, grade surface as uniform slope to natural grade as indicated on Drawings. Provide minimum of 4 inches of topsoil and seed according to requirements of Section 02921 - Hydromulch Seeding, or Section 02922 - Sodding, as required.

END OF SECTION

Section 02632

CAST-IN-PLACE INLETS, HEADWALLS AND WINGWALLS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Cast-in-place inlets for storm or sanitary sewers, including cast iron frame and plate or grate.

B. Cast-in-place headwalls including wingwalls for storm sewers.

C. Cast-in-place junction box with lid or grate top.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for inlets is on unit price basis for each inlet installed.

2. Payment for headwalls including wingwalls is on unit price basis for each headwall including wingwall installed.

3. Payment for junction box with lid or grate top is on unit price basis for each junction box installed.

4. Payment for inlets and for culvert headwalls including wingwalls and junction boxes includes connection of lines and furnishing and installing frames, grates, rings, and covers.

5. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit shop drawings for approval of design and construction details for cast-in-place units which differ from units shown on Drawings.

C. Submit manufacturers' data and details for frames, grates, rings, and covers.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Class A concrete with minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi conforming to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

B. Reinforcing Steel: Conform to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

C. Concrete Bricks - Conform to requirements of Section 04210 - Brick Masonry for Utility Construction. Use manhole bricks.

D. Mortar and Hydraulic Cement - Conform to requirements of Section 04061 - Mortar.

E. Miscellaneous metals: Cast-iron frames, grates, rings, and covers conforming to requirements of Section 02084 - Frames, Grates, Rings, and Covers.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify lines and grades are correct.

B. Verify compacted subgrade will support loads imposed by inlets.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Construct units complete in place to dimensions, lines and grades as shown on Drawings.

B. Excavate in accordance with requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

C. Construct box section of inlet of Class A concrete or brick.

D. Plaster brick inlets with 1/2 inch mortar on inside. Use walls for brick inlets minimum of 8 inches thick. Conform to the requirements of Section 04210 - Brick Masonry for Utility Construction.

E. Forms required for both outside and inside faces of concrete inlet walls, however, when nature of material excavated for inlet can be hand trimmed to smooth vertical face, outside forms may be omitted with approval of Project Manager.

F. Place reinforcing steel to conform to details shown on Drawings. Provide positive means for holding steel cages in place during concrete placement. Welding of reinforcing steel is not permitted unless noted on Drawings. Maximum variation in reinforcement position is plus or minus 10 percent of wall thickness or plus or minus 1/2 inch, whichever is less. Regardless of variation, maintain minimum cover of concrete over reinforcement as shown on Drawings.

G. Chamfer exposed edges unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

3.03 FINISHES

A. Cut off inlet leads neatly at inside face of inlet wall. Point up with mortar.

B. When box section of inlet complete, shape floor of inlet with mortar to conform to detailed Drawings.

C. Finish concrete surfaces in accordance with requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

3.04 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verify that inlets are free of leaks. Repair leaks in approved manner.

3.05 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect inlet leads to inlets.

B. Seal leads inside and outside with hydraulic cement.

3.06 BACKFILL

A. Backfill area of excavation surrounding each completed inlet according to requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

END OF SECTION

Section 02633

PRECAST CONCRETE INLETS, HEADWALLS, AND WINGWALLS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Precast concrete inlets for storm or sanitary sewers, including cast iron frame and plate or grate.

B. Precast concrete headwalls and wingwalls for storm sewers.

C. Precast junction box with lid or grate top.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for inlets is on unit price basis for each inlet installed.

2. Payment for headwalls and wingwalls is on unit price basis for each headwall and wingwall installed.

3. Payment for junction box with lid or grate top is on unit price basis for each junction box installed.

4. Payment for inlets, headwalls, wingwalls, and junction boxes includes connection of lines and furnishing and installing frames, grates, rings, and covers.

5. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 76 - Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit shop drawings for approval of design and construction details for precast concrete inlets, junction box headwalls, and wingwalls. Precast units differing from standard designs shown on Drawings will be rejected unless shop drawing submittals are approved. Clearly show proposed substitution is equal or superior in every aspect to standard designs.

C. Submit manufacturers' data and details for frames, grates, rings, and covers.

1.05 STORAGE AND SHIPMENT

A. Store precast units on level blocking. Do not place loads until design strength is reached. Shipment of acceptable units may be made when 28-day strength requirements have been met.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Provide concrete for precast machine-made units meeting requirements of ASTM C 76 regarding reinforced concrete, cement, aggregate, mixture, and concrete test. Minimum 28-day compressive strength shall be 4000 psi.

B. Reinforcing Steel: Place reinforcing steel to conform to details shown on Drawings and as follows:

1. Provide positive means for holding steel cages in place throughout production of concrete units. Maximum variation in reinforcement position is plus or minus 10 percent of wall thickness or plus or minus 1/2 inch, whichever is less. Regardless of variation, maintain minimum cover of concrete over reinforcement as shown on Drawings.

2. Welding of reinforcing steel is not permitted unless noted on Drawings.

C. Mortar and Hydraulic Cement: Conform to requirements of Section 04261 - Mortar.

D. Miscellaneous Metal: Cast-iron frames and plates conforming to requirements of Section 02084 - Frames, Grates, Rings, and Covers.

2.02 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tolerances: Allowable casting tolerances for concrete units are plus or minus 1/4 inch from dimensions shown on Drawings. Concrete thickness in excess of that required will not

constitute cause for rejection provided that excess thickness does not interfere with proper jointing operations.

B. Precast Unit Identification: Mark date of manufacture and name or trademark of manufacturer clearly on inside of inlet, headwall, or wingwall.

C. Rejection: Precast units rejected for non-conformity with these specifications and for following reasons:

1. Fractures or cracks passing through shell, except for single end crack that does not exceed depth of joint.

2. Surface defects indicating honeycombed or open texture.

3. Damaged or misshaped ends, where damage would prevent making satisfactory joint.

D. Replacement: Immediately remove rejected units from Work site and replace with acceptable units.

E. Repairs: Occasional imperfections resulting from manufacture or accidental damage may be repaired if, in opinion of Project Manager, repaired units conform to requirements of these specifications.

PART E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify lines and grades are correct.

B. Verify compacted subgrade will support loads imposed by inlets.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install units complete in place to dimensions, lines, and grades as shown on Drawings.

B. Excavate in accordance with requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

C. Bed precast concrete units on foundations of firm, stable material shaped to conform to shape of unit bases.

D. Provide adequate means to lift and place concrete units.

3.03 FINISHES

A. Use hydraulic cement to seal joints, fill lifting holes and as otherwise required.

B. When box section of inlet has been completed, shape floor of inlet with mortar to conform to Drawing details.

C. Adjust cast iron inlet plate frames to line, grade, and slope shown on Drawings. Grout frame in place with mortar.

3.04 INLET WATERTIGHTNESS

A. Verify that inlets are free of leaks. Repair leaks in approved manner.

3.05 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect storm sewer leads to inlets as shown on Drawings. Seal connections inside and outside with hydraulic cement. Make connections watertight.

3.06 BACKFILL

A. Backfill area of excavation surrounding each completed inlet, headwall, or wingwall according to requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.

END OF SECTION

Section 02642

CORRUGATED METAL PIPE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Corrugated metal pipe (CMP).

B. Corrugated metal pipe with smooth interior (CMPSI).

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No payment will be made for corrugated metal pipe in open cut under this Section. Include payment in unit price for Section 02631 - Storm Sewers.

2. No payment will be made for corrugated metal pipe in non-open cut under this Section. Include payment in unit price for applicable tunneling section.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AASHTO M 36 - Corrugated Steel Pipe, Metallic-Coated, for Sewers and Drains.

B. AASHTO M 190 - Bituminous Coated Corrugated Metal Culvert Pipe and Pipe Arches.

C. AASHTO M 196 - Corrugated Aluminum Pipe for Sewers and Drains.

D. AASHTO M 197 - Aluminum Alloy Sheet for Corrugated Aluminum Pipe.

E. AASHTO M 218 - Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) for Corrugated Steel Pipe.

F. AASHTO M 232 - Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.

G. AASHTO M 245 - Corrugated Steel Pipe, Polymer Precoated, for Sewers and Drains.

H. AASHTO M 246 - Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated and Polymer Precoated for Corrugated Steel Pipe.

I. AASHTO M 274 - Steel Sheet, Aluminum-Coated (Type 2) for Corrugated Steel Pipe.

J. ASTM B 633 - Standard Specification for Electro deposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel.

K. ASTM A 760 - Standard Specifications for Corrugated Steel Pipe, Metallic-Coated for Sewers and Drains.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit shop drawings with following information:

1. Design dimensions and details for pipe and fittings indicating alignment, grade, and laying dimensions.

2. Fabrication details, details of fittings and flanges, details of specials, and proposed welding procedures.

3. Show station numbers for pipe and fittings corresponding to Drawings.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Provide manufacturer's affidavits that pipe was manufactured in compliance with standards referenced in this Section, and that coatings and linings were not applied or allowed to cure in freezing temperatures.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Corrugated metal pipe may be galvanized steel, aluminized steel, aluminum or precoated galvanized steel as indicated on Drawings and conforming to following:

Galvanized Steel	AASHTO M 218
Aluminized Steel	AASHTO M 274
Aluminum	AASHTO M 197
Precoated Galvanized Steel	AASHTO M 246

1. Reference to gauge of metal is to U.S. Standard Gauge for uncoated sheets. Tables in AASHTO M 218 and AASHTO M 274 list thicknesses for coated sheets in inches. Tables in AASHTO M 197 list thicknesses in inches for clad aluminum sheets.

B. Coupling bands and other hardware for galvanized or aluminized steel pipe shall conform to requirements of AASHTO M 36 for steel pipe and AASHTO M 196 for aluminum pipe.

1. Coupling bands shall be not more than 3 nominal sheet thicknesses lighter than thickness of pipe to be connected and in no case lighter than 0.052 inch for steel or 0.048 inch for aluminum.

2. Coupling bands shall be made of same base metal and coating (metallic or otherwise) as pipe.

3. Minimum width of corrugated locking bands shall be as shown below for corrugations which correspond to end circumferential corrugations on pipes being joined:

   a. 10-1/2 inches wide for 2-2/3 inch by 1/2 inch corrugations.

   b. 12 inches wide for 3 inch by 1 inch corrugations.

4. Helical pipe without circumferential end corrugations will be permitted only when it is necessary to join new pipe to existing pipe which was installed with no circumferential end corrugations. In this event pipe furnished with helical corrugations at ends shall be field jointed with either helically corrugated bands or with bands with projections (dimples). Minimum width of helical corrugated bands shall conform to following:

   a. 12 inches wide for 1/2 inch deep helical end corrugations.

   b. 14 inches wide for 1 inch deep helical end corrugations.

5. Bands with projections shall have circumferential rows of projections with one projection for each corrugation. Width of bands with projections shall be not less than following:

   a. 12 inches wide for pipe diameters up to and including 72 inches. Bands shall have two circumferential rows of projections.

   b. 16-1/4 inches wide for pipe diameters of 78 inches and greater. Bands shall have four circumferential rows of projections.

6. Bolts for coupling bands shall be 1/2 inch diameter. Bands 12 inches wide or less will have minimum of 2 bolts per end at each connection, and bands greater than 12 inches wide shall have minimum of 3 bolts at each connection.

7. Galvanized bolts may be hot dip galvanized in accordance with requirements of AASHTO M 232, mechanically galvanized to provide same requirements as AASHTO M 232, or electro galvanized per ASTM B 633, Type RS.

C. Coat bituminous coated pipe or pipe arch inside and out with bituminous coating which shall meet these performance requirements and requirements of AASHTO M 190.

1. Uniformly coat pipe inside and out to minimum thickness of 0.05 inch, measured on crests of corrugations.

2. Adhere bituminous coating to metal so that it will not chip, crack, or peel during handling and placement; and to protect pipe from corrosion and deterioration.

3. Where paved invert is shown on Drawings, pipe or pipe arch, in addition to fully-coated treatment described above, shall receive additional bituminous material, same as specified above, applied to bottom quarter of circumference to form smooth pavement. Maintain minimum thickness of 1/8 inch above crests of corrugations.

D. Furnish fittings and specials required for bends, end sections, branches, access manholes, and connections to other fittings. Design fittings and specials in accordance with Drawings and ASTM A 760. Fittings and specials are subject to same internal and external loads as straight pipe.

2.02 PIPE FABRICATION

A. Steel Pipe:

1. Galvanized or aluminized steel pipe shall be full circle or arch pipe conforming to AASHTO M 36, Type I, Type IA, or Type II, as indicated on Drawings.

2. Fabrication with circumferential corrugations, lap joint construction with riveted or spot-welded seams, helical corrugations with continuous helical lock seam, or ultra-high frequency resistance butt-welded seams is acceptable.

B. Aluminum Pipe:

1. Conform to requirements of AASHTO M 196, Type I, Type IA, circular pipe, or Type II, pipe arch as indicated on Drawings.

2. Fabrication with circumferential corrugations, lap joint construction with riveted or spot-welded seams, or helical corrugations with continuous helical lock seam.

3. Portions of aluminum pipe that will be in contact with concrete or metal other than aluminum shall be insulated from these materials with coating of bituminous material

meeting requirements of AASHTO M 190. Extend coating minimum distance of one foot beyond area of contact.

C. Precoated Galvanized Steel Pipe:

1. Pipe shall be full circle or arch pipe conforming to AASHTO M 245, Type I, Type IA or Type II as indicated on Drawings.

2. Fabrication with circumferential corrugations, lap joint construction with riveted seams, or helical lock seams is acceptable.

3. Inside and outside coating shall be minimum of 10 mils.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Repair damaged spelter coating by thoroughly wire brushing damaged area and removing all loose, cracked, or weld-burned spelter coating. Paint cleaned area with zinc dust-zinc oxide paint conforming to Federal Specifications TT-P-641g.

B. Repair damaged aluminized or polymer coating in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.02 EARTHWORK

A. Excavate in accordance with requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities, except where tunneling or jacking methods are shown on Drawings. When pipes are laid in trench, trench when completed and shaped to receive pipe, shall be of sufficient width to provide free working space for satisfactory bedding and jointing and thorough tamping of backfill and bedding material under and around pipe.

B. Bed pipe in accordance with Drawings. When requested by Project Manager, furnish simple template for each size and shape of pipe for use in checking shaping of bedding. Template shall consist of thin plate or board cut to match lower half of cross section.

C. Where rock in either ledge or boulder form exists below pipe, remove rock below grade and replace with suitable materials so slightly yielding compacted earth cushion is provided below pipe minimum of 12 inches thick.

D. Remove and replace where soil encountered at established grade is quicksand, muck or similar unstable materials in accordance with requirements of Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. Do not allow cement stabilized materials for backfill to come into contact with uncoated aluminum or aluminized pipe surface.

E. After metal pipe structure has been completely assembled on proper line and grade and headwalls constructed when required by drawing details, place selected material from excavation or borrow along both sides of completed structures equally, in uniform layers not exceeding 6 inches in depth (loose measurement), wetted when required and thoroughly compacted between adjacent structures and between structure and sides of trench, or for distance each side of structure equal to diameter of pipe. Compact backfill material to same density requirements as specified for adjoining sections of embankment in accordance with specifications. Above three-fourths point of structure, place uniformly on each side of pipe in layers not to exceed 12 inches.

F. Only hand operated tamping equipment will be allowed within vertical planes 2 feet beyond horizontal projection of outside surface of structure for backfilling, until minimum cover of 12 inches is obtained. Remove and replace damaged pipe.

G. Do not permit heavy earth moving equipment to haul over structure until minimum of 4 feet of permanent or temporary compacted fill has been placed.

H. During backfilling, obtain uniform backfill material and uniform compacted density throughout length of structure to avoid unequal pressure. Provide proper backfill under structure.

I. Prior to adding each new layer of loose backfill material, inspection will be made of inside periphery of structure for local or unequal deformation caused by improper construction methods. Evidence of deformation will be reason for corrective measures as may be directed by Project Manager.

3.03 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Place pipes on prepared foundation starting at outlet end. Join sections firmly together, with side laps or circumferential joints pointing upstream and with longitudinal laps on sides.

B. Coat metal in joints not protected by galvanizing or aluminizing with approved asphaltum paint.

C. Provide proper equipment for hoisting and lowering sections of pipe into trench without damaging pipe or disturbing prepared foundation and sides of trench. Take up and re-lay pipe which is not in alignment or which shows undue settlement after laying, or is damaged.

D. Lay multiple installations of corrugated metal pipe and pipe arches with center lines of individual barrels parallel. Unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, maintain following clear distances between outer surfaces of adjacent pipes:

Diameter of Pipe	Clear Distance Between Pipes Full Circle and Pipe Arch	Pipe Arch Design No.
18"	1'-2"	2
24"	1'-5"	3
30"	1'-8"	4
36"	1'-11"	5
42"	2'-2"	6
48"	2'-5"	7
54"	2'-10"	8
60"-84"	3'-2"	9
90"-120"	3'-5"	10 & Over

E. Where extensions are attached to existing structures, install proper connection between structure and existing as indicated on Drawings, coat connection with bituminous material when required.

F. When existing headwalls and aprons are indicated for reuse on Drawings, sever portion to be reused from existing culvert, and relocate to prepared position. Restore damaged headwalls, aprons or pipes attached to headwall to their original condition.

3.04 JOINTING

A. Use field joints to maintain pipe alignment during construction and prevent infiltration of side material.

B. Lap coupling bands equally on pipes being connected to form tightly-closed joint.

C. Use corrugated locking bands to field join pipes furnished with circumferential corrugations including pipe with helical corrugations having reformed circumferential corrugations on ends. Fit locking bands into minimum of one full circumferential corrugation of pipe ends being coupled.

END OF SECTION

Section 02643

PLATE CULVERT STRUCTURES

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Structural plate culverts and special structural plate shapes.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for structural plate pipes, pipe arches, arches, underpasses or box culverts is on linear foot basis for each structure, measured along flow lines between ends of structures. Separate payment will be made for each different required size, gage, or minimum thickness of required material.

2. For multiple structures, measured length will be sum of lengths of barrels as prescribed above.

3. Include cost of aluminum alloy inverts, toe walls, footings, closure plates, and stiffeners in unit price for structure.

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AASHTO M 167 - Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Structural Plate, Zinc Coated, for Field Bolted Pipe, Pipe Arches, and Arches.

B. AASHTO M 190 - Standard Specification for Bituminous Coated Corrugated Metal Culvert Pipe and Pipe Arches.

C. AASHTO M 219 - Standard Specification for Corrugated Aluminum Alloy Structural Plate for Field Bolted Pipe, Pipe Arches, and Arches.

D. AASHTO M 243 - Standard Specification for Field Supplied Coating of Corrugated Metal Structural Plate for Pipe, Pipe Arches, and Arches.

E. ASTM A 153 - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.

F. ASTM B 221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum - Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wires, Profile, and Tubes.

G. ASTM B 695 - Standard Specification for Coatings of Zinc Mechanically Deposited on Iron and Steel.

H. Tex-728-I-Measurement of Dry Film Coating Thickness on Steel.

1.04 ACCEPTANCE

A. Furnish itemized list of number and size of plates in each shipment to be used for visual inspection by Project Manager. Inspection will be made of plates for deficiency in size, radius of curvature and evidence of poor workmanship. Inspection may include sampling for chemical analysis and determination of weight of splutter coating. Plates failing to meet requirements of this Specification Section will be rejected.

B. Project Manager may elect to inspect materials in rolling mill or in fabrication shop. Project Manager will have free access to mill or shop for inspection.

C. Repair damaged areas of splutter coating. Repair may be accomplished by painting with dust-zinc oxide paint conforming to Federal Specification TT-P-641G when approved in advance by Project Manager.

D. The following defects are causes for rejection:

1. Uneven laps.

2. Elliptical shaping (unless specified).

3. Variation from straight center line.

4. Ragged edges.

5. Loose, unevenly lined or spaced bolts.

6. Illegible brand.

7. Bruised, scaled, or broken splutter coating.

8. Dents or bends in metal.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 METAL PIPE AND ARCH MATERIALS

A. Conform plates and fasteners used for construction of structural plate pipes, pipe arches, arches, underpasses, box culverts and special shapes to AASHTO M 167 for galvanized corrugated steel structures, and to AASHTO M 219 for aluminum alloy structures.

B. Steel fasteners shall be mechanically galvanized or hot-dip galvanized and shall conform to ASTM A 153, Class C or D, or ASTM B 695, Class 40. Determine weight of galvanized coating according to Test Method Tex-728-I.

C. Steel plates shall consist of structural units of corrugated galvanized metal. Furnish single plates in standard sizes to permit structure length increments of 2 feet. Plates shall have approximately 2 inch lip beyond each end and crest. Length of given structure shall be approximately 4 inches longer than nominal length, except when skewed or beveled.

D. Aluminum plate shall consist of structural units of corrugated aluminum alloy. For aluminum alloy structures, furnish cut plates on structure ends to permit structure length increments of one foot. Conform aluminum alloy inverts, toe walls, footings and closure plates to material requirements for aluminum structural plate. Extruded aluminum transverse stiffeners shall conform to ASTM B 221, Alloy 6061-T6.

E. Comply headwalls with material requirements shown on Drawings.

2.02 STRUCTURE AND MATERIAL DESIGNATION

A. The types of structures are described on Drawings as follows:

1. Structural Plate Pipe (Galvanized Steel)

2. Structural Plate Pipe (Aluminum)

3. Structural Plate Pipe Arch (Galvanized Steel)

4. Structural Plate Pipe Arch (Aluminum)

5. Structural Plate Arch (Galvanized Steel)

6. Structural Plate Arch (Aluminum)

7. Structural Plate Underpass (Galvanized Steel)

8. Structural Plate Underpass (Aluminum)

9. Structural Plate Box Culvert (Galvanized Steel)

10. Structural Plate Box Culvert (Aluminum)

B. Either galvanized steel or aluminum may be used when no material is designated on Drawings.

2.03 PLATE JOINTS

A. Form plates to provide bolted lap joints. Punch bolt holes so plates having like dimensions, curvature, and same number of bolts per foot of seam are interchangeable.

B. Curve each plate to proper radius so cross-sectional dimensions of finished structure will be as indicated on Drawings.

C. Stagger joints so not more than three plates are jointed at any one point. Unless otherwise specified, place bolt holes along edges of plates forming longitudinal seams in finished structure as follows:

1. Stagger in rows 2 inches apart, with one row in valley and one in crest of corrugations with not less than 4 bolts per foot for galvanized steel structures.

2. Stagger in rows 1 ¾ inches apart, with 2 bolts in each valley and on each crest and not less than 16 bolts per 3 feet for aluminum alloy structures.

D. Provide for bolt spacing of not more than 12 inches for bolt holes along edges of plates that will form circumferential seams in finished structure.

E. Keep minimum distance from center of hole to edge of plate to not less than 1 3/4 times diameter of bolt.

F. Diameter of bolt holes in longitudinal seams not to exceed diameter of bolt by more than 1/8 inch.

G. Cut plates for forming skewed or sloped ends to give angle of skew or slope specified.

H. Repair burned edges to eliminate oxide and burrs. Maintain legible identification numerals on each plate to designate proper position in finished structure.

2.04 CONCRETE

A. Conform to Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction. Unless otherwise shown on Drawings, use Class A concrete for footings and headwalls. Use Class B concrete for slope protection and for invert paving. Place reinforcement as shown on Drawings.

2.05 REINFORCING STEEL

A. Conform to requirements of Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PROTECTIVE COATINGS, LININGS AND PAVINGS

A. When required, protect structural plate structures with bituminous coating, bituminous lining or have invert paved with bituminous material. Remove moisture, dirt, oil, unbonded or incompatible paint, grease, alkalies, or other foreign matter from surface to be coated before applying coating material.

B. Apply bituminous coatings to inside and outside of structures to minimum thickness of 0.05-inch as provided in AASHTO M 190, Type A.

C. Apply protective coating to coupling bands for coated structures. Use coatings in accordance with AASHTO M 190. Coupling bands may be single-dipped with coating thickness requirement waived.

D. Apply bituminous linings, when required, over bituminous coatings, to inside bottom portion of structure as provided in AASHTO M 190, Type C.

E. When linings and pavings are not required, asphalt mastic coating may be substituted for bituminous coating on corrugated steel or aluminum structures on outside surface of structure. Inside surface need not be coated.

F. Use asphalt mastic coating conforming to requirements of AASHTO M 243, except asbestos fibers will not be used. Perform this process at fabrication plant. Apply asphalt mastic material uniformly to outside surface with minimum thickness of 0.05 inch. Pinholes, blisters, cracks or lack of bond are cause for rejection.

G. When protective coatings are applied to structures, clearly identify thickness of metal on inner surface of each section with paint or other approved means. Repair damaged protective coatings, linings, and invert paving. Use bituminous material conforming to AASHTO M 190 or other approved materials to repair damaged asphalt mastic coatings.

H. Coat portion of nuts and bolts projecting outside pipe after installation. Portion of nuts and bolts projecting inside structure need not be coated.

I. When asphalt mastic is used for protective coating, surface at joints of structure need not be coated prior to assembly. Thoroughly seal joints after assembly with asphalt mastic on outside of structure.

3.02 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. Excavate in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. Make trenches for pipes, pipe arches, underpasses or box culverts of sufficient width to provide free working space for erection and thorough tamping of backfill and bedding material under and around structure. When quality of native soil is less than proposed backfill material, extend excavation to each side of barrel, minimum horizontal distance of half span or two-thirds of total rise, whichever is greater.

B. Bed foundations for structural plate structures with metal inverts in foundation of sandy earth material as specified in Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials, accurately shaped to fit lower part of pipe for at least ten percent of its overall height. Length of bedding arch need not exceed width of bottom plate. Uniformly seat corrugations on minimum 3 inch thick bed of sandy material. For culverts, place bedding to full width of invert.

1. Where rock, in ledge or boulder formation, exists below pipe, remove rock below grade and replace with compacted earth cushion having minimum thickness of 12 inches.

2. Where soil encountered at established grade is quicksand, muck, or similar unstable material, remove and replace material in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. When required, use special bedding as shown on Drawings.

C. Form foundations for structural plate structures with reinforced concrete footings to lines and grades shown on Drawings or as established by Project Manager.

1. Set anchors or slots for box culverts to line and grade when placing concrete for each substructure unit. Conform to Section 03315 - Concrete for Utility Construction for placing substructure units.

2. Place footings entirely in rock, shale or similarly hard material, or on firm soil or compacted soil cushion. When part of founding area is rock, undercut it and replace with minimum 12 inch thick compacted soil cushion. When thin layer of soil is partially covering rock within bearing area and when practical to do so, soil may be removed and footings placed directly on rock in accordance with details shown on Drawings.

D. Erection: Install structural plate structures in accordance with Drawings.

1. Coat steel in joints not protected by galvanizing with suitable bituminous coating.

2. Handle pipes and plates carefully to avoid damage to protective coating. Repair damaged coatings.

3. Use anchor bolts with 3/4 inch diameter by 6 inch minimum length on not more than 19 inch centers for anchoring plates to headwalls or other concrete end treatment.

4. Do not place plates for arch structures until substructure has cured for minimum of 3 days.

5. When plates are in position, tighten nuts and bolts progressively and uniformly, beginning at one end of structure. Tighten nuts second time to torque of not less than 150 ft-lbs nor more than 300 ft-lbs for steel bolts and not less than 100 ft-lbs nor more than 150 ft-lbs for aluminum bolts. When impact wrench is used, check with long-handled, structural, socket, or torque wrench to ensure that they are properly tightened. Replace service bolts used in drawing plates together with standard high strength bolts.

E. Use acceptable shape control devices for monitoring horizontal and vertical shape of structures. Maintain shape within two percent of design span or rise during erection and backfilling.

F. Backfilling: Perform backfilling and embankment construction around pipe in accordance with Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. Conduct backfill operations to insure inside dimensions remain within tolerances specified in shape control.

END OF SECTION

Section 02711

HOT MIX ASPHALT BASE COURSE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Foundation course of compacted mixture of coarse and fine aggregates, and asphalt binder.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for hot mix asphalt base is on a per ton basis.

2 Payment for hot mix asphalt base for transitions and base repairs is on a per ton basis.

3. Payment for hot mix asphaltic base for temporary driveway, roadway shoulders, etc., is on a per ton basis.

4. Measurement for utility projects:

   a. Match actual pavement replaced but no greater than maximum pavement replacement limits shown on Drawings.

   b. Include installed hot mix asphalt base course material that extends one foot beyond outside edge of pavement to be replaced, except where proposed pavement section shares common edge with existing pavement section.

5. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. AASHTO T201 - Standard Specification for Kinematic Viscosity of Asphalts (Bitumens).

B. AASHTO T202 - Standard Specification for Viscosity of Asphalt by Vacuum Capillary Viscometer.

C. ASTM C 33 - Standard Specifications for Concrete Aggregate.

D. ASTM C 131 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine.

E. ASTM C 136 - Standard Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates.

F. ASTM D 4402 - Standard Test Method for Viscosity Determination of unfilled Asphalt Using the Broolfield Thermal Apparatus.

E. TxDOT Tex-106-E - Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils.

F. TxDOT Tex-126-E - Molding, Testing, and Evaluating Bituminous Black Base Material.

G. TxDOT Tex-200-F- Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates.

H. TxDOT Tex-203-F - Sand Equivalent Test.

I. TxDOT Tex-204-F - Design of Bituminous Mixtures.

J. TxDOT Tex-207-F - Determining Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures.

K. TxDOT Tex-208-F - Test for Stabilometer Value of Bituminous Mixtures.

L. TxDOT Tex-227-F - Theoretical Maximum Specific Gravity of Bituminous Mixtures.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit certificates that asphalt materials and aggregates meet requirements of Paragraph 2.01, Materials.

C. Submit proposed mix and test data for each type of base course in Work.

D. Submit manufacturer's description and characteristics of mixing plant for approval.

E. Submit manufacturer's description and characteristics of spreading and finishing machine for approval.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Coarse Aggregate:

1. Use crushed gravel or crushed stone, or combination retained on No. 10 sieve, uniform in quality throughout and free from dirt, organic, or other injurious material occurring either free or as coating on aggregate. Conform aggregate o ASTM C 33 except for gradation. Furnish rock or gravel with Los Angeles abrasion loss not to exceed 40 percent by weight when tested in accordance with ASTM C 131.

2. Reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) or reclaimed Portland cement concrete pavement (RPCCP) are permitted as aggregates for hot mix asphalt base course if combined aggregate criteria, gradation, and mixture properties are met.

B. Fine Aggregate: Sand or stone screenings, or combination thereof, passing No. 10 sieve. Conform aggregate to ASTM C 33 except for gradation. Use sand composed of sound, durable stone particles free from loams or other deleterious foreign matter. Furnish screenings of same or similar material as specified for coarse aggregate. Plasticity index of that part of fine aggregate passing No. 40 sieve shall be not more than 6 when tested by TxDOT Tex-106-E. Sand equivalent shall have minimum value of 45 when tested by TxDOT Tex-203-F.

C. Composite Aggregate: Conform to following limits when graded in accordance with ASTM C 136. Provide either coarse or fine aggregate where designated on the Drawings.

GRADATION OF COMPOSITE AGGREGATE
Percent Passing by Weight or Volume

Sieve Size	Type A Coarse Base	Type B Fine Base
1 1/2"	100	-
1 1/4"	95 to 100	-
1"	-	100
7/8"	70 to 90	95 to 100
5/8"	-	75 to 95
1/2"	50 to 70	
3/8"	-	60 to 80
#4	30 to 50	40 to 60
#10	30 to 34	27 to 40
#40	5 to 20	10 to 25
#80	2 to 12	3 to 13
#200	1 to 6*	1 to 6*
VMA % Minimum	11	12

*2 to 8 when Test Method Tex-200-F, Part II (Washed Sieve Analysis) is used.

D. Asphalt Binder: Moisture-free homogeneous material meeting following requirements:

SPECIFICATION	PG 64 – 22
Average 7-day Maximum Pavement Design Temperature, degrees C[a]	<64
Minimum Pavement Design Temperature, degrees C[a]	>-22
Original Binder	
Flash Point Temperature, T48, Minimum degrees C	230
Viscosity, ASTM D 4402, [b] Maximum 3 Pa.s (3000cP), Test Temperature, degrees C	135
Dynamic Shear, TP5; [c]G*/sine[], Minimum, 1.00kPaTest Temperature @ 10rad/sec, degrees C	64
Rolling Thin Film Oven (T240) or Thin Film Oven (T179) Residue	
Mass Loss, Maximum, %	- 1.00
Dynamic Shear, TP5; G*/sine[], Minimum, 2.20 kPa Test Temperature @ 10rad/sec, degrees C	64
Pressure Aging Vessel Residue (PPI)	
PAV Aging Temperature, degrees C [d]	100
Dynamic Shear, TP5; G*/sine[], Maximum, 5000 kPa Test Temperature @ 10rad/sec, degrees C	25
Physical Hardening [e]	Report
Creep Stiffness, TP1; [f] S, Maximum, 300 Mpa; m-value, Minimum, 0.300 Test Temperature @ 60 sec, degrees C	-12
Direct Tension, TP3; [f] Failure Strain, Minimum, 1.0%; Test Temperature @ 1.0 mm/min, degrees C	-12

Notes:

[a] Pavement temperature can be estimated from air temperatures using algorithm contained in TxDOT testing procedures.

[b] The requirement may be waived at discretion of Project Manager if supplier warrants that asphalt binder can be adequately pumped and mixed at temperatures that meet applicable safety standards.

[c] For quality control of unmodified asphalt cement production, measurement of viscosity of original asphalt cement may be substituted for dynamic shear measurements of G*/sine [ ] at test temperature where asphalt is Newtonian fluid. Any suitable standard means of viscosity measurement may be used, including capillary of rotational viscometry (AASHTO T 201 or T202).

[d] The PAV aging temperature is based on simulated climatic conditions and is one of three temperatures: 90 C, 100 C, or 110 C. The PAV aging temperature is 100 C for PG64 and PG70.

[e] Physical Hardening - TP 1 is performed on a set of asphalt beams according to Section 13.1, except conditioning time is extended to 24 hours plus of minus 10 minutes at 10 C above minimum performance temperature. The 24-hour stiffness and m-value are reported for information purposes only.

[f] If creep stiffness is below 300 MPa, the direct tension test is not required. If creep stiffness is between 300 and 600 MPa the direct tension failure strain requirement can be used in lieu of creep stiffness requirement. The m-value requirement must be satisfied in both cases.

E. Reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) may be used at a rate no greater than 20 percent.

2.02 EQUIPMENT

A. Mixing Plant: Weight-batching or drum mix plant with capacity for producing continuous mixtures meeting specifications. With exception of a drum mix plant, the plant shall have satisfactory conveyors, power units, aggregate handling equipment, hot aggregate screens and bins, and dust collectors.

B. Provide equipment to supply materials adequately in accordance with rated capacity of plant and produce finished material within specified tolerances. Following equipment is essential:

1. Cold aggregate bins and proportioning device

2. Dryer

3. Screens

4. Aggregate weight box and batching scales

5. Mixer

6. Asphalt storage and heating devices

7. Asphalt measuring devices

8. Truck scales

C. Bins: Separate aggregate into minimum of four bins to produce consistently uniform grading and asphalt content in completed mix. One cold feet bin per stockpile is required.

2.03 MIXES

A. Employ certified testing laboratory to prepare design mixes.

1. Test in accordance with TxDOT Tex-126-E, TxDOT Tex-204-F, TxDOT Tex-208-F, and TxDOT Tex-227-F.

2. Verify mixture design properties for plant-produced mixture. Demonstrate that asphalt plant is capable of producing mixture meeting design volumetric and stability requirements before placement begins.

B. Density, Stability, and Air Voids Requirements. Select asphalt binder content for base courses to result in 3 to 5 percent air voids in laboratory molded specimens, while meeting minimum VMA requirement for selected mixture classification.

Percent Density		Percent	HVEEM Stability Percent	Percent Asphalt Content	
Min.	Max.	Optimum	Not Less Than	Min.	Max.
94.5	97.5	96	35	3.5	7

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Complete backfill of new utilities below future grade.

B. Verify lines and grades are correct.

C. Prepare subgrade in accordance with requirements of Section 02330 - Embankment and Section 02315 - Roadway Excavation or Section 02336 - Lime Stabilized Subgrade and Section 02337 - Lime/Fly-Ash Stabilized Subgrade, and 02338 - Portland Cement Stabilized Subgrade. Subgrade preparation may also refer to Section 02321 - Cement Stabilized Sand or Section 02713 - Recycled Crushed Concrete Base Course.

D. Correct subgrade deviations in excess of plus or minus 1/4 inch in cross section, or in 16 foot length by loosening, adding or removing material, reshaping and recompacting by sprinkling and rolling.

3.02 PLACEMENT

A. Place base when surface temperature taken in shade and away from artificial heat is above 40 degrees F and rising. Do not place asphalt base when temperature of surface to receive base course is below 50 degrees F and falling.

B. Haul prepared and heated asphalt base mixture to project in tight vehicles previously cleaned of foreign material. Mixture shall be at temperature between 250 degrees F and 325 degrees F when laid.

C. Place hot mix asphalt base course in compacted lifts no greater than 4 inches thick, unless permitted in writing by Engineer.

D. Place courses as nearly continuously as possible. Place material with approved mechanical spreading and finishing machine of screeding or tamping type. Spread lifts to attain smooth course of uniform density to section, line, and grades as indicated on Drawings.

E. In areas with limited space where use of paver or front-end loader is impractical, spread by hand and compact asphalt by mechanical means. Carefully place materials to avoid segregation of mix; do not broadcast material. Remove lumps that do not break down readily.

3.04 JOINTS

A. Transverse Joints. Pass roller over unprotected ends of freshly laid mixture only when mixture has cooled. When work is resumed, cut back placed material to produce slightly beveled edge for full thickness of course. Remove old material which has been cut away and lay new mix against fresh cut.

B. Existing pavement. When new asphalt is laid against existing asphalt pavement, saw cut existing asphalt to full depth creating vertical face. Clean joint and apply tack coat before placement.

3.05 COMPACTION

A. Construct test strip to identify correct type, number, and sequence of rollers necessary to obtain specified in-place density or air-voids. Prepare test strip at least 500 feet in length, comparable to placement and compaction conditions for Project.

B. Begin rolling while pavement is still hot and as soon as it will bear roller without undue displacement or hair line cracking. Keep wheels properly moistened with water to prevent adhesion of surface mixture. Do not use excessive water; do not use petroleum by-products.

C. Compact surface thoroughly and uniformly with power-driven equipment capable of obtaining required compaction. Obtain subsequent compression by starting at side and rolling longitudinally toward center of pavement, overlapping on successive trips by at least one-half width of rear wheels. Make alternate trips slightly different in length. Continue rolling until no further compression can be obtained and rolling marks are eliminated. Complete rolling before mat temperature drops below 175 degrees F.

D. Along walls, curbs, headers, similar structures, and in locations not accessible to rollers, compact mixture thoroughly with lightly oiled tamps.

E. Compact base course to a minimum density of 91 percent (TxDOT Tex-227-F).

3.06 TOLERANCES

A. Pavement Repairs.

1. Furnish templates for checking surface of finished sections. Maximum deflection of templates, when supported at center, shall not exceed 1/4 inch.

2. Completed surface, when tested with 10 foot straight edge laid parallel to center line of pavement, shall show no deviation in excess of 1/4 inch in 10 feet. Correct surface not meeting this requirement.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform testing under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. For in-place depth and density, take minimum of one core at random locations for each 1000 feet of single lane pavement. On a 2-lane pavement, take samples at random every 500 feet from alternating lanes. Take cores for parking lots every 500 square yards of base to determine in-place depth and density. If cul-de sac or streets are less than 500 feet, minimum of 2 cores (one per lane) will be procured. On small projects, take a minimum of two cores for each day's placement. For first days placement and prior to coring, minimum of 5 nuclear gauge readings will be performed at each core location to establish correlation between nuclear gauge (wet density reading) and core (bulk density). This process will continue for each day's placement until engineer determines that a good bias has been established for that nuclear gauge.

C. Determine in-place density in accordance with TxDOT Tex-207-F and Tex-227-F from cores or sections of asphaltic base located near each core. Other methods of determining in-place density, which correlate satisfactorily with results obtained from roadway specimens, may be used when approved by Project Manager.

D. Request, at option, three additional cores within a 5-foot radius of core indicating nonconforming in-place depth at no additional cost to City. In-place depth at these locations shall be average depth of four cores.

E. Fill cores and density test sections with new compacted asphalt base or cold patch material.

3.08 NONCONFORMING PAVEMENT

A. Re-compact and retest nonconforming street sections not meeting surface test requirements. Patch asphalt pavement sections in accordance with procedures established by Asphalt Institute. Retesting is at no cost to the City.

B. Remove and replace areas of asphalt base found deficient in thickness by more than 10 percent. Remove and replace areas of asphalt base found deficient in density. Use new asphalt base of thickness shown on Drawings.

C. Replace or correct nonconforming pavement sections at no additional cost to City.

3.09 PROTECTION

A. Do not open base to traffic until 12 hours after completion of rolling, or as shown on Drawings.

B. Maintain asphalt base in good condition until completion of Work.

C. Repair defects immediately by replacing base to full depth.

END OF SECTION

Section 02712

CEMENT STABILIZED BASE COURSE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Foundation course of cement stabilized crushed stone.

B. Foundation course of cement stabilized bank run gravel.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for cement stabilized base course is on square yard basis. Separate pay items are used for each different required thickness of base course.

2. Payment for asphaltic seal cure is by gallon.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

4. Refer to Paragraph 3.09, Unit Price Adjustment.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 131 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Course Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in Los Angeles Machine.

B. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.

C. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soils Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft^3 (600kN kN-m/m^3).

D. ASTM D 1556 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method.

E. ASTM D 2922 - Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

F. ASTM D 4318 - Standard Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.

G. TxDOT Tex-101-E - Preparing Soil and Flexible Base Materials for Testing.

H. TxDOT Tex-110-E - Particle Size Analysis of Soils.

I. TxDOT Tex-120-E - Soil-Cement Testing.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit samples of crushed stone, gravel, and soil binder for testing.

C. Submit manufacturer's description and characteristics for pug mill and associated equipment, spreading machine, and compaction equipment for approval.

1.05 TESTS

A. Perform testing under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Perform tests and analysis of aggregate and binder materials in accordance with ASTM D 1557 and ASTM D 4318.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Make stockpiles from layers of processed aggregate to eliminate segregation of materials. Load material by making successive vertical cuts through entire depth of stockpile.

B. Store cement in weatherproof enclosures. Protect from ground dampness.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 CEMENT

A. ASTM C 150 Type I; bulk or sacked.

2.02 WATER

A. Clean, clear; and free from oil, acids, alkali, or vegetable matter.

2.03 AGGREGATE

A. Crushed Stone: Material retained on No. 40 Sieve meeting following requirements:

1. Durable particles of crusher-run broken limestone, sandstone, or granite obtained from approved source.

2. Los Angeles abrasion test percent of wear not to exceed 40 when tested in accordance with ASTM C 131.

B. Gravel: Durable particles of bank run gravel or processed material.

C. Soil Binder: Material passing No. 40 Sieve meeting following requirements when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4318:

1. Maximum Liquid limit: 35.

2. Maximum Plasticity index: 10.

D. Mixed aggregate and soil binder shall meet the following requirements:

1. Grading in accordance with TxDOT Tex-101-E and Tex-110-E within the following limits:

Sieve	Percent Retained			
	Crushed Stone	Processed G. 1	Gravel G. 2	Bank run Gravel
1 3/4 inch	0 to 10	0 to 5	-	0 to 5
1/2 inch	-	-	0	-
No. 4	45 to 75	30 to 75	15 to 35	30 to 75
No. 40	55 to 80	60 to 85	55 to 85	65 to 85

2. Obtain prior permission from Project Manager for use of additives to meet above requirements.

2.04 ASPHALT SEAL CURE

A. Cutback Asphalt: MC30 conforming to requirements of Section 02742 - Prime Coat.

B. Emulsified Petroleum Resin: EPR-1 Prime conforming to requirements of Section 02742 - Prime Coat.

2.05 MATERIAL MIX

A. Design mix for minimum average compressive strength of 200 psi at 48 hours using TxDOT Tex-120-E unconfined compressive strength testing procedures. Provide minimum cement content of 1 1/2 sacks, weighing 94 pounds each, per ton of mix.

B. Increase cement content when average compressive strength of tests on field samples fall below 200 psi. Refer to Part 3 concerning field samples and tests.

C. Mix in stationary pug mill equipped with feeding and metering devices for adding specified quantities of base material, cement, and water into mixer. Dry mix base material and cement sufficiently to prevent cement balls from forming when water is added.

D. Resulting mixture shall be homogeneous and uniform in appearance.

2.06 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform testing under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Perform testing for unconfined compressive strength by TxDOT Test Method Tex-120-E as follows:

1. Mold three samples each day or for each 300 tons of production.

2. Compressive strength shall be average of three tests for each production lot.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify compacted subgrade is ready to support imposed loads.

B. Verify lines and grades are correct.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Complete backfill of new utilities below future grade.

B. Prepare subgrade in accordance with requirements of Section 02330 - Embankment and Section 02315 - Roadway Excavation.

C. Correct subgrade deviations in excess of plus or minus 1/4 inch in cross section or in 16 foot length by loosening, adding or removing material, reshaping and recompacting by sprinkling and rolling.

D. Prepare sufficient subgrade in advance of base course for efficient operations.

3.03 PLACEMENT

A. Do not mix and place cement stabilized base when temperature is below 40 degrees F and falling. Place base when temperature taken in shade and away from artificial heat is above 35 degrees F and rising.

B. Place material on prepared subgrade in uniform layers to produce thickness indicated on Drawings. Depth of layers shall not exceed 6 inches.

C. Spread with approved spreading machine. Conduct spreading so as to eliminate planes of weakness or pockets of non-uniformly graded material resulting from hauling and dumping operations.

D. Provide construction joints between new material and stabilized base that has been in place 4 hours or longer. Joints shall be approximately vertical. Form joint with temporary header or make vertical cut of previous base immediately before placing subsequent base.

E. Use only one longitudinal joint at center line under main lanes and shoulder unless shown otherwise on Drawings. Do not use longitudinal joints under frontage roads and ramps unless indicated on Drawings.

F. Place base so that projecting reinforcing steel from curbs remain at approximate center of base. Secure firm bond between reinforcement and base.

3.04 COMPACTION

A. Start compaction as soon as possible but not more than 60 minutes from start of moist mixing. Compact loose mixture with approved tamping rollers until entire depth is uniformly compacted. Do not allow stabilized base to mix with underlying material.

B. Correct irregularities or weak spots immediately by replacing material and recompacting.

C. Apply water to maintain moisture between optimum and 2 percent above optimum moisture as determined by ASTM D 698. Mix in with spiked tooth harrow or equal. Reshape surface and lightly scarify to loosen imprints made by equipment.

D. Remove and reconstruct sections where average moisture content exceeds ranges specified at time of final compaction.

E. Finish by blading surface to final grade after compacting final course. Seal with approved pneumatic tired rollers which are sufficiently light to prevent surface hair line cracking. Rework and recompact at areas where hair line cracking develops.

F. Compact to minimum density of 95 percent of maximum dry density at moisture content of treated material between optimum and 2 percent above optimum as determined by ASTM D 1557, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

G. Maintain surface to required lines and grades throughout operation.

3.05 CURING

A. Moist cure for minimum of 7 days before adding pavement courses. Restrict traffic on base to local property access. Keep subgrade surface damp by sprinkling.

B. If indicated on Drawings, cover base surface with curing membrane as soon as finishing operation is complete. Apply with approved self-propelled pressure distributor at following rates, or as indicated on Drawings:

1. MC30: 0.1 gallon per square yard.

2. EPR-1 Prime: 0.15 gallon per square yard.

C. Do not use cutback asphalt during period of April 16 to September 15.

3.06 TOLERANCES

A. Smooth and conform completed surface to typical section and established lines and grades.

B. Top surface of base course: Plus or minus 1 1/4 inch in cross section, or in 16 foot length.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform testing under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Take minimum of one core at random locations per 1000 linear feet per lane of roadway or 500 square yards of base to determine in-place depth.

C. Request additional cores in vicinity of cores indicating nonconforming in-place depths at no extra cost to City. When average of tests fall below required depth, place additional material and compact at no additional cost to City.

D. Perform compaction testing in accordance with ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 2922 and ASTM D 3017 at randomly selected locations. Remove and replace areas that do not conform to compaction requirements at no additional cost to City.

E. Fill cores and density test sections with new compacted cement stabilized base.

3.08 NONCONFORMING BASE COURSE

A. Remove and replace areas of base course found deficient in thickness by more than 10 percent, or that fail compressive strength tests, with cement-stabilized base of thickness shown on Drawings.

B. Replace nonconforming base course sections at no additional cost to City.

3.09 UNIT PRICE ADJUSTMENT

A. Make unit price adjustments for in-place depth determined by cores as follows:

1. Adjusted unit price shall be ratio of average thickness as determined by cores to thickness bid upon, times unit price.

2. Apply adjustment to lower limit of 90 percent and upper limit of 100 percent of unit price.

3.10 PROTECTION

A. Maintain stabilized base in good condition until completion of Work. Repair defects immediately by replacing base to full depth.

B. Protect asphalt membrane, when used, from being picked up by traffic. Membrane may remain in place when proposed surface courses or other base courses are to be applied.

END OF SECTION

Section 02713

RECYCLED CRUSHED CONCRETE BASE COURSE

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Recycled crushed concrete base (RCCB) course.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for RCCB is on per ton basis furnished and compacted in place.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.

B. TxDOT Tex-101-E - Preparing Soil and Flexible Base Materials for Testing.

C. TxDOT Tex-106-E - Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils.

D. TxDOT Tex-110-E - Determining Particle Size Analysis of Soils.

E. TxDOT Tex-113-E - Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture-Density Relationship of Base Materials.

F. TxDOT Tex-115-E - Field Method for Determining In-place Density of Soils and Base Materials.

G. TxDOT Tex-120-E - Soil-Cement Testing.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit representative samples of crushed concrete for testing.

C. Submit weight tickets, certified by supplier, for each delivery of recycled crushed concrete, gravel, and soil binder.

D. Submit manufacturer's description and characteristics for pug mill and associated equipment, mixer trucks, spreading and compaction equipment for approval.

1.05 TESTS

A. Follow Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Test and analyze aggregate and binder products following TxDOT Tex-110-E.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Provide materials from stockpiles that are protected during storage from contaminates detrimental to concrete base.

B. Load material from same area of stockpile to maintain uniformity of each successive delivery to Project site.

C. Store cement in weatherproof enclosures. Protect from ground dampness.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Provide RCCB with following performance:

1. Minimum 7 percent cement.

2. Minimum compressive strength: 650 psi at 14 days following TxDOT Tex-120-E.

3. Prepare concrete product in on-site or off-site pug mill, or in on-site or off-site portable concrete mixer.

B. Preliminary Design: Prepare preliminary mix with minimum cement to crushed concrete ratios of 5 percent by dry mass of materials.

1. Designate source of concrete for crushing. Follow Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services for tests of concrete from source.

2. Results of laboratory and compression tests will be used by Project Manager to select final mix design.

2.02 PORTLAND CEMENT

A. ASTM C 150 Type I, II, or III; bulk or sacked.

2.03 WATER

A. Potable.

2.04 AGGREGATE

A. Recycled Crushed Concrete: Material retained on No. 40 Sieve, and durable coarse particles of crusher-run reclaimed cured Portland cement concrete, obtained from approved source. Organic material is prohibited. The crushed concrete shall be substantially free of foreign matter including but not limited to asphalt, base, and dirt.

B. Soil Binder (classified below): Meeting following requirements when tested following TxDOT Tex-106-E:

1. Maximum liquid limit: 35

2. Maximum plasticity index: 10

C. Mixed Aggregate and Soil Binder: Grading following TxDOT Tex-101-E and Tex-110-E within following limits:

Sieve	Percent Crushed Concrete Retained
1 3/4 inch	0 to 10
No. 4	45 to 75
No. 40	55 to 80; classified as Soil Binder

2. Bank sand may be added to mix at pug mill.

2.05 ASPHALTIC SEAL CURE

A. Acquire written approval from Project Manager before curing and before proceeding with curing.

B. Use following as option to curing by sprinkling:

1. Cut-back asphalt: MC30 following Section 02742 - Prime Coat.

2. Emulsified petroleum resin: EPR-1 Prime following Section 02742 - Prime Coat.

2.06 MATERIAL MIX

A. Design mix for minimum compressive strength of 650 psi at 14 days following TxDOT Tex-120-E unconfined compressive strength.

B. Cement Ratio: Follow Paragraph 2.01A. Increase cement content in two percent steps up to 9 percent maximum when compressive strength of design mix samples fail TxDOT Tex-120E test.

2.07 MIXING EQUIPMENT

A. Mix following Paragraph 2.01A, with metering devices adding specified quantities of crushed concrete, cement, and water into mixer. Dry mix crushed concrete and cement prior to adding water. Produce homogeneous and uniformly mixed product.

2.08 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test following Section 01454 -Testing Laboratory Services.

B. When directed by Project Manager, test for unconfined compressive strength following Test Method TxDOT Tex-120-E as follows:

1. Mold minimum of three samples each day or for each 500 tons of production or one for each day.

2. Compressive strength: average of 3 specimens for each sample lot.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Follow Section 01452 - Inspection Services.

B. Verify buried utility work is complete.

C. Verify lime treatment of base is complete.

D. Verify subgrade is ready to support imposed loads.

E. Verify flatwork, foundations, projecting reinforcement and similar Work interfacing with base is in place.

F. Verify lines and grades are correct.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Complete backfill of new utilities below future grade.

B. Prepare subgrade in accordance with requirements of Section 02330 - Embankment and Section 02315 - Roadway Excavation, or Section 02336 - Lime Stabilized Subgrade and Section 02337 - Lime-Fly Ash Stabilized Subgrade and Section 02338 - Portland Cement Stabilized Subgrade.

C. Correct subgrade deviations in excess of plus or minus 1/4 inch in cross section, or in 16 foot length by loosening, adding or removing material, reshaping and recompacting by sprinkling and rolling.

D. Prepare sufficient subgrade in advance of base course for efficient operations.

E. Have sufficient products and equipment on hand to expeditiously apply base.

3.03 MIXING

A. Maintain moisture content of between optimum and 5 percent above optimum.

3.04 PLACEMENT

A. Place mixture with approved spreading equipment. Spread to eliminate planes of weakness or pockets of nonuniformly graded material resulting from hauling and dumping operations.

B. Provide approximately vertical construction joints between fresh base and base-in-place 4 hours or longer. Form joint with temporary header or make vertical cut of in-place base immediately before placing fresh base.

C. Make cold joints at center line of head-to-head parking stalls.

D. Place base so that projecting reinforcing steel from curbs remain at approximate center of base. Provide proper bond between reinforcement and base.

E. Transverse and longitudinal joints shall be vertical.

F. Unless noted otherwise, place recycled crushed concrete base in courses not to exceed 8 inches in depth. All courses shall be placed on same working day unless approved by Project Manager. Construction joints between new base and base previously placed shall be wetted and coated with dry cement prior to addition of new base.

G. Complete finishing operations within period of 6 hours after cement is added to base materials.

3.05 COMPACTION

A. Start compaction maximum 3 hours after start of mixing. Compact loose mixture with approved tamping rollers until entire depth is uniformly compacted. Do not allow base to mix with underlying material.

1. Do not rework uncompacted material that has set up for more than 30 minutes.

2. Complete placement and compaction work within 6 hours from start of moist mixing.

B. Correct irregularities or weak spots immediately by replacing material and recompacting.

C. Apply water to maintain moisture between optimum and 5 percent above optimum moisture.

D. Remove and reconstruct sections where average moisture content exceeds ranges specified at time of final compaction.

E. Finish by blading surface to final grade after compacting final course. Seal with approved pneumatic tired rollers or flat wheel rollers which are sufficiently light to prevent surface hair line cracking.

F. Compact to minimum density of 95 percent of dry density, following TxDOT Tex -113-E, at moisture content of treated material between optimum and 5 percent above optimum.

G. Test roadway base course compaction in accordance with TxDOT Tex-115-E.

H. Maintain surface to required lines and grades throughout operation.

3.06 CURING

A. Moist cure for minimum of 72 hours before adding pavement courses.

B. Use sprinkling or, at option, apply following curing membrane as soon as initial set begins, using approved light-weight self-propelled pressure distributor:

1. MC30: 0.1 gallon per square yard.

2. EPR-1 Prime: 0.15 gallon of asphalt residual per square yard.

C. Do not use cut-back asphalt during period of April 16 through September 15.

3.07 TOLERANCES

A. Completed Surface: Smooth and conform to typical section and established lines and grades.

B. Top Surface of Base Course: Plus or minus 1/4 inch in cross section or in 16 foot length.

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test following Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Perform compaction tests following TxDOT Tex-113-E at randomly selected locations. Remove and replace areas failing compaction requirements at no additional cost to City.

3.09 PROTECTION

A. Maintain base in proper condition until surface is placed. Surface must be placed within 14 days after final mixing and compaction unless otherwise approved by Project Manager. Repair unacceptable base course immediately by replacing base to full depth.

B. Curing membrane may remain in place at areas where surface courses or other base courses are applied.

C. Prevent construction traffic on base for minimum 3 days. Light vehicles, used to maintain proper cure, are permitted on base after initial set or as permitted by Project Manager.

END OF SECTION

Section 02714

FLEXIBLE BASE COURSE FOR TEMPORARY ROADS, DETOURS, SHOULDERS, AND DRIVEWAYS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Foundation course of crushed concrete or stone.

1.02 UNIT PRICES

A. Measurement for flexible base is on a square yard basis. Separate measurement will be made for each different required thickness of base course.

B. Refer to Section 01290 - Payment Procedures for unit price procedures.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 1556 - Density of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method.

B. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12.44 ft-lbf/ft3).

C. ASTM D 2922 - Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

D. ASTM D 361 - Test Method for Water Content of Soils and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods (shallow depth).

E. ASTM D 3017 - Test Method for Water Content of Soils and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods.

F. ASTM D 4318 - Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.

G. TxDOT Tex-101-E - Preparation of Soil and Flexible Base Materials for Testing.

H. TxDOT Tex-110-E - Determination of Particle Size Analysis of Soils.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittals Procedures.

B. Submit samples of flexible base course and soil binder for testing.

1.05 TESTS

A. Tests and analysis of soil materials will be performed in accordance with ASTM C 131, ASTM D 698, ASTM D 4318, Tex-101-E, and Tex-110-E under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Provide materials from stockpiles that are protected during storage from contaminates that would be detrimental to the flexible base course.

B. Load materials from same area of stockpile to maintain uniformity of each successive delivery to the project site.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Crushed Stone or Concrete: Material retained on the No. 40 sieve meeting the following requirements:

1. Durable particles of crusher-run broken limestone, crushed concrete, crushed sandstone, or granite obtained from an approved source.

B. Soil Binder: Material passing the No. 40 sieve meeting the following requirements when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4318:

1. Maximum Liquid Limit: 40

2. Maximum Plasticity Index: 12

3. Maximum Lineal Shrinkage: 7 (when calculated from volumetric shrinkage at liquid limit).

C. Mixed Materials shall meet the following requirements:

1. Minimum compressive strength of 35 psi at 0 psi lateral pressure and 175 psi at 15 psi lateral pressure using triaxial testing procedures.

2. Grading in accordance with Tex-101-E and Tex-110-E within the following limits:

Sieve	Percent Retained
1-3/4 inch	0 to 10
No. 4	45 to 75
No. 40	60 to 85

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify compacted subgrade is ready to support imposed loads.

B. Verify lines and grades are correct.

3.02 PREPARATION

C. Complete backfill of new utilities below future grade.

D. Prepare subgrade in accordance with requirements of Section 02230 - Embankment and Section 02315 - Roadway Excavation or Sections 02336 - Lime Stabilized Subgrade and 02337 - Lime/Fly-ash Stabilized Subgrade.

E. Correct subgrade deviations in excess of plus or minus 1/2 inch in cross section, or in 16 foot length by loosening, adding or removing material, reshaping and recompacting by sprinkling and rolling.

F. Prepare sufficient subgrade in advance of base course operations.

3.03 PLACEMENT

A. Spread and shape in lifts to compacted thickness not to exceed 6 inches in depth. Complete spreading, shaping, and compacting on same day material is deposited.

B. Place base so that projecting reinforcing steel from curbs remain at approximate center of base. Secure a firm bond between reinforcement and base.

C. Start rolling operations as soon as possible after placement. Use sheepfoot, steel, or pneumatic rollers as approved. Roll longitudinally with subgrade starting from sides. Overlap successive strips by one-half width of each rear wheel.

4. Maintain moisture between optimum and 3 percent above optimum moisture.

E. Compact to 95 percent of Proctor density in accordance with ASTM D 698, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

6. Finish to grade and compact lift before placing successive lift.

7. Maintain shape by grading throughout operation.

8. Provide total thickness indicated on Drawings.

3.04 TOLERANCES

A. Completed surface shall be smooth and conform to typical section and established lines and grades.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Compaction Testing will be performed in accordance with ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 2922 and ASTM 3017 at a random location near each depth determination core. Rework and recompact areas that do not conform to compaction requirements.

3.06 PROTECTION

A. Sprinkle to prevent excessive loss of moisture.

B. Restrict construction traffic on finished base to equipment required to complete the work.

END OF SECTION

Section 02741

ASPHALTIC CONCRETE PAVEMENT

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Surface course of compacted mixture of coarse and fine aggregates and asphaltic binder.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for hot-mix asphalt concrete pavement is on a per ton basis. Separate pay items are used for each different required thickness of pavement.

2. Payment for hot-mix asphalt concrete pavement includes payment for associated work performed in accordance with Section 02743 - Tack Coat.

3. Measurement for utility projects: Match actual pavement replaced but no greater than maximum pavement replacement limits shown on Drawings.

4. Payment for temporary detour pavement is on a square yard basis and includes surface and base materials, associated grading, maintenance and removal as well as restoration of ditches.

5. Payment for speed humps is on linear foot basis, and includes milling of existing pavement, tack coat, and placement and compaction of asphalt. Measurement of speed hump is along length of 12 foot wide speed hump, measured transverse to centerline of road. Separate payment is made for thermoplastic markings applied to speed hump.

6. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 33 - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates.

B. ASTM C 131 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine.

C. TxDOT Tex-106-E - Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils

D. TxDOT Tex-126-E - Molding, Testing, and Evaluating Bituminous Black Base Material.

E. TxDOT Tex-200-F - Sieve Analysis of Fine and Course Aggregates.

F. TxDOT Tex-203-F - Sand Equivalent Test.

G. TxDOT Tex-204-F - Design of Bituminous Mixtures.

H. TxDOT Tex 206-F - Compacting Test Specimens of Bituminous Mixtures.

I. TxDOT Tex-207-F - Determining Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures.

J TxDOT Tex-208-F - Test for Stabilometer Value of Bituminous Mixtures.

K. TxDOT Tex-217-F - Determining Deleterious Material and Decantation Test for Coarse Aggregates.

L. TxDOT Tex-227-F - Theoretical Maximum Specific Gravity of Bituminous Mixtures.

M. TxDOT Tex-530-C - Effect of Water on Bituminous Paving Mixtures.

N. TxDOT Tex-531-C - Prediction of Moisture Induced Damage to Bituminous Paving Materials Using Molded Specimens.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit certificates that asphalt materials and aggregates meet requirements of Paragraph 2.01, Materials.

C. Submit proposed design mix and test data for surface course.

D. Submit manufacturer's description and characteristics of spreading and finishing machine for approval.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Coarse Aggregate:

1. Use gravel, crushed stone, or combination thereof, that is retained on No. 10 sieve, uniform in quality throughout and free from dirt, organic or other injurious matter occurring either free or as coating on aggregate. Use aggregate conforming to ASTM C 33 except for gradation. Furnish rock or gravel with Los Angeles abrasion loss not to exceed 40 percent by weight when tested in accordance with ASTM C 131.

2. Aggregate by weight shall not contain more than 1.0 percent by weight of fine dust, clay-like particles, or silt when tested in accordance with Tex-217-F, Part II.

B. Fine Aggregate: Sand, stone screenings or combination of both passing No. 10 sieve. Use aggregate conforming to ASTM C 33 except for gradation. Use sand composed of sound, durable stone particles free from loams or other injurious foreign matter. Furnish screenings of same or similar material as specified for coarse aggregate. Plasticity index of that part of fine aggregate passing No. 40 sieve shall be not more than 6 when tested by TxDOT Tex-106-E. Sand equivalent shall have minimum value of 45 when tested by TxDOT Tex-203-F.

C. Composite Aggregate: Conform to following limits when graded in accordance with TxDOT Tex-200-F. Use type specified on Drawings:

GRADATION OF COMPOSITE AGGREGATE		
	PERCENT PASSING	
SIEVE SIZE	**Course Surface (TxDOT Type C)**	**Fine Surface (TxDOT Type D)**
7/8"	100	---
5/8"	95 to 100	---
1/2"	--	100
3/8"	70 to 85	85 to 100
#4	43 to 63	50 to 70
#10	30 to 40	32 to 42
#40	10 to 25	11 to 26
#80	3 to 13	4 to 14
#200	1 to 6*	1 to 6*
VMA % minimum	13	14
* 2 to 8 when Test Method Tex-200-F, Part II (Washed Sieve Analysis) is used.		

D. Asphalt Binder: Moisture-free homogeneous material which will not foam when heated to 347 F, meeting the following requirements. .

PERFORMANCE GRADED BINDER	
CRITERIA / TEST	PERFORMANCE GRADE (PG64-22)
Average 7-day Maximum Pavement Design Temperature, C	< 64
Minimum Pavement Design Temperature, C	> -22
ORIGINAL BINDER	
Flash Point Temperature, T48; Minimum C	230
Viscosity, ASTM D 4402; Maximum, 3Pa*s (3000 cP) Test Temperature, C	135
Dynamic Shear, TP5; G*/sin[ ], Minimum, 1.00 kPa Test Temperature @ 10 rad/sec., C	64
ROLLING THIN FILM OVEN (T240) OR THIN FILM OVEN (T179) RESIDUE	
Mass Loss, Maximum , %	1.00
Dynamic Shear, TP5; G*/sin [ ], Minimum, 2.20 kPa Test Temperature @ 10 rad/sec., C	64
PRESSURE AGING VESSEL RESIDUE (PP1)	
PAV Aging Temperature, C	100
Dynamic Shear, TP5; G*/sin [ ], Minimum, 5000 kPa Test Temperature @ 10 rad/sec., C	25
Physical hardening	Report
Creep Stiffness, TP1; S, Maximum, 300 Mpa -value, Minimum, 0.300 Test Temperature @ 60 sec., C	-12
Direct Tension, TP3; Failure Strain, Minimum, 1.0% Test Temperature @ 1.0 mm/min, C	-12

E. Anti-stripping Agent:

1. Evaluate mixture of aggregate, asphalt, and additives proposed for use for moisture susceptibility and requirement for anti-stripping agents. To substantiate mix design, produce and test trial mixtures using proposed project materials and equipment prior to placement. Test for susceptibility to moisture and trial mixture may be waived by Project Manager when similar designs using same material have previously proven satisfactory.

2. Liquid Anti-stripping Agent. Use anti-stripping agent with uniform liquid with no evidence of crystallization, settling, or separation of components. Submit sample of anti-stripping agent proposed for use and manufacturer's product data, including recommended dosage range, handling and storage, and application instructions.

F. Pavement markings for speed humps: Conform to requirements of Section 02767 - Thermoplastic Pavement Markings.

2.02 EQUIPMENT

A. Mixing Plant: Weight-batching or drum mix plant with capacity for producing continuous mixtures meeting specifications. With exception of a drum mix plant, plant shall have satisfactory conveyors, power units, aggregate handling equipment, hot aggregate screens and bins, and dust collectors.

B. Provide equipment to supply materials adequately in accordance with rated capacity of plant and produce finished material within specified tolerances. Following equipment is essential:

1. Cold aggregate bins and proportioning device

2. Dryer

3. Screens

4. Aggregate weight box and batching scales

5. Mixer

6. Asphalt storage and heating devices

7. Asphalt measuring devices

8. Truck scales

B. Bins: Separate aggregate into minimum of four bins to produce consistently uniform grading and asphalt content in completed mix. Provide one cold feed bin per stockpile.

2.03 MIXES

A. Employ certified testing laboratory to prepare design mixes. Test in accordance with TxDOT Tex-126-E or Tex-204-F, Tex-206-F, Tex-208-F, Tex-530-C and Tex-531-C.

B. Density, Stability and Air Void Requirements:

Percent Density		Percent	HVEEM Stability Percent
Min	Max.	Optimum	Not Less Than
94.5	97.5	96	35

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify compacted base course is ready to support imposed loads.

B. Verify lines and grades are correct.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Tack Coat: Conform to requirements of Section 02743 - Tack Coat. Where mixture will adhere to surface on which it is to be placed without use of tack coat, tack coat may be eliminated when approved by Project Manager.

B. Prepare subgrade in accordance with requirements of Section 02711 - Hot Mix Asphalt Base Course, Section 02712 - Cement Stabilized Base Course, or Section 02713 - Recycled Crushed Concrete Base Course.

C. Prepare subgrade in advance of asphalt concrete paving operation.

D. Perform pavement repair and resurfacing as indicated in Section 02951 - Pavement Repair and Resurfacing.

E. Do not use cutback asphalt.

G. Milling of pavement for speed humps: Mill pavement (concrete or asphalt) to depth of one inch and width between 18 and 24 inches around entire perimeter of proposed hump, as shown in detail for speed hump design.

3.03 PLACEMENT

A. Do not place asphalt pavement less than 2 inches thick when surface temperature taken in shade and away from artificial heat is below 50 F and falling. Asphalt may be placed when temperature is above 40 F and rising.

B. Haul prepared and heated asphaltic concrete mixture to project in tight vehicles previously cleaned of foreign material. Mixture temperature shall be between 250 F and 325 F when laid.

C. Spread material into place with approved mechanical spreading and finishing machine of screening or tamping type.

D. Surface Course Material: Surface course 2 inches or less in thickness may be spread in one lift. Spread lifts in such a manner that, when compacted, finished course will be smooth, of uniform density, and will be to section, line and grade as shown. Place construction joints on surface courses to coincide with lane lines or as directed by Project Manager.

E. Joints: Pass roller over unprotected ends of freshly laid mixture only when mixture has cooled. When work is resumed, cut back laid material to produce slightly beveled edge for full thickness of course. Remove old material which has been cut away and lay new mix against fresh cut.

F. When new asphalt is laid against existing or old asphalt, saw cut existing or old asphalt to full depth to provide straight smooth joint.

G. In smaller restricted areas where use of paver is impractical spread material by hand. Compact asphalt by mechanical means. Carefully place materials to avoid segregation of mix. Do not broadcast material. Remove lumps that do not break down readily.

3.04 COMPACTION

A. Construct test strip to identify correct type, number, and sequence of rollers necessary to obtain specified in-place density or air-voids when directed by the Project Manager. Prepare test strip at least 1,000 feet in length, comparable to placement and compaction conditions for Project.

B. Begin rolling while pavement is still hot and as soon as it will bear roller without shoving, displacement or hair cracking. Keep wheels properly moistened with water to prevent adhesion of surface mixture. Do not use excessive water or petroleum by-products.

C. Compact surface thoroughly and uniformly, first with power-driven, 3-wheel, or tandem rollers weighing a minimum of 8 tons. Obtain subsequent compression by starting at side and rolling longitudinally toward center of pavement, overlapping on successive trips by at least one-half width of rear wheels. Make alternate trips slightly different in length.

Continue rolling until no further compression can be obtained and rolling marks are eliminated. Complete rolling before mat temperature drops below 185 F.

D. Use tandem roller for final rolling. Double coverage with approved pneumatic roller on asphaltic concrete surface is acceptable after flat wheel and tandem rolling has been completed.

E. Along walls, curbs, headers and similar structures, and in locations not accessible to rollers, compact mixture thoroughly with lightly oiled tamps.

F. Compact binder course and surface course to a minimum density of 91 percent of maximum possible density of voidless mixture composed of same materials in like proportions.

3.05 TOLERANCES

A. Furnish templates for checking surface in finished sections. Maximum deflection of templates, when supported at center, shall not exceed 1/8 inch.

B. Completed surface, when tested with 10 foot straightedge laid parallel to center line of pavement, shall show no deviation in excess of 1/8 inch in 10 feet. Correct surface not meeting this requirement.

C. Dimensions of speed humps shall conform to details for speed hump design and speed hump height tolerances.

3.06 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. For in-place depth and density, take minimum of one core at random locations for each 1000 feet of single lane pavement. On a 2-lane pavement, take samples at random every 500 feet from alternating lanes. Take cores for parking lots every 500 square yards of base to determine in-place depth and density. If cul-de sac or streets are less than 500 feet, minimum of 2 cores (one per lane) will be procured. On small projects, take a minimum of two cores for each day's placement. For first days placement and prior to coring, minimum of 5 nuclear gauge readings will be performed at each core location to establish correlation between nuclear gauge (wet density reading) and core (bulk density). This process will continue for each day's placement until engineer determines that a good bias has been established for that nuclear gauge.

C. Determine in-place density in accordance with TxDOT Tex-207-F and Tex-227-F from cores or sections. Other methods of determining in-place density, which correlate satisfactorily with results obtained from roadway specimens, may be used when approved by Project Manager. Average densities for each street placed in a single day to determine compliance.

D. Contractor may request three additional cores in vicinity of cores indicating nonconforming in-place depths or density at no additional cost to City. In-place depth and density at these locations shall be average of four cores.

E. Fill cores and density test sections with new compacted asphaltic concrete.

F. Speed humps: Measure dimensions of completed speed hump, before applying pavement markings, at locations shown on Speed Hump Height Measurement Worksheet. Complete one worksheet for each speed hump, and send completed worksheets to City of Houston, Department of Public Works and Engineering, Traffic Management and Maintenance Branch, P.O. Box 1562, Houston, Texas, 77251-1562.

3.07 NONCONFORMING PAVEMENT

A. Recompact and retest nonconforming street sections not meeting surface test requirements or having unacceptable surface texture. Patch asphalt pavement sections in accordance with procedures established by Asphalt Institute. Retesting is at no cost to the City.

B. Remove and replace areas of asphalt surface found deficient in thickness by more than 10 percent. Use new asphaltic surface of thickness shown on Drawings. Remove and replace areas of asphalt surface found deficient in average density.

C. Replace speed humps which do not conform to requirements of details, or which are rejected by Project Manager.

3.08 PROTECTION

A. Do not open pavement to traffic until completion of rolling and temperature has cooled to set asphaltic concrete surface, or as shown on Drawings.

B. Maintain asphalt pavement in good condition until completion of Work.

C. Repair defects immediately by replacing asphalt pavement to full depth.

3.09 PAVEMENT MARKINGS FOR SPEED HUMPS

A. Apply pavement markings to speed humps in conformance with dimensions shown on detail for speed hump design.

END OF SECTION

Section 02742

PRIME COAT

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Prime coat for asphalt concrete paving

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for prime coat under this Section. Include payment in unit price for material being primed.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit product data for proposed prime coat.

C. Submit report of recent calibration of distributor.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 CUTBACK ASPHALT

A. Provide moisture-free homogeneous material which will not foam when heated to 347 degrees F and which meets following requirements:

B. Asphalt material for prime coat shall be MC-30 or MC-70 and shall meet following requirements:

PROPERTIES	TYPE - GRADE			
	MC-30		MC-70	
	MIN.	MAX.	MIN.	MAX.
Water, Percent	---	0.2	---	0.2
Flash Point, T.O.C., °F	100	---	100	---
Kinematic Viscosity at 140°F, cst	30	60	70	140

1. Distillate shall be as follows, expressed as percent by volume of total distillate to 680 degrees F:

TEMPERATURE	TYPE-GRADE			
	MC-30		MC-70	
	MIN.	MAX.	MIN.	MAX.
to 437°F	---	25	---	20
to 500°F	40	70	20	60
to 600°F	75	93	65	90
Residue from 680°F Distillation, Volume, Percent	50	---	55	---

2. Tests on Distillation Residue:

TEST	TYPE-GRADE			
	MC-30		MC-70	
	MIN.	MAX.	MIN.	MAX.
Penetration at 77°F, 100g, 5 sec.	120	250	120	250
Ductility at 77°F, 5 cm/min. cms	100*	---	100*	---
Solubility in Trichloroethylene, %	99	---	99	---
Spot Test	All Negative			

* If penetration of residue is more than 200 and ductility at 77 degrees F is less than 100 cm, material will be acceptable when its ductility at 60 degrees F is more than 100.

2.02 EMULSIFIED PETROLEUM RESIN

A. EPR-1 Prime: Slow curing emulsion of petroleum resin and asphalt cement conforming to following requirements:

PROPERTIES	MIN.	MAX.
Fural Viscosity at 77EF, Sec	14	40
Residue by Evaporation, % by Weight	60	-
Sieve Test, %	-	0.1
Particle Charge Test	Positive	
Tests on Distillation Residue:		
Flash Point, COC (F)	400	-
Kinematic Viscosity @ 140 F (cst)	190	350

B. For use, EPR-1 may be diluted with water up to maximum three parts water to one part EPR-1 in order to achieve desired concentration of residual resin/asphalt to facilitate application.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify base is ready to support imposed loads.

B. Verify lines and grades are correct.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Thoroughly clean base course surface of loose material by brooming prior to application of tack coat.

B. Prepare sufficient base in advance of paving for efficient operations.

3.03 APPLICATION, BASIC

A. Apply prime coat with approved type of self-propelled pressure distributor. Distribute prime coat evenly and smoothly under pressure necessary for proper distribution.

B. Keep storage tanks, piping, retorts, booster tanks, and distributors used in handling asphalt materials clean and in good operating condition. Conduct operations so asphalt material does not become contaminated.

C. If yield of asphaltic material appears to be in error, recalibrate distributor prior to continuing Work.

D. Maintain surface until Work is accepted by City.

3.04 APPLICATION, CUTBACK ASPHALT

A. Do not use cutback asphalt during period of April 16 through September 15.

B. Do not place prime coat when air temperature is below 60 degrees F and falling. Materials may be placed when air temperature taken in shade and away from artificial heat is above 50 degrees F and rising.

C. Distribute at rate of 0.25 to 0.35 gallons per square yard.

D. Equipment shall accurately determine temperature of asphaltic material in heating equipment and in distributor, for determining rate of application, and for obtaining uniformity at junction of two distributor loads. Maintain in accurate working order, including recording thermometer at storage heating unit.

E. Base temperature of application on temperature-viscosity relationship that will permit application of asphalt with viscosity of 100 to 125 centistokes. Maintain asphalt within 15 degrees F of temperature required to meet viscosity. Selected temperature shall be within following range.

Prime Coat Type	Minimum (EF)	Maximum (EF)
MC-30	70	150
MC-70	125	175

F. Do not allow temperature of MC-30 to exceed 175 degrees F.

G. Do not allow temperature of MC-70 to exceed 200 degrees F.

3.05 APPLICATION, EMULSIFIED PETROLEUM RESIN

A. Do not place prime coat when air temperature is below 36 degrees F and falling.

B. Distribute at rate of 0.15 to 0.25 gallons per square yard.

3.06 PROTECTION

A. Prevent traffic or placement of subsequent courses over freshly applied prime coat until authorized by Project Manager.

END OF SECTION

Section 02743

TACK COAT

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Tack coat for asphalt concrete paving.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for tack coat under this Section. Include payment in unit price for asphaltic pavements.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 244 - Standard Test Methods for Emulsified Asphalts.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit product data for proposed tack coat.

C. Submit report of recent calibration of distributor.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 EMULSION

A. Provide homogeneous material which shows no separation of asphalt after mixing and meets viscosity requirements within 30 days after delivery.

B. Emulsion material for tack coat.

1. Emulsified asphalt: SS-1 or SS-1h meeting following criteria:

PROPERTIES	SS-1		SS-1h	
	MIN.	MAX.	MIN.	MAX.
Furol Viscosity at 77°F, sec.	20	100	20	100
Residue by Distillation, %	60	--	60	--
Oil Portion of Distillate, %	--	1/2	--	1/2
Sieve Test, %	--	0.10	--	0.10
Miscibility (Standard Test)	Passing			
Cement Mixing, %	--	2.0	--	2.0
Storage Stability, 1 Day, %	--	1	--	1
Test on Residue: Penetration at 77°F, 100g, 5 sec. Solubility in Trichloroethylene, % Ductility at 77°F, 5 cm/min., cms	 120 97.5 100	 160 -- --	 70 97.5 80	 100 -- --

2. Polymer Modified Emulsion, SS-1P, for use where thin overlays (less than or equal 2 inches) are placed on collector or arterial streets and for speed humps, especially over existing Portland cement concrete pavement.

PROPERTIES	SS-1P	
	MIN.	MAX.
Furol Viscosity at 77 F, sec.	30	100
Residue by Distillation, %	60	--
Oil Portion of Distillate, %	--	1/2
Sieve Test, %	--	0.10
Miscibility (Standard Test)	Passing	
Cement Mixing, %	--	2.0
Storage Stability, 1 Day, %	--	1
Test on Residue: Penetration at 77°F, 100g, 5 sec.; Solubility in Trichloroethylene, %Ductility at 77°F, 5 cm/min., cms; Viscosity at 140 F, poises	100 97 50 1300	140 -- -- --

3. For emulsions used for tack coats during period of April 16 through September 15,

volatile organic compound solvents (VOC) shall not exceed 12 percent by weight when tested in accordance with ASTM D 244.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify compacted base is ready to support imposed loads.

B. Verify lines and grades are correct.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Thoroughly clean base course or concrete surface of loose material by brooming prior to tack coat application.

3.03 APPLICATION

A. Apply tack coat uniformly by use of approved distributor at rate not to exceed 0.05 gallons per square yard of surface depending on texture of underlying surface. Select an application rate that will provide appropriate asphalt residual.

B. Paint contact surfaces of curbs, structures, and joints with thin uniform coat of tack coat.

3.04 PROTECTION

A. Prevent traffic or placement of subsequent courses over freshly applied tack coat until authorized by Project Manager.

END OF SECTION

Section 02751

CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Portland cement concrete paving.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for concrete paving is on square yard basis. Separate pay items are used for each different required thickness of pavement.

2. Payment for concrete paving, high early strength, is on square yard basis.

3. Measurement for utility projects: Match actual pavement replaced but no greater than maximum pavement replacement limits shown on Drawings.

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

5. Refer to Paragraph 3.15, Unit Price Adjustment.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM A 82 - Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.

B. ASTM A 185 - Standard Specifications for Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.

C. ASTM A 615 - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet - Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.

D. ASTM C 31 - Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.

E. ASTM C 33 - Standard Specifications for Concrete Aggregates.

F. ASTM C 39 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.

G. ASTM C 40 - Standard Test Method for Organic Impurities in Fine Aggregates for Concrete.

H. ASTM C 42 - Standard Test Method of Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete.

I. ASTM C 78 - Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Concrete (Using Simple Beam with Third Point Loading).

J. ASTM C 94 - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete.

K. ASTM C 131 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine.

L. ASTM C 136 - Standard Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates.

M. ASTM C 138 - Standard Test Method for Unit Weight, Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete.

N. ASTM C 143 - Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete.

O. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.

P. ASTM C 174 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Thickness of Concrete Elements Using Drilled Concrete Cores.

Q. ASTM C 231 - Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method.

R. ASTM C 260 - Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete.

S. ASTM C 494 - Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.

T. ASTM C 618 - Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for use as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete.

U. TxDOT Tex-203-F - Sand Equivalent Test.

V. TxDOT Tex-406-A - Material Finer than 75 μm (No. 200) Sieve In Mineral Aggregates (Decantation Test for Cement Aggregates).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit proposed mix design and test data for each type and strength of concrete in Work. Include proportions and actual flexural strength obtained from design mixes at required test ages.

C. Submit for approval manufacturer's description and characteristics for mixing equipment, and for traveling form paver, when proposed for use.

D. Submit manufacturer's certificates giving properties of reinforcing steel. Include certificate of compliance with ASTM A 82. Provide specimens for testing when required by Project Manager.

1.05 HANDLING AND STORAGE

A. Do not mix different classes of aggregate without written permission of Project Manager.

B. Class of aggregate being used may be changed before or during Work with written permission of Project Manager. Comply new class with specifications.

C. Reject segregated aggregate. Before using aggregate whose particles are separated by size, mix them uniformly to grading requirements.

D. Reject aggregates mixed with dirt, weeds, or foreign matter.

E. Do not dump or store aggregate in roadbed.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement:

1. Sample and test cement to verify compliance with Standards of ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III.

2. Bulk cement which meets referenced standards may be used when method of handling is approved by Project Manager. When using bulk cement, provide satisfactory weighing devices.

3. Fly ash which meets standards of ASTM C 618 may be used as mineral fill when method of handling is approved by Project Manager.

B. Water: Conform to requirements for water in ASTM C 94.

C. Coarse Aggregate: Crushed stone, gravel, or combination thereof, which is clean, hard, and durable, conforms to requirements of ASTM C 33, and has abrasion loss not more than 45 percent by weight when subjected to Los Angeles Abrasion Test (ASTM C 131).

1. Maximum percentage by weight of deleterious substances shall not exceed following values:

Item	Percent by Weight of Total Sample Maximum
Clay lumps and friable particles	3.0
Material finer than 75-µm (No. 200) sieve:	
Concrete subject to abrasion	3.0*
All Other concrete	5.0*
Coal and lignite:	
Where surface appearance of concrete is of importance	0.5
All other concrete	1.0

* In case of manufactured sand, when material finer than 75-µm (No. 200) sieve consists of dust of fracture, essentially free from clay or shale, these limits may be increased to 5 and 7 percent, respectively.

2. Conform coarse aggregate (size 1 1/2 inch to No. 4 sieve) to requirements of ASTM C 33. Use gradation within following limits when graded in accordance with ASTM C 136:

Sieve Designation (Square Openings)	Percentage by Weight
Retained on 1 3/4" sieve	0
Retained on 1 1/2"sieve	0 to 5
Retained on 3/4" sieve	30 to 65
Retained on 3/8" sieve	70 to 90
Retained on No. 4 sieve	95 to 100
Loss by Decantation Test *Method Tex-406-A	1.0 maximum

* In case of aggregates made primarily from crushing of stone, when material finer than 200 sieve is dust of fracture essentially free from clay or shale as established by Part III of TxDOT Tex-406-A, percent may be increased to 1.5.

D. Fine Aggregate: Sand, manufactured sand, or combination thereof, composed of clean, hard, durable, uncoated grains, free from loams or other injurious foreign matter. Conform fine aggregate for concrete to requirements of ASTM C 33. Use gradation within following limits when graded in accordance with ASTM C 136:

Sieve Designation (Square Openings)	Percentage by Weight
Retained on 3/8" sieve	0
Retained on No. 4 sieve	0 to 5
Retained on No. 8 sieve	0 to 20
Retained on No. 16 sieve	15 to 50
Retained on No. 30 sieve	35 to 75
Retained on No. 50 sieve	65 to 90
Retained on No. 100 sieve	90 to 100
Retained on No. 200 sieve	97 to 100

1. When subjected to color test for organic impurities (ASTM C 40), fine aggregate shall not show color darker than standard color. Fine aggregate shall be subjected to Sand Equivalent Test (Tex-203-F). Sand equivalent value shall not be less than 80, unless higher value is shown on Drawings.

E. Mineral Filler: Type “C” or Type “F” fly ash of acceptable quality and meeting requirements of ASTM C 618 may be used as mineral admixture in concrete mixture. When fly ash mineral filler is used, store and inspect in accordance with ASTM C 618. Do not use fly ash in amounts to exceed 25 percent by weight of cementatious material in mix design. Cement content may be reduced when strength requirements can be met. Note: When fly ash is used, term "cement" is defined as cement plus fly ash.

F. Air Entraining Agent: Furnish air entraining agent conforming to requirements of ASTM C 260.

G. Water Reducer: Water reducing admixture conforming to requirements of ASTM C 494 may be used when required to improve workability of concrete. Amount and type of admixture is subject to approval by Project Manager.

H. Reinforcing Steel:

1. Provide new billet steel manufactured by open hearth process and conforming to ASTM A 615, Grade 60. Store steel to protect it from mechanical injury and rust. At time of placement, steel shall be free from dirt, scale, rust, paint, oil, or other injurious materials.

2. Cold bend reinforcing steel to shapes shown. Once steel has been bent, it may not be rebent.

3. Provide wire fabric conforming to ASTM A 82. Use fabric in which longitudinal and transverse wires have been electrically welded at points of intersection. Welds shall have sufficient strength not to be broken during handling or placing. Conform welding and fabrication of fabric sheets to ASTM A 185.

2.02 EQUIPMENT

A. Conform Equipment to requirements of ASTM C 94.

2.03 MIXING

A. Flexural strength shall be as specified using test specimens prepared in accordance with ASTM C 31 and tested in accordance with ASTM C78 (using simple beam with third-point loading). Compressive strength shall be as specified using test specimens prepared in accordance with ASTM C 31 and tested in accordance with ASTM C 39. Determine and measure batch quantity of each ingredient, including water for batch designs and all concrete produced for Work. Mix shall conform to these specifications and other requirements indicated on Drawings.

B. Mix design to produce concrete which will have flexural strength of 500 psi at 7 days and 600 psi at 28 days. Slump of concrete shall be at least 2 inches but no more than 5 inches, when tested in accordance with ASTM C 143.

1. Concrete pavement, including curb, curb and gutter, and saw-tooth curb, shall contain at least 5 1/2 sacks (94 pounds per sack) of cement per cubic yard, with not more than 6.5 gallons of water, net, per sack of cement (water-cement ratio maximum 0.57). Determine cement content in accordance with ASTM C 138. Addition of mineral filler may be used to improve workability or plasticity of concrete to limits specified.

2. Coarse dry aggregate shall not exceed 85 percent of loose volume of concrete.

3. Add air-entraining admixture to ensure uniform distribution of agent throughout batch. Base air content of freshly mixed air-entrained concrete upon trial mixes with materials to be used in Work, adjusted to produce concrete of required plasticity and workability. Percentage of air entrainment in mix shall be 4 1/2 percent plus or minus 1 1/2 percent. Determine air content by testing in accordance with ASTM C 231.

4. Use retardant when temperature exceeds 90 degrees F. Proportion as recommended by manufacturer. Use same brand as used for air-entraining agent. Add and batch material using same methods as used for air-entraining agent.

C. Use high early strength concrete pavement to limits shown on Drawings. Design to meet following:

1. Concrete Mix: Flexural strength greater than or equal to 500 psi at 72 hours.

2. Cement: Minimum of 7 sacks of cement per cubic yard of concrete.

3. Water-Cement Ratio maximum of 0.45. Slump of concrete shall a maximum of 5 inches, when tested in accordance with ASTM C 143.

4. Other requirements for proportioning, mixing, execution, testing, etc., shall be in accordance with this Section 02751 - Concrete Paving.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify compacted base is ready to support imposed loads and meets compaction requirements.

B. Verify lines and grades are correct.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Properly prepare, shape and compact each section of subgrade before placing forms, reinforcing steel or concrete. After forms have been set to proper grade and alignment, use subgrade planer to shape subgrade to its final cross section. Check contour of subgrade with template.

B. Remove subgrade that will not support loaded form. Replace and compact subgrade to required density.

3.03 EQUIPMENT

A. Alternate equipment and methods, other than those required by this Section, may be used provided equal or better results will be obtained. Maintain equipment for preparing subgrade and for finishing and compacting concrete in good working order.

B. Subgrade Planer and Template:

1. Use subgrade planer with adjustable cutting blades to trim subgrade to exact section shown on Drawings. Select planer mounted on visible rollers which ride on forms. Planer frame must have sufficient weight so that it will remain on form, and have strength and rigidity that, under tests made by changing support from wheels to center, planer will

not develop deflection of more than 1/8 inch. Tractors used to pull planer shall not produce ruts or indentations in subgrade. When slip form method of paving is used, operate subgrade planer on prepared track grade or have it controlled by electronic sensor system operated from string line to establish horizontal alignment and elevation of subbase.

2. Provide template for checking contour of subgrade. Template shall be long enough to rest upon side forms and have strength and rigidity that, when supported at center, maximum deflection shall not exceed 1/8 inch. Fit template with accurately adjustable rods projecting downward at 1 foot intervals. Adjust these rods to gauge cross sections of slab bottom when template is resting on side forms.

C. Machine Finisher: Provide power-driven, transverse finishing machine designed and operated to strike off and consolidate concrete. Machine shall have two screeds accurately adjusted to crown of pavement and with frame equipped to ride on forms. Use finishing machine with rubber tires when it operates on concrete pavement.

D. Hand Finishing:

1. Provide mechanical strike and tamping template 2 feet longer than width of pavement to be finished. Shape template to pavement section.

2. Provide two bridges to ride on forms and span pavement for finishing expansion and dummy joints. Provide floats and necessary edging and finishing tools.

E. Burlap Drag or transverse broom for Finishing Slab: Furnish four plies of 10 ounce burlap material fastened to bridge to form continuous strip of burlap full width of pavement. Maintain contact 3 foot width of burlap material with pavement surface. Keep burlap drags clean and free of encrusted mortar.

F. Vibrators: Furnish mechanically-operated, synchronized vibrators mounted on tamping bar which rides on forms and hand-manipulated mechanical vibrators. Furnish vibrators with frequency of vibration to provide maximum consolidation of concrete without segregation.

G. Traveling Form Paver: Approved traveling form paver may be used in lieu of construction methods employing forms, consolidating, finishing and floating equipment. Meet requirements of this specification for subgrade, pavement tolerances, pavement depth, alignments, consolidation, finishing and workmanship. When traveling form paver does not provide concrete paving that meets compaction, finish, and tolerance requirements of this Specification, immediately discontinue its use and use conventional methods.

1. Equip traveling paver with longitudinal transangular finishing float adjustable to crown and grade. Use float long enough to extend across pavement to side forms or edge of slab.

2. Ensure that continuous deposit of concrete can be made at paver to minimize starting and stopping. Use conventional means of paving locations inaccessible to traveling paver, or having horizontal or vertical curvature that traveling paver cannot negotiate.

3. Where Drawings require tie bars for adjacent paving, securely tie and support bars to prevent displacement. Tie bars may be installed with approved mechanical bar inserter mounted on traveling-form paver. Replace pavement in which tie bars assume final position other than that shown on Drawings.

3.04 FORMS

A. Side Forms: Use metal forms of approved shape and section. Preferred depth of form is equal to required edge thickness of pavement. Forms with depths greater or less than required edge thickness of pavement will be permitted, provided difference between form depth and edge thickness when not greater than 1 inch, and further provided that forms of depth less than pavement edge are brought to required edge thickness by securely attaching wood or metal strips to bottom of form, or by grouting under form. Bottom flange of form shall be same size as thickness of pavement. Aluminum forms are not allowed. Forms shall be approved by Project Manager. Length of form sections shall be not less than 10 feet and each section shall provide for staking in position with not less than 3 pins. Flexible or curved forms of wood or metal of proper radius shall be used for curves of 200 foot radius or less. Forms shall have ample strength and shall be provided with adequate devices for secure setting so that when in-place they will withstand, without visible springing or settlement, impact and vibration of finishing machine. In no case shall base width be less than 8 inches for form 8 inches or more in height. Forms shall be free from warp, bends or kinks and shall be sufficiently true to provide straight edge on concrete. Top of each form section, when tested with straight edge, shall conform to requirements specified for surface of completed pavement. Provide sufficient forms for satisfactory placement of concrete. For short radius curves, forms less than 10 feet in length or curved forms may be used. For curb returns at street intersections and driveways, wood forms of good grade and quality may be used.

B. Form Setting:

1. Rest forms directly on subgrade. Do not shim with pebbles or dirt. Accurately set forms to required grade and alignment and, during entire operation of placing, compacting and finishing of concrete, do not deviate from this grade and alignment more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet of length. Do not remove forms for at least 8 hours after completion of finishing operations. Provide supply of forms that will be adequate for orderly and continuous placing of concrete. Set forms and check grade for at least 300 feet ahead of mixer or as approved by Project Manager.

2. Adjacent slabs may be used instead of forms, provided that concrete is well protected from possible damage by finishing equipment. Do not use adjacent slabs for forms until concrete has aged at least 7 days.

3.05 REINFORCING STEEL AND JOINT ASSEMBLIES

A. Place reinforcing steel and joint assemblies and position securely as indicated on Drawings. Wire reinforcing bars securely together at intersections and splices. Bars and coatings shall be free of rust, dirt or other foreign matter when concrete is placed. Secure reinforcing steel to chairs.

B. Position pavement joint assemblies at required locations and elevations, and rigidly secure in position. Install dowel bars in joint assemblies, each parallel to pavement surface and to center line of pavement, as shown.

C. Cut header boards, joint filler, and other material used for forming joints to receive each dowel bar.

D. Secure in required position to prevent displacement during placing and finishing of concrete.

E. Drill dowels into existing pavement, secure with epoxy, and provide paving headers as required to provide rigid pavement sections.

F. Use sufficient number of chairs for steel reinforcement bars to maintain position of bars within allowable tolerances. Place reinforcement as shown on Drawings. In plane of steel parallel to nearest surface of concrete, bars shall not vary from plan placement by more than 1/12 of spacing between bars. In plane of steel perpendicular to nearest surface of concrete, bars shall not vary from plan placement by more than 1/4 inch.

3.06 FIBROUS REINFORCING

A. Do not use fibrous reinforcing to replace structural, load-bearing, or moment-reinforcing steel.

3.07 PLACEMENT

A. Place concrete when air temperature taken in shade and away from artificial heat is above 35 degrees F and rising. Do not place concrete when temperature is below 40 degrees F and falling.

B. Place concrete within 90 minutes after initial water had been added. Remove and dispose of concrete not placed within this period.

C. Concrete slump during placement shall be 1 to 5 inches, except when using traveling-form paver, slump shall be maximum of 2 inches.

D. Deposit concrete continuously in successive batches. Distribute concrete in manner that will require as little rehandling as possible. Where hand spreading is necessary, distribute concrete with shovels or by other approved methods. Use only concrete rakes in handling concrete. At placement interruption of more than 30 minutes, place transverse construction joint at stopping point. Remove and replace sections less than 10 feet long.

E. Take special care in placing and spading concrete against forms and at longitudinal and transverse joints to prevent honeycombing. Voids in edge of finished pavement will be cause for rejection.

3.08 COMPACTION

A. Consolidate concrete using mechanical vibrators as specified herein. Extend vibratory unit across pavement, not quite touching side forms. Space individual vibrators at close enough intervals to vibrate and consolidate entire width of pavement uniformly. Mount mechanical vibrators to avoid contact with forms, reinforcement, transverse or longitudinal joints.

B. Furnish enough hand-manipulated mechanical vibrators for proper consolidation of concrete along forms, at joints and in areas not covered by mechanically controlled vibrators.

3.09 FINISHING

A. Finish concrete pavement with power-driven transverse finishing machines or by hand finishing methods.

1. Hand finish with mechanical strike and tamping template in same width as pavement to be finished. Shape template to pavement section shown on Drawings. Move strike template forward in direction of placement, maintaining slight excess of material in front of cutting edge. Make minimum of two trips over each area. Screed pavement surface to required section. Work screed with combined transverse and longitudinal motion in direction work is progressing. Maintain screed in contact with forms. Use longitudinal float to level surface.

B. On narrow strips and transitions, finish concrete pavement by hand. Thoroughly work concrete around reinforcement and embedded fixtures. Strike off concrete with strike-off screed. Move strike-off screed forward with combined transverse and longitudinal motion in direction work is progressing, maintaining screed in contact with forms, and maintaining slight excess of materials in front of cutting edge. Tamp concrete with tamping template. Use longitudinal float to level surface.

C. After completion of straightedge operation, make first pass of burlap drag or transverse broom as soon as construction operations permit and before water sheen has disappeared from surface. Follow with as many passes as required to produce desired texture depth. Permit no unnecessary delays between passes. Keep drag wet, clean and free from encrusted mortar during use.

3.10 JOINTS AND JOINT SEALING

A. Conform to requirements of Section 02752 - Concrete Pavement Joints.

3.11 CONCRETE CURING

A. Conform to requirements of Section 02753 - Concrete Pavement Curing.

3.12 TOLERANCES

A. Test entire surface before initial set and correct irregularities or undulations. Bring surface within requirements of following test and then finish. Place 10 foot straightedge parallel to center of roadway to bridge depressions and touch high spots. Do not permit ordinates measured from face of straight edge to surface of pavement to exceed 1/16 inch per foot from nearest point of contact. Maximum ordinate with 10 foot straightedge shall not exceed 1/8 inch. Grind spots in excess of required tolerances to meet surface test requirements. Restore texture by grooving concrete to meet surface finishing specifications.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform testing under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Compressive Strength Test Specimens: Make four test specimens for compressive strength test in accordance with ASTM C 31 for each 150 cubic yards or less of pavement that is placed in one day. Test two specimens at 7 days or at number of hours as directed by the Project Manager for high early strength concrete. Test remaining two specimens at 28 days. Test specimens in accordance with ASTM C 39. Minimum compressive strength shall be 3000 pounds per square inch for first two specimens and 3500 pounds per square inch at 28 days.

C. When compressive test indicates failure, make yield test in accordance with ASTM C 138 for cement content per cubic yard of concrete. When cement content is found to be less than that specified per cubic yard, increase batch weights until amount of cement per cubic yard of concrete conforms to requirements.

D. Minimum of one 4 inch core will be taken at random locations per 375 feet per 12 feet lane or 500 square yards of pavement to measure in-place depth. Measure depth in accordance with ASTM C 174. Each core may be tested for 28 day compressive strength according to methods of ASTM C 42. 28 day compressive strength of each core tested shall be a minimum of 3000 pounds per square inch.

E. Request, at option, three additional cores in vicinity of cores indicating nonconforming in-place depths at no cost to City. In-place depth at these locations shall be average depth of four cores.

F. Fill cores and density test sections with new concrete paving or non shrink grout.

3.14 NONCONFORMING PAVEMENT

A. Remove and replace areas of pavement found deficient in thickness by more than 10 percent, or that fail compressive strength tests, with concrete of thickness shown on Drawings.

B. When measurement of any core is less than specified thickness by more than 10 percent, actual thickness of pavement in this area will be determined by taking additional cores at 10 foot intervals parallel to centerline in each direction from deficient core until, in each direction, core is taken which is not deficient by more than 10 percent. Exploratory cores for deficient thickness will not be used in averages for adjusted unit price. Exploratory cores are to be used only to determine length of pavement in unit that is to be removed and replaced. Replace nonconforming pavement sections at no additional cost to City.

3.15 UNIT PRICE ADJUSTMENT

A. Unit price adjustments shall be made for in-place depth determined by cores as follows:

1. Adjusted Unit Price shall be ratio of average thickness as determined by cores to thickness bid upon, times unit price.

2. Apply adjustment to lower limit of 90 percent and upper limit of 100 percent of unit price.

3. Average depth below 90 percent but greater than 80 percent may be accepted by Project Manager at adjusted Unit Price of:

   a. Unit Price Bid - [2 x (1-ratio) x Unit Price Bid]

   b. ratio equals average core thickness divided by thickness bid upon

   c. 0.9 ratio pays 80 percent of unit price and 0.8 ratio pays 60 percent of unit price.

4. Average depth below 80 percent will be rejected by Project Manager.

3.16 PAVEMENT MARKINGS

A. Restore pavement markings to match those existing in accordance with City of Houston standard specifications and details and Project Manager's requirements.

3.17 PROTECTION

A. Barricade pavement section to prevent use until concrete has attained minimum design strength. Cure barricade pavement section for minimum 72 hours before use. Do not open pavement to traffic until concrete is at least 10 days old. Pavement may be open to traffic earlier provided Contractor pays for testing and additional specimen once 7 day specified strength is obtained. Pavement may be opened when high early strength concrete is used meeting specified 72 hour strength.

B. High early strength concrete may be used to provide access at driveways, street intersections, esplanades and other locations approved by Project Manager.

C. On those sections of pavement to be opened to traffic, seal joints, clean pavement, and place earth against pavement edges before permitting use by traffic. Opening of pavement to traffic shall not relieve responsibility for Work.

D. Maintain concrete paving in good condition until completion of Work.

E. Repair defects by replacing concrete to full depth.

END OF SECTION

Section 02752

CONCRETE PAVEMENT JOINTS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Joints for concrete paving; concrete sidewalks, concrete driveways, curbs, and curb and gutters.

B. Saw-cutting existing concrete or asphalt pavements for new joints.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for street pavement expansion joints, with or without load transfer, is on linear foot basis.

2. Payment for horizontal dowels is on a unit price basis for each horizontal dowel.

3. No separate payment will be made for formed or sawed street pavement contraction joints and longitudinal weakened plane joints. Include payment in unit price for Concrete Paving.

4. No separate payment will be made for joints for Curb, Curb and Gutter, Saw-tooth Curb, Concrete Sidewalks, and Concrete Driveways. Include payment in unit price for Curb and Gutter, Concrete Sidewalks, and Concrete Driveways.

5. Payment will be made for Preformed Expansion Joints on a linear foot basis only when field conditions require that sidewalk be moved adjacent to existing concrete structure (i.e., street, back of curb, etc.).

6. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM A 615 - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.

B. ASTM D 994 - Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (Bituminous Type).

C. ASTM D 1751 - Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types).

D. ASTM D 3405 - Standard Specification for Joint Sealants, Hot-Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements.

E. TxDOT Tex-525-C - Tests for Asphalt and Concrete Joint Sealers

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit product data for joint sealing compound and proposed sealing equipment for approval.

C. Submit samples of dowel cup, metal supports, and deformed metal strip for approval. Submit manufacturer's recommendation for placing sealant(s).

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 BOARD EXPANSION JOINT MATERIAL

A. Filler board of selected stock. Use wood of density and type as follows:

1. Clear, all-heart cypress weighing no more than 40 pounds per cubic foot, after being oven dried to constant weight.

2. Clear, all-heart redwood weighing no more than 30 pounds per cubic foot, after being oven dried to constant weight.

2.02 PREFORMED EXPANSION JOINT MATERIAL

A. Bituminous fiber and bituminous mastic composition material conforming to ASTM D 994 and ASTM D 1751.

2.03 JOINT SEALING COMPOUND

A. Conform joint sealants to one of sealant classes described in this section.

B. Conform hot-poured rubber-asphalt compound to ASTM D 3405.

C. Two-component Synthetic Polymer.

1. Curing is to be by polymerization and not by evaporation of solvent or fluxing of harder particles.

2. Cure sufficiently at average temperature of 25 ± 1 C (77 ± 2 F) so as not to pick up under wheels of traffic in maximum three hours.

3. Performance requirements, when tested in accordance with TxDOT Tex-525-C, shall meet above curing times and requirements as follows:

Cold-Extruded and Cold-Pourable (Self-Leveling) Specifications	
Property	**Requirement**
Penetration, 25 C (77 F) 150 g Cone, 5 s, 0.1 mm (in.), maximum	130
Bond and Extension 50%, -29 C (-20 F), 3 cycles: • Dry Concrete Block • Steel blocks (Primed, if recommended by manufacturer) *Steel blocks shall be used when armor joints are specified	 Pass Pass
Flow at 70 C (158 F)	None
Water content % by mass, maximum	5.0
Resilience: • Original sample, % min. (cured) • Oven-aged at 70 C (158 F), % min.	 50 50
Cold-extruded material only - Cold Flow (10 minutes)	None

After bond and extension test, there shall be no evidence of cracking, separation or other opening that is over 3 millimeters (1/8 inch) deep in sealer or between sealer and test blocks.

4. Provide cold-extruded type for vertical or sloping joints.

5. Provide self-leveling type for horizontal joints.

D. Self-Leveling, Low Modulus Silicone or Polyurethane Sealant for Asphaltic Concrete and Portland Cement Concrete Joints. This shall be a single component self-leveling silicone or polyurethane material that is compatible with both asphalt and concrete pavements. The sealer shall not require a primer for bond; a backer rod shall be required which is compatible with the sealant; no reaction shall occur between rod and sealant.

When tested in accordance with TxDOT Tex-525-C, self-leveling sealant shall meet following requirements:

Self-Leveling, Low Modulus Silicone or Polyurethane Sealant	
Property	**Requirements**
Tack Free Time, 25 ± 1 C (77 ± 2 F), minutes	120 maximum
Nonvolatile content, % by mass	93 minimum
Tensile Strength and 24 Hour Extension Test: • Initial, 10-day cure, 25 ± 1 C (77 ± 2 F), kPa (psi) • After Water Immersion, kPa (psi) • After Heat Aging, kPa (psi) • After Cycling, -29 C (-20 F), 50%, 3 cycles, kPa (psi) • 24 Hour Extension	• 21 to 69 (3 to 10) • 21 to 69 (3 to 10) • 21 to 69 (3 to 10) • 21 to 69 (3 to 10) • Pass (All Specimens) After 24 hours, there shall be no evidence of cracking, separation or other opening that is over 3 mm (1/8 in.) deep at any point in the sealer or between the sealer and test blocks.

2.04 LOAD TRANSMISSION DEVICES

A. Smooth, steel dowel bars conforming to ASTM A 615, Grade 60. When indicated on Drawings, encase one end of dowel bar in approved cap having inside diameter 1/16 inch greater than diameter of dowel bar.

B. Deformed steel tie bars conforming to ASTM A 615, Grade 60.

2.05 SUPPORTS FOR REINFORCING STEEL AND JOINT ASSEMBLY

A. Employ supports of approved shape and size that will secure reinforcing steel and joint assembly in correct position during placing and finishing of concrete. Space supports as directed by Project Manager.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PLACEMENT

A. When new Work is adjacent to existing concrete, place joints at same location as existing joints in adjacent pavement.

B. If limit of removal of existing concrete or asphalt pavement does not fall on existing joint, saw cut existing pavement minimum of 2 inches deep to provide straight, smooth joint surface without chipping, spalling or cracks.

3.02 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

A. Place transverse construction joint wherever concrete placement must be stopped for more than 30 minutes. Place longitudinal construction joints at interior edges of pavement lanes using No. 6 deformed tie bars, 30 inches long and spaced 18 inches on centers.

3.03 EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Place 3/4 inch expansion joints at radius points of curb returns for cross street intersections, or as located in adjacent pavement but no further than 80 feet apart. Use no boards shorter than 6 feet. When pavement is 24 feet or narrower, use not more than 2 lengths of board. Secure pieces to form straight joint. Shape board filler accurately to cross section of concrete slab. Use load transmission devices of type and size shown on Drawings unless otherwise specified or shown as "No Load Transfer Device." Seal with joint sealing compound.

3.04 CONTRACTION JOINTS

A. Place contraction joints at same locations as in adjacent pavement or at spaces indicated on Drawings. Place smoothed, painted and oiled dowels accurately and normal to joint. Seal groove with joint sealing compound.

3.05 LONGITUDINAL WEAKENED PLANE JOINTS

A. Place longitudinal weakened plane joints at spaces indicated on Drawings. If more than 15 feet in width is poured, longitudinal joint must be saw cut. Seal groove with joint sealing compound.

3.06 SAWED JOINTS

A. Use sawed joints as alternate to contraction and weakened plane joints. Use circular cutter capable of cutting straight line groove minimum of 1/4 inch wide. Maintain depth of one quarter of pavement thickness. Commence sawing as soon as concrete has hardened sufficiently to permit cutting without chipping, spalling or tearing and prior to initiation of cracks. Once sawing has commenced, continue until completed. Make saw cut with one pass. Complete sawing within 24 hours of concrete placement. Saw joints at required spacing consecutively in sequence of concrete placement.

B. Concrete Saw: Provide sawing equipment adequate in power to complete sawing to required dimensions and within required time. Maintain ample supply of saw blades at work site during sawing operations. Maintain sawing equipment on job during concrete placement.

3.07 JOINTS FOR CURB, CURB AND GUTTER

A. Place 3/4 inch preformed expansion joints through curb and gutters at locations of expansion and contraction joints in pavement, at end of radius returns at street intersections and driveways, and at curb inlets. Maximum spacing shall be 120-foot centers.

3.08 JOINTS FOR CONCRETE SIDEWALKS

A. Provide 3/4 inch expansion joints conforming to ASTM A 1751 along and across sidewalk at back of curbs, at intersections with driveways, steps, and walls; and across walk at intervals not to exceed 36 feet. Provide expansion joint material conforming to ASTM D 994 for small radius curves and around fire hydrants and utility poles. Extend expansion joint material full depth of slab.

3.9 JOINTS FOR CONCRETE DRIVEWAYS

A. Provide 3/4-inch expansion joints conforming to ASTM D 1751 across driveway in line with street face of sidewalks, at existing concrete driveways, and along intersections with sidewalks and other structures. Extend expansion joint material full depth of slab.

3.10 JOINT SEALING

A. Seal joints only when surface and joints are dry, ambient temperature is above 50 degrees F and less than 85 degrees F and weather is not foggy or rainy.

B. Use joint sealing equipment in like new working condition throughout joint sealing operation, and be approved by Project Manager. Use concrete grooving machine or power-operated wire brush and other equipment such as plow, brooms, brushes, blowers or hydro or abrasive cleaning as required to produce satisfactory joints.

C. Clean joints of loose scale, dirt, dust and curing compound. The term joint includes wide joint spaces, expansion joints, dummy groove joints or cracks, either preformed or natural. Remove loose material from concrete surfaces adjacent to joints.

D. Fill joints neatly with joint sealer to depth shown. Pour sufficient joint sealer into joints so that, upon completion, surface of sealer within joint will be 1/4 inch above level of adjacent surface or at elevation as directed.

3.11 PROTECTION

A. Maintain joints in good condition until completion of Work.

B. Replace damaged joints material with new material as required by this Section.

END OF SECTION

Section 02753

CONCRETE PAVEMENT CURING

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Curing of Portland cement concrete paving.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for concrete curing under this Section. Include payment in unit price for Concrete Paving, Concrete Sidewalks, Concrete Driveways, Curbs, and Curb and Gutters.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 156 - Standard Test Method for Water Retention by Concrete Curing Materials.

B. ASTM C 171 - Standard Specifications for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete.

C. ASTM C 309 - Standard Specifications for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturer's product data for cover materials and liquid membrane-forming compounds.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 COVER MATERIALS FOR CURING

A. Conform curing materials to one of the following:

1. Polyethylene Film: Opaque pigmented white film conforming to requirements of ASTM C 171.

2. Waterproofed Paper: Paper conforming to requirements of ASTM C 171.

3. Cotton Mats: Single layer of cotton filler completely enclosed in cover of cotton cloth. Mats shall contain not less than 3/4 of a pound of uniformly distributed cotton filler per square yard of mat. Cotton cloth used for covering materials shall weigh not less than 6 ounces per square yard. Stitch mats so that mat will contact surface of pavement at all points when saturated with water.

2.02 LIQUID MEMBRANE-FORMING COMPOUNDS

A. Conform liquid membrane-forming compounds to ASTM C 309. Membrane shall restrict loss of water to not more than 0.55 kg/m^2 in 72 hours using test method ASTM C 156.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 CURING REQUIREMENT

A. Cure concrete pavement by protecting against loss of moisture for period of not less than 72 hours immediately upon completion of finishing operations. Do not use membrane curing for concrete pavement to be overlaid by asphalt concrete.

B. Failure to provide sufficient cover material shall be cause for immediate suspension of concreting operations.

3.02 POLYETHYLENE FILM CURING

A. Immediately after finishing surface, and after concrete has taken its initial set, apply water in form of fine spray. Cover surface with polyethylene film so film will remain in direct contact with surface during specified curing period.

B. Cover entire surface and both edges of pavement slab. Overlap joints in film sheets minimum of 12 inches. Immediately repair tears or holes occurring during curing period by placing acceptable moisture-proof patches or replacing.

3.03 WATERPROOFED PAPER CURING

A. Immediately after finishing surface, and after concrete has taken its initial set, apply water in form of fine spray. Cover surface with waterproofed paper so paper will remain in direct contact with surface during specified curing period.

B. Prepare waterproofed paper to form blankets of sufficient width to cover entire surface and both edges of pavement slab, and not be more than 60 feet in length. Overlap joints in blankets caused by joining paper sheets not less than 5 inches and securely seal with asphalt cement having melting point of approximately 180 degrees F. Place blankets to secure overlap of at least 12 inches. Immediately repair tears or holes appearing in paper during curing period by cementing patches over defects.

3.04 COTTON MAT CURING

A. Immediately after finishing surface, and after concrete has taken its initial set, completely cover surface with cotton mats, thoroughly saturated before application, maintaining contact with surface of pavement equally at all points.

B. Keep mats on pavement for specified curing period. Keep mats saturated so that, when lightly compressed, water will drip freely from them. Keep banked earth or cotton mat covering edges saturated.

3.05 LIQUID MEMBRANE-FORMING COMPOUNDS

A. Immediately after free surface moisture, and after concrete has dispersed, apply liquid membrane-forming compound in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Moisten concrete by water fogging prior to application of membrane when surface has become dry.

C. Seal concrete surface with single coat at rate of coverage recommended by manufacturer and directed by Project Manager, but not less than one gallon per 200 square feet of surface area.

3.06 TESTING MEMBRANE

A. Treated areas will be visually inspected for areas of lighter color of dry concrete as compared to dump concrete. Test suspected areas by placing few drops of water on surface. Membrane passes test when water stands in rounded beads or small pools which can be blown along surface of concrete without wetting surface.

B. Reapply membrane compound immediately at no cost to City when membrane fails above test.

END OF SECTION

Section 02754

CONCRETE DRIVEWAYS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Portland cement concrete driveways.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for concrete driveways is on square foot basis, including excavation.

2. No payment will be made for work in areas where driveway has been removed or replaced for Contractor's convenience.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Conform to material and proportion requirements for concrete of Section 02751 - Concrete Paving.

B. Reinforcing Steel: Conform to material requirements for reinforcing steel of Section 02751 - Concrete Paving.

C. Preformed Expansion Joint Material: Conform to material requirements for preformed expansion joint material of Section 02752 - Concrete Pavement Joints.

D. Expansion Joint Filler: Conform to material requirements for expansion joint material of Section 02752 - Concrete Pavement Joints.

E. Subgrade Materials: Conform to subgrade material requirements of Section 02336 - Lime Stabilized Subgrade, Section 02337 - Lime/Fly-Ash Stabilized Subgrade, or Section 02338 - Portland Cement Stabilized Subgrade.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Prepare subgrade in accordance with applicable portions of Section 02336 - Lime Stabilized Subgrade, Section 02337 - Lime/Fly-Ash Stabilized Subgrade, and Section 02338 - Portland Cement Stabilized Subgrade.

3.02 PLACEMENT

A. Place and finish concrete in accordance with applicable portions of Section 02751 - Concrete Paving.

3.03 JOINTS

A. Install joints in concrete driveway in accordance with Section 02752 - Concrete Pavement Joints.

3.04 CONCRETE CURING

A. Cure concrete driveway in accordance with Section 02753 - Concrete Pavement Curing.

3.05 PROTECTION

A. Conform to applicable requirements of Section 02753 - Concrete Pavement Curing.

END OF SECTION

Section 02761

COLORED CONCRETE FOR MEDIANS AND SIDEWALKS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Colored concrete for medians and sidewalks.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for coloring agent under this Section. Include payment in unit price bid for concrete sidewalks, and concrete medians and directional islands.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit product data for proposed coloring agent.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Coloring Agent: Provide dry-shake color hardener consisting of quartz-silica mixture of finely-graded, non-metallic aggregates, plasticizer and cement binder for producing color as shown on Drawings.

B. Concrete: Conform to material and proportion requirements of Section 02751 - Concrete Paving.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 CONCRETE MEDIANS

A. Install concrete medians in accordance with requirements of Part 3 of Section 02772 - Concrete Medians and Directional Islands with addition of procedure for application of coloring agent as required by Paragraph 3.03, Coloring Agent.

3.02 CONCRETE SIDEWALKS

A. Install concrete sidewalks in accordance with requirements of Part 3 of Section 02775 - Concrete Sidewalks with addition of procedure for application of coloring agent as required by Paragraph 3.03, Coloring Agent.

3.03 COLORING AGENT

A. Apply coloring agent on newly finished concrete surface as soon as job conditions permit, but in no event later than 2 hours after concrete is placed, at rate recommended by manufacturer and approved by Project Manager.

B. Apply color hardener uniformly to surface by dry-shake method when no excess moisture shows at surface of concrete substrate, but while concrete is still plastic throughout. Do not sprinkle or otherwise add water to surface during application or finishing. Necessary moisture for color hardener shall come from concrete substrate in order to develop proper bond and assure adequate density for color-hardened surface.

C. First shake shall consume two-thirds of material. Withhold one-third for second shake and final touch-up. After first shake, float surface thoroughly by mechanical or hand methods. Do not trowel surface between first and second shakes.

D. Apply second shake evenly, then float and trowel surface. Retain small quantity of material from second shake for touching up nonuniform or weak-toned areas. Minimize hard troweling and use consistent finishing practices to ensure uniformity of color.

END OF SECTION

Section 02762

BLAST CLEANING OF PAVEMENT

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Removal of existing pavement markings.

B. Preparation of pavement surfaces for new pavement markings.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for blast cleaning of roadway lanes is on linear foot basis for each width, measured in place.

2. Payment for blast cleaning of symbols and legends is on square foot basis, measured in place.

3. Payment for removal of raised pavement markings, all types, is on a lump sum basis.

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit description and characteristics of proposed blasting medium and equipment for approval.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Blasting Media: Quality commercial product capable of producing specified surface cleanliness without deposition of deleterious materials on cleaned pavement surface. Do not use high silica content sand that may result in high levels of free crystalline silica dust particles as blasting agent.

2.02 EQUIPMENT

A. Equipment shall be power driven and of sufficient capacity to remove pavement markings. Equipment shall utilize moisture and oil traps of sufficient capacity to remove contaminants from air and prevent deposition of moisture, oil, or other contaminants on pavement surface.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 REMOVAL OF EXISTING MARKINGS

A. Remove pavement markings where necessary to prevent driver confusion, or where indicated on Drawings. Included are areas where it will be necessary for drivers to cross existing markings which they would not normally cross. Remove or obliterate markings. Do not damage pavement surface.

3.02 CLEANING FOR PLACEMENT OF MARKERS

A. Remove old pavement markings, loose material, and other contaminants deleterious to adhesion of new pavement markings to be placed. On Portland cement concrete pavement, minimize over blasting to prevent damage to pavement surface. Small particles of tightly adhering existing pavement markings may remain when complete removal will result in pavement surface damage.

B. Follow manufacturer's written instructions for proper cleaning of pavement surfaces to receive pavement marking.

END OF SECTION

Section 02764

RAISED PAVEMENT MARKERS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Raised reflective pavement markers and jiggle bars.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for Type I raised reflective pavement markers with one reflective face is for each marker installed.

2. Payment for Type I raised reflective pavement markers with two reflective faces is for each marker installed.

3. Payment for Type I raised pavement markers with no reflective face is for each marker installed.

4. Payment for Type II raised reflective pavement markers with one reflective face is for each marker installed.

5. Payment for Type II raised reflective pavement markers with two reflective faces is for each marker installed.

6. Payment for Type "W" jiggle bars is on a unit price basis for each jiggle bar.

7. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 2444 - Standard Test Method for Determination of Impact Resistance of Thermoplastic Pipe and Fittings by means of a Tup (Falling Weight).

B. ASTM E 808 - Standard Practice for Describing Retroreflection.

C. ASTM E 809 - Standard Practice for Measuring Photometric Characteristics of Retroreflectors.

D. Federal Specification L-P-380C - Plastic Molding Material Methacrylate.

E. TxDOT Material Specification DMS-4100 - Jiggle BarTile.

F. TxDOT Material Specification DMS-6130 - Bituminous Adhesive for Pavement Markers.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturer's product data concerning following materials for approval:

1. Types I, II, and III, W and Y markers.

2. Primers, solvents, and adhesives.

3. Installation instructions.

C. Submit certificate by manufacturer that each marker and adhesive conforms to requirements of this Section.

D. Submit details of manufacturer's replacement policy for each type and class of marker.

1.05 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Deliver markers is cartons of 100 units, epoxy adhesive in one gallon pails. Ship like materials in like-sized containers to facilitate storage.

B. Store material in cool dry conditions until application.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MARKERS

A. Raised Reflective Pavement Markers: Shallow frustum of pyramid shaped markers with tempered glass prismatic reflective elements. Bodies shall be plastic shells with resin/sand fillings, or single-piece injection-molded bodies of impact resistant polymers. Plastic shells shall be Methyl Methacrylate conforming to Federal Specification L-P-380C, Type I, Class 3 and shall have minimum wall thickness of 0.65 inches.

B. Marker configuration shall be as follows:

	Nominal Dimensions	Reflecting Face Slope	Reflecting Face Surface Area
Type I	4"x4"x0.75" high	30°	3.25 sq. in.
	3"x5"x0.70" high	30°	4.00 sq. in.
Type II	2"x4"x0.40" high	30°	1.87 sq. in.
Type III	3"x5"x0.70" high	30°	4.00 sq. in.

C. Optical performance shall be as follows:

1. Types I and II:

	White	Yellow	Red
Specific Intensity, SI, min.			
Entrance Angle = 0°	15.0	9.0	3.5
Entrance Angle = 20°	6.0	3.6	1.2

2. Type III:

	White	Yellow	Red
Specific Intensity, SI, min.			
Entrance Angle = 0°	15.0	9.0	3.5
Entrance Angle = 20°	6.0	3.6	1.2

3. Testing Procedure: Locate randomly selected test marker with center of reflecting face 5 feet from uniformly bright light source with effective diameter of 0.2 inches. Use photocell width of 0.05 inches for Type I markers and photocell with annular ring of 0.37 inches by 0.46 inches for Type II markers; shield to eliminate stray light. Distance from light source to photocell center of 0.21 inches. Modify source receiver dimensions and distance between source and receiver proportionally to test distance change for test distances other than 5 feet. Lots containing more than 4 percent reflecting face failures shall be rejected according to ASTM E 808 and ASTM E 809.

D. Physical requirements shall be in accordance with following test procedures:

1. Type I and Type III Markers: Select 3 random markers per lot. Center marker over open end of vertically positioned 1 inch long hollow metal cylinder with 3 inch inside diameter and 0.25 inch wall thickness. Apply load slowly to top of marker through 1 inch diameter by 1 inch high metal plug centered on marker. Breakage or appreciable deformation of test sample at load less than 2000 pounds shall be cause for lot rejection.

2. Type II Markers: Select 20 random markers per lot. Condition markers in convection oven at 130 degrees F for one hour. At elevated temperature, impact reflective face by dropping 90 gram dart, fitted with 0.25 inch radius spherical head, 6 inches perpendicularly onto center of reflective surface. Cracks in impact surface area shall be generally concentric in appearance. Small radial cracks less than 0.25 inches in length will be allowed. Lot will be acceptable when 18 test samples meet testing requirements; failure of 4 test samples will cause lot rejection. Retest additional 20 markers when 3 samples fail; failure of one lens of resample group will cause lot rejection.

E. Impact Resistance: Test in accordance with ASTM D 2444 Tup A.

F. Jiggle Bar Tile, Class A, shall conform to TxDOT Material Specifications D-9-4100, and includes Types I-A, I-C, II-A-A, W and Y.

1. Type I-A shall contain approach face that reflects amber light. Body, other than reflective face, shall be yellow.

2. Type I-C shall contain approach face that reflects white light. Body, other than reflective face, shall be white, silver-white, or light gray.

3. Type II-A-A shall contain 2 reflective faces (approach and trailing) each of which shall reflect amber light. Body, other than reflective faces, shall be yellow.

4. Type W shall have white body and no reflective faces.

5. Type Y shall have yellow body and no reflective faces.

6. Adhesive:

a. Bituminous adhesive conforming to TxDOT material Specification D-9-6130 shall be used for Class A type markers on bituminous pavements.

b. Epoxy adhesive for Class A type markers on Portland cement concrete pavements.

c. Adhesives shall be as recommended by jiggle bar manufacturer for installation.

2.02 ADHESIVE

A. Obtain two-component epoxy adhesive from reflective pavement marker manufacturer conforming to manufacturer's requirements for installation for Class A, B, C, and D markers on Portland cement concrete pavements.

B. Provide bituminous adhesive conforming to TxDOT Material Specification D-9-6130 conforming to manufacturer's requirements for installation for Class A, B, C, and D markers on bituminous pavements.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Accurately locate and install approved markers to conform to classes and colors indicated on Drawings.

B. Clean and repair surfaces to receive markings. Remove loose material, dust, contaminants such as oil and curing membrane, and polished aggregates.

C. Blast clean surfaces indicated on Drawings or where directed by Project Manager in accordance with requirements of Section 02762- Blast Cleaning of Pavement. Do not clean Portland cement concrete pavements by grinding. Mechanical wire brushing may be used to remove curing membranes.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Prepare pavement surfaces and install markers in accordance with marker and adhesive manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Test pavement surface for moisture content prior to application of markings. Place approximate 2 square foot sheet of clear plastic or tar paper on road surface and hold in place for 20 minutes. Immediately inspect sheet for build up of condensed moisture. When sufficient moisture has condensed to cause water to drip from sheet, do not apply markings. Repeat test as necessary until adequate moisture has evaporated from pavement to allow placement.

C. Observe manufacturer's recommended pavement and ambient air temperature requirements for application. When manufacturer has no temperature recommendations, do not install markings when pavement temperature is below 60 degrees F or above 120 degrees F.

D. Position reflective face of markers so that direction of reflection of one (1) face is directly opposite to direction of reflection of other face.

E. Prepare surfaces to which markers are to be attached by adhesive by method to ensure that surface is free of dirt, curing compound, grease, oil, moisture, loose or unsound pavement markings and other materials which would adversely affect adhesive bond.

F. Establish guides to mark lateral location of pavement markings as shown on drawings. Guides placed on roadway for alignment purposes shall not establish permanent marking on roadway.

G. Place pavement markings in alignment with guides. Deviation rate in alignment shall not exceed one (1) inch per 200 feet of roadway. Maximum deviation shall not exceed two (2) inches nor shall deviation be abrupt. Remove and replace markings that are in alignment or sequence.

H. Apply adhesive in sufficient quantity to ensure adhesion and as recommended by manufacturer for installation.

I. Markers shall be free of rust, scale, dirt, oil, grease, moisture, or contaminants which might adversely affect adhesive bond.

J. Place markers immediately after adhesive is applied and firmly bond to pavement. Adhesive or other materials that impair functional reflectivity will not be acceptable.

K. Pavement markers shall not be in contact with pavement surface but shall be seated on continuous layer of adhesive. One hundred percent of bonding area of marker shall be in contact with adhesive.

L. For Bituminous adhesive use, pavement and pavement marker temperature shall be at least 40 degrees F. Do not heat Bituminous adhesive to temperature greater than 400 degrees F. Agitate Bituminous adhesive immediately to ensure even heat distribution.

M. Prime pavement surface and apply markings as recommended by manufacturer.

3.03 CLEANING

A. Keep project site free of unnecessary traffic hazards at all times.

B. Clean area upon completion of work and remove rubbish from work site.

3.04 WARRANTY

A. Warrant material and labor for period of 12 months from date of installation of markings.

END OF SECTION

Section 02765

TEMPORARY AND REMOVABLE REFLECTORIZED PAVEMENT MARKINGS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Temporary retroreflective preformed pavement markings.

B. Wet retroreflective markers.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for temporary pavement markings is on linear foot basis, for each class, measured in place.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D 1056 - Test Method for Flexible Cellular Materials Sponge or Expanded Rubber

B. ASTM D 4061 - Standard Test Method for Retroflectance of Horizontal Coatings.

C. ASTM E 1347 - Standard Test Method for Color and Color-Difference Measurement by Tristimulus (Filter) Colorimetry.

D. ASTM E 303 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Surface Frictional Properties Using the British Pendulum Tester.

E. ASTM E 808 - Standard Practice for Describing Retroreflection.

F. ASTM E 809 - Standard Practice for Measuring Photometric Characteristics of Retroreflectors.

1.04 TEMPORARY PAVEMENT MARKING DEFINITIONS

A. Class I - Temporary preformed pavement markings suitable for longitudinal and word and symbol markings where removability will be required.

B. Class II - Temporary non-removable preformed pavement markings suitable for overlay lane lines, edge lines, and channelizing lines where pavement will be resurfaced.

C. Class III - Class I markers with wet reflective markers added every 8 feet.

D. Class IV - Class II markers with wet reflective markers added every 8 feet.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturer's product data for each proposed class of marking material and installation instructions for approval. Include certificate by manufacturer that each class of marking conforms to requirements of this Section.

C. Submit details of manufacturer's removal and replacement policy for each class of marker.

1.06 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Deliver preformed plastic marking material in rolls or strips.

B. Store material in cool dry conditions as recommended by manufacturer until application.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 PREFORMED MARKINGS

A. Retroreflective Preformed Markings: White or yellow retroreflective tape on conformable backing with pigments conforming to standard highway colors. Incorporate glass beads in film and bond reflective layer of beads to top surface of film. Adhere beads so that they cannot be easily removed by scratching with thumbnail.

B. Preformed marking shall be precoated with pressure sensitive adhesive and shall have demonstrated ability to adhere to roadways under climatic and traffic conditions normally encountered in construction work zone when properly applied.

C. Class I markings shall be removable from Portland cement and asphaltic concrete pavements intact, or in large pieces, at temperatures above 40 degrees F without use of heat, solvents,

grinding, or blast cleaning. Marking film shall be removable after exposure to following minimum traffic exposure when tested on transverse test decks with rolling traffic:

1. Time in Place (days) 632

2. ADT per lane (23% trucks, 3.5 axles/unit) 9,000

3. Minimum Axle Hits 13,000,000

D. Quality performance characteristics:

	CLASS I		CLASS II		TEST METHOD
	White	Yellow	White	Yellow	
1. Init. Retroreflectance (mcd x ft^{-2} x fc^{-1}), min.					
* @ 86.0°, 0.2°	1770	1310	1360	820	ASTM D 4061
* @ 86.5°, 1.0°	750	450	500	350	
2. Daytime Reflectance Factor "Y" %, min.	65	36	65	36	ASTM E 1347
3. Init. Skid Resistance, Avg. BPN	50		35		ASTM E 303
4. Refractive Index of Beads, min.	1.9		1.9		Liquid Immersion
5. Thickness, without adhesive, mils, min.	40		9		Caliper Gauge

* (Entrance Angle, Observation Angle).

2.02 RAISED WET REFLECTIVE MARKERS

A. Raised Markers: Expanded rubber extrusions capable of being elastically compressed and deflected when impacted by rotating vehicle tires. Marker body shall have following properties when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1056:

1. Compression deflection: less than 16 psi at 25 degrees deflection.

2. Oven aged compression deflection: +18 percent change

3. Compress set low: 10 percent.

4. Water absorption: less than 9 percent.

5. Density: 24 pounds per foot

B. Pre-coat markers with pressure sensitive adhesive capable of holding markers to top of preformed marking film.

C. Markers shall have enclosed retroreflective lens sheeting elements attached to marker bodies with pressure sensitive adhesive.

1. Retroreflective lenses elements shall have following initial minimum reflectance when measured in accordance with ASTM E 809:

Color	White	Yellow	White	Yellow	White	Yellow	White	Yellow
Observation Angle	0.2°		0.5°		1.0°		1.5°	
Coeff. of Luminous Intensity, R (cd x fc^{-1})	1.00	0.60	0.40	0.24	0.19	0.11	0.14	0.08

Notes: a. Test at entrance angle (Beta 2 horizontal entrance component described in ASTM E 808) of -4 degrees measured from axis perpendicular to top edge of marker when viewed from above.

b. Angle formed by reflective surface and base of marker shall be between 75 degrees and 90 degrees prior to measurement.

2. Marker reflective elements shall be visible at night, to motorists with low beam headlights, under following conditions:

a. Dry conditions: 1500 feet

b. Rainfall at rate of 1 inch per hour: 1000 feet

c. Rainfall at rate of 8 inches per hour: 250 feet

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Apply markings to clean dry surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations at locations indicated on Drawings, or as directed by City Engineer.

B. Place markings on each paving lift that is to be opened to traffic prior to end of each day's work.

C. Maintain markings, and replace as needed, until they are covered with subsequent paving courses or replaced by permanent markings on final lifts.

3.02 REMOVAL

A. Remove and obliterate markings on existing and final lifts used for redirecting traffic during construction. When blast cleaning is required, comply with requirements of Section 02762 - Blast Cleaning of Pavement.

END OF SECTION

Section 02767

THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKINGS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. This item includes white thermoplastic pavement markings for crosswalks, stop lines, lane lines, and other types of traffic controls.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for thermoplastic pavement markings is on a linear foot basis.

2. Payment for words and symbols is for each word or symbol.

3. Payment for railroad crossing markings, to include stop line and two transverse lines, is for each crossing marked.

   a. For multi-lane approaches to railroad crossings, the solid 8-inch lane lines will be measured in linear feet, complete in place.

4. Unit price bid for each item full compensation for furnishing and placing all materials, and for all manipulations, including blast cleaning, surface sealing and priming, labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete Work in accordance with drawings and specifications.

5. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). When Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM E 28 - Standard Test Methods for Softening Point of Resins Derived from Naval Stores by Ring-and-Ball Apparatus.

B. ASTM G 152 - Standard Practice for Operating Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials.

C. ASTM G 153 - Standard Practice for Operating Enclosed Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials.

D. TxDOT Tex-822-B - Determining Refraction Index of Glass Beads.

E. TxDOT Tex-826-B - Water Absorption Test of Beads.

F. TxDOT Tex-839-B - Determining Color in Reflective Material.

G. TxDOT Tex-851-B - Evaluating the Abrasion Resistance of Pavement Marking Material.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Product Data: Submit Manufacturer's literature indicating product specifications and instructions for handling, installation, and curing. Include performance test data sheets for each product.

C. Submit material supplier's certification of compliance with specifications.

D. Submit proposed methods, equipment, and sequence of operation for layout, surface preparation, and installation.

E. Chemical Analysis: Submit infrared analysis of Type B resins for each manufacturer used.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

A. General Requirements. Especially compound Type B thermoplastic pavement marking material for use on either asphaltic or Portland cement concrete surfaces. Clearly mark each container to indicate color, weight, type of material, and lot or batch number (consider lot or batch as each individual mix or blend that produces finished product ready for use). Package material in either suitable corrugated containers or thermal degradable plastic bags to avoid sticking during shipment or storage.

B. Thermoplastic markings shall not be slippery when wet, nor exhibit tacky, exposed surface. Cold ductility of material shall permit normal road surface expansion and contraction without chipping or cracking. Markings shall retain their original color, dimensions, and placement under normal traffic conditions at road surface temperatures of 158 F and below.

C. Prime and filler pigments shall pass U.S. Standard sieve No. 230 (0.0024 inch opening) when washed free of resins by solvent washing, and meet following specific requirements for each pigment.

1. Prime Pigments: White pigment shall be Rutile Titanium Dioxide.

2. Filler Pigment: Filler pigment shall be calcium carbonate, 95% purity.

D. Binder

1. Type B - Alkyd: Use binder consisting of mixture of resins, at least one of which is solid at room temperature, and high boiling point plasticizers. At least one-third of binder compositions shall be a maleic-modified glyceryl ester 012 Rosin and shall be no less than 8% by weight of entire material formulation.

F. Glass Traffic Beads: the total silica used in formulation shall be in form of glass traffic beads meeting the following requirements:

1. Manufacture. Use glass traffic beads having the following characteristics:

   a. Manufactured from glass;

   b. Spherical in shape;

   c. Free of sharp angular particles;

   d. Free of particles showing milkiness, surface scoring, or surface scratching;

   e. Water white in color.

2. Contaminants. Use glass traffic beads having the following characteristics:

   a. Containing less than 1/4 of 1% moisture by weight;

   b. Free of trash, dirt, etc;

   c. Showing no evidence of objectionable static electricity when flowing through regular traffic-bead dispenser.

3. Gradation:

   a. Sieve Analysis. Glass traffic beads shall meet following gradation requirements:

Openings U.S. Standard Sieves	Percent Passing
No. 20	95 - 100
No. 30	80 - 95
No. 50	15 - 35
No. 100	0 - 4

b. Irregular Particles: Glass traffic beads, retained on screen used to determine gradation requirements, shall not contain more than 30% (by weight) irregular particles.

4. Index of Refraction: Glass traffic beads, when tested by TxDOT Tex-822-B, using liquid immersion method at 25 C (77 F) shall show index of refraction within range of 1.50 to 1.53.

5. Wetting. Use glass traffic beads capable of being readily wet with water when tested in accordance with TxDOT Tex-826-B.

6. Stability. Use glass traffic beads showing no tendency toward decomposition, surface etching, change in retro reflective characteristics, or change in color after:

   a. One hour exposure to concentrated hydrochloric acid at 25 C (77 F);

   b. Twenty-four-hour exposure to weak alkali;

   c. One hundred hours of Weather-O-Meter exposure, in accordance with ASTM G 152 and ASTM G 153.

2.02 FINISHED PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

A. Physical Characteristics. Finished thermoplastic pavement markings material shall be free flowing granular material, unless otherwise shown on Drawings. Material shall remain in free flowing state in storage at temperatures of 100 F or less. Materials shall be readily sprayed through nozzles commonly used on thermoplastic spray equipment at temperatures between 205 and 218 C (401 to 425 F).

B. Toxicity. At temperatures up to and including 230 C (446 F), materials shall not give off fumes which are toxic and otherwise injurious to persons, animals, or property.

C. Material shall not break down or deteriorate when held at 205 C (401 F) for 4 hours.

D. Temperature versus viscosity characteristics of material in plastic state shall remain constant throughout up to four reheatings at 205 C (401 F) and from batch to batch.

E. Material shall not be adversely altered by contact with sodium chloride, calcium chloride, or other similar chemicals on, or used on, roadway surface; by contact with oil content of pavement materials, or by contact from oil dropping from traffic.

F. Softening Point. After heating thermoplastic materials for two hours at 204 C (400 F) Type B Alkyd material shall have softening point greater than 90 C (194 F) when tested in accordance with ASTM E 28-58T - Ball and Ring Method.

G. Color. CIE chromaticity coordinates of materials, when determined in accordance with TxDOT Tex-839-B, shall fall within area having following corner points and shall meet following luminosity requirements.

CIE CHROMATICITY COORDINATE CORNER POINTS					
	Point 1	**Point 2**	**Point 3**	**Point 4**	
Color	X Y	X Y	X Y	X Y	Luminosity
White {tc \12 "White }	0.290 - 0.315	0.310 - 0.295	0.350 - 0.340	0.330 - .360	Min 65

Material shall meet above specified color requirements, before and after 70 hours of exposure in Weather-O-Meter (Atlas, Sunshine Type) fitted with 18 - 102 (18 minutes of sunshine and rain and 102 minutes of sunshine) cyclic gear. Prepare panels for testing with material as supplied.

H. Abrasion. Thermoplastic pavement marking materials shall have loss between 4.0 and 12.0 grams when tested for abrasion in accordance with TxDOT Tex-851-B. Test according to steps 1 through 8 of procedure utilizing following test parameters:

Test distance: 5 inches
Blast pressure: 40 psi
Sample angle: 10 degrees and 122 gram blast media
Blast Media: 1200 grams

I. Uniformity. Manufacture material so that, when sampled in accordance with TxDOT Manual of Testing Procedures, 100-gram sample will be representative of batch or lot of material.

J. When applied 1/8 inch thick, setting time shall not exceed characteristic straight-line curve, lower limit of which is four minutes at 59 F road surface temperatures, and upper limit of which is ten minutes at 90 F road surface temperature. Both temperatures are to be measured at maximum relative humidity of 90%.

2.03 FORMULAE

A. Type B - Alkyd Thermoplastic Marking:

	Pounds
Binder	18 - 23
Titanium Dioxide	12 - 15
Calcium Carbonate	20 - 42
Glass Traffic Beads	30 - 45
TOTAL	100

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 GENERAL

A. Spray apply pavement marking or extrude hot to pavement surface unless application method is specified on Drawings.

B. Provide continuous mixing and agitation of material. Provide clean, square, marking ends. Do not use pans, aprons, or similar appliances which die overruns.

C. Provide thermometer capable of measuring temperature of pavement marking material.

D. Use automatic bead dispenser attached to pavement marking equipment in manner that beads are dispensed uniformly and almost instantly upon marking as marking is being applied to road surface. Rate of application shall be sufficient to achieve retro-directive reflective characteristics specified. Provide automatic cut-off control for bead dispenser, synchronized with cut-off of pavement marking equipment.

E. Place markings in accordance with approved traffic control plan so that minimal interruption to traffic flow is achieved. Protect newly-installed pavement markings from damage by traffic.

F. Apply pavement markings onto clean, dry pavement having road surface temperature above 60 F for Portland cement concrete surface and above 50 F for asphaltic surface. When pavement marking application is by spray and operations cease for five or more minutes, flush spray head by spraying pavement marking material into pan or similar container until material is proper temperature for application.

G. Use markings that are completely reflectorized internally and externally.

H. Use crew experienced in work of installing pavement markings and supply all equipment and materials necessary for placement of pavement markings.

I. Apply material within temperature limits recommended by manufacturer.

J. Prior to placement of thermoplastic material, properly prepare pavement with primer.

3.02 LAYOUT

A. Place pavement markings in proper alignment with guidelines established on roadway. Do not deviate from alignment established greater than two inches. Do not deviate in alignment of marking being placed greater than one inch per 200 feet of marking and do not deviate abruption.

B. Place additional markings required to achieve alignment specified throughout both straight and horizontally curved sections of roadway. Additional markings placed on roadway for alignment purposes shall be temporary in nature and shall not establish permanent marking on roadway. Materials used for alignment markings and equipment used to place markings shall be approved by Engineer.

3.03 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. Clean pavement by sandblasting and prepare in accordance with recommendations of thermoplastic material manufacturer and to satisfaction of Engineer, prior to placement of markings. Surface scarification can be used with prior approval of Engineer.

B. Use cleaning methods approved by Engineer that completely remove contaminants, loose materials, and conditions deleterious to proper adhesion. Do not clean Portland cement concrete surfaces by grinding.

C. Prepare Portland cement concrete surfaces further after cleaning by completely sealing with epoxy or methyl methacrylate sealer, as recommended by thermoplastic material manufacturer. Placed sealer sufficiently in advance of thermoplastic to allow release of all solvents.

D. Prime asphaltic surfaces with sealer, as recommended by thermoplastic material manufacturer based on surface conditions. Include adhesive or adhesion promoter when asphaltic surfaces exhibit polished aggregate.

3.04 INSTALLATION

A. Install in widths of 4, 6, 8, or 12 inches, or shaped otherwise as shown on Drawings. Tolerances in width shall not exceed 1/8 inch. Tolerance shall not exceed 1/4 inch in case of undulation in pavement.

B. Material shall not prohibit adhesion of other thermoplastic markings if, at some future time, new markings are placed over existing materials.

C. Maintain uniform thickness of each pavement marking. Minimum thickness of markings, as measured above plane formed by pavement surface, shall not be less than 1/8 inch (125 mils), unless shown otherwise on Drawings. Maximum thickness shall be 3/16 inch. Supply device, approved by Engineer, to measure thickness of applied extruded markings.

3.05 TESTING

A. Maintain uniform cross section, density, quality, and thickness for markings. Markings shall be uniform throughout their thickness. Use applied markings that are 95% free of holes and voids, and free of blisters for minimum of 60 days after application.

END OF SECTION

Section 02771

CURB, CURB AND GUTTER, AND HEADERS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Reinforced concrete curb, reinforced monolithic concrete curb and gutter, and mountable curb.

B. Paving headers and railroad headers poured monolithically with concrete base or pavement.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for curbs, curbs and gutter, and esplanade curbs is on linear foot basis measured along face of curb.

2. Payment for 3 foot concrete valley gutter is on a linear foot basis.

3. Payment for mountable concrete curbs is on a square foot basis.

4. Payment for concrete paving headers and concrete railroad headers is on a linear foot basis.

5. Payment for headers is on linear foot basis measured between lips of gutters adjacent to concrete base and measured between backs of curbs adjacent to concrete pavement.

6. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit details of proposed form work for approval.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Conform to material and proportion requirements for concrete of Section 02751 - Concrete Paving.

B. Reinforcing Steel: Conform to material requirements for welded wire fabric of Section 02751 - Concrete Paving.

C. Grout: Nonmetallic, nonshrink grout containing no chloride producing agents conforming to following requirements.

1. Compressive strength

   a. at 7 days: 3500 psi

   b. at 28 days: 8000 psi

2. Initial set time: 45 minutes

3. Final set time: 1.5 hours

D. Preformed Expansion Joint Material: Conform to material requirements for preformed expansion joint material of Section 02752 - Concrete Pavement Joints.

E. Expansion Joint Filler: Conform to material requirements for expansion joint filler of Section 02752 - Concrete Pavement Joints.

F. Mortar: Mortar finish composed of one part Portland cement and 1 1/2 parts of fine aggregate. Use only when approved by Project Manager.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Prepare subgrade in accordance with applicable portions of sections on excavation and fill, embankment, and subgrade and roadbed.

3.02 PLACEMENT

A. Guideline: Set to follow top line of curb. Attach indicator to provide constant comparison between top of curb and guideline. Ensure flow lines for monolithic curb and gutters conform to slopes indicated on Drawings.

B. Forms: Brace to maintain position during pour. Use metal templates cut to section shown on Drawings.

C. Reinforcement: Secure in position so that steel will remain in place throughout placement. Reinforcing steel shall remain at approximate center of base or pavement as indicated on Drawings.

D. Joints: Place in accordance with Section 02752 - Concrete Pavement Joints. Place dummy groove joints at to match concrete pavement joints at right angles to curb lines. Cut dummy grooves 1/4 inch deep using approved edging tool.

E. Place concrete in forms to required depth. Consolidate thoroughly. Do not permit rock pockets in form. Entirely cover top surfaces with mortar.

3.03 MANUAL FINISHING

A. After concrete is in place, remove front curb forms. Form exposed portions of curb, and of curb and gutter, using mule which conforms to curb shape, as shown on Drawings.

B. Thin coat of mortar may be worked into exposed face of curb using mule and two-handled wooden darby at least 3 feet long.

C. Before applying final finish move 10 foot straightedge across gutter and up curb to back form of curb. Repeat until curb and gutter are true to grade and section. Lap straightedge every 5 feet.

D. Steel trowel finish surfaces to smooth, even finish. Make face of finished curb true and straight.

E. Edge outer edge of gutter with 1/4 inch edger. Finish edges with tool having 1/4 inch radius.

F. Finish visible surfaces and edges of finished curb and gutter free from blemishes, form marks and tool marks. Finished curb or curb and gutter shall have uniform color, shape and appearance.

3.04 MECHANICAL FINISHING

A. Mechanical curb forming and finishing machines may be used instead of, or in conjunction with, previously described methods, when approved by Project Manager. Use of mechanical methods shall provide specified curb design and finish.

3.05 CURING

A. Immediately after finishing operations, cure exposed surfaces of curbs and gutters in accordance with Section 02753 - Concrete Pavement Curing.

3.06 TOLERANCES

A. Top surfaces of curb and gutter shall have uniform width and shall be free from humps, sags or other irregularities. Surfaces of curb top, curb face and gutter shall not vary more than 1/8 inch from edge of straightedge laid along them, except at grade changes.

3.07 PROTECTION

A. Maintain curbs and gutters in good condition until completion of Work.

B. Replace damaged curbs and gutters to comply with this Section.

END OF SECTION

Section 02772

CONCRETE MEDIANS AND DIRECTIONAL ISLANDS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Portland cement concrete medians and directional islands.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for concrete medians and directional islands is on square yard basis measured from back of curbs.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Conform to material and proportion requirements for concrete of Section 02751 - Concrete Paving.

B. Reinforcing Steel: Conform to material requirements for welded wire fabric of Section 02751 - Concrete Paving.

C. Preformed Expansion Joint Material: Conform to material requirements for preformed expansion joint material of Section 02752 - Concrete Pavement Joints.

D. Expansion Joint Filler: Conform to material requirements for expansion joint filler of Section 02752 - Concrete Pavement Joints.

E. Subgrade Materials: Conform to subgrade material requirements of Section 02336 - Lime Stabilized Subgrade, Section 02337 - Lime/Fly-Ash Stabilized Subgrade and Section 02338 - Portland Cement Stabilized Subgrade.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 SUBGRADE

A. Prepare subgrade in accordance with applicable portions of sections on excavation and fill and embankment. Section 02336 - Lime Stabilized Subgrade, Section 02337 - Lime/Fly-Ash Stabilized Subgrade and Section 02338 - Portland Cement Stabilized Subgrade.

3.02 PLACEMENT OF CONCRETE

A. Place and finish concrete in accordance with applicable portions of Section 02751 - Concrete Paving.

3.03 JOINTS

A. Install joints in accordance with Section 02752 - Concrete Pavement Joints.

3.04 CONCRETE CURING

A. Cure concrete in accordance with Section 02753 - Concrete Pavement Curing.

3.05 PROTECTION

A. Maintain concrete medians and directional islands in good condition until completion of work.

B. Replace damaged concrete medians and directional islands to comply with this Section.

END OF SECTION

Section 02775

CONCRETE SIDEWALKS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Reinforced concrete sidewalks.

B. Wheelchair ramps.

C. Reinforced slope paving.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for concrete sidewalks is on square foot basis.

2. No payment will be made for work outside these limits or in areas where driveway has been removed or replaced for Contractor's convenience.

3. Payment for wheelchair ramps of each type specified is on square foot basis. Removal and replacement of existing sidewalk, curb or curb and gutter and saw-cutting is paid by unit cost for each item. Sodding will be paid one foot on each side of sidewalk unless otherwise noted. Staining of wheelchair ramps is included in cost of ramp.

4. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 31 - Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in Field.

B. ASTM C 39 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.

C. ASTM C 42 - Test Method for Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete.

D. ASTM C 138 - Standard Test Method for Unit Weight, Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete.

E. ASTM C 143 - Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete.

F. ASTM C 172 - Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete.

G. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft^3 (600 kN-m/m^3).

H. Texas Accessibility Standards of Architectural Barriers Act, Article 9102, Texas Civil Statues.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit certified testing results and certificates of compliance.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Conform to material and proportion requirements for concrete of Section 02751 - Concrete Paving.

B. Reinforcing Steel: Conform to material requirements of Section 02751 - Concrete Paving for reinforcing steel. Use No. 3 reinforcing bars.

C. Preformed Expansion Joint Material: Conform to material requirements for preformed expansion joint material of Section 02752 - Concrete Pavement Joints.

D. Expansion Joint Filler: Conform to material requirements for expansion joint material of Section 02752 - Concrete Pavement Joints.

E. Forms: Use straight, unwarped wood or metal forms with nominal depth equal to or greater than proposed sidewalk thickness. The use of 2 inch by 4 inch lumber as forms will not be allowed.

F. Sand Bed: Conform to material requirements for bank run sand of Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials.

G. Sodding: Conform to material requirements for sodding of Section 02922 - Sodding.

H. Coloring for wheelchair ramps: Conform to material requirements for colored concrete of Section 02761 - Colored Concrete for Medians and Sidewalks. Color shall be Brick Red or as shown on the drawings.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 REPLACEMENT

A. Replace sidewalks and slope paving which are removed or damaged during construction with thickness and width equivalent to one removed or damaged, unless otherwise shown on Drawings. Finish surface (exposed aggregate, brick pavers, etc.) to match existing sidewalk.

B. Provide replaced and new sidewalks with wheelchair ramps when sidewalk intersects curb at street or driveway.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Identify and protect utilities which are to remain.

B. Protect living trees, other plant growth, and features designated to remain.

C. Conduct clearing and grubbing operations in accordance with Section 02233 - Clearing and Grubbing.

D. Excavate subgrade 6 inches beyond outside lines of sidewalk. Shape to line, grade and cross section. For soils with plasticity index above 40 percent, stabilize soil with lime in accordance with Section 02336 – Lime-Stabilized Subgrade. Compact subgrade to minimum of 90 percent maximum dry density at optimum to 3 percent above optimum moisture content, as determined by ASTM D 698.

E. Immediately after subgrade is prepared, cover with compacted sand bed to depth as shown on Drawings. Lay concrete when sand is moist but not saturated.

3.03 PLACEMENT

A. Setting Forms: Straight, unwarped wood or metal forms with nominal depth equal to or greater than proposed sidewalk thickness. Use of 2 by 4's as forms will not be allowed. Securely stake forms to line and grade. Maintain position during concrete placement.

B. Reinforcement:

1. Install reinforcing bars.

2. Install reinforcing steel as shown on the drawings. Lay longitudinal bars in walk

continuously, except through expansion joints.

3. Use sufficient number of chairs to support reinforcement in manner to maintain reinforcement in center of slab vertically during placement.

4. Drill dowels into existing paving, sidewalk and driveways, secure with epoxy, and provide headers as required.

5. Use sufficient number of chairs for steel reinforcement bars to maintain position of bars within allowable tolerances. Place reinforcement as shown on Drawings. In plane of steel parallel to nearest surface of concrete, bars shall not vary from plan placement by more than 1/12 of spacing between bars. In plane of steel perpendicular to nearest surface of concrete, bars shall not vary from plan placement by more than 1/4 inch.

C. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints with load transfer units in accordance with Section 02752 - Concrete Pavement Joints.

E. Place concrete in forms to specified depth and tamp thoroughly with "jitterbug" tamp, or other acceptable method. Bring mortar to surface.

F. Strike off to smooth finish with wood strike board. Finish smoothly with wood hand float. Brush across sidewalk lightly with fine-haired brush.

G. Apply coating to wheelchair ramp with contrasting color in accordance with Section 02761 - Colored Concrete for Medians and Sidewalks.

H. Unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, mark off sidewalk joints 1/8 inch deep, at spacing equal to width of walk. Use joint tool equal in width to edging tool.

I. Finish edges with tool having 1/4 inch radius.

J. After concrete has set sufficiently, refill space along sides of sidewalk to one-inch from top of walk with suitable material. Tamp until firm and solid, place sod as applicable. Dispose of excess material in accordance with Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal. Repair driveways and parking lots damaged by sidewalk excavation in accordance with Section 02951 - Pavement Repair and Resurfacing.

3.04 CURING

A. Conform to requirements of Section 02753 - Concrete Pavement Curing.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Compressive Strength Test Specimens: Four test specimens for compressive strength test will be made in accordance with ASTM C 31 for each 30 cubic yards or less of sidewalk that is placed in one day. Two specimens will be tested at 7 days. Remaining two specimens will be tested at 28 days. Specimens will be tested in accordance with ASTM C 39. Minimum compressive strength: 2500 psi at 7 days and 3000 psi at 28 days.

C. Yield test for cement content per cubic yard of concrete will be made in accordance with ASTM C 138. When cement content is found to be less than that specified per cubic yard, reduce batch weights until amount of cement per cubic yard of concrete conforms to requirements.

D. If the Contractor places concrete without notifying the laboratory, the City will have the concrete tested by means of core test as specified in ASTM C 42. When concrete does not meet specification, cost of test will be deducted from payment.

E. Sampling of fresh concrete shall be in accordance with ASTM C 172.

F. Take slump tests when cylinders are made and when concrete slump appears excessive.

G. Concrete shall be acceptable when average of two 28 day compression tests is equal to or greater than minimum 28 day strength specified.

H. If either of two tests on field samples is less than average of two tests by more than 10 percent, that entire test shall be considered erratic and not indicative of concrete strength. Core samples will be required of in-place concrete in question.

I. If 28 day laboratory test indicates that concrete of low strength has been placed, test concrete in question by taking cores as directed by Project Manager. Take and test at least three representative cores as specified in ASTM C 42 and deduct cost from payment due.

3.06 NONCONFORMING CONCRETE

A. Remove and replace areas that fail compressive strength tests, with concrete of thickness shown on Drawings.

B. Replace nonconforming sections at no additional cost to City.

3.07 PROTECTION

A. Maintain newly place concrete in good condition until completion of Work.

B. Replace damaged areas.

END OF SECTION

Section 02811

LANDSCAPE IRRIGATION

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Pipe and fittings, valves, sprinkler heads, and accessories.

B. Control system.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for landscape irrigation will be made under this Section on lump sum basis.

2. Payment for capped irrigation sleeve, for connection to future system expansion, is on linear foot basis.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ANSI/ASTM D 2564 - Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems.

B. ASTM D 2241 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure - Rated Pipe (SDR Series).

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electric solenoid controlled underground irrigation system.

B. Source Power: 120 volt

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

1.06 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in performing work of this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.07 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to applicable code for piping and component requirements.

1.08 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE

A. Convene one week prior to commencing work of this Section.

1.09 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate work with site landscape grading and delivery of plant life.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra components under provisions of Section 00410 - Bid Form.

1. Two sprinkler heads of each type and size.

2. Two valve box keys.

3. Two wrenches for each type head core and for removing and installing each type head.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 PIPE MATERIALS

A. Pipe shall be continuously and permanently imprinted with manufacturer's name, size, schedules, type, and working pressure.

B. PVC Pipe ASTM D 2241; 200 psi pressure rated upstream from controls, 160 psi downstream; solvent welded sockets rubber gasket joints.

C. Fittings: Type and style of connection to match pipe.

D. Solvent Cement: ANSI/ASTM D 2564 for PVC pipe and fittings.

E. Sleeve material: 4 inch schedule 40 PVC.

2.02 OUTLETS

A. Manufacturer's or approved equal:

1. Rainbird Model 1804.

2. Rainbird Model 1812

3. Hunter Model PGP

B. Rotary type sprinkler head: Pop-up type with screens; fully adjustable for flow and pressure; size as indicated; with letter or symbol designating degree of arc and arrow indicating center of spray pattern.

C. Spray Type Sprinkler Head: Pop-up head with full circle, half circle, third circle, quarter circle, and square pattern.

2.03 VALVES

A. Manufacturer's or approved equal:

1. Rainbird Model PEB Series

B. Gate Valves: Bronze construction, non-rising stem, and sized to line.

C. Backflow Preventers: FEBCO 765 Bronze body construction, reduced pressure zone or pressure vacuum breaker type.

D. Valve Box and Cover: rectangular 10 inches by 4 inches or 9 inches round.

2.04 CONTROLLER

A. Manufacturer's or approved equal:

1. Rainbird Model RC1260C

B. Valves: Electric solenoid wiring including required fittings and accessories.

C. Wire conductors: color coded.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify site conditions under provisions of Section 01312 - Coordination and Meetings.

B. Verify location of existing utilities.

C. Verify that required utilities are available, in proper location, and ready for use.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Piping layout indicated is diagrammatic only. Route piping to avoid plants, ground cover, and structures.

B. Layout and stake locations of system components.

C. Review layout requirements with other affected work. Coordinate locations of sleeves under paving to accommodate system.

3.03 TRENCHING

A. Trench and filling as required.

B. Trench size:

1. Minimum cover over installed supply piping: 18 inches.

2. Minimum cover over installed branch piping: 12 inches.

3. Minimum cover over installed outlet piping: 12 inches.

C. Trench to accommodate grade changes.

D. Maintain trenches free of debris, material, or obstructions that may damage pipe.

E. Do not leave trenches open overnight.

3.04 INSTALLATION

A. Install pipe, valves, controls, and outlets in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Connect to utilities.

C. Set outlets and box covers at finish grade elevations.

D. Install control wiring as required. Provide 10-inch expansion coil at each valve to which controls are connected, and at 100 foot intervals. Bury wire beside pipe. Mark valves with neoprene valve markers containing locking device. Set valve markers in 160 psi PVC pipe risers exiting from top of valve to finish grade.

E. After piping is installed, but before outlets are installed and filling commences, open valves and flush system with full head of water.

F. Coordinate pipe installation with conduit installation.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field inspection and testing will be performed.

B. Prior to filling, test system for leakage for whole system to maintain 100 psi pressure for one hour.

3.06 FILLING

A. Cover with 3 inches of sand over piping; fill trench and compact to subgrade elevation. Protect piping from displacement.

3.07 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust control system to achieve time cycles required.

B. Change and adjust head types for full water coverage as directed.

3.08 DEMONSTRATION

A. Demonstrate system under provisions of Section 01755 - Starting Systems.

B. Instruct City's personnel in operation and maintenance of system, including adjusting of sprinkler heads. Use operation and maintenance material as basis for demonstration.

END OF SECTION

Section 02911

TOPSOIL

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Furnishing and placing topsoil for finish grading and for seeding, sodding, and planting.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for topsoil under this Section. Include payment in Section 02921 - Hydro-mulch Seeding or Section 02922 - Sodding.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 TOPSOIL

A. Topsoil shall be fertile, friable, natural sandy loam surface soil obtained from excavation or borrow operations having following characteristics:

1. pH value of between 5.5 and 6.5

2. Liquid limit: 50 or less

3. Plasticity index: 20 or less

4. Gradation: maximum of 10 percent passing No. 200 sieve

B. Topsoil shall be reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, weeds, non-soil materials, and other litter or contamination. Topsoil shall not contain roots, stumps, and stones larger than 2 inches.

C. Obtain topsoil from naturally well-drained areas where topsoil occurs at minimum depth of 4 inches and has similar characteristics to that found at placement site. Do not obtain topsoil from areas infected with growth of, or reproductive parts of nut grass or other noxious weeds.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Excavate topsoil for esplanades and areas to receive grass or landscaping from areas to be further excavated. Stockpile in area approved by Project Manager.

B. Stockpile topsoil to depth not exceeding 8 feet. Cover to protect from erosion.

3.02 TOPSOIL EXCAVATION

A. Conform to excavation and stockpiling requirements of Section 02315 - Roadway Excavation.

3.03 PLACEMENT

A. Place no topsoil until subgrade has been approved. For areas to be seeded or sodded, scarify or plow existing material to minimum depth of 4 inches, or as indicated on Drawings. Remove vegetation and foreign inorganic material. Place 4 inches of topsoil on loosened material and roll lightly with appropriate lawn roller to consolidate topsoil.

B. Increase depth of topsoil to 6 inches when placed over sand bedding and backfill materials specified in Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Material.

C. For areas to receive shrubs or trees, excavate existing material and place topsoil to depth and dimensions shown on Drawings.

D. Remove spilled topsoil from curbs, gutters, and, paved areas and dispose of excess topsoil in accordance with requirements of Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

E. Place topsoil to promote good drainage and compact with light roller. Water topsoil after placement until saturated for minimum depth 6 inches, fill in and recompact areas of settlement.

3.04 PROTECTION

A. Protect topsoil from wind and water erosion until planting is completed.

END OF SECTION

Section 02915

TREE PLANTING

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Street right-of-way tree planting and maintenance.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for tree planting is on unit price basis for each tree planted.

2. When shown on Drawings or directed by Project Manager to remove and relocate tree affected by trench zone, work shall be paid for under one of the following bid items.

   a. Bid item "Remove and Relocate Tree" includes moving tree with truck mounted tree spade and replanting same tree in new location. Payment is for each tree removed and relocated.

   b. Bid item "Remove, Temporary Store and Replant Tree" includes moving tree with truck mounted tree spade and replanting tree at temporary location, (determined by Contractor) maintaining tree until construction is complete and replanting same tree back to its original location. Payment is for each tree removed, stored and replanted.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ANSI Z 60.1 - Nursery Stock.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit certification from supplier that each type of tree conforms to these specification requirements.

C. For unpackaged materials, submit analysis by recognized laboratory made in accordance with methods established by Association of Official Agriculture Chemists, when applicable.

D. Submit name and experience of qualified Arborist to Project Manager.

E. Submit temporary tree storage location. Location must be outside public right-of-way and within 5 miles of project site, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Landscaper shall be a firm specializing in landscape and planting work.

B. Do not make substitutions of approved trees unless approved in writing by Project Manager. When specified planting material is not obtainable, submit proof of non-availability together with proposal for use of equivalent material. Substitutions of larger size or better grade than specified will be allowed, but with no increase in unit price.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Ship trees with Certificates of Inspection as required by governing authorities. Label each tree and shrub with securely attached waterproof tag bearing legible designation of botanical and common name. Do not remove container grown stock from containers before time of planting.

B. Deliver packaged materials in fully labeled original containers showing weight, analysis and name of manufacturer. Protect materials from deterioration during delivery, and while stored at Site.

C. Materials shall not be pruned prior to installation unless approved by Project Manager in writing. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such manner as to damage bark, break branches, or destroy natural shape. Use protective covering during delivery.

1.07 WARRANTY

A. Warrant trees against defects including death, unsatisfactory growth, or loss of shape due to improper pruning, maintenance, or weather conditions, for 1 year after completion of planting. Plumb leaning trees during warranty period.

B. Remove and replace trees found to be dead during warranty period. Remove and replace trees which are in doubtful condition at end of warranty period, or when approved by Project Manager, extend warranty period for trees for full growing season.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 TREES

A. Provide container grown trees which are straight and symmetrical and have persistently preferred main leader. Crown shall be in good overall proportion to entire height of tree with branching configuration as recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and species specified. Where clump is specified, furnish plant having minimum of three stems originating from common base at ground line. Measure trees by average caliper of trunk as follows:

1. For trunks up to 4 inches or less in diameter, measure caliper 6 inches above top of root ball.

2. For trunks more than 4 inches, measure caliper 12 inches above top of root ball.

3. Caliper measurements shall be by diameter tape measure. Indicated calipers on plans are minimum. Averaging of plant calibers will not be allowed.

B. Trees shall conform to following requirements:

1. Healthy, vigorous stock, grown in recognized nursery.

2. Free of disease, insects, eggs, larvae; and free of defects such as knots, sun-scald, injuries, abrasions, disfigurement, or borers and infestations.

2.02 SOIL PRODUCTS

A. Topsoil: Conform to requirements of Section 02911 - Topsoil.

B. Peat moss, bark, and fertilizer: Use material recommended by nursery for establishment of healthy stock after replanting.

2.03 STAKES AND GUYS

A. Provide minimum 8-foot long steel T-stakes and 1 inch wide plastic tree chains.

B. Where applicable for anchoring trees, use wood deadmen of at least 2 by 4 stock, 36 inches long and buried 3 feet. Provide white surveyor's plastic tape for flagging tree guys.

2.04 TREE WRAP, TWINE, AND SEAL

A. Wrap: First quality, bituminous impregnated tape, corrugated or crepe paper, specifically manufactured for tree wrapping and having qualities to resist insect infestation.

B. Twine: Lightly tarred, medium-coarse sisal (lath) yarn. Do not use nails or staples to fasten wrapping.

C. Seal: Commercially available asphaltic-base black emulsion specifically produced for use in sealing tree cuts and wounds.

2.05 WATER

A. Water shall be potable from municipal water supplies.

2.06 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Notify Project Manager, prior to installation, of location where trees that have been selected for planting may be inspected. Plant material will be inspected for compliance with following requirements.

1. Genus, species, variety, size and quality.

2. Size and condition of balls and root systems, insects, injuries and latent defects.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Schedule work so that planting can proceed rapidly as portions of site become available. Plant trees after final grades are established and prior to planting of lawns, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager in writing. When planting of trees occurs after seeding work, protect lawn areas and promptly repair damage to lawns resulting from tree planting operations.

B. Layout individual trees at locations shown on Drawings. In case of conflicts, notify Project Manager before proceeding with Work. Trees shall be staked and approved by Project Manager prior to planting.

3.02 PREPARATION OF PLANTING SOIL

A. Before mixing, clean topsoil of roots, plants, sod, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful or toxic to plant growth.

B. Strip and utilize 4 inch layer of top soil, placed on esplanades under Section 02921 - Hydro-mulch Seeding, for planting soil mixture.

C. Mix recommended soil amendments with topsoil at following rates:

1. Top soil: 50 percent.

2. Peat moss: 25 percent.

3. Well rotted Bark: 25 percent.

4. Fertilizer: Rate recommended by nursery.

D. Delay mixing of fertilizer when planting will not follow placing of planting soil within 48 hours, unless otherwise directed.

E. Incorporate amendments into soil as part of soil preparation process prior to fine grading, fertilizing, and planting. Broadcast or spread amendments evenly at specified rate over planting area. Thoroughly incorporate amendments into top 3 or 4 inches of soil until amendments are pulverized and have become homogeneous layer of topsoil ready for planting.

3.03 PLANTING

A. Excavate pits, beds, or trenches with vertical sides and with bottom of excavation raised minimum of 6 inches at center for proper drainage. Provide following minimum widths:

1. 15 gallon containers or larger, 2 feet wider than diameter of root ball.

2. 1 and 5 gallon containers, 6 inches wider than diameter of root ball.

B. When conditions detrimental to plant growth are encountered, such as unsatisfactory soil, obstructions, or adverse drainage conditions, notify Project Manager before planting.

C. Deliver trees after preparations for planting have been completed and plant immediately. When planting is delayed more than 6 hours after delivery, set trees and shrubs in shade, protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist by covering with mulch, burlap, or other acceptable means of retaining moisture, and water as needed.

D. Set root ball on undisturbed soil in center of pit or trench and plumb plant. Place plants at level that, after settlement, natural relationship of plant crown with ground surface will be established.

E. When set, place additional backfill around base and sides of ball, and work each layer to settle backfill and eliminate voids and air pockets. When excavation is approximately 2/3 full, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.

F. Dish top of backfill to allow for mulching. Mulch pits, trenches and planted areas. Provide not less than 4 inch thickness of mulch, work into top of backfill, and finish level with adjacent finish grades. Cover entire root ball.

G. Prune, thin out and shape trees in accordance with standard horticultural practice. Prune trees to retain required height and spread. Unless otherwise directed in writing, do not cut tree leaders, and remove only injured and dead branches from flowering trees. Remove and replace excessively pruned or misformed stock resulting from improper pruning.

H. Inspect tree trunks for injury, improper pruning and insect infestation and take corrective measures.

I. Guy and stake trees immediately after planting.

J. Control dust caused by planting operations. Dampen surfaces as required. Comply with pollution control regulations of governing authorities.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Project Manager may reject unsatisfactory or defective material at anytime during progress of Work. Remove rejected trees immediately from site and replace with specified materials. Plant material not installed in accordance with these Specifications will be rejected.

B. An inspection to determine final acceptance will be conducted by Project Manager at end of 12 month maintenance period. Additional inspections will be conducted for extended warranty periods provided for in paragraph 1.07B.

3.05 MOVING EXISTING TREES

A. Perform tree moving and replanting by a professional Arborist during dormant growth season.

B. Provide tree spade of adequate size as directed by professional Arborist.

3.06 MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain trees during planting operations and for period of 12 months after completion of planting.

B. Water trees to full depth minimum of once each week, or as required to maintain healthy vigorous growth.

C. Prune, cultivate, and weed as required for healthy growth. Restore planting saucers. Tighten and repair stake and guy supports, and reset trees and shrubs to proper grades or vertical position as required. Restore or replace damaged wrappings. Spray as required to keep trees and shrubs free of insects and disease.

3.07 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. During planting work, keep pavements clean and work area in orderly condition.

B. Protect planting work and materials from damage due to planting operations. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance period. Treat, repair, or replace damaged planting work as directed by Project Manager.

C. Dispose of excess soil and waste in accordance with requirements of Section Waste 01576 - Waste Material Disposal. On-site burning of combustible cleared materials will not be permitted.

END OF SECTION

Section 02921

HYDRO MULCH SEEDING

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Seeding, fertilizing, mulching, and maintenance of areas indicated on Drawings.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for hydro mulch seeding is on an acre basis.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit certification from supplier that each type of seed conforms to these specifications and requirements of Texas Seed Law. Certification shall accompany seed delivery.

C. Submit certificate stating that fertilizer complies with these specifications and requirements of Texas Fertilizer Law.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Topsoil: Conform to material requirements of Section 02911 - Topsoil.

B. Seed: Conform to U.S. Department of Agriculture rules and regulations of Federal Seed Act and Texas Seed Law. Seed shall be certified 90 percent pure and furnish 80 percent germination and meet following requirements:

1. Rye: Fresh, clean, Italian rye grass seed (lollium multi-florum), mixed in labeled proportions. As tested, minimum percentages of impurities and germination must be labeled. Deliver in original unopened containers.

2. Bermuda: Extra-fancy, treated, lawn type common bermuda (Cynodon dactylon). Deliver in original, unopened container showing weight, analysis, name of vendor, and germination test results.

3. Wet, moldy, or otherwise damaged seed will not be accepted.

4. Seed requirements, application rates, and planting dates are:

TYPE	APPLICATION RATE POUNDS/A	PLANTING DATE
Hulled Common Bermuda Grass 98/88 Unhulled Common Bermuda Grass 98/88	40 40	Jan 1 to Mar 31
Hulled Common Bermuda Grass 98/88	40	Apr 1 to Sep 30
Hulled Common Bermuda Grass 98/88 Unhulled Common Bermuda Grass 98/88 Annual Rye Grass (Gulf)	40 40 30	Oct 1 to Dec 31

C. Fertilizer: Dry and free flowing, inorganic, water soluble commercial fertilizer, which is uniform in composition. Deliver in unopened containers which bear manufacturers guaranteed analysis. Caked, damaged, or otherwise unsuitable fertilizer will not be accepted. Fertilizer shall contain minimum percentages of following elements:

1. Nitrogen: 10 Percent

2. Phosphoric Acid: 20 Percent

3. Potash: 10 Percent

D. Mulch:

1. Virgin wood cellulose fibers from whole wood chips having minimum of 20 percent fibers 0.42 inches in length and 0.01 inches in diameter.

2. Cellulose fibers manufactured from recycled newspaper and meeting same fiber content and size as for cellulose fibers from wood chips.

3. Dye mulch green for coverage verification purposes.

E. Soil Stabilizer: "Terra Tack 1" or approved equal.

F. Weed control agent: Pre-emergent herbicide for grass areas, such as "Benefin," or approved equal.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Place and compact topsoil in accordance with requirements of Section 02911 - Topsoil.

B. Dispose of Objectionable and Waste Materials in accordance with Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

3.02 APPLICATION

A. Seed: Apply uniformly at rates given in Paragraph 2.01 B for type of seed and planting date.

B. Fertilizer: Apply uniformly at rate of 500 pounds per acre.

C. Mulch: Apply uniformly at rate of 50 pounds per 1000 square feet.

D. Soil Stabilizer: Apply uniformly at rate of 40 pounds per acre.

E. Weed Control Agent: Apply at manufacturer's recommended rate prior to hydro mulching.

F. Sod: Lay single row of sod along perimeter where top soil and pavement intersect. Apply in conformance to Section 02922 - Sodding.

G. Suspend operations under conditions of drought, excessive moisture, high winds, or extreme or prolonged cold. Obtain Project Manager approval before resuming operations.

3.03 MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain grassed areas minimum of 90 days, or as required to establish an acceptable lawn. For areas seeded in fall, continue maintenance following spring until acceptable lawn is established.

B. Maintain grassed areas by watering, fertilizing, weeding, and trimming.

C. Repair areas damaged by erosion by regrading, rolling and replanting.

D. Reseed small, sparse grass areas. When sparse areas exceed 20 percent of planted area, reseed by hydro mulch.

E. Mow grass when height reaches 3 1/2 inches or greater on average before final acceptance. Mow to height of 2 1/2 inches.

END OF SECTION

Section 02922

SODDING

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Restoration of existing lawn areas disturbed by construction shall be by installation of new sod.

B. Planting of sod within areas designated on Drawings for purpose of surface stabilization, channel stabilization or vegetation buffer strips.

C. Sod is defined as blocks, squares, strips of turfgrass, and adhering soil used for vegetative planting. To be placed edge to edge for complete coverage.

D. Lawn is defined as ground covered with fine textured grass kept neatly mowed.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for sodding is on square yard basis.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Sod only when weather and soil conditions are deemed by Project Manager to be suitable for proper placement.

B Water and fertilize new sod.

C. Guarantee sod to be growing 30 days after substantial completion.

D. Maintenance Period:

1. Begin maintenance immediately after each section of grass sod is installed and continue for 30 day period from date of substantial completion.

2. Resod unacceptable areas.

3. Water, fertilize, control disease and insect pests, mow, edge, replace unacceptable materials, and perform other procedures consistent with good horticultural practice to ensure normal, vigorous and healthy growth. Install disease control within guidelines set forth by Structural Pest Control Board of the State of Texas.

E. Notify Project Manager 10 days before end of maintenance period for inspection.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 SOD

A. Species: Bermuda (Cynodon Dactylon), Buffalo (Buchloe Dactyloides), or St. Augustine (Stenotaphrum Secundatum) Gulf Coast variety to match existing sod.

B. Contents: 95 percent permanent grass suitable to climate in which it is to be placed; not more than 5 percent weeds and undesirable grasses; good texture, free from obnoxious grasses, roots, stones and foreign materials.

C. Size: 12 inch wide strips, uniformly 2 inches thick with clean-cut edges.

D. Sod is to be supplied and maintained in healthy condition as evidenced by grass being normal green color.

2.02 FERTILIZER

A. Available nutrient percentage by weight: 12 percent nitrogen, 4 percent phosphoric acid, and 8 percent potash; or 15 percent nitrogen, 5 percent phosphoric acid, and 10 percent potash.

2.03 WEED AND INSECT TREATMENT

A. Provide acceptable treatment to protect sod from weed and insect infestation. Submit treatment method to Project Manager for approval. Install insect and disease control within guidelines set forth by Structural Pest Control Board of the State of Texas.

2.04 WATER

A. Potable, available on-site through Contractor's water trucks. Contractor may use City of Houston hydrants when water use is measured through Contractor's meter. Do not use private resident's water.

2.05 BANK SAND

A. Free of clay lumps, roots, grass, salt or other foreign material.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Verify that soil placement and compaction have been satisfactorily completed. Verify that soil is within allowable range of moisture content.

B. Top soil shall be free of weeds and foreign material immediately before sodding.

C. Do not start work until conditions are satisfactory. Do not start work during inclement or impending inclement weather.

D. Rake areas to be sodded smooth, free from unsightly variations, bumps, ridges or depressions.

E. Spread 2 inch layer of bank sand over areas to be sodded prior to planting of sod.

F. Apply fertilizer at rate of 25 pounds per 1000 square feet. Apply after raking soil surface and not more than 48 hours prior to laying sod. Mix thoroughly into upper 2 inches of soil. Lightly water to aid in dissipation of fertilizer.

3.02 APPLICATION

A. Full Sodding: Lay sod with closely fitted joints leaving no voids and with ends of sod strips staggered. Lay sod within 24 hours of harvesting.

B. On slopes 2:1 and steeper, lay sod perpendicular to slope and secure every row with wooden pegs at maximum 2 feet on center. Drive pegs flush with soil portion of sod.

C. Prior to placing sod, on slopes 3:1 or where indicated, place Hold/Gro or Roll Lite or equal over topsoil. Securely anchor in place with posts sunk firmly into ground at maximum 16 feet on center along pitch of slope and equal to width of wire mesh horizontally across slopes.

D. After sod is laid, irrigate thoroughly to secure 6-inch minimum penetration into soil below sod.

E. Tamp and roll sod with approved equipment to eliminate minor irregularities and to form close contact with soil bed immediately after planting and watering. Submit type of tamping and rolling equipment to be used to Project Manager for approval, prior to construction.

3.03 MAINTENANCE

A. Watering:

1. Water lawn areas once a day with minimum 1/2 inch water for first 3 weeks after area is sodded.

2. After 3 week period, water twice a week with 3/4 inch of water each time unless comparable amount has been provided by rain.

3. Make weekly inspections to determine moisture content of soil unless soil is in frozen condition.

4. Water in afternoon or at night to enable soil to absorb maximum amount of water with minimum evaporation.

B. Mowing:

1. Mow sod at intervals which will keep grass height from exceeding 3 1/2 inches.

2. Set mower blades at 2 1/2 inches.

3. Do not remove more than one-half of grass leaf surface.

4. Mow sodded areas requiring mowing within 1 month after installation with light-weight rotary type mower. Mow sod only when dry and not in saturated or soft condition.

5. Remove grass clippings during or immediately after mowing.

C. Fertilizer and Pest Control:

1. Evenly spread fertilizer composite at rate of 40 pounds per 5000 square feet or as recommended by manufacturer. Do not place fertilizer until 2 weeks after placement of sod.

2. Restore bare or thin areas by topdressing with mix of 50 percent sharp sand and 50 percent sphagnum peat moss.

3. Apply mixture 1/4 to 1/2 inch thick.

4. Treat areas of heavy weed and insect infestation as recommended by treatment manufacturer.

D. Restrict all traffic from sodded areas until sod is established or for minimum 10 days during growing season. Use wood lath and plastic tape to cordon sodded areas. Maintain tape and lath throughout for minimum 30 days during growing season.

3.04 CLEANUP

A. During course of planting, remove excess and waste materials; keep lawn areas clean and take precautions to avoid damage to existing structures, plants, grass, and streets.

B. Remove barriers, signs, and other Contractor material and equipment from project site at termination of establishment period.

C. Dispose of unused materials and rubbish in accordance with Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

END OF SECTION

Section 02951

PAVEMENT REPAIR AND RESURFACING

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Repairing and resurfacing streets, highways, driveways, sidewalks, and other pavements that have been cut, broken, or otherwise damaged during construction.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for pavement repair and resurfacing under this Section. Payment will be in accordance with Measurement and Payment for work as required in appropriate sections.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for other unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this section is included in total Stipulated Price.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Subgrade:

1. Provide backfill material as required by applicable excavation and fill sections (Sections 02315 through 02319) and Section 02330 - Embankment.

2. Provide material for stabilization as required by applicable portions of Section 02336 - Lime Stabilized Subgrade, Section 02337 - Lime/Fly-Ash Stabilized Subgrade, and Section 02338 - Portland Cement Stabilized Subgrade.

B. Base: Provide base material as required by applicable portions of Section 02711 - Hot Mix Asphaltic Base Course, Section 02712 - Cement Stabilized Base Course, and Section 02713 - Crushed Concrete Base Course.

C. Pavement: Provide paving materials as required by applicable portions of Section 02741 - Asphaltic Concrete Pavement, Section 02751- Concrete Paving, Section 02754 - Concrete Driveways, and Section 02771 - Curb, Curb and Gutter, and Headers, and Section 02775 - Concrete Sidewalks.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Notify City prior to commencement of excavation in pavement for which an Excavation in Public Way permits has been obtained. Follow directions contained in the permit.

B. Conform to requirement of Section 02221 - Removing Existing Pavements and Structures, for removals.

C. Saw cut pavement 18 inches wider than width of trench needed to install utilities unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

D. When removing pavement to existing deformed metal strip (i.e. dummy joint), saw cut pavement minimum 2 inches deep on opposite side of deformed metal strip. Place saw joint far enough behind deformed metal strip to obtain continuously straight joint. Remove damaged portion of deformed metal strip as required to provide proper joint. Saw cut and remove metal strip before placement of new concrete pavement.

E. Protect edges of existing pavement to remain from damage during removals, utility placement, backfill, and paving operations. For concrete pavement, protect undisturbed subgrade that is to remain to support replacement slab.

F. Dowel in existing pavement where no reinforcement is found or is broken due to construction activities. Unless otherwise directed by Project Manager, provide No. 6 bars 24 inches long, drilled and embedded 8 inches into center of existing slab with 'PO-ROC' epoxy grout or approved equal. Space dowels to match new pavement reinforcement spacing.

G. Provide transitional paving and earthwork as required to tie proposed pavement to existing pavement when unable to dowel new pavement into existing pavement.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Parking Areas, Service Drives, Driveways, and Sidewalks: Replace with material equal to or better than existing or as indicated on Drawings. Conform to applicable requirements of sections referenced in Paragraph 2.01, Materials.

B. Street Pavements and Curbs, Curbs and Gutters: Replace subgrade, base, and surface course with like materials or as indicated on Drawings and City of Houston Standard Detail

02951.01. Curbs and curbs and gutters shall match existing. Conform to requirements of sections referenced in Paragraph 2.01, Materials.

C. For concrete pavement, install size and length of reinforcing steel and pavement thickness indicated on Drawings and City of Houston Standard Detail 02751.01. Place types and spacing of joints to match existing or as indicated on Drawings.

D. Where existing pavement consists of concrete pavement with asphaltic surfacing, resurface with minimum 2 inch depth asphaltic pavement.

E. Repair state highway and county crossings in accordance with TxDOT permit or county requirements as appropriate and within 1 week after utility work is installed.

3.03 WASTE MATERIAL DISPOSAL

A. Dispose of waste material in accordance with requirements of Section 01576 - Waste Material Disposal.

3.04 PROTECTION

A. Maintain pavement in good condition until completion of Work.

B. Replace pavement damaged by Contractor's operations at no cost to City.

END OF SECTION

Section 02983

REMOVAL AND RESTORATION OF BRICK PAVED STREETS

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Brick paving work for removal and restoration of existing brick paved streets; either exposed or overlaid is directed toward preservation of historic items.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for removal and restoration of brick paved streets is on square yard basis.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 91 - Standard Specification for Masonry Cement.

B. ASTM C 109 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars.

C. ASTM C 270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit certification from manufacturer that bricks and masonry cement meet applicable requirements of reference standards.

1.05 HANDLING AND STORAGE

A. Take extreme care when excavating in or adjacent to brick paved surface.

B. Remove bricks by hand and clean them of mortar, grout, sand or tar.

C. Protect brick at work site from theft, breakage, and damage. Store brick on site in secure, locked area.

D. Place cleaned brick on pallets and strap them for delivery to City's storage location at 812 Gillette Street. Place brick in area designated for historically sensitive items, as directed by City Employee at location. Have City Employee sign delivery ticket validating delivery, including quantity of brick stored.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 BRICK MASONRY UNITS FOR PAVING

A. Reuse existing bricks in order to restore brick paved surface to its original or better condition.

B. Replace bricks which become damaged or cracked with new paving bricks that match existing brick. Remove damaged bricks from site.

C. Provide replacement paving bricks that match existing brick in dimension, durability, and color. New paving bricks may be obtained from manufacturer which provides antique brick replicas. Antique brick may be purchased from Contractor's source.

2.02 MORTAR

A. Masonry Cement: Cement manufactured in United States and conforming to requirements of ASTM C 91.

B. Mixing Water: Clean, free from harmful amounts of acids, alkalis and organic material.

C. Type and Strength: Comply with requirements of ASTM C 270, Type M, with compressive strength of 2500 psi at 28 days.

D. Brick Foundation Base: Use cement-stabilized sand as specified in Section 02321 - Cement Stabilized Sand.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 RESTORATION OF PAVEMENT FOR OVERLAID BRICK STREETS

A. The restoration of brick pavement section which is below existing overlay is not required. Replacement of pavement after completing utility work can be accomplished without replacing brick. Use paving materials matching existing to restore pavement section. Refer to Section 02951 - Pavement Repair and Resurfacing.

3.02 PREPARATION FOR RESTORATION OF EXPOSED BRICK STREET

A. Ensure that subgrade to support brickwork is at proper grades and elevation. Correct improperly prepared surfaces. Before starting brick paving work, verify that work surfaces and masonry are free of dirt, grease, oil, or other harmful materials.

B. Excavate and compact backfill according to Section 02317 - Excavation and Backfill for Utilities. Place 6 inches of cement stabilized sand base to elevation of brick foundation in accordance with Section 02716 - Cement Stabilized Sand Base.

3.03 WEATHER REQUIREMENTS

A. Lay no masonry when temperature of outside air is below 40 degrees F, unless satisfactory means are provided to heat materials and protect work from cold and frost.

B. Maintain mortar at 40 degrees F or above and ensure that mortar will harden without freezing.

3.04 MORTAR MIXING

A. Proportion mortar ingredients by methods that will ensure accurate measure. Mix in power-driven, drum-type mixer as follows:

1. Combine 3/4 of required water and all masonry cement.

2. Mix briefly, then add water in small quantities until workability of batch is satisfactory to masons.

3. Mix for minimum of 3 minutes and completely empty drum before recharging for next batch.

B. Retemper mortar that has stiffened because of evaporation of water by adding water as frequently as needed to restore desired consistency. Use and place mortar in final position within 2 1/2 hours after initial mixing.

3.05 BRICK PLACEMENT

A. Ensure that brick foundation base is properly graded and compacted in order to match grade of surrounding existing brick pavement. Provide for proper drainage without ponding.

B. Place bricks level to create smooth and uniform surface for vehicles.

C. Where fresh masonry joins partially set or totally set masonry, clean surfaces of set masonry. Remove loose mortar and brick.

D. Wet brick to obtain best possible bond.

E. Immediately remove mortar droppings and splashing as work progresses to facilitate final cleaning.

3.06 JOINTS

A. Completely fill joints in brick and other materials with mortar as each course is laid.

B. Make joints uniform 3/8 inch wide or match existing joint width, unless otherwise shown on Drawings.

C. When mortar is "thumbprint" hard, tool exposed joints with round jointer that is slightly larger than width of mortar joint. In tooling, make sure that cracks and crevices are closed.

D. Point holes in masonry. Cut out defective joints and repoint.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Mold minimum of one set of mortar samples for each day's placement, or as directed by Project Manager. Mold three 2 inch square cubes. Test one cube for compressive strength at 7 days and test other 2 cubes for compressive strength at 28 days in accordance with ASTM C 109.

END OF SECTION

Section 03315

CONCRETE FOR UTILITY CONSTRUCTION

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Cast-in-place concrete work for utility construction or rehabilitation, such as slabs on grade, small vaults, site-cast bases for precast units, and in-place liners for manhole rehabilitation.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No payment will be made for concrete for utility construction under this Section. Include cost in applicable utility structure.

2. Obtain services of and pay for certified testing laboratory to prepare design mixes.

3. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ACI 117 - Standard Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials.

B. ACI 211.1 - Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight and Mass Concrete.

C. ACI 302.1R - Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.

D. ACI 304R - Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete.

E. ACI 308 - Standard Practice for Curing Concrete.

F. ACI 309R - Guide for Consolidation of Concrete.

G. ACI 311 - Guide for Concrete Plant Inspection and Field Testing of Ready-Mix Concrete.

H. ACI 315 - Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement.

I. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete and Commentary.

J. ACI 544 - Guide for Specifying, Mixing, Placing, and Finishing Steel Fiber Reinforced Concrete.

K. ASTM A 82 - Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.

L. ASTM A 185 - Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.

M. ASTM A 615 - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.

N. ASTM A 767 - Standard Specifications for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.

O. ASTM A 775 - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel Bars.

P. ASTM A 820 - Standard Specification for Steel Fibers for Fiber-Reinforced Concrete.

Q. ASTM A 884 - Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Fabric for Reinforcement.

R. ASTM C 31 - Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.

S. ASTM C 33 - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates.

T. ASTM C 39 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.

U. ASTM C 42 - Standard Test Method for Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete.

V. ASTM C 94 - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete.

W. ASTM C 138 - Standard Test Method for Unit Weight Yield and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete.

X. ASTM C 143 - Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete.

Y. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.

Z. ASTM C 172 - Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete.

AA. ASTM C 173 - Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by Volumetric Method.

AB. ASTM C 231 - Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method.

AC. ASTM C 260 - Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete.

AD. ASTM C 309 - Standard Specifications for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.

AE. ASTM C 494 - Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.

AF. ASTM C 595 - Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements.

AG. ASTM C 685 - Standard Specification for Concrete Made by Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing.

AH. ASTM C 1064 - Standard Test Method for Temperature of Freshly Mixed Portland Cement Concrete.

AI. ASTM C 1077 - Standard Practice for Laboratory Testing of Concrete and Concrete Aggregate for Use in Construction and Criteria for Laboratory Evaluation.

AJ. CRSI MSP-1 - Manual of Standard Practice.

AK. CRSI - Placing Reinforcing Bars.

AL. Federal Specification SS-S-210A - Sealing Compound, Preformed Plastic, for Expansion Joints and Pipe Joints

AM. NRMCA - Concrete Plant Standards.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit proposed mix design and test data for each type and strength of concrete in Work.

C. Submit laboratory reports prepared by independent testing laboratory stating that materials used comply with requirements of this Section.

D. Submit manufacturer's mill certificates for reinforcing steel. Provide specimens for testing when required by Project Manager.

E. Submit certification from concrete supplier that materials and equipment used to produce and deliver concrete comply with this Specification.

F. When required on Drawings, submit shop drawings showing reinforcement type, quantity, size, length, location, spacing, bending, splicing, support, fabrication details, and other pertinent information.

G. For waterstops, submit product information sufficient to indicate compliance with this Section, including manufacturer's descriptive literature and specifications.

1.05 HANDLING AND STORAGE

A. Cement: Store cement off of ground in well-ventilated, weatherproof building.

B. Aggregate: Prevent mixture of foreign materials with aggregate and preserve gradation of aggregate.

C. Reinforcing Steel: Store reinforcing steel to protect it from mechanical injury and formation of rust. Protect epoxy-coated steel from damage to coating.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Cementitious Material:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II, unless use of Type III is authorized by Project Manager; or ASTM C 595, Type IP. For concrete in contact with sewage use Type II cement.

2. When aggregates are potentially reactive with alkalis in cement, use cement not exceeding 0.6 percent alkali content in form of $Na_2O + 0.658K_20$.

B. Water: Clean, free from harmful amounts of oils, acids, alkalis, or other deleterious substances, and meeting requirements of ASTM C 94.

C. Aggregate:

1. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33. Unless otherwise indicated, use following ASTM standard sizes: No. 357 or No. 467; No. 57 or No. 67, No. 7. Maximum size: Not larger than 1/5 of narrowest dimension between sides of forms, nor larger than 3/4 of minimum clear spacing between reinforcing bars.

2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33.

3. Determine potential reactivity of fine and coarse aggregate in accordance with Appendix to ASTM C 33.

D. Air Entraining Admixtures: ASTM C 260.

E. Chemical Admixtures:

1. Water Reducers: ASTM C 494, Type A.

2. Water Reducing Retarders: ASTM 494, Type D.

3. High Range Water Reducers (Superplasticizers): ASTM C 494, Types F and G.

F. Prohibited Admixtures: Admixtures containing calcium chloride, thiocyanate, or materials that contribute free chloride ions in excess of 0.1 percent by weight of cement.

G. Reinforcing Steel:

1. Use new billet steel bars conforming to ASTM A 615, ASTM A 767, or ASTM A 775, grade 40 or grade 60, as shown on Drawings. Use deformed bars except where smooth bars are specified. When placed in work, keep steel free of dirt, scale, loose or flaky rust, paint, oil or other harmful materials.

2. Where shown, use welded wire fabric with wire conforming to ASTM A 185 or ASTM A 884. Supply gauge and spacing shown, with longitudinal and transverse wires electrically welded together at points of intersection with welds strong enough not to be broken during handling or placing.

3. Wire: ASTM A 82. Use 16 1/2 gauge minimum for tie wire, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Fiber:

1. Fibrillated Polypropylene Fiber:

a. Addition Rate: 1.5 pounds of fiber per cubic yard of concrete.

b. Physical Properties:

1. Material: Polypropylene

2. Length: 1/2 inch or graded

3. Specific Gravity: 0.91

c. Acceptable Manufacturer: W. R. Grace Company, Fibermesh, or approved equal.

2. Steel Fiber: Comply with applicable provisions of ACI 544 and ASTM A 820.

   a. Ratio: 50 to 200 pounds of fiber per cubic yard of concrete.

   b. Physical Properties

      1. Material: Steel

      2. Aspect Ratio (for fiber lengths of 0.5 to 2.5 inch, length divided by diameter or equivalent diameter): 30:1 to 100:1

      3. Specific Gravity: 7.8

      4. Tensile Strength: 40-400 ksi.

      5. Young's Modulus: 29,000 ksi

      6. Minimum Average Tensile Strength: 50,000 psi

      7. Bending Requirements: Withstand bending around 0.125-inch diameter mandrel to angle of 90 degrees, at temperatures not less than 60 degrees F, without breaking

I. Curing Compounds: Type 2 white-pigmented liquid membrane-forming compounds conforming to ASTM C 309.

2.02 FORM WORK MATERIALS

A. Lumber and Plywood: Seasoned and of good quality, free from loose or unsound knots, knot holes, twists, shakes, decay and other imperfections which would affect strength or impair finished surface of concrete. Use S4S lumber for facing or sheathing. Forms for bottoms of caps: At least 2 inch (nominal) lumber or 3/4 inch form plywood backed adequately to prevent misalignment. For general use, provide lumber of 1-inch nominal thickness or form plywood of approved thickness.

B. Form work for Exposed Concrete Indicated to Receive Rubbed Finish: Form or form-lining surfaces free of irregularities; plywood of 1/4 inch minimum thickness, preferably oiled at mill.

C. Chamfer Strips and Similar Moldings: Redwood, cypress, or pine that will not split when nailed and which can be maintained to true line. Use mill-cut molding dressed on all faces.

D. Form Ties: Metal or fiberglass of approved type with tie holes not larger than 7/8 inch in diameter. Do not use wire ties or snap ties.

E. Metal Forms: Clean and in good condition, free from dents and rust, grease, or other foreign materials that tend to disfigure or discolor concrete in gauge and condition capable of supporting concrete and construction loads without significant distortion. Countersink bolt and rivet heads on facing sides. Use only metal forms which present smooth surface and which line up properly.

2.03 PRODUCTION METHODS

A. Use either ready-mixed concrete conforming to requirements of ASTM C 94, or concrete produced by volumetric batching and continuous mixing in accordance with ASTM C 685.

2.04 MEASUREMENT OF MATERIALS

A. Measure dry materials by weight, except volumetric proportioning may be used when concrete is batched and mixed in accordance with ASTM C 685.

B. Measure water and liquid admixtures by volume.

2.05 DESIGN MIX

A. Use design mixes prepared by certified testing laboratory in accordance with ASTM C 1077 and conforming to requirements of this section.

B. Proportion concrete materials based on ACI 211.1 to comply with durability and strength requirements of ACI 318, Chapters 4 and 5, and this specification. Prepare mix design of Class A concrete so minimum cementitious content is 564 pounds per cubic yard. Submit concrete mix designs to Project Manager for review.

C. Proportioning on basis of field experience or trial mixtures in accordance with requirements at Section 5.3 of ACI 318 may be used, when approved by Project Manager.

D. Classification:

CLASS	TYPE	MINIMUM COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH (LBS/SQ. IN.)		MAXIMUM W/C RATIO	AIR CONTENT (PERCENT)	CONSISTENCY RANGE IN SLUMP (INCHES)
		7-DAY	28-DAY			
A	Structural	3200	4000	0.45	4± 1	2 to 4*
B	Pipe Block Fill, Thrust Block	----	1500	----	4± 1	5 to 7
*When ASTM C 494, Type F or Type G admixture is used to increase workability, this range may be 6 to 9.						

E. Add steel or polypropylene fibers only when called for on Drawings or in another section of these Specifications.

F. Determine air content in accordance with ASTM C 138, ASTM C 173 or ASTM C 231.

G. Use of Concrete Classes: Use classes of concrete as indicated on Drawings and other Specifications. Use Class B for unreinforced concrete used for plugging pipes, seal slabs, thrust blocks, trench dams, tunnel inverts and concrete fill unless indicated otherwise. Use Class A for all other applications.

2.06 PVC WATERSTOPS

A. Extrude from virgin polyvinyl chloride elastomer. Use no reclaimed or scrap material. Submit waterstop manufacturer's current test reports and manufacturer's written certification that material furnished meets or exceeds Corps of Engineers Specification CRD-C572 and other specified requirements.

B. Flat Strip and Center-Bulb Waterstops:

1. Thickness: not less than 3/8 inch

2. Acceptable Manufacturers:

a. Kirkhill Rubber Co., Brea, California

b. Water Seals, Inc., Chicago, Illinois

c. Progress Unlimited, Inc., New York, New York

d. Greenstreak Plastic Products Co., St. Louis, Missouri

e. Approved equal.

2.07 RESILIENT WATERSTOP

A. Resilient Waterstop: Where shown on Drawings; either bentonite- or adhesive-type material.

B. Bentonite Waterstop:

1. Material: 75 percent bentonite, mixed with butyl rubber-hydrocarbon containing less than 1.0 percent volatile matter, and free of asbestos fibers or asphaltics.

2. Manufacturer's rated temperature ranges: For application, 5 to 125 degrees F; in service, -40 to 212 degrees F.
3. Cross-sectional dimensions, unexpanded waterstop: 1 inch by 3/4 inch

4. Provide with adhesive backing capable of producing excellent adhesion to concrete surfaces.

C. Adhesive Waterstop:

1. Preformed plastic adhesive waterstop at least 2 inches in diameter.

2. Meets or exceeds requirements of Federal Specification SS-S-210A.

3. Supplied wrapped completely by 2 part protective paper.

4. Submit independent laboratory tests verifying that material seals joints in concrete against leakage when subjected to minimum of 30 psi water pressure for at least 72 hours.

5. Provide primer, to be used on hardened concrete surfaces, from same manufacturer who supplies waterstop material.

6. Acceptable Manufacturer: Synko-Flex Preformed Plastic Adhesive Waterstop, Synko-Flex Products, Inc.; or approved equal.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 FORMS AND SHORING

A. Provide mortar-tight forms sufficient in strength to prevent bulging between supports. Set and maintain forms to lines designated such that finished dimensions of structures are within tolerances specified in ACI 117. Construct forms to permit removal without damage to concrete. Forms may be given slight draft to permit ease of removal. Provide adequate clean out openings. Before placing concrete, remove extraneous matter from within forms.

B. Install rigid shoring having no excessive settlement or deformation. Use sound timber in shoring centering. Shim to adjust and tighten shoring with hardwood timber wedges.

C. Design Loads for Horizontal Surfaces of Forms and Shoring: Minimum fluid pressure, 175 pounds per cubic foot; live load, 50 pounds per square foot. Maximum unit stresses: 125 percent of allowable stresses used for form materials and for design of support structures.

D. Back form work with sufficient number of studs and wales to prevent deflection.

E. Re-oil or lacquer liner on job before using. Facing may be constructed of 3/4 inch plywood made with waterproof adhesive backed by adequate studs and wales. In such cases, form lining will not be required.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, form outside corners and edges with triangular 3/4 inch chamfer strips (measured on sides).

G. Remove metal form ties to depth of at least 3/4 inch from surface of concrete. Do not burn off ties. Do not use pipe spreaders. Remove spreaders which are separate from forms as concrete is being placed.

H. Treat facing of forms with approved form coating before concrete is placed. When directed by Project Manager, treat both sides of face forms with coating. Apply coating before reinforcement is placed. Immediately before concrete is placed, wet surface of forms which will come in contact with concrete.

3.02 PLACING REINFORCEMENT

A. Place reinforcing steel accurately in accordance with approved Drawings. Secure steel adequately in position in forms to prevent misalignment. Maintain reinforcing steel in place using approved concrete and hot-dip galvanized metal chairs and spacers. Place reinforcing steel in accordance with CRSI Publication "Placing Reinforcing Bars." Request inspection of reinforcing steel by Project Manager and obtain acceptance before concrete is placed.

B. Minimum spacing center-to-center of parallel bars: 2 1/2 times nominal bar diameter. Minimum cover measured from surface of concrete to face of reinforcing bar unless shown otherwise on Drawings: 3 inches for surfaces cast against soil or subgrade, 2 inches for other surfaces.

C. Detail bars in accordance with ACI 315. Fabricate reinforcing steel in accordance with CRSI Publication MSP-1, "Manual of Standard Practice." Bend reinforcing steel to required shape while steel is cold. Excessive irregularities in bending will be cause for rejection.

D. Do not splice bars without written approval of Project Manager. Approved bar bending schedules or placing drawings constitute written approval. Splice and development length of bars shall conform to ACI 318, Chapters 7 and 12, and as shown on Drawings. Stagger splices or locate at points of low tensile stress.

3.03 EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Install conduit and piping as shown on Drawings. Accurately locate and securely fasten conduit, piping, and other embedded items in forms.

B. Install waterstops as specified in other sections and according to manufacturer's instructions. Securely position waterstops at joints as indicated on Drawings. Protect waterstops from damage or displacement during concrete placing operations.

3.04 BATCHING, MIXING AND DELIVERY OF CONCRETE

A. Measure, batch, mix, and deliver ready-mixed concrete in accordance with ASTM C 94, Sections 8 through 11. Produce ready-mixed concrete using automatic batching system as described in NRMCA Concrete Plant Standards, Part 2 - Plant Control Systems.

B. Measure, mix and deliver concrete produced by volumetric batching and continuous mixing in accordance with ASTM C 685, Sections 6 though 8.

C. Maintain concrete workability without segregation of material and excessive bleeding. Obtain approval of Project Manager before adjustment and change of mix proportions.

D. Ready-mixed concrete delivered to site shall be accompanied by batch tickets providing information required by ASTM C 94, Section 16. Concrete produced by continuous mixing shall be accompanied by batch tickets providing information required by ASTM C 685, Section 14.

E. When adverse weather conditions affect quality of concrete, postpone concrete placement. Do not mix concrete when air temperature is at or below 40 degrees F and falling. Concrete may be mixed when temperature is 35 degrees F and rising. Take temperature readings in shade, away from artificial heat. Protect concrete from temperatures below 32 degrees F until concrete has cured for minimum of 3 days at 70 degrees F or 5 days at 50 degrees F.

F. Clean, maintain and operate equipment so that it thoroughly mixes material as required.

G. Hand-mix only when approved by Project Manager.

3.05 PLACING CONCRETE

A. Give sufficient advance notice to Project Manager (at least 24 hours prior to commencement of operations) to permit inspection of forms, reinforcing steel, embedded items and other preparations for placing concrete. Place no concrete prior to Project Manager's approval.

B. Schedule concrete placing to permit completion of finishing operations in daylight hours. However, when necessary to continue after daylight hours, light site as required. When rainfall occurs after placing operations are started, provide covering to protect work.

C. Use troughs, pipes and chutes lined with approved metal or synthetic material in placing concrete so that concrete ingredients are not separated. Keep chutes, troughs and pipes clean and free from coatings of hardened concrete. Allow no aluminum material to be in contact with concrete.

D. Limit free fall of concrete to 4 feet. Do not deposit large quantities of concrete at one location so that running or working concrete along forms is required. Do not jar forms after concrete has taken initial set; do not place strain on projecting reinforcement or anchor bolts.

E. Use tremies for placing concrete in walls and similar narrow or restricted locations. Use tremies made in sections, or provide in several lengths, so that outlet may be adjusted to proper height during placing operations.

F. Place concrete in continuous horizontal layers approximately 12 inches thick. Place each layer while layer below is still plastic.

G. Compact each layer of concrete with concrete spading implements and mechanical vibrators of approved type and adequate number for size of placement. When immersion vibrators cannot be used, use form vibrators. Apply vibrators to concrete immediately after depositing. Move vibrator vertically through layer of concrete just placed and several inches into plastic layer below. Do not penetrate or disturb layers previously placed which have partially set. Do not use vibrators to aid lateral flow concrete. Closely supervise consolidation to ensure uniform insertion and duration of immersion.

H. Handling and Placing Concrete: Conform to ACI 302.1R, ACI 304R and ACI 309R.

3.06 WATERSTOPS

A. Embed waterstops in concrete across joints as shown. Waterstops shall be continuous for extent of joint; make splices necessary to provide continuity in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Support and protect waterstops during construction operations; repair or replace waterstops damaged during construction.

B. Install waterstops in concrete on one side of joints, leaving other side exposed until next pour. When waterstop will remain exposed for 2 days or more, shade and protect exposed waterstop from direct rays of sun during entire exposure and until exposed portion of waterstop is embedded in concrete.

C. Splicing PVC Waterstops:

1. Splice waterstops by heat-sealing adjacent waterstop sections in accordance with manufacturer’s printed instructions.

2. Butt end-to-end joints of two identical waterstop sections may be made in forms during placement of waterstop material.

3. Prior to placement in form work, prefabricate waterstop joints involving more than two ends to be joined together, angle cut, alignment change, or joining of two dissimilar waterstop sections, allowing not less than 24 inch long strips of waterstop material beyond joint. Upon inspection and approval by Project Manager, install prefabricated waterstop joint assemblies in form work, and butt-weld ends of 24 inch strips to straight-run portions of waterstop in forms.

D. Setting PVC Waterstops:

1. Correctly position waterstops during installation. Support and anchor waterstops during progress of work to ensure proper embedment in concrete and to prevent folding over of waterstop by concrete placement. Locate symmetrical halves of waterstops equally between concrete pours at joints, with center axis coincident with joint openings. Thoroughly work concrete in joint vicinity for maximum density and imperviousness.

2. Where waterstop in a vertical wall joint does not connect with any other waterstop, and is not intended to be connected to waterstop in future concrete placement, terminate waterstop 6 inches below top of wall.

E. Replacement of Defective Field Joints: Replace waterstop field joints showing evidence of misalignment, offset, porosity, cracks, bubbles, inadequate bond or other defects with products and joints complying with Specifications.

F. Resilient Waterstop:

1. Install resilient waterstop in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.

2. When requested by Project Manager, provide technical assistance by manufacturer's representative in field at no additional cost to City.

3. Use resilient waterstop only where complete confinement by concrete is provided; do not use in expansion or contraction joints.

4. Where resilient waterstop is used in combination with PVC waterstop, lap resilient waterstop over PVC waterstop minimum of 6 inches and place in contact with PVC waterstop. Where crossing PVC at right angles, melt PVC ribs to form smooth joining surface.

5. At free top of walls without connecting slabs, stop resilient waterstop and grooves (where used) 6 inches from top in vertical wall joints.

6. Bentonite Waterstop:

   a. Locate bentonite waterstop as near as possible to center of joint and extend continuous around entire joint. Minimum distance from edge of waterstop to face of member: 5 inches.

   b. Where thickness of concrete member to be placed on bentonite waterstop is less than 12 inches, place waterstop in grooves at least 3/4 inch deep and 1 1/4 inches wide formed or ground into concrete. Minimum distance from edge of waterstop placed in groove to face of member: 2.5 inches.

   c. Do not place bentonite waterstop when waterstop material temperature is below 40 degrees F. Waterstop material may be warmed so that it remains above 40 degrees F during placement but means used to warm it shall in no way harm material or its properties. Do not install waterstop where air temperature falls outside manufacturer's recommended range.

   d. Place bentonite waterstop only on smooth and uniform surfaces; grind concrete smooth when necessary to produce satisfactory substrate, or bond waterstop to irregular surfaces using epoxy grout which completely fills voids and irregularities beneath waterstop material. Prior to installation, wire brush concrete surface to remove laitance and other substances that may interfere with bonding of epoxy.

   e. In addition to adhesive backing provided with waterstop, secure bentonite waterstop in place with concrete nails and washers at 12 inch maximum spacing.

7. Adhesive Waterstop:

   a. With wire brush thoroughly clean concrete surface on which waterstop is to be placed and then coat with primer.

   b. If surface is too rough to allow waterstop to form complete contact, grind to form adequately smooth surface.

   c. Install waterstop with top protective paper left in place. Overlap joints between strips minimum of 1 inch and cover back over with protective paper.

   d. Do not remove protective paper until just before final form work completion. Place concrete immediately. time that waterstop material is uncovered prior to concrete placement shall be minimized and shall not exceed 24 hours.

3.07 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

A. Definitions:

1. Construction joint: Contact surface between plastic (fresh) concrete and concrete that has attained initial set.

2. Monolithic: Manner of concrete placement to reduce or eliminate construction joints; joints other than those indicated on Drawings will not be permitted without written approval of Project Manager. Where so approved, make additional construction joints with details equivalent to those indicated for joints in similar locations.

3. Preparation for Construction Joints: Roughen surface of concrete previously placed, leaving some aggregate particles exposed. Remove laitance and loose materials by sandblasting or high-pressure water blasting. Keep surface wet for several hours prior to placing of plastic concrete.

3.08 CURING

A. Comply with ACI 308. Cure by preventing loss of moisture, rapid temperature change and mechanical injury for period of 7 curing days when Type II or IP cement has been used and for 3 curing days when Type III cement has been used. Start curing as soon as free water has disappeared from concrete surface after placing and finishing. A curing day is any calendar day in which temperature is above 50 degrees F for at least 19 hours. Colder days may be counted when air temperature adjacent to concrete is maintained above 50 degrees F. In continued cold weather, when artificial heat is not provided, removal of forms and shoring may be permitted at end of calendar days equal to twice required number of curing days. However, leave soffit forms and shores in place until concrete has reached specified 28 day strength, unless directed otherwise by Project Manager.

B. Cure formed surfaces not requiring rubbed-finished surface by leaving forms in place for full curing period. Keep wood forms wet during curing period. Add water as needed for other types of forms. Or, at Contractor's option, forms may be removed after 2 days and curing compound applied.

C. Rubbed Finish:

1. At formed surfaces requiring rubbed finish, remove forms as soon as practicable without damaging surface.

2. After rubbed-finish operations are complete, continue curing formed surfaces by using either approved curing/sealing compounds or moist cotton mats until normal curing period is complete.

D. Unformed Surfaces: Cure by membrane curing compound method.

1. After concrete has received final finish and surplus water sheen has disappeared, immediately seal surface with uniform coating of approved curing compound, applied at rate of coverage recommended by manufacturer or as directed by Project Manager. Do not apply less than 1 gallon per 180 square feet of area. Provide satisfactory means to properly control and check rate of application of compound.

2. Thoroughly agitate compound during use and apply by means of approved mechanical power pressure sprayers equipped with atomizing nozzles. For application on small miscellaneous items, hand-powered spray equipment may be used. Prevent loss of compound between nozzle and concrete surface during spraying operations.

3. Do not apply compound to dry surface. When concrete surface has become dry, thoroughly moisten surface immediately prior to application. At locations where coating shows discontinuities, pinholes or other defects, or when rain falls on newly coated surface before film has dried sufficiently to resist damage, apply additional coat of compound at specified rate of coverage.

3.09 REMOVAL OF FORMS AND SHORING

A. Remove forms from surfaces requiring rubbing only as rapidly as rubbing operation progresses. Remove forms from vertical surfaces not requiring rubbed-finish when concrete has aged for required number of curing days. When curing compound is used, do not remove forms before 2 days after concrete placement.

B. Leave soffit forms and shores in place until concrete has reached specified 28-day strength, unless directed otherwise by Project Manager.

3.10 DEFECTIVE WORK

A. Immediately repair defective work discovered after forms have been removed. When concrete surface is bulged, uneven, or shows excess honeycombing or form marks which cannot be repaired satisfactorily through patching, remove and replace entire section.

3.11 FINISHING

A. Patch honeycomb, minor defects and form tie holes in concrete surfaces with cement mortar mixed one part cement to two parts fine aggregate. Repair defects by cutting out unsatisfactory material and replacing with new concrete, securely keyed and bonded to existing concrete. Finish to make junctures between patches and existing concrete as inconspicuous as possible. Use stiff mixture and thoroughly tamp into place. After each patch has stiffened sufficiently to allow for greatest portion of shrinkage, strike off mortar flush with surface.

B. Apply rubbed finish to exposed surfaces of formed concrete structures as noted on Drawings. After pointing has set sufficiently, wet surface with brush and perform first surface rubbing with No. 16 carborundum stone, or approved equal. Rub sufficiently to bring surface to paste, to remove form marks and projections, and to produce smooth, dense surface. Add cement to form surface paste as necessary. Spread or brush material, which has been ground to paste, uniformly over surface and allow to reset. In preparation for final acceptance, clean surfaces and perform final finish rubbing with No. 30 carborundum stone or approved equal. After rubbing, allow paste on surface to reset; then wash surface with clean water. Leave structure with clean, neat and uniform-appearing finish.

C. Apply wood float finish to concrete slabs.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing shall be performed under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Unless otherwise directed by Project Manager, following minimum testing of concrete is required. Testing shall be performed by qualified individuals employed by approved independent testing agency, and conform to requirements of ASTM C 1077.

1. Take concrete samples in accordance with ASTM C 172.

2. Make one set of four compression test specimens for each mix design at least once per day and for each 150 cubic yards or fraction thereof. Make, cure and test specimens in accordance with ASTM C 31 and ASTM C 39.

3. When taking compression test specimens, test each sample for slump according to ASTM C 143, for temperature according to ASTM C 1064, for air content according to ASTM C 231, and for unit weight according to ASTM C 138.

4. Inspect, sample and test concrete in accordance with ASTM C 94, Section 13, 14, and 15, and ACI 311-5R.

C. Test Cores: Conform to ASTM C 42.

D. Testing High Early Strength Concrete: When Type III cement is used in concrete, specified 7 day and 28 day compressive strengths shall be applicable at 3 and 7 days, respectively.

E. If 7-day or 3-day test strengths (as applicable for type of cement being used) fail to meet established strength requirements, extended curing or resumed curing on those portions of structure represented by test specimens may be required. When additional curing fails to produce required strength, strengthening or replacement of portions of structure which fail to develop required strength may be required by Project Manager, at no additional cost to City.

3.13 PROTECTION

A. Protect concrete against damage until final acceptance by City.

B. Protect fresh concrete from damage due to rain, hail, sleet, or snow. Provide protection while concrete is still plastic, and whenever precipitation is imminent or occurring.

C. Do not backfill around concrete structures or subject them to design loadings until components of structure needed to resist loading are complete and have reached specified 28 day compressive strength, except as authorized otherwise by Project Manager.

END OF SECTION

Section 04061

MORTAR

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Mortar and grout for masonry.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. No separate payment will be made for mortar under this Section. Include payment in Lump Sum for building or structure with price breakdown included in Schedule of Values.

2. Refer to Section 01270 - Measurement and Payment and Section 01292- Schedule of Values.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 143 - Standard Testing Method for Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete

B. ASTM C 144 - Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar.

C. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.

D. ASTM C 207 - Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes.

E. ASTM C 270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry.

F. ASTM C 404 - Standard Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout.

G. ASTM C 476 - Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry.

H. ASTM C 780 - Standard Test Method for Preconstruction and Construction Evaluation of Mortars for Plain and Reinforced Unit Masonry.

I. ASTM C 109 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Include design mix, indicate Property Method used, required environmental conditions, and admixture limitations.

C. Samples: Submit two ribbons of each mortar color, illustrating color and color range.

D. Submit test reports under provisions of Section 01450 - Contractor's Quality Control.

E. Submit test reports on mortar indicating conformance to ASTM C 270.

F. Submit test reports on grout indicating conformance to ASTM C 476.

G. Submit manufacturer's certificate under provisions of Section 01450 - Contractor's Quality Control, that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver products to site and store and protect products under provisions of Section 01610 - Basic Product Requirements.

B. Maintain packaged materials clean, dry, and protected against dampness, freezing, and foreign matter.

1.06 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperatures to minimum 50 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.

1.07 MIX TESTS

A. Test mortar and grout in accordance with Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. Testing of Mortar Mix: Test in accordance with ASTM C 780. Test mortar mix for compressive strength, consistency, mortar aggregate ratio, water content, air content, and splitting tensile strength.

C. Testing of Grout Mix: Test in accordance with ASTM C 109. Test grout mix for compressive strength and slump.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, white color.

B. Masonry Cement: Not permitted.

C. Mortar Aggregate: ASTM C 144, standard masonry type. Grading and color suitable for type of masonry, one source for entire project. (Not less than 5 percent shall pass No. 100 sieve).

D. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

E. Grout Aggregate: ASTM C 404.

F. Water: Clean and potable.

2.02 MORTAR COLOR

A. Mortar Color: Mineral oxide pigment; color; to be selected by Project Manager from manufacturer's samples.

2.03 ADMIXTURES

A. Antifreeze: Antifreeze admixtures will not be permitted.

B. Accelerator: Accelerator may be used only with approval of Project Manager.

2.04 MORTAR

A. Mortar for Load Bearing Walls and Partitions: ASTM C 270, Type S utilizing Property Method to achieve 1800 psi strength.

B. Mortar for Non-load Bearing Walls and Partitions: ASTM C 270, Type S utilizing the Property Method to achieve 1800 psi strength.

C. Mortar for Masonry Below Grade or in Contact with Earth: ASTM C 270, Type M utilizing the Property Method to achieve 2500 psi strength.

D. Pointing Mortar: ASTM C 270, Type N, using the Property Method to achieve 750 psi strength.

2.05 MORTAR MIXING

A. Thoroughly mix mortar ingredients in quantities needed for immediate use in accordance with ASTM C 270 to achieve strengths noted in Paragraph 2.04.

B. Add mortar color and admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Provide uniformity of mix and coloration.

C. Do not use anti-freeze compounds to lower freezing point of mortar.

D. If water is lost by evaporation, retemper only within 2 hours of mixing.

E. Use mortar within 2 hours after mixing at temperatures of 80 degrees F, or 2 1/2 hours at temperatures under 50 degrees F.

2.06 GROUT

A. Bond Beams, Lintels, and Other Areas to be Grouted Solid: 3000 psi strength at 28 days; 7 to 8 inches slump per ASTM C 143; mixed in accordance with ASTM C 476, Fine Grout.

2.07 GROUT MIXING

A. Thoroughly mix mortar ingredients in quantities needed for immediate use in accordance with ASTM C 476, Fine Grout.

B. Add admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Provide uniformity of mix.

C. Do not use anti-freeze compounds to lower freezing point of grout.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Request inspection of spaces to be grouted.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Apply bonding agent to existing concrete surfaces.

B. Plug clean out holes with masonry units to prevent leakage of grout materials. Brace masonry for wet grout pressure.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Install mortar and grout in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Work grout into masonry cores and cavities to eliminate voids.

C. Do not displace reinforcement while placing grout.

D. Remove grout spaces of excess mortar.

END OF SECTION

Section 04210

BRICK MASONRY FOR UTILITY CONSTRUCTION

PART 1 G E N E R A L

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Brick masonry work in utility construction for permanent or temporary installation of below ground structures.

B. Brick masonry in repair and rehabilitation of utility lines and associated structures.

1.02 UNIT PRICES

A. No payment will be made for brick masonry under this Section unless specifically noted in bid documents. Include payment in unit price for applicable utility structure section.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM C 32 - Specification for Sewer and Manhole Brick (Made from Clay or Shale).

B. ASTM C 55 - Standard Specification for Concrete Building Brick.

C. ASTM C 62 - Specification for Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale).

D. ASTM C 67 - Methods of Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay Tile.

E. ASTM C 91 - Specification for Masonry Cement.

F. ASTM C 109 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2-in. Cube Specimens).

G. ASTM C 140 - Standard Method of Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units.

H. ASTM C 270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall conform to requirements of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit certification from the manufacturer that brick units meet applicable requirements of reference standards.

C. As an alternate to providing certification, submit test results that show brick units meet applicable requirements of reference standards, when tested by an approved independent testing laboratory. Test result submittals shall be at no cost to the City.

1.05 HANDLING AND STORAGE

A. Handle and store brick to prevent damage.

B. Store brick and mortar mix off the ground and in a dry place. Cover mortar mix to protect from weather.

PART 2 P R O D U C T S

2.01 CLAY AND SHALE BRICK MASONRY UNITS

A. Manholes and Structures: Use brick units made from clay or shale conforming to requirements of ASTM C 32, Grade MM, either cored or solid. Units shall have the following physical properties:

1. Compressive Strength: 2200 psi minimum for individual brick; 2500 psi average for five bricks.

2. Size: 2-1/4" by 7-5/8" by 3-5/8".

3. Test Procedure: ASTM C 67.

B. Sewer Brick: Use brick units made from clay or shale conforming to requirements of ASTM C 32, Grade SM, either cored or solid. Units shall have the following physical properties:

1. Compressive Strength: 3750 psi minimum for individual brick; 5000 psi average for 5 bricks.

2. Size: 2-1/4" by 7-5/8" by 3-5/8".

3. Test Procedure: ASTM C 67.

2.02 CONCRETE BRICK MASONRY UNITS

A. Manholes and Structures: Conform to requirements of ASTM C 55, grade S-1.

B. Dimensions: 2-1/4" by 7-5/8" by 3-5/8".

2.03 MORTAR

A. Provided mortar conforming to the requirements of Section 4061 - Mortar.

PART 3 E X E C U T I O N

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Ensure that foundations and other surfaces to support brickwork are at proper grades and elevations. Correct improperly prepared surfaces. Work surfaces and masonry shall be free of dirt, grease, oil, or other harmful materials before starting brick masonry work.

3.02 WEATHER REQUIREMENTS

A. Lay no masonry when temperature of outside air is below 50 F, unless satisfactory means are provided to heat materials and protect work from cold and frost.

B. Maintain mortar at 50 F or above and ensure that mortar will harden without freezing.

3.03 BRICK PLACEMENT

A. Use sewer brick where exposed to flow. Where not exposed to flow, use manhole brick.

B. Lay sewer brick with the 2-1/4" by 7-5/8" side exposed to flow.

C. Lay manhole bricks so that in every fifth course the long axis of bricks are perpendicular to the long axis of the four preceding courses.

D. Lay curved courses, and courses in different planes, using bonded and keyed construction.

E. Lay brick plumb and true with courses level and uniformly spaced. Adjust the bond of face brick so that no course will terminate with a piece less than one-half length of brick.

F. Dampen brick prior to placement.

G. Where fresh masonry joins partially set or totally set masonry, clean surfaces of set masonry. Remove loose mortar and brick. Wet brick to obtain the best possible bond.

H. Immediately remove mortar droppings and splashing as work progresses to facilitate final cleaning.

3.04 JOINTS

A. Completely fill joints in brick and other materials with mortar as each course is laid.

B. Make joints in exposed brickwork a uniform 3/8-inch wide, unless otherwise shown on Drawings.

C. When mortar is "thumbprint" hard, tool exposed joints with a round or other suitable jointer that is slightly larger than width of the mortar joint. In tooling, make sure that cracks and crevices are closed.

D. Point holes in exposed masonry. Cut out defective joints and repoint.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01454 - Testing Laboratory Services.

B. A minimum of one set of mortar samples shall be molded for each day's placement as directed by Project Manager. Mold three 2-inch cube specimens. One cube will be tested for compressive strength at 7 days and 2 cubes will be tested for compressive strength at 28 days in accordance with ASTM C 109.

C. Each load of bricks delivered to the jobsite shall be tested.

1. Test clay bricks in accordance with ASTM C 167.

2. Test concrete bricks in accordance with ASTM C 140.

END OF SECTION